Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Workshop Manual

Audi A3 2013 ➤ ,
Audi A3 Limousine 2014 ➤ ,
Audi A3 Limousine China 2014 ➤ ,
Audi A3 Sportback 2013 ➤ ,
Audi A3 Sportback China 2014 ➤

General body repairs, interior

Edition 03.2019

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

00 - Technical data
68 - Interior equipment
69 - Passenger protection
70 - Trim, insulation
72 - Seat frames
74 - Seat - padding, covers

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Copyright © 2019 Audi AG, Ingolstadt

Contents

00 - Technical data 1

1 Safety precautions 1
1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with high-voltage system 2
1.2 Safety precautions when working in the vicinity of high-voltage components 3
1.3 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system 3
1.4 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test 4
1.5 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components 4
1.6 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components) 6
1.7 Additional safety regulations for side airbags 6
1.8 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags 7
1.9 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) 7
1.10 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version 8
1.11 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version 8
1.12 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident 9
1.13 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident 10
1.14 Accident in which no airbag was triggered 11
1.15 Checking seat belts 11
1.16 Checking belt 11
1.17 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action) 12
1.18 Visual inspection of belt buckle 13
1.19 Functional check of belt buckle 13
1.20 Checking guide fittings and latch plate 13
1.21 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident 13
1.22 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version) 14
1.23 Checking child seat anchors following an accident 14
1.24 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror 14

2 Repair notes 16
2.1 Contact corrosion 16
2.2 Routing and attaching lines and wiring 16

68 - Interior equipment 17

1 Storage compartments/covers/trim panels 17
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels 17
1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side) 19
1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim 20
1.4 Exploded view - glove box 21
1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side) 22
1.6 Removing and installing steering column trim (top) 23
1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom) 25
1.8 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism 25
1.9 Removing and installing lock cylinder for glove box opening mechanism 26
1.10 Removing and installing glove box 27
1.11 Removing and installing glove box lid 31
1.12 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid 31

2 Equipment 32
2.1 Exploded view - sun visors 32
2.2 Removing and installing sun visor 33
2.3 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor 33
2.4 Removing and installing grab handle 34

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Centre console ... 36
3.1 Exploded view - centre console ... 36
3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear) ... 41
3.3 Removing and installing coin holder ... 42
3.4 Removing and installing centre console insert ... 43
3.5 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console ... 44
3.6 Removing and installing centre console ... 46
3.7 Removing and installing brackets for centre console ... 50
3.8 Removing and installing storage compartment in centre console (front) ... 51
4 Centre armrest (front) ... 53
4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front) ... 53
4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section) ... 53
4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (front) ... 55
5 Interior mirror ... 56
5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror ... 56
5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror ... 57
5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off ... 59
5.4 Switching compass display on and off ... 60
5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone ... 60
5.6 Calibrating digital compass ... 61
5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles ... 62
5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map ... 62
5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror ... 68

69 - Passenger protection ... 70
1 Seat belts ... 70
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points ... 70
1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front) ... 74
1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear) ... 80
1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear) ... 82
1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front) ... 83
1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear) ... 84
1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) ... 85
1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear) ... 93
1.9 Removing and installing belt guide (front) ... 98
1.10 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) ... 99
1.11 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) ... 102
1.12 Removing and installing belt height adjuster ... 105
1.13 Removing and installing belt buckle (front) ... 106
1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear) ... 107
2 Child seat anchors ... 108
2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front) ... 108
2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear) ... 109
2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front) ... 109
2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear) ... 110
3 Airbag system ... 112
3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system ... 112
4 Airbag control unit ... 118
4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit ... 118
4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 ... 118
5 Battery isolation igniter ... 122
5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter ... 122
5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter ... 124
6 Airbag (driver side) ... 126

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side) . . . 126
6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters . . . 129
6.3 Renewing connector at airbag . . . 136
7 Airbag (front passenger side) . . . 139
7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side) . . . 139
7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters . . . 142
7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side . . . 146
8 Side airbags . . . 149
8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front) . . . 149
8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear) . . . 150
8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter . . . 150
8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter . . . 152
9 Curtain airbags . . . 155
9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag . . . 155
9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter . . . 157
10 Knee airbags . . . 167
10.1 Exploded view - knee airbag . . . 167
10.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter . . . 169
11 Crash sensors for airbags . . . 175
11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags . . . 175
11.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor G283 / G284 . . . 178
11.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180 . . . 183
11.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor G256 / G257 . . . 186
12 Seat position sensor . . . 189
12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor . . . 189
12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor . . . 189
13 Belt-fastened recognition system . . . 192
13.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor, front passenger side G128 . . . 192
14 Seat occupied recognition system . . . 194
14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system . . . 194
14.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor . . . 196
15 Pedestrian protection . . . 198
15.1 Overview - pedestrian protection . . . 198
15.2 Removing and installing crash sensor for pedestrian protection G570 / G571 . . . 203
15.3 Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection G693 . . . 205
15.4 Removing and installing crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection G851 and G852 . . . 208
15.5 Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection G598 / G599 . . . 214
15.6 Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered . . . 217
70 - Trim, insulation . . . 218
1 Door trim (front) . . . 218
1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front) . . . 218
1.2 Removing and installing door trim (front) . . . 221
1.3 Removing and installing trim panel . . . 224
1.4 Removing and installing armrest (front) . . . 225
1.5 Removing and installing interior door handle . . . 229
1.6 Removing and installing window frame trim . . . 229
2 Door trim (rear) . . . 231
2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear) . . . 231
2.2 Removing and installing door trim (rear) . . . 233
2.3 Removing and installing trim panel . . . 235
2.4 Removing and installing armrest (rear) . . . 236
2.5 Removing and installing interior door handle . . . 237

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6 Removing and installing window frame trim . . . 237
3 Dash panel . . . 240
3.1 Overview of fitting locations - dash panel . . . 240
3.2 Exploded view - dash panel . . . 241
3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side) . . . 244
3.4 Removing and installing dash panel vents . . . 244
3.5 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre) . . . 246
3.6 Removing and installing defroster vent (side) . . . 247
3.7 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim . . . 247
3.8 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel . . . 248
3.9 Removing and installing cover for MMI screen . . . 250
3.10 Removing and installing dash panel . . . 251
4 Dash panel cross member . . . 257
4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member . . . 257
4.2 Removing and installing crash bar . . . 258
4.3 Removing and installing dash panel cross member . . . 260
5 Passenger compartment trim panels . . . 263
5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels . . . 263
5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim . . . 267
5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim . . . 270
5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim . . . 274
5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim . . . 277
5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim . . . 280
5.7 Exploded view - side trim . . . 282
5.8 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering . . . 283
5.9 Exploded view - rear shelf . . . 284
5.10 Removing and installing sill panel trim . . . 285
5.11 Removing and installing A-pillar trim . . . 289
5.12 Removing and installing B-pillar trim . . . 295
5.13 Removing and installing C-pillar trim . . . 301
5.14 Removing and installing D-pillar trim . . . 305
5.15 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim . . . 308
5.16 Removing and installing side trim . . . 309
5.17 Removing and installing foot rest . . . 311
5.18 Removing and installing floor covering . . . 312
5.19 Removing and installing rear shelf . . . 313
6 Luggage compartment trim panels . . . 316
6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels . . . 316
6.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim (top) . . . 319
6.3 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom) . . . 320
6.4 Exploded view - lock carrier trim . . . 323
6.5 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim . . . 324
6.6 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor . . . 327
6.7 Removing and installing tail light cover . . . 329
6.8 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) . . . 329
6.9 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top) . . . 333
6.10 Removing and installing lock carrier trim . . . 334
6.11 Removing and installing bag hook . . . 335
6.12 Removing and installing fastening ring . . . 336
6.13 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim . . . 336
6.14 Removing and installing grip for luggage compartment floor (rear) . . . 340
6.15 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well . . . 342
7 Roof trim panels . . . 344
7.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner . . . 344
7.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner . . . 346

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.3 Lowering moulded headliner for removal of roof aerial . . . 356
7.4 Attaching roof reinforcement to body . . . 358

72 - Seat frames . . . 362

1 Overview - seat versions . . . 362
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions . . . 362

2 Front seats . . . 364
2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components . . . 364
2.2 Exploded view - front seat . . . 367
2.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest . . . 372
2.4 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system . . . 376
2.5 Exploded view - head restraint . . . 379
2.6 Exploded view - seat pan . . . 382
2.7 Removing and installing front seat . . . 392
2.8 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter . . . 396
2.9 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand . . . 399
2.10 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit . . . 399
2.11 Removing and installing front seat backrest . . . 404
2.12 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 . . . 409
2.13 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism . . . 411
2.14 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism . . . 413
2.15 Removing and installing slider . . . 429
2.16 Removing and installing head restraint . . . 430
2.17 Removing and installing head restraint guide . . . 431
2.18 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177 . . . 432
2.19 Removing and installing massage function button E670 / E671 . . . 433
2.20 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit . . . 433
2.21 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit . . . 437
2.22 Dismantling and assembling seat pan . . . 440
2.23 Removing and installing control unit for seat functions . . . 456

3 Rear seats . . . 458
3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats . . . 458
3.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest . . . 460
3.3 Exploded view - locking mechanism . . . 462
3.4 Exploded view - centre armrest . . . 463
3.5 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide . . . 464
3.6 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats . . . 464
3.7 Removing and installing centre storage compartment . . . 465
3.8 Removing and installing rear seat backrest . . . 466
3.9 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism . . . 471
3.10 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest . . . 471
3.11 Removing and installing trim frame for load-through hatch . . . 471
3.12 Removing and installing flap for load-through hatch . . . 473
3.13 Removing and installing centre armrest . . . 474
3.14 Removing and installing head restraint . . . 475
3.15 Removing and installing head restraint guide . . . 476

74 - Seat - padding, covers . . . 477

1 Covers and padding on front seats . . . 477
1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding . . . 477
1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding . . . 480
1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding . . . 483
1.4 Overview - seat heating elements . . . 484
1.5 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding . . . 487
1.6 Separating seat pan cover and padding . . . 491
1.7 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding . . . 494

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.8 Separating backrest cover and padding 500
1.9 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding 501
1.10 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 503
1.11 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 505
2 Covers and padding on rear seats 508
2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding 508
2.2 Removing and installing cover and padding 511
2.3 Removing and installing intermediate padding - backrest with load-through hatch 515
2.4 Detaching cover from padding 515

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

00 – Technical data

1 Safety precautions

(ARL006298; Edition 03.2019)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with high-voltage system”, page 2

⇒ “1.2 Safety precautions when working in the vicinity of high-voltage components”, page 3

⇒ “1.3 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system”, page 3

⇒ “1.4 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test”, page 4

⇒ “1.5 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components”, page 4

⇒ “1.6 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)”, page 6

⇒ “1.7 Additional safety regulations for side airbags”, page 6

⇒ “1.8 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags”, page 7

⇒ “1.9 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)”, page 7

⇒ “1.10 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version”, page 8

⇒ “1.11 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version”, page 8

⇒ “1.12 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident”, page 9

⇒ “1.13 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident”, page 10

⇒ “1.14 Accident in which no airbag was triggered”, page 11

⇒ “1.15 Checking seat belts”, page 11

⇒ “1.16 Checking belt”, page 11

⇒ “1.17 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)”, page 12

⇒ “1.18 Visual inspection of belt buckle”, page 13

⇒ “1.19 Functional check of belt buckle”, page 13

⇒ “1.20 Checking guide fittings and latch plate”, page 13

⇒ “1.21 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident”, page 13

⇒ “1.22 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)”, page 14

⇒ “1.23 Checking child seat anchors following an accident”, page 14

⇒ “1.24 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror”, page 14

Audi Service Training. For training purposes only. Any duplication, even for training purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with high-voltage system

High voltage! Danger to life!

The voltage levels in the high-voltage system constitute a safety hazard. Danger of severe or fatal injuries from electric shock.

– Persons with life-sustaining or other electronic medical devices in or on their body must not perform any work on the high-voltage system. Such medical devices include internal analgesic pumps, implanted defibrillators, pacemakers, insulin pumps and hearing aids.
– The high-voltage system must be de-energised by a suitably qualified person.

Risk of injury - engine may start unexpectedly

It is difficult to determine whether the drive system of an electric vehicle or hybrid vehicle is active. Moving parts can trap or draw in parts of the body.

– Switch off ignition.
– Deposit the ignition key outside of the vehicle.

Risk of damage to high-voltage wiring

Incorrect handling may result in damage to the insulation of high-voltage wires or high-voltage connectors.

– Do not support yourself on high-voltage cables or connectors.
– Never support tools or equipment on high-voltage wires and high-voltage connectors.
– High-voltage cables must not be excessively bent or kinked.
– Observe the coding of the high-voltage connectors when joining them up.

1.2 Safety precautions when working in the vicinity of high-voltage components

High voltage! Danger to life!

The voltage levels in the high-voltage system constitute a safety hazard. Danger of severe or fatal injuries from electric shock if high-voltage components or high-voltage wiring are damaged.

– Carry out a visual check of high-voltage components and high-voltage wiring.
– Never use cutting/forming tools or other sharp-edged implements.
– Never perform work using welding, brazing, thermal bonding or hot air.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system

Risk of injury - engine may start unexpectedly

The engine can start unexpectedly if the vehicle's start/stop system is activated. A message in the instrument cluster indicates whether the start/stop system is activated.

– To deactivate the start/stop system, switch off the ignition.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test

Risk of injury if test equipment is not secured

If an accident occurs and the front passenger's airbag is triggered, test equipment which is not secured adequately may be catapulted through the vehicle with potentially serious consequences.

– Secure test equipment on the rear seat.

Or:

– Have a second mechanic operate test equipment on the rear seat.

1.5 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components

Note

Pyrotechnic components are:

- Airbag units
- Belt tensioners
- Belt force limiters (depending on equipment version)
- Battery isolation elements (depending on equipment version)

General notes

- Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- There are no specified intervals for renewing airbag units.
- Never perform tests with a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.
- Only check pyrotechnic components when they are installed in the vehicle and always use suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems which have been approved by the manufacturer.
- When working on the airbag system (pyrotechnic components, the airbag control unit - J234- , wiring), always disconnect the battery earth strap with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Subsequently cover negative terminal.
- After disconnecting the battery, you must wait for 10 seconds.
- The battery must be connected with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Make sure there is no one in the vehicle. Exception: Vehicles in which the battery is in the passenger compartment.
- If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver's seat with the seat in the rearmost position.
- Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

- Before handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching earthed metal components such as the door striker plate.
- Always wash your hands after handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system which have been triggered.
- Pyrotechnic components must not be opened or repaired; always use new parts (risk of injury).
- Pyrotechnic components which have been dropped onto a hard surface or which show signs of damage must not be used.
- Pyrotechnic components should be installed immediately after removing them from their packaging.
- If the work is interrupted, the pyrotechnic component should again be placed in its packaging.
- The pyrotechnic component must never be left unattended.
- When connecting pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, there should be no-one in the vehicle other than the person performing the work.
- Pyrotechnic components must never be treated with grease, cleaning agents or similar.
- Always renew airbag unit if fabric is contaminated by oil, grease, paint, solvent or similar.
- Pyrotechnic components must not be exposed to temperatures higher than 100 °C even for brief periods of time.

Special notes for driver's and passenger's airbags

- Following removal, driver's and passenger's airbag units must be stored with the cushioned side facing upwards.

Always keep to the following sequence when renewing airbag units:

1 - Remove old airbag unit and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.

2 - Take new airbag unit out of packaging and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.

3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in packaging.

4 - Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

Special notes for belt tensioners

- When removing and installing belt tensioners, proceed very carefully. If belt tensioner units are not handled correctly, there is a high danger and injury risk.
- Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) must always be renewed.
- Never point the open end of a belt tensioner at another person.
- When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical components (including those of the three-point seat belt) must be secured properly. Should there not be enough space to connect the belt tensioner unit, the belt must be retracted completely before connecting the tensioner unit. In this case, there is no increased safety risk if you observe the safety precautions, i.e. most importantly the mechanic must disconnect the battery and discharge static electricity before connecting the belt tensioner unit.
- Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

These components must be handled in the same way as non-ignited components.

1.6 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)

- Storage must be in accordance with the statutory regulations of the countries in question.
- Transportation must be in accordance with the national and international guidelines which regulate the details of the packaging, marking, labelling and accompanying documents.
- Non-ignited pyrotechnic components must be disposed of in their original packaging and in accordance with national regulations. Please contact your importer if you require further information.
- Only pyrotechnic components that have been triggered completely may be disposed of with commercial refuse.



WARNING

- *This does not apply to belt tensioners which are Wankel-powered. These must be treated in the same manner as non-ignited pyrotechnic components (for example airbags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery isolators).*
- *Reason: The workshop does not have the means to check whether the Wankel-type belt tensioners have ignited fully (in all ignition stages).*

1.7 Additional safety regulations for side airbags

- We recommend using genuine seat covers (same as original equipment).
- It is NOT permissible to use seat covers or protective covers which have not been approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags.
- The backrest foam fill must not be cut away in the area of the side airbag.
- When installing, make sure seam for side airbag is straight.
- All upholstery clips (metal and plastic clips) must be renewed.
- We recommend using only genuine upholstery clips (same as original equipment).
- When installing, all new upholstery clips must be fitted in the same positions as the original ones.
- For safety reasons, the cover should always be renewed if it is damaged (tears, burn marks, etc.) in the area of the side airbag, as otherwise the side airbag will not inflate properly.
- Never repair backrest cover in area of side airbag (due to special thread and precisely defined seam).
- Always renew backrest padding after side airbags have been triggered.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- All damaged components must be renewed after an accident. The original airbag unit can still be used if no signs of damage are found.
- If side airbag units are renewed, remove sticker with airbag number from new side airbag unit and stick it over old sticker on seat pan.
- Never pierce the seat cover fabric with upholstery needles or other sharp objects in the vicinity of the airbag, seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- and the seat occupied sensor mat.

1.8 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags

- Before carrying out any installation work always visually inspect trim for damage.
- Trim repairs (A-pillar trim (top), B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and D-pillar trim) are not permitted.
- When installing, make sure that trim panels are fitted securely.
- When carrying out repairs behind the curtain airbag, always remove the complete unit.
- When removing and installing curtain airbag units, proceed very carefully to prevent possible damage.
- After removal, store old curtain airbag units in their transport containers or on a clean, level surface (on a blanket).
- After performing body repairs in area of curtain airbag, check body for welding spatter, deformation and abrasion by comparing with opposite side.
- It is important that you hold the gas generator at all times when handling it (during transportation, removing and installing etc.) until it has been bolted on.
- Never twist, turn, knot, throw, pull, hang, pinch, press or clamp curtain airbag units.
- Folding may be possible, provided you are careful not to cause damage (in particular to protective cover).

1.9 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)

The crash sensors for side airbags are very sensitive to pressure changes and must therefore be handled with great care. Please note the following:

- Always observe correct installation position: ONLY install in correct fitting location in door.
- Protect crash sensor from jolts and knocks. Crash sensors which have been dropped must NOT be used. Remove crash sensor to perform body repairs at door.
- The crash sensor is adapted to the air volume inside the door: If the door is deformed, causing the air volume in the door to be reduced, the function of the crash sensor will be impaired.
- Make sure the crash sensor is not badly soiled: Do not use compressed air near the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensor against filings or drilling swarf (e.g. on service installation of door loudspeakers). Do not use cavity sealant or oil sprays near crash sensor.
- Protect against heat and cold: Protect crash sensor against heat, e.g. when painting or carrying out other body work. Crash

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

sensors should never be exposed to temperatures of less than –40 °C (e.g. in non-air-conditioned aircraft cargo holds).

- The crash sensor must be protected against moisture, both during storage and when installing.

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor may not function correctly. Please note the following:

- Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.
- The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. Renew retaining clips if necessary.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.10 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version

- Following any repair work on the passenger seat during which the seat and/or backrest cover are/is disengaged, the basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must always be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- The mat for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- The mat must be renewed if it is damaged (service kit).
- The pressure hose for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- Make sure that the components of the seat occupied recognition system (service kit) do not fall onto hard surfaces, do not come into contact with grease and cannot be damaged by sharp objects.
- Make sure that the mat, the fleece and all covers are not creased when they are installed.
- Make sure that the seat padding and seat cover are in the correct installation position.
- Renew all staples/clips and make sure they are correctly positioned on the seat.
- The system's basic setting is only possible at temperatures between 0°C and + 40°C if airbag units 8.R and 9.* are installed, and only between 5°C and 35°C if airbag unit 10.* is installed.
- Make sure there are no objects lying on the seat before or while you are performing the basic setting.
- The use of loose seat covers - such as cushions or similar - impairs the function of the seat occupied recognition system and thus the function of the airbag system.

1.11 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version

- The basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must be performed whenever the airbag and/or front passenger's belt tensioner has/have been triggered ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- If the seat rail and/or seat pan has/have to be renewed after a crash due to deformation, the seat occupied sensor must be

renewed using the “seat occupied recognition service kit”. The “basic setting” for the seat occupied recognition control unit must then be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

1.12 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic tester

Airbag control unit must be renewed:

- If message “Control unit defective” appears after event memory is interrogated
- After side airbags, driver's airbag, front passenger's airbag or belt tensioners have triggered three times
- If housing is damaged
- In the event of a tunnel deformation within 200 mm radius of control unit

Always renew the following:

- All triggered airbag units

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- Dash panel
- Supports for front passenger's airbag unit which have become deformed (must not be bent back into shape)
- All front airbag sensors at front end
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If driver's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- Return ring with slip ring
- All front airbag sensors at front end
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If side airbag(s) has/have been triggered, also renew:

- Pressure sensors on the side on which the airbag was triggered
- Lateral acceleration sensors on the side on which airbag was triggered
- Cover
- Padding
- Folding rear seat backrest: side padding (if fitted)
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

Additionally:

- All automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered
- All automatic belt retractors with belt force limiters (depending on equipment version) which have been triggered
- Belt buckles for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Belt height adjusters (manual and electrical) for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened

– If you suspect that belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) has/have been triggered, connect a vehicle diagnostic tester .

– In “15 - Airbag” of the »Guided Fault Finding« function, check whether there is an entry recording a crash in the airbag control unit.

– Check whether at the same time the fault “Resistance too high” is entered for belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s). Belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) which have been triggered must fulfil both conditions. Condition: The airbag control unit has not yet been renewed.

Note

- *The fault “Resistance too high” can also be entered if there is an open circuit. In this case, there should usually be no crash entry.*
- *Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. In this case, observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Also observe the notes on checking seat belts ⇒ page 11 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

– In addition, the following must also be renewed if necessary (visual check): all damaged components

– After renewing airbag units or the control unit, affix stickers (only tear-off strips) to the registration card and return the registration card to the appropriate Sales Centre or to the importer for registration.

1.13 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident

It is essential to always renew all damaged mounting components - it is not permissible to »reshape« or rework damaged components.

The following components must be checked after an airbag has been triggered.

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered:

- Dash panel cross member; it must be possible to install front passenger's airbag unit and supports so that they are free of stress. Otherwise cross member must also be renewed.
- Check glove box for damage. Renew glove box if it is damaged.

If driver's airbag has been triggered:

- Steering wheel: Remove steering wheel and place it on a level surface (resting on rim). The full area of the rim must lie flat. If it does not, the steering wheel has to be renewed.
- Check steering wheel for smoke marks. Renew steering wheel if such marks are found.

1.14 Accident in which no airbag was triggered

- Pyrotechnic components do not have to be renewed if airbag warning lamp - K75- does not indicate a fault. The seat belts must be checked separately.

1.15 Checking seat belts

WARNING

A systematic check of the seat belt system must be carried out after every accident. If any damage is identified (see section on points to check), the customer must be informed that one or more of the seat belts have to be renewed.

Points to check:

- Check belt ⇒ page 11 .
- Check automatic belt retractor (locking action) ⇒ page 12 .
- Visual inspection of belt buckle ⇒ page 13 .
- Functional check of belt buckle ⇒ page 13 .
- Check guide fittings and latch plate ⇒ page 13 .
- Check securing components and anchorage points ⇒ page 13 .
- Check child seat restraint function for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt) - country-specific version ⇒ page 14 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

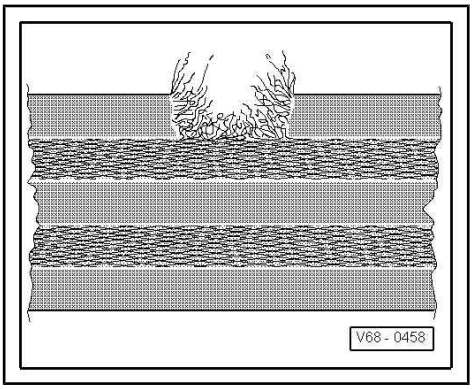
If customers decide not to have damaged seat belts renewed, this must be noted accordingly in the Service Schedule.

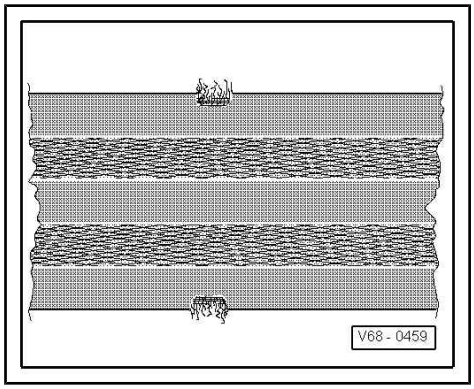
1.16 Checking belt

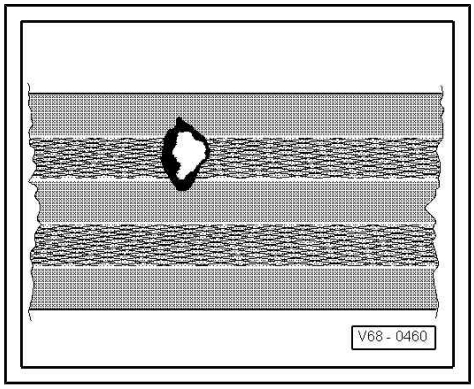
Procedure

– Pull belt as far as it will go out of automatic belt retractor or lap belt adjuster.

– Inspect belt for dirt and, if necessary, wash it with mild soap solution ⇒ Owner's Manual .







- If the following type of damage (shown in illustrations 1 and 2) is identified on a vehicle following an accident you must renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.
- If damage as shown in illustrations 1, 2 or 3 is identified on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to only renew the damaged belt.
- 1 – Belt is cut, torn or chafed
- 2 – Frayed fabric at edge of belt
- 3 – Burn marks caused by cigarettes or similar

1.17 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)

The automatic belt retractor has two locking functions.

◆ The first locking function is triggered by pulling the belt quickly out of the automatic belt retractor.

First check

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull belt out of automatic belt retractor in a sharp quick movement.

- No locking effect - renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- If you encounter difficulties when pulling belt out or retracting it, first check whether position of automatic belt retractor has changed.
- The second locking function is triggered if vehicle motion changes (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Second check

WARNING

For safety reasons, test drive must be performed on a road with no traffic to avoid putting other road users at risk.

– Fasten seat belt.

– Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then press foot brake firmly (emergency braking).

- If braking does not activate seat belt locking mechanism, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

1.18 Visual inspection of belt buckle

– Inspect belt buckle for cracks and fracturing.

• If you identify any damage, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.19 Functional check of belt buckle

Checking belt buckle

– Push latch plate into belt buckle until you hear it engage. Pull belt firmly to check whether locking mechanism has engaged.

• Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate does not engage properly in belt buckle in one or more of the tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

Checking release function

– Release seat belt by pressing button on belt buckle. Latch plate must be automatically ejected from belt buckle when belt is slack.

• Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate is not ejected in one or more of these tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

WARNING

Under no circumstances apply lubricant to belt buckle to eliminate noises or to stop buttons sticking.

1.20 Checking guide fittings and latch plate

When a seat belt has been under strain in an accident the plastic-covered guides will show fine parallel scoring. (By contrast, a guide fitting which is worn because of frequent use will have a smoothly worn surface, but no scoring).

– Inspect for deformation, fracturing and cracks in the plastic.

• If you identify any scoring and/or damage, renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.

1.21 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident

♦ Latch plate deformed (strained)

♦ Height adjustment not functioning

♦ Anchorage points (seat, pillar, vehicle floor) deformed or thread damaged

• If you identify any damage on these parts, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

• If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.

• Renew anchorage points.

Note

In the event of damage not resulting from an accident (for example wear) only the corresponding damaged part must be renewed.

1.22 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)

To check this function fit the complete belt assembly (including side panel trim).

Activating locking function of retractor mechanism:

- Pull out belt as far as it will go.

Correct function

- The belt should retract with an audible clicking sound.
- Once you stop the belt retracting any further, it should no longer be possible to pull the belt out.

Deactivating

- Allow the belt to retract as far as the last approx. 100 mm.
- The locking function of the retractor mechanism should be deactivated at the latest by the time the belt has been retracted as far as the last 100 mm. The belt then functions as "normal" again.

If child seat restraint function of seat belt is not operating properly, seat belt must be renewed.

1.23 Checking child seat anchors following an accident

Points to check:

- After an accident, child seat anchors must be checked for damage and deformation.
- Child seat anchors welded or bolted to body or seats/backrests must not be repaired or straightened.
- Child seat anchors bolted to the body or seats/backrests must be renewed if they are damaged or deformed.
- Bolts for securing child seat anchors must be renewed if retainer is damaged.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Any copying, modification, distribution or other use for purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.24 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

WARNING

- *The interior mirror glass consists of several layers and contains an electrolyte which gives the mirror its properties. Beware of liquid electrolyte escaping from a broken mirror.*
- *Liquid electrolyte can cause irritation to skin, eyes and respiratory organs.*
- *Should liquid electrolyte come into contact with the eyes or skin, rinse it out/off immediately with plenty of water. If the irritation persists, consult a doctor immediately.*

Caution

If liquid electrolyte escapes from a broken mirror glass it will damage all plastic surfaces with which it comes into contact. Make sure you clean away any leaked electrolyte immediately using clean water and a sponge.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Repair notes

⇒ “2.1 Contact corrosion”, page 16

⇒ “2.2 Routing and attaching lines and wiring”, page 16

2.1 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners are used (e.g. bolts, nuts, washers, etc.).

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

In addition, all rubber and plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Should you have any doubts whether certain parts can be re-used, use new parts ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Please note:

- We recommend using only genuine replacement parts: these have been fully tested and are compatible with aluminium.
- We recommend using Audi Genuine Accessories.
- Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.

2.2 Routing and attaching lines and wiring

Make sketches or take photographs when unfastening or removing and installing hydraulic and pneumatic lines or electrical wires. This ensures re-installation at the original location.

68 – Interior equipment

1 Storage compartments/covers/trim panels

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels”, page 17

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 19

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim”, page 20

⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 21

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 22

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing steering column trim (top)”, page 23

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom)”, page 25

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism”, page 25

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing lock cylinder for glove box opening mechanism”, page 26

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing glove box”, page 27

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing glove box lid”, page 31

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid”, page 31

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Centre console

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 36

2 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 19

3 - Steering column trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 20

4 - Cross member

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 257

5 - Dash panel

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

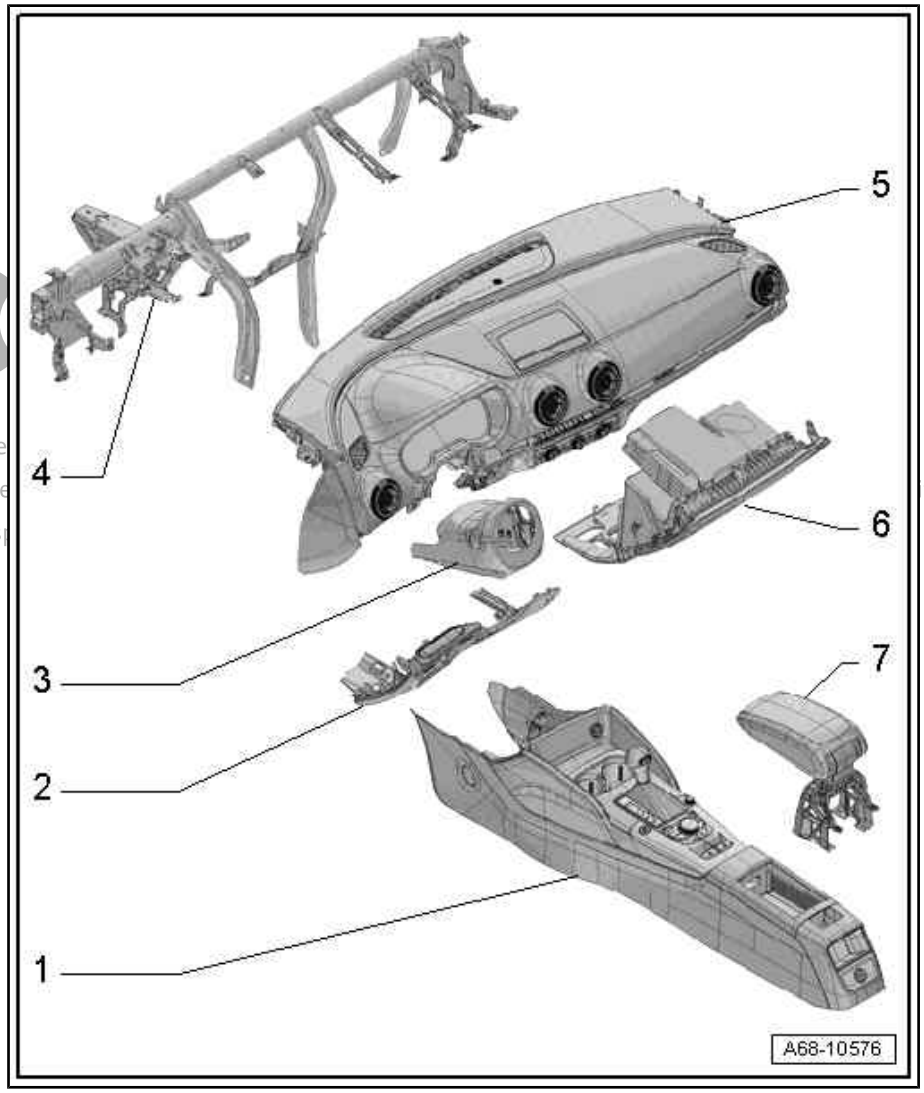
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 241

6 - Glove box

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 21

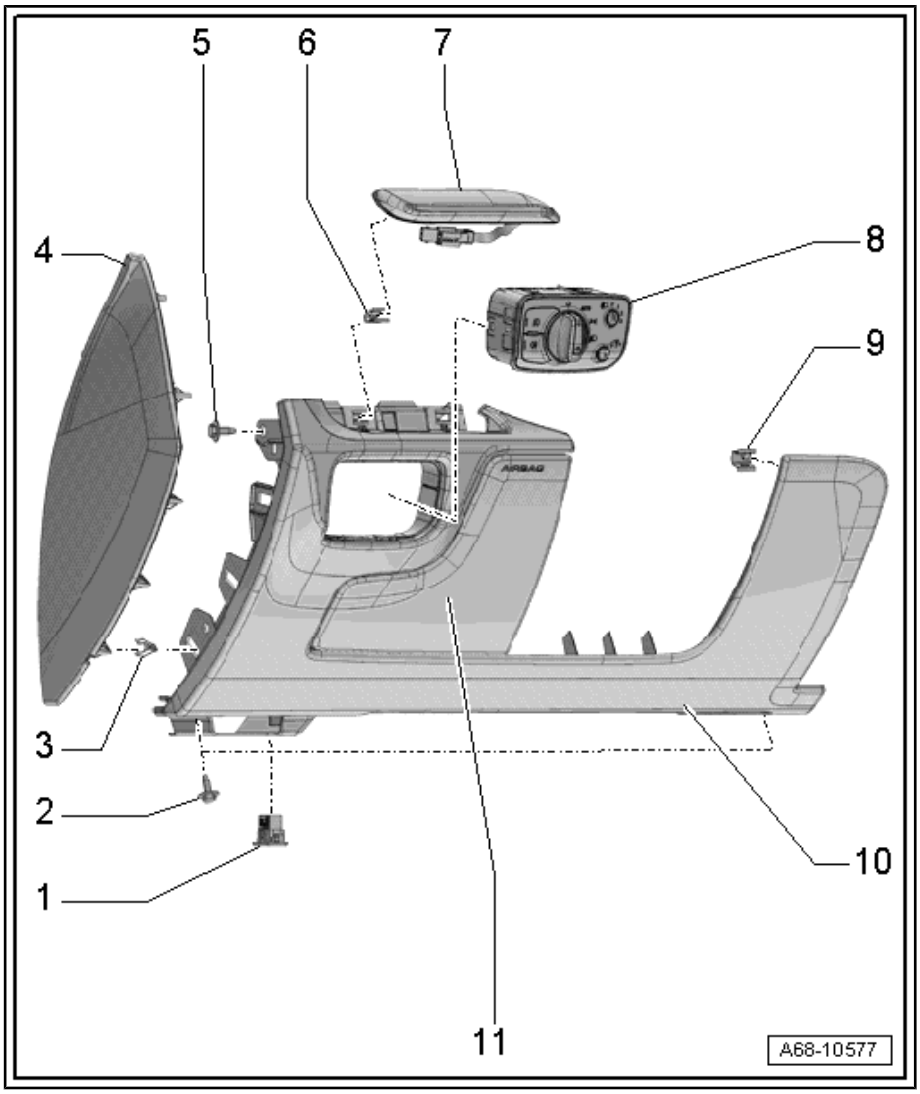
7 - Centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 53



Protecte not
permitte ty
with resp

1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)



1 - Left footwell light - W9-
- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

3 - Clip
- ❑ For cover (side)
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert in cover

4 - Cover (side)
- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 244

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

6 - Clip
- ❑ For trim panel
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert in dash panel cover

7 - Trim panel for dash panel
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 248

8 - Light switch - E1-
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

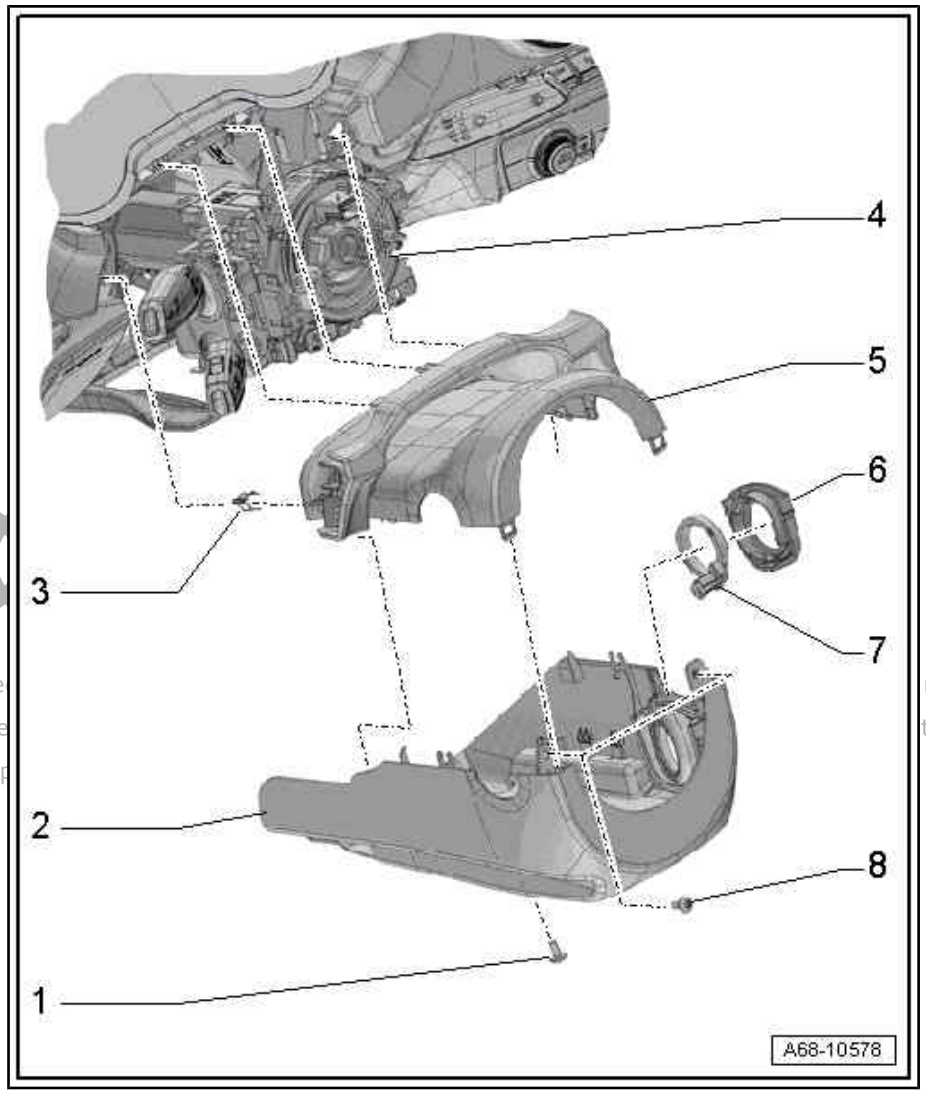
9 - Clip
- ❑ For dash panel cover (driver side)
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Press into dash panel

10 - Dash panel cover (driver side)
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 22

11 - Cover
- ❑ For fuse holder C - SC-
- ❑ Clipped into dash panel cover

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

2 - Steering column trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 25

3 - Clip

- ❑ For trim cover
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert in trim cover

4 - Steering column switch module

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Exploded view - steering column switch module

5 - Steering column trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 23
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

6 - Mounting

- ❑ For reader coil
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Exploded view - steering column switch module

7 - Immobiliser reader coil - D2-

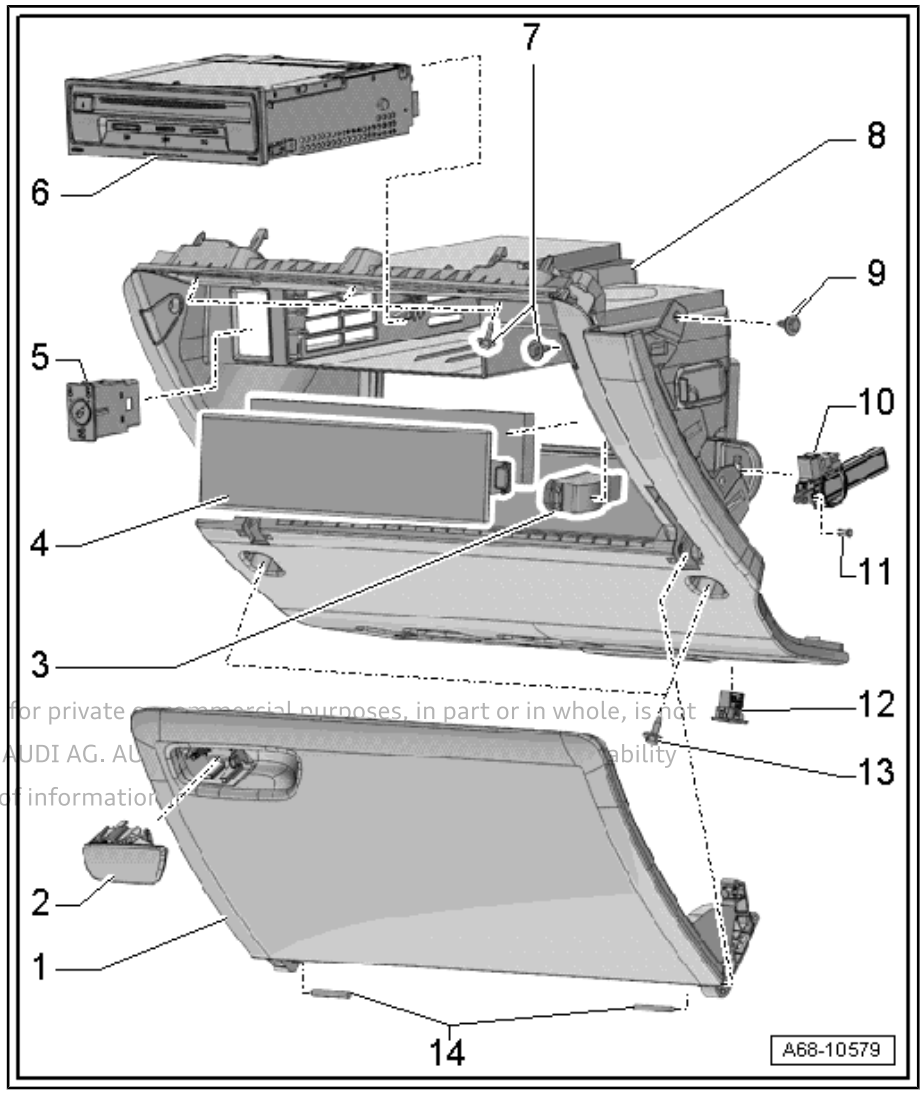
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Exploded view - steering column switch module

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

Protecte not
permitte ty
with resp

1.4 Exploded view - glove box



1 - Glove box lid

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 31

2 - Glove box opening mechanism

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 25
- ❑ Removing and installing lock cylinder ⇒ page 26
- ❑ Press into glove box lid until it engages audibly

3 - Glove box light - W6-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel

4 - Cover

- ❑ For pollen filter
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 146
- ❑ Press into opening until it engages audibly

6 - Control unit 1 for information electronics - J794-

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Tightening torque and tightening sequence ⇒ page 22

8 - Glove box

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 27

9 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque and tightening sequence ⇒ page 22

10 - Cushioning element

- ❑ For glove box lid
- ❑ With glove compartment light switch - E26-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 31

11 - Hinge pin

- ❑ For cushioning element

12 - Right footwell light - W10-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque and tightening sequence ⇒ page 22

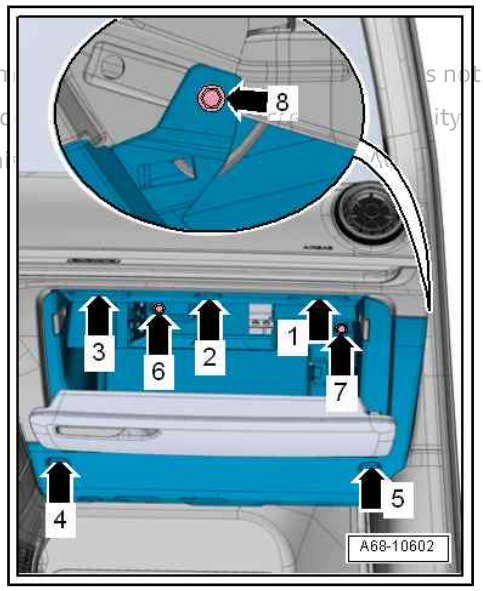
14 - Hinge pin

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ For glove box lid

Glove box - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts in sequence -arrows 1 ... 8- to 3 Nm.

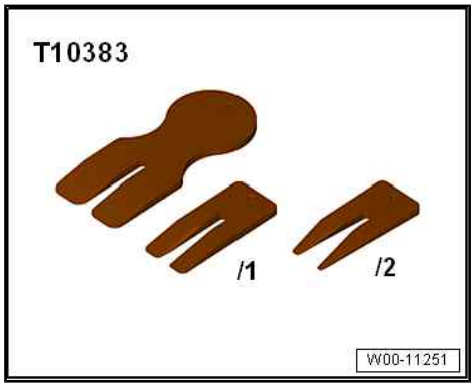
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d... ity with respect to the correctness of information in th...



1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

– Remove side dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 244 .

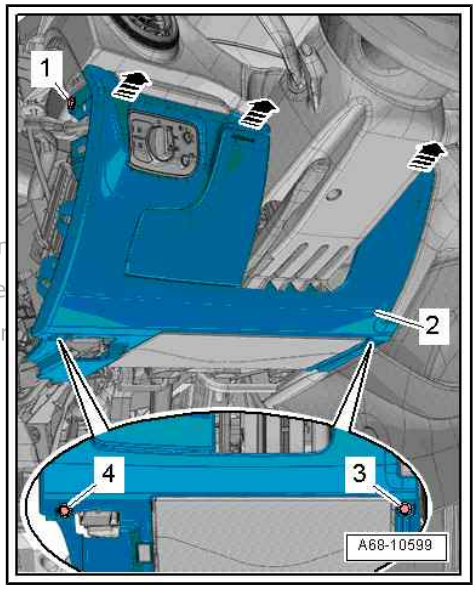
– Equipment version with footwell light: Remove footwell light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel .

– Remove bolt -1- at side.

– Unscrew bolts -3- and -4- (bottom).

– Unclip dash panel cover -2- (driver side) from dash panel -arrows- using wedge -T10383/1-.

– Unplug electrical connector for light switch.

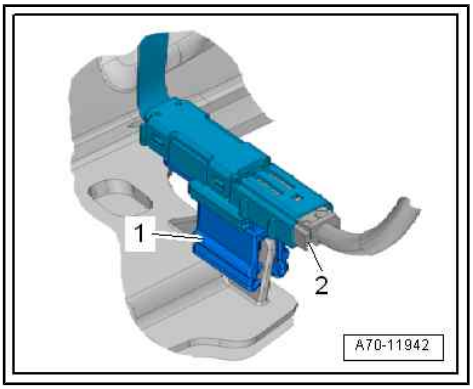


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyr

Equipment version with ambient lighting:

– Unfasten clip -1- for electrical connector for ambient lighting bulb.

– Unplug electrical connector -2- for ambient lighting bulb.



Installing

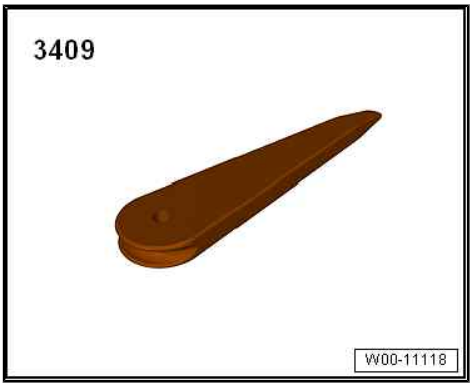
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)", page 19

1.6 Removing and installing steering column trim (top)

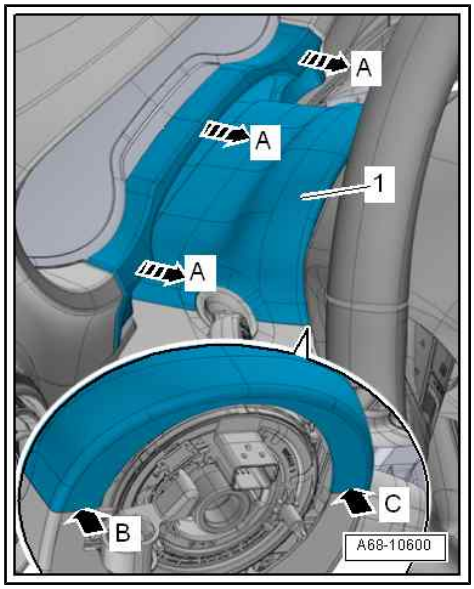
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Unclip trim cover for dash panel insert from dash panel -arrows A- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Turn steering wheel 90° anti-clockwise from straight-ahead position.
- Using a small flat-bladed screwdriver, carefully prise steering column trim (top) -1- off steering column trim (bottom) -arrow B-.
- Turn steering wheel back through 180° and repeat procedure on opposite side -arrow C-.
- Press steering column trim (top) forwards to disengage it from steering column trim (bottom) and detach.

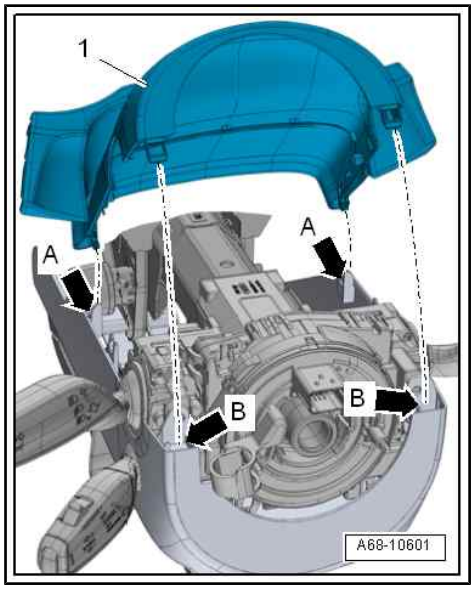


Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

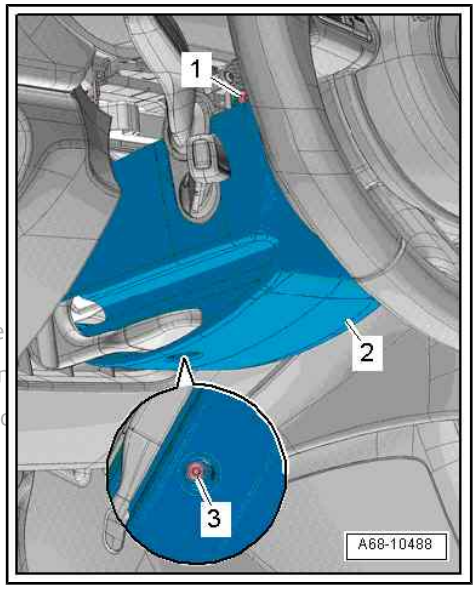
- First engage steering column trim (top) -1- in steering column trim (bottom) -arrows A-.
- Make sure that lug on steering column trim (bottom) engages in recess at retaining tab on steering column trim (top) -arrows B-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim”, page 20



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom)



Removing

– Remove steering column trim (top) ⇒ page 23 .

– Turn steering wheel 90° anti-clockwise from straight-ahead position.

– Remove bolt -1-.

– Turn steering wheel back through 180° and unscrew bolt on opposite side.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran
of information in this document. C

Note

If bolt -1- is not accessible, steering wheel must be removed before performing remaining work steps ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel .

– Remove bolt -3- and take off steering column trim (bottom) -2-.

– Equipment version with electronic ignition lock: Unplug electrical connector for immobiliser reader coil - D2- .

Installing

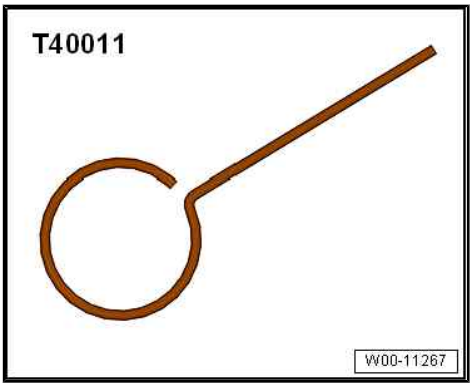
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim”, page 20

1.8 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Locking pin - T40011-

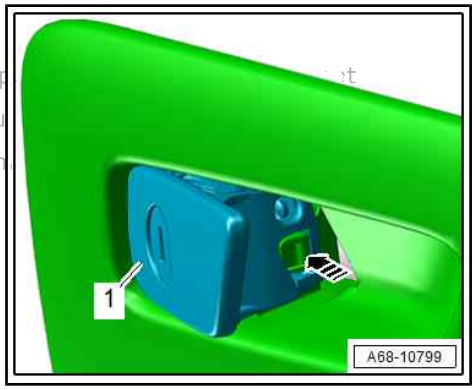


♦ Medium hard scraper (semi-round) from scraper set - VAS 6845- (not illustrated)

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purp... not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu... with respect to the correctness of information in this documen...

Removing

– Actuate glove box opening mechanism -1- and release retaining hook on side of glove box opening mechanism using a screwdriver -arrow-.

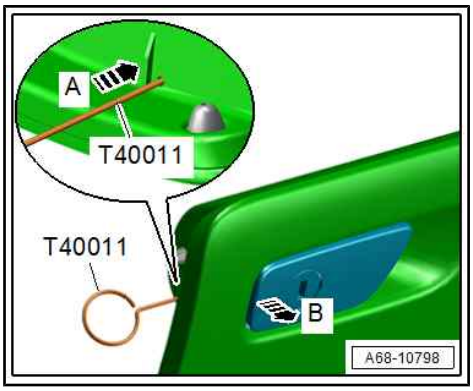


Note

Make sure that glove box opening mechanism does not engage again; repeat procedure if necessary.

– Insert locking pin - T40011- through opening in side of glove box lid and release retaining hook for glove box opening mechanism -arrow A-.

– At the same time prise glove box opening mechanism out of glove box lid -arrow B- using medium hard scraper (semi-round).



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 21

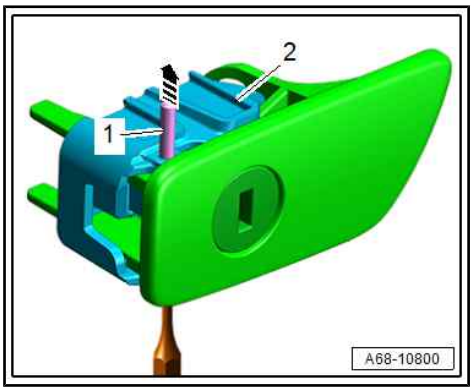
1.9 Removing and installing lock cylinder for glove box opening mechanism

Removing

– Remove glove box opening mechanism ⇒ page 25 .

– Drive shaft -1- out of mounting hole in direction of -arrow- using a punch.

– Detach cover -2-.



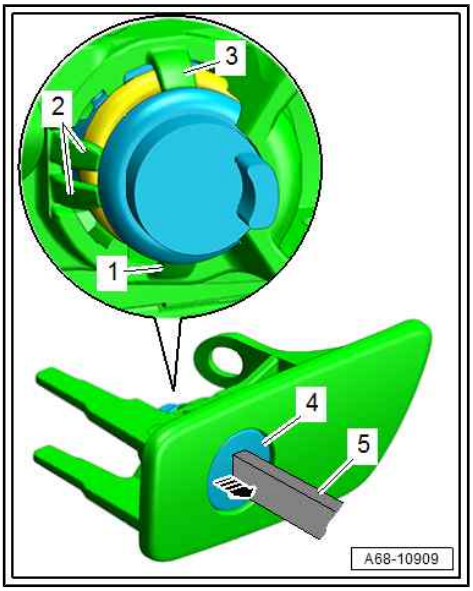
Caution

Risk of irreparable damage to lock cylinder.

- *Only remove and install lock cylinder with key properly inserted; this will ensure that tumblers and springs do not fall out.*

– Insert key -5- into lock cylinder.

– Carefully release fasteners -1 ... 3- one after another using a small screwdriver, and at the same time press out lock cylinder -4- -arrow-.



Installing

– Insert key -4- into new lock cylinder -3-.

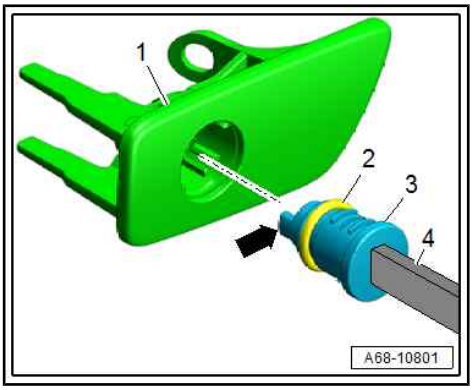
– Pull protective cap off new lock cylinder.

– Insert lock cylinder with seal -2- into glove box opening mechanism -1- until it engages (pay attention to correct installation position of lug).

• Lug -arrow- on lock cylinder should face towards left.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 21



1.10 Removing and installing glove box

Removing (on some country-specific versions and equipment versions):

WARNING

- *On equipment version with key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- and/or knee airbag, observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components* ⇒ page 4 *.*
- *On equipment version with knee airbag, observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components* ⇒ page 6 *.*
- *On equipment version with knee airbag, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue for correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit.*

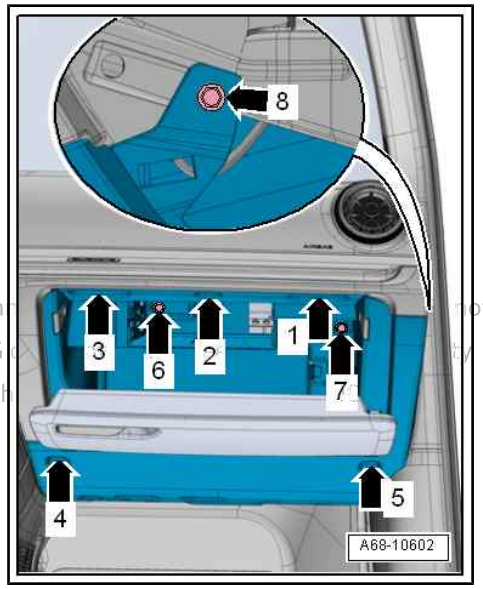
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

All vehicles (continued):

– Remove control unit 1 for information electronics - J794- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .

– Remove side dash panel cover (passenger side) ⇒ page 244 .
– Remove bolt -arrow 8- at side.
– Open glove box lid and unscrew bolts -arrows 1 ... 7-.
– Detach glove box and carefully pull it out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connectors.
– Unplug electrical connectors for footwell light, glove box light and switch for glove box light.

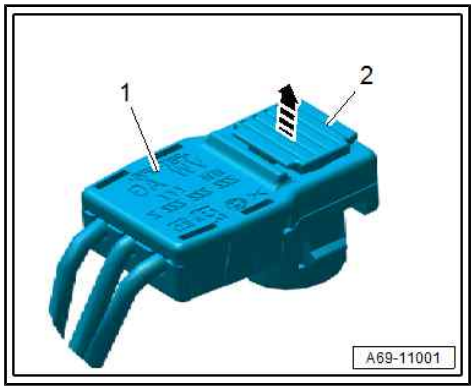


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com ... not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG ... with respect to the correctness of information in th...

Equipment version with knee airbag:

> **WARNING**
>
> ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.

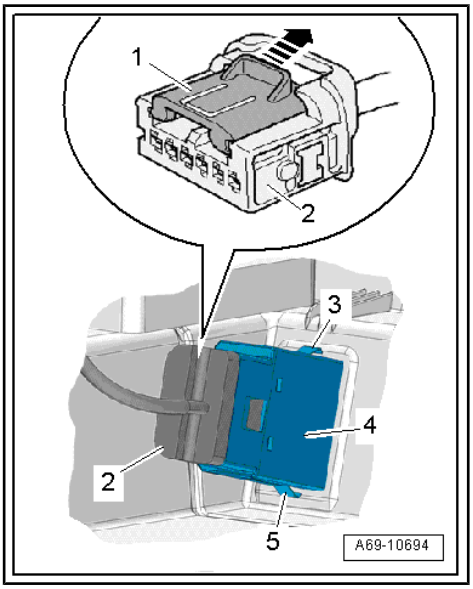


Equipment version with key-operated switch -E224- :

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector is disengaged.
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.



Note

Disregard -items 3, 4, 5-.

WARNING

Equipment version with knee airbag: Set down glove box with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing (on some country-specific versions and equipment versions)

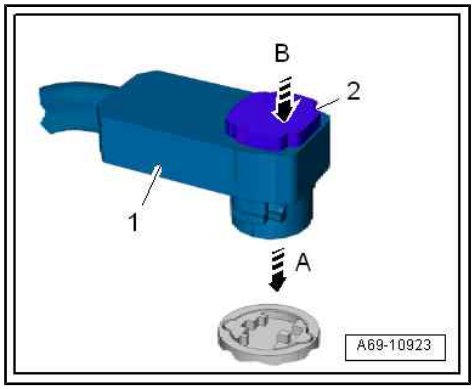
WARNING

- *On equipment version with key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- and/or knee airbag, observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components* *⇒ page 4* *.*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.

– Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

All vehicles (continued):

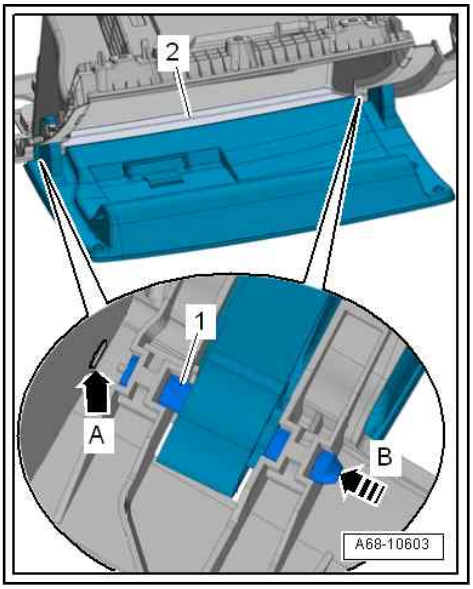
Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 21

1.11 Removing and installing glove box lid



Removing

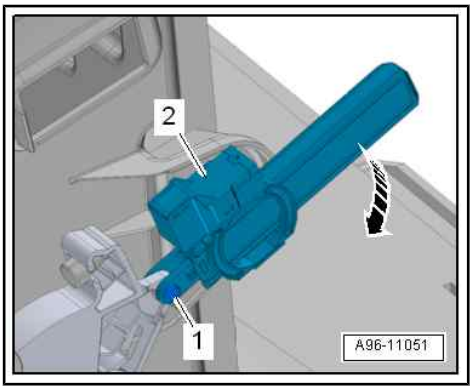
– Remove glove box ⇒ page 27 .
– Remove cushioning element for glove box lid ⇒ page 31 .
– Set down glove box on a soft surface.
– Take lining mat -2- out of glove box.
– Using a pin punch, knock out hinge pins -1- (left and right) in direction of -arrow B- through hole -arrow A- in glove box.
– Detach lid from glove box.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 21

1.12 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid



Removing

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 27 .
– Remove hinge pin -1-.
– Release switch -2- in clockwise direction -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 21

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Equipment

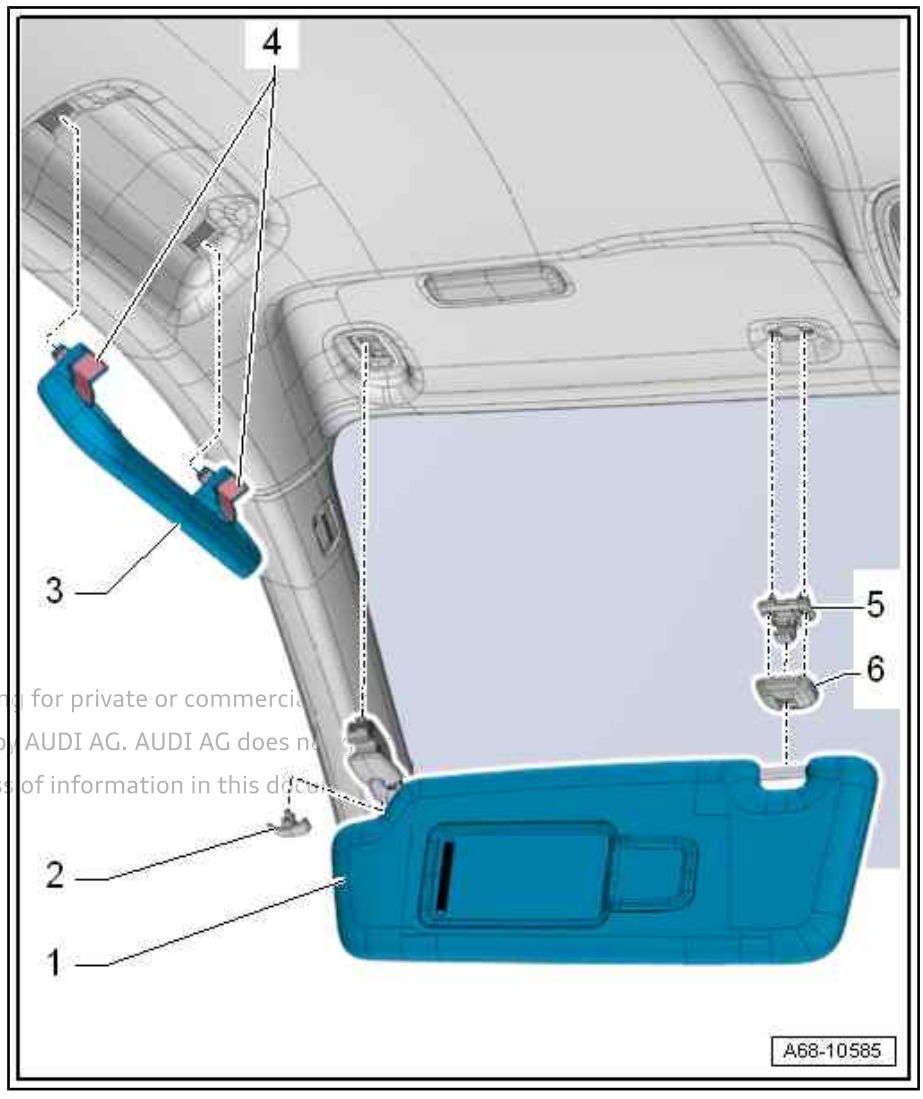
⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - sun visors”, page 32

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing sun visor”, page 33

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor”, page 33

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing grab handle”, page 34

2.1 Exploded view - sun visors



1 - Sun visor

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 33
- ❑ Remove any retaining clips left in mounting point and insert in bracket for sun visor for installation
- ❑ Engage bracket for sun visor in body opening

2 - Expanding cap

- ❑ Clipped into sun visor
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

3 - Grab handle

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 34
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

4 - Expanding caps

> **Caution**
>
> *Unclip only as far as detent (do not pull out completely as silicone cushioning element and spring could fall out and handle would then have to be renewed).*

- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

5 - Centre bracket

- ❑ For sun visor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 33
- ❑ Take care not to damage fasteners when inserting them

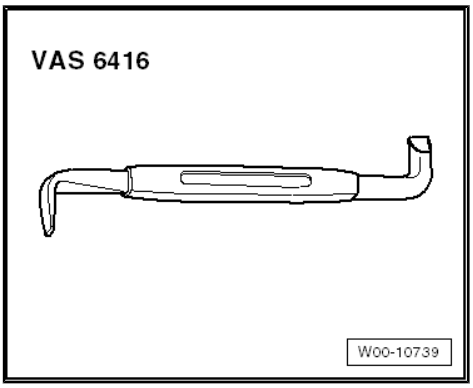
6 - Expanding cap

- ❑ Clipped into centre bracket for sun visor

2.2 Removing and installing sun visor

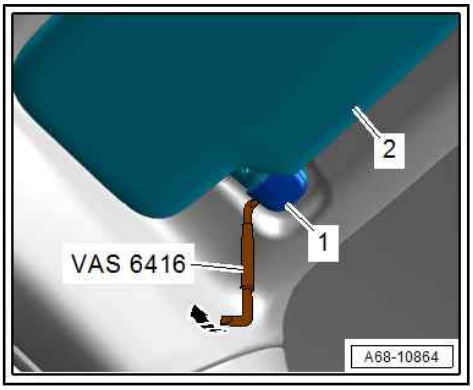
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Angled screwdriver - VAS 6416-



Removing

– Unclip expanding cap -1- for bracket for sun visor -arrow-. To do so, slide angled screwdriver - VAS 6416- only approx. 1 mm under cap.



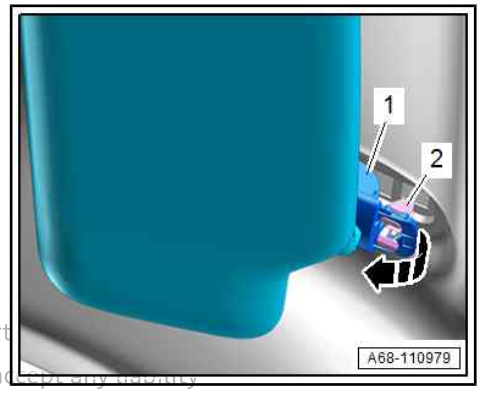
Note

Inserting angled screwdriver - VAS 6416- further would position it beneath sun visor. The expanding cap can then not be prised off.

– Disengage sun visor -2- from centre bracket.

– Unclip sun visor bracket -1- with retaining clip -2- downwards -arrow- from body opening and remove.

– Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector and detach sun visor.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

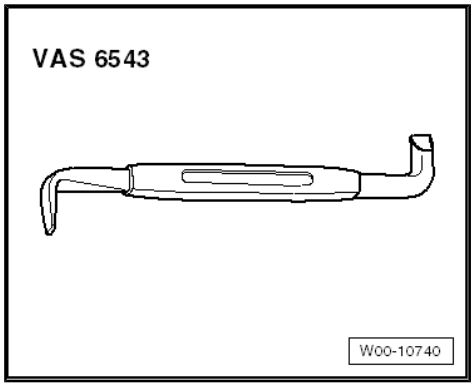
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - sun visors", page 32

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

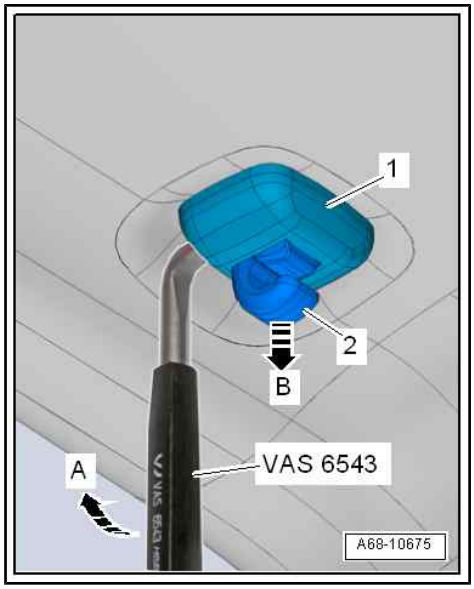
♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-



Removing

– Disengage sun visor from centre bracket for sun visor and fold to the side.

– Unclip cover -1- for centre bracket for sun visor -arrow A-. To do so, slide angled screwdriver - VAS 6543- only approx. 1 mm under cap.



Note

Inserting angled screwdriver - VAS 6543- further would position it beneath centre bracket for sun visor. Cover can then not be prised off.

– Pull out centre bracket for sun visor -2- -arrow B-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

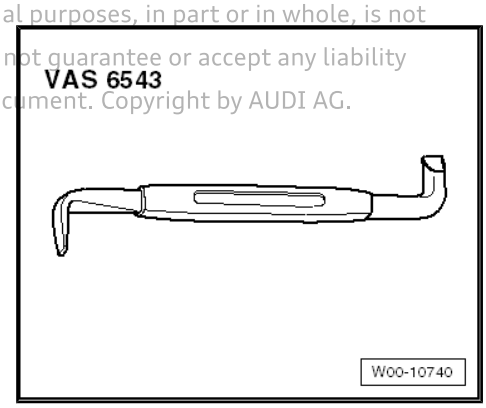
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - sun visors", page 32

2.4 Removing and installing grab handle

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

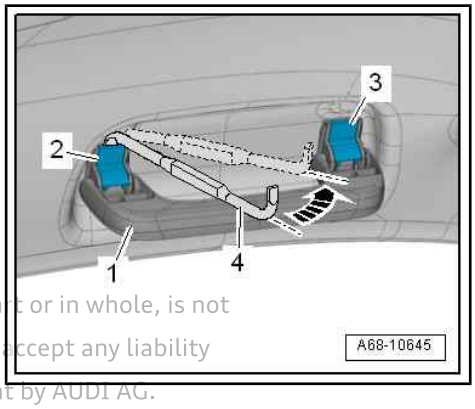
♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-



Removing

Caution

Unclip expanding caps -2- and -3- only as far as detent (do not pull out completely as silicone cushioning element and spring could fall out and handle would then have to be renewed).



– Insert angled screwdriver -4- in gap behind expanding cap -2-.

– Swivel angled screwdriver -arrow- until expanding cap engages audibly in detent.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Repeat procedure on second expanding cap -3-.

– Pull grab handle -1- out of cut-out in body.

– Leave expanding caps in detent position in grab handle.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert grab handle in cut-out in body.

• There must not be a gap between the handle and the roof trim.

– Press in expanding caps.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim”, page 270

3 Centre console

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 36

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)”, page 41

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing coin holder”, page 42

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing centre console insert”, page 43

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console”, page 44

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing centre console”, page 46

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing brackets for centre console”, page 50

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing storage compartment in centre console (front)”, page 51

3.1 Exploded view - centre console

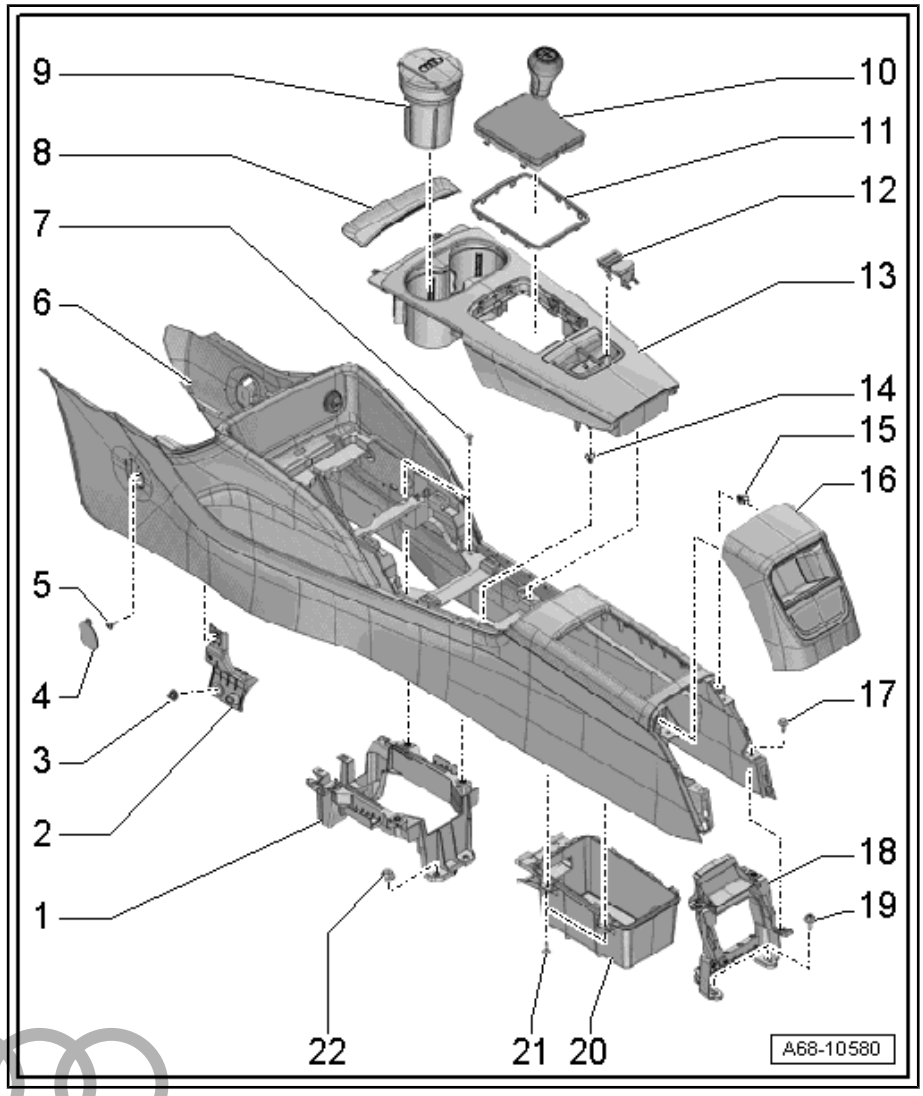
Centre console with basic equipment ⇒ page 36

Centre console with optional equipment ⇒ page 38

Centre console storage net ⇒ page 41

Centre console with basic equipment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Mounting bracket

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing brackets for centre console”, page 50

2 - Bracket (front)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing brackets for centre console”, page 50

3 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

4 - Cap

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Press into centre console

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

6 - Centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 46
- ❑ Equipment version with storage net: Fitting storage net in new centre console ⇒ page 49

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

8 - Lining mat

9 - Ashtray

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Audi logo on ashtray lid is perpendicular to direction of travel; ashtray can be used from driver's position

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Gear lever/selector lever

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Exploded view - selector mechanism

11 - Trim panel

- ❑ For centre console insert
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 44

12 - Coin holder

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42
- ❑ Engage in rear of centre console and press on until it engages audibly

13 - Insert

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 43
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

- ❑ Engage in front of centre console and press on until it engages audibly

14 - Clip

- ❑ For insert for centre console
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Fit in insert

15 - Clip

- ❑ For cover
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert in cover

16 - Trim (rear)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 41
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

17 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

18 - Bracket (rear)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing brackets for centre console”, page 50

19 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

20 - Storage compartment

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 51

21 - Bolts

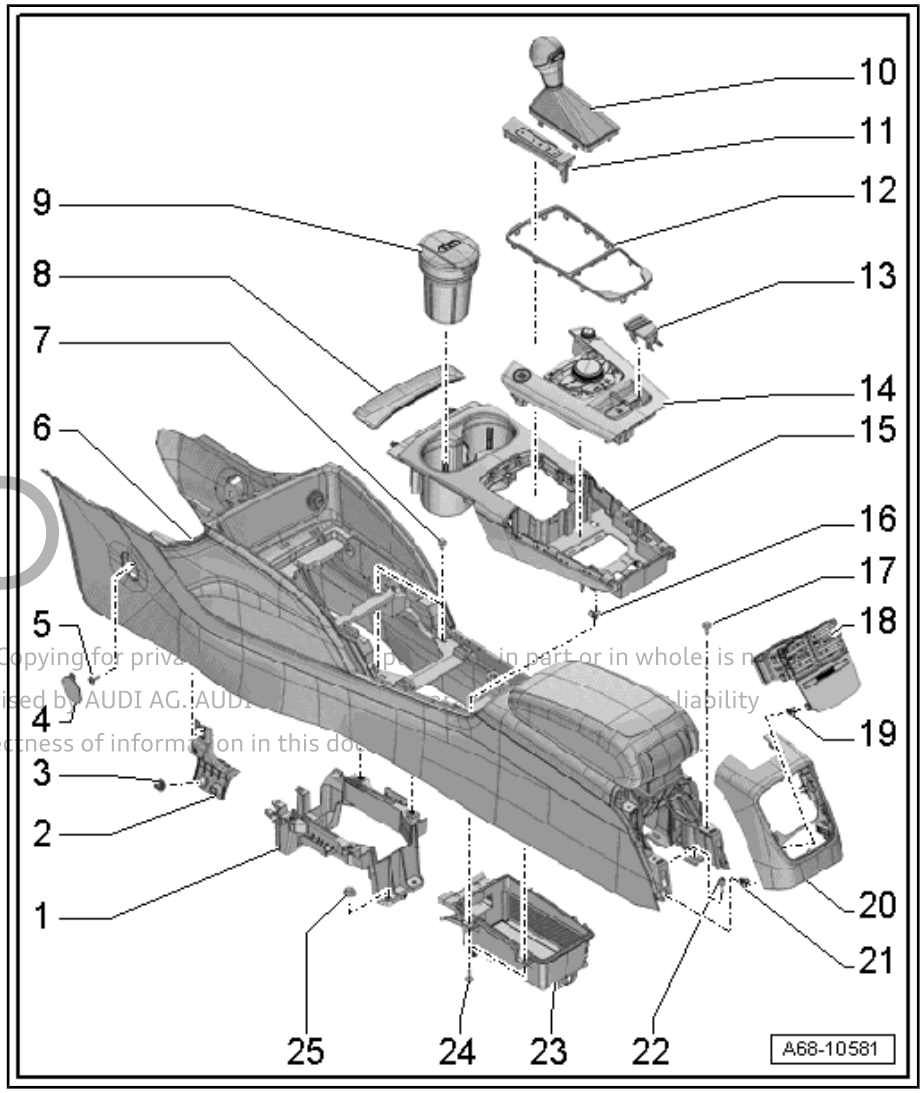
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

22 - Nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 8 Nm

Centre console with optional equipment



1 - Mounting bracket

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing brackets for centre console”, page 50

2 - Bracket (front)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing brackets for centre console”, page 50

3 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

4 - Cap

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Press into centre console

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

6 - Centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 46
- ❑ Equipment version with storage net: Fitting storage net in new centre console ⇒ page 49

7 - Bolts

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

8 - Lining mat

9 - Ashtray

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Audi logo on ashtray lid is perpendicular to direction of travel; ashtray can be used from driver's position

10 - Gear lever/selector lever

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Exploded view - selector mechanism

11 - Selector lever position display - Y26-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in centre console

12 - Trim panel

- ❑ For centre console insert
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 44

13 - Coin holder

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42
- ❑ Engage in rear of centre console and press on until it engages audibly

protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

14 - Multimedia system operating unit - E380-

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

15 - Centre console insert

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 43
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Engage in front of centre console and press on until it engages audibly

16 - Clip

- ❑ For centre console insert
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Fit in insert

17 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 4 (page 53)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

18 - Storage compartment/vent

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 51
- ❑ Making opening for cigarette lighter/socket in new storage compartment ⇒ page 52
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert in installation position and press in as far as stop

19 - Clip

- ❑ For storage compartment
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert in storage compartment

20 - Trim (rear)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 41
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

21 - Clip

- ❑ For cover
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert in cover

22 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 5 (page 53)

23 - Storage compartment

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 51

24 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

25 - Nut

- ❑ 4x

❑ 8 Nm

Centre console storage net

1 - Pop rivet

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Set rivet using pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072A- .

2 - Storage net

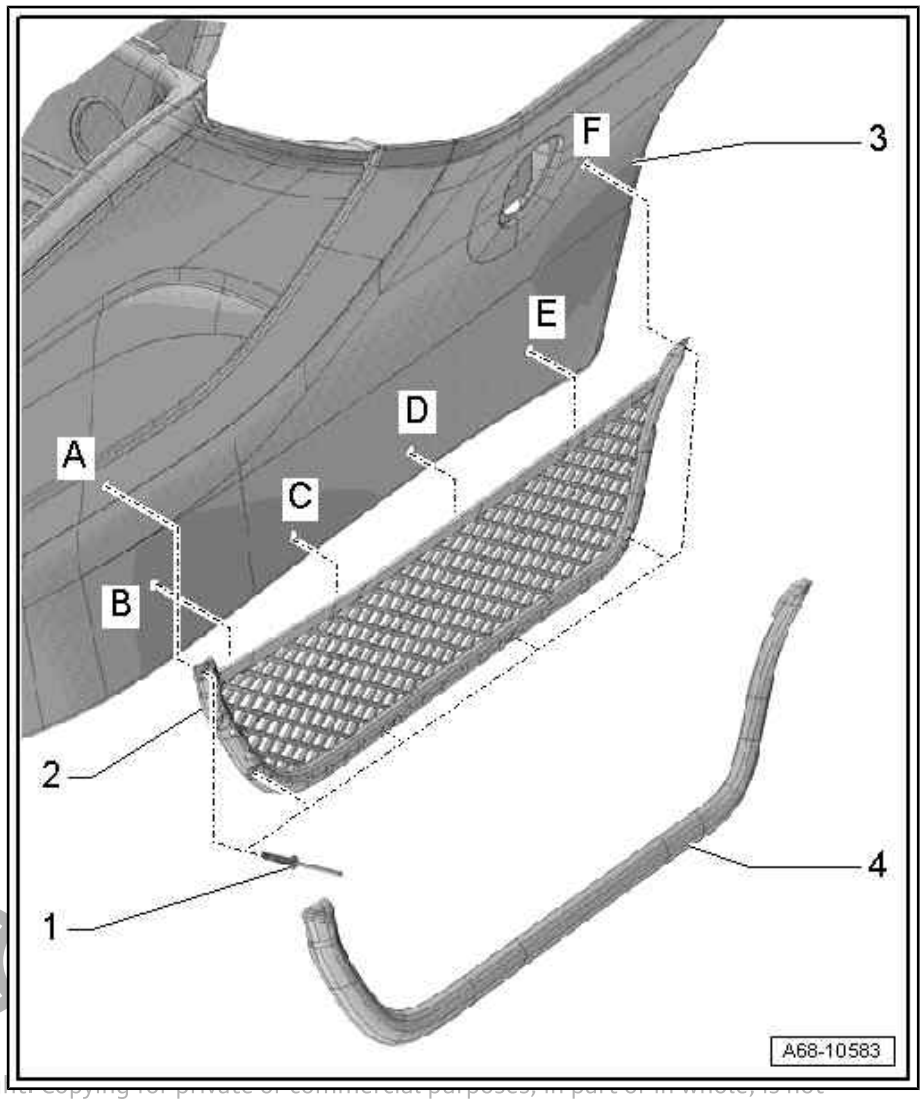
- ❑ Attached to centre console (passenger side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 47

3 - Centre console

- ❑ Holes -A … F- (∅ 3.5 mm) must be drilled
- ❑ Fitting storage net in new centre console ⇒ page 49

4 - Trim for storage net

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.6.2 Removing and installing storage net”, page 47
- ❑ Engage trim at top of frame and press on so that it engages audibly

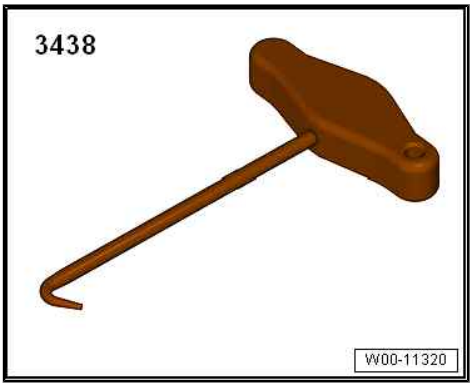


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)

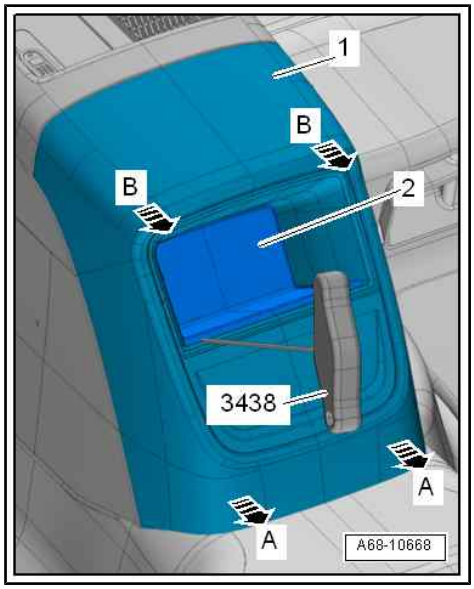
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hook - 3438-



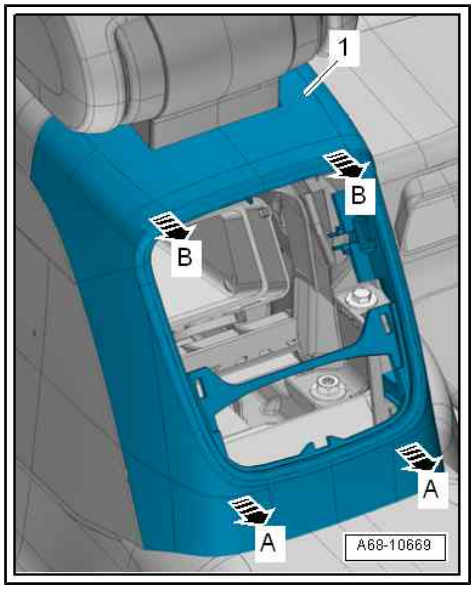
Removing - vehicles with basic equipment

– Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.
– Take out lining mat -2-.
– Engage hook - 3438- in trim.
– Starting at bottom, pull trim -1- towards rear out of centre console -arrows A-.
– Pull trim out of centre console at top -arrow B- and detach.



Removing - vehicles with optional equipment

– Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.
– Remove storage compartment (rear) in centre console ⇒ page 51 .
– Reach underneath trim -1- with your hand and pull it towards rear out of centre console -arrows A-.
– Pull trim out of centre console at top -arrow B- and detach.



Installing

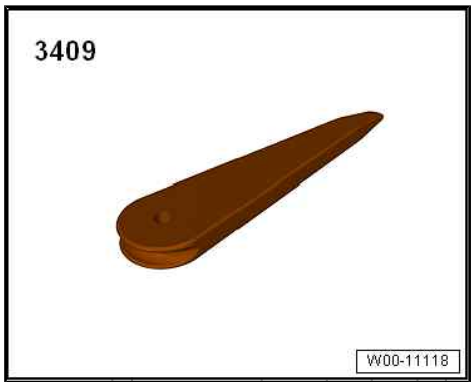
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 36

3.3 Removing and installing coin holder

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

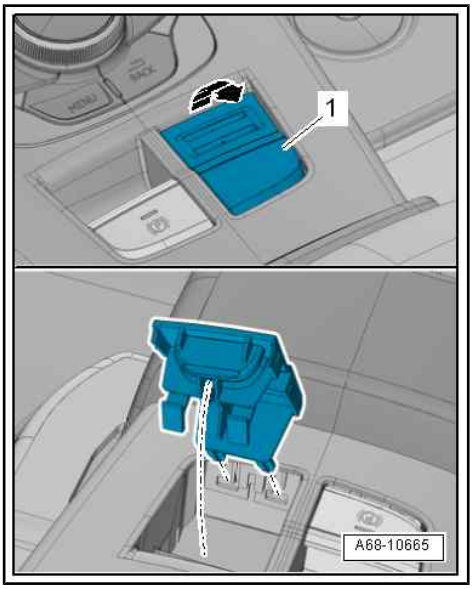
– Prise coin holder -1- off centre console -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Pull coin holder forwards out of centre console and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

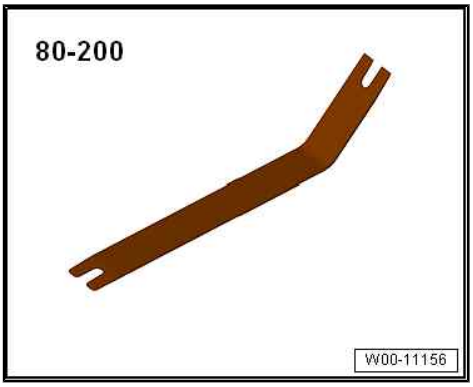
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 36



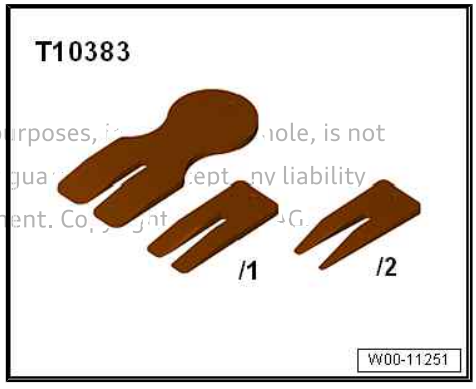
3.4 Removing and installing centre console insert

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

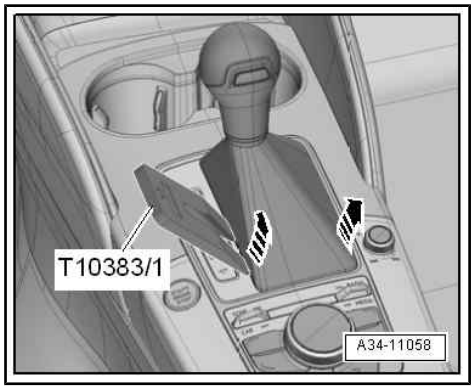
Removing

– Pull up parking brake button to apply electromechanical parking brake.

– Equipment version with selector lever: Move selector lever to “D/S”.

– Switch off ignition.

– Carefully prise selector lever/gear lever boot off centre console using wedge -T10383/1- -arrow- and fold up.



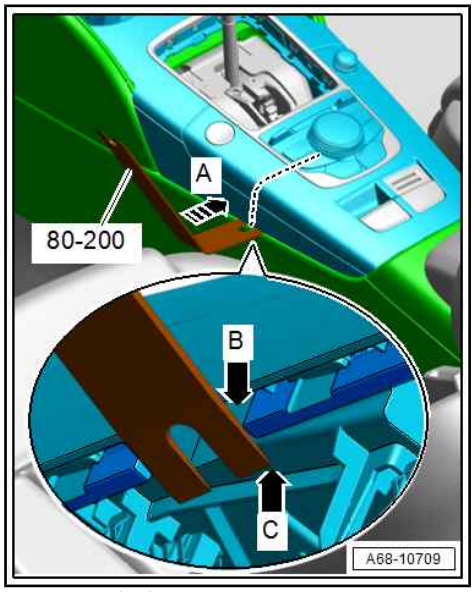
– Equipment version with selector lever: Remove selector lever position display - Y26- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing selector lever position display - Y26- .

– Remove trim panel for centre console ⇒ page 44 .

– Remove lining mat (front) in centre console ⇒ Item 8 (page 37) .

Note

There is a cut-out -arrow B- on the inside of the insert for centre console approximately at the height of the MMI rotary pushbutton; insert removal lever - 80-200- into this cut-out from above at a slight angle -arrow A- so that -80-200- can then be applied at the bottom edge of the insert for centre console -arrow C-.



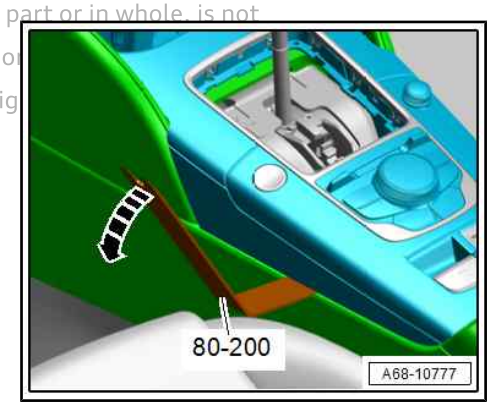
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Apply removal lever - 80-200- at insert for centre console as described and prise insert out of fasteners -arrow-.

– Repeat procedure on opposite side.

– Reach beneath insert for centre console and carefully lift it out of centre console.

– Pull insert for centre console towards rear, lift it out over gear lever/selector lever and unplug electrical connectors.



Installing

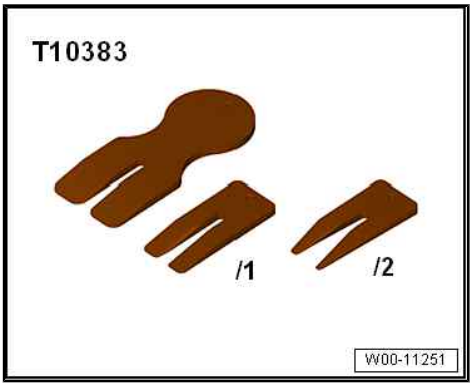
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 36

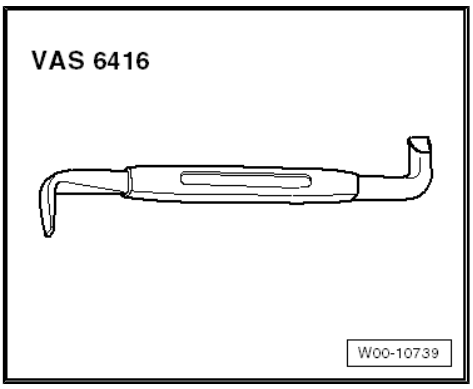
3.5 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-



- Angled screwdriver - VAS 6416-



Removing

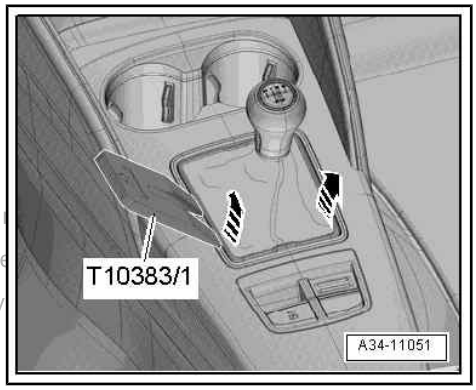
– Pull up parking brake button to apply electromechanical parking brake.

– Equipment version with selector lever: Move selector lever to “D/S”.

– Switch off ignition.

– Carefully prise selector lever/gear lever boot off centre console using wedge -T10383/1- -arrow- and fold up.

– Equipment version with selector lever: Remove selector lever position display - Y26- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing selector lever position display - Y26- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
part is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
the correctness and completeness of information in this document. Copy

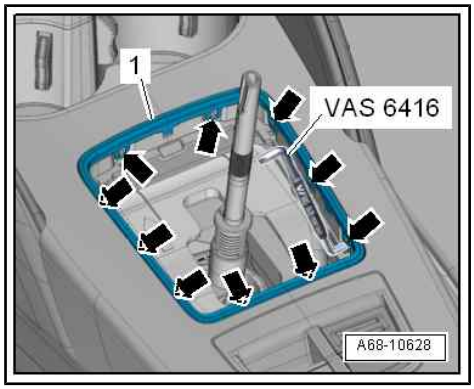
Caution

Risk of damage to trim panel.

- ***Proceed very carefully when removing and installing as the fasteners can be damaged quite easily.***

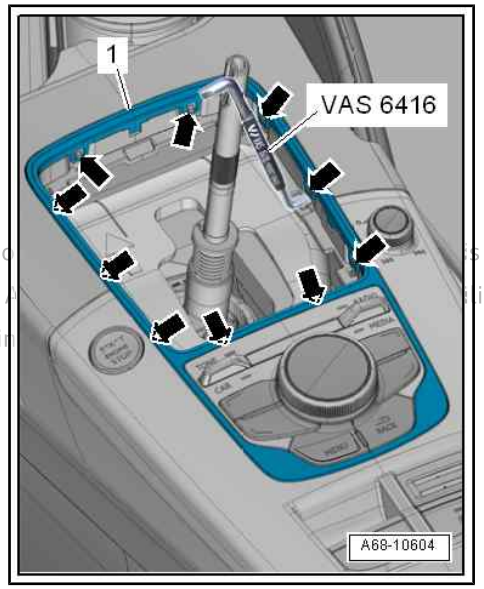
Basic equipment:

– Carefully release trim panel -1- from fasteners -arrows- using angled screwdriver - VAS 6416- and lift off trim panel.



Optional equipment:

– Carefully release trim panel -1- from fasteners -arrows- using angled screwdriver - VAS 6416- and lift off trim panel.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 36

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI ... ility with respect to the correctness of information i...

3.6 Removing and installing centre console

⇒ “3.6.1 Removing and installing centre console”, page 46

⇒ “3.6.2 Removing and installing storage net”, page 47

⇒ “3.6.3 Fitting storage net in new centre console”, page 49

3.6.1 Removing and installing centre console

Removing

– Remove centre console insert ⇒ page 43 .

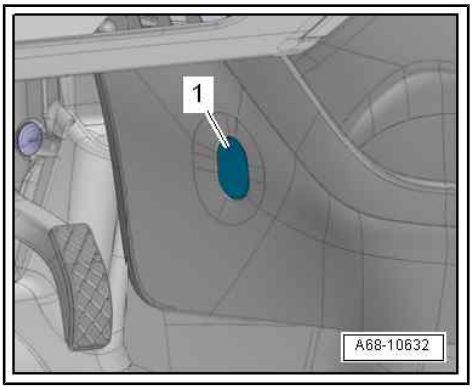
– Remove centre console trim (rear) ⇒ page 41 .

– Equipment version with vent: Remove air duct for rear vent ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .

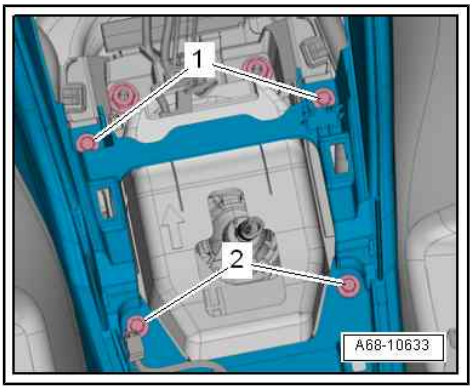
– Equipment version with connection for external audio sources: Remove USB connection holder - R193- / connection for external audio sources - R199- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Connection for external multimedia devices .

– Unplug electrical connectors.

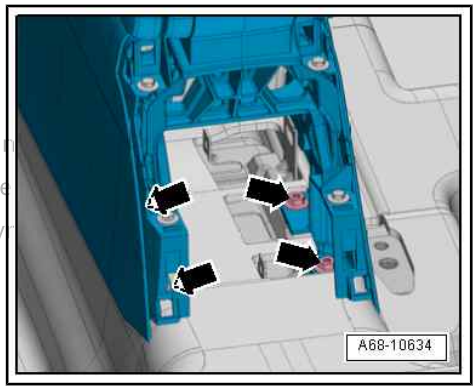
– Prise off cap -1- with a screwdriver.
– Unscrew bolt for centre console (underneath cap).



– Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- (centre).



– Remove bolts -arrows-.



Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee

Equipment version without centre armrest: 2 bolts.

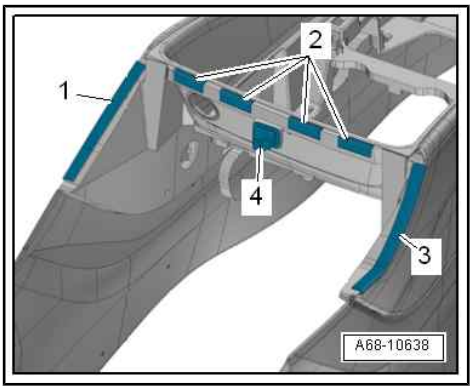
– Lift centre console, pull it out of dash panel towards rear and remove by lifting it over selector lever/gear lever.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure that all felt strips -1, 2 and 3- are correctly fitted at sides and top, and that cap -4- is fitted at front on centring pin.
– Fit centre console in position and guide electrical connectors through opening in centre console.

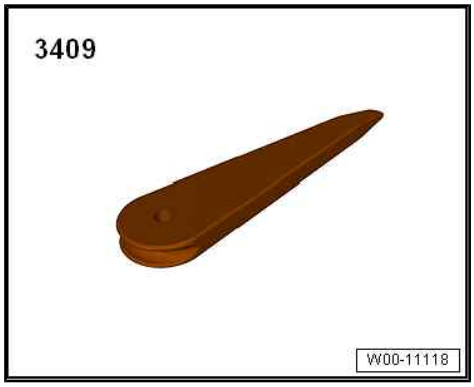
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 36



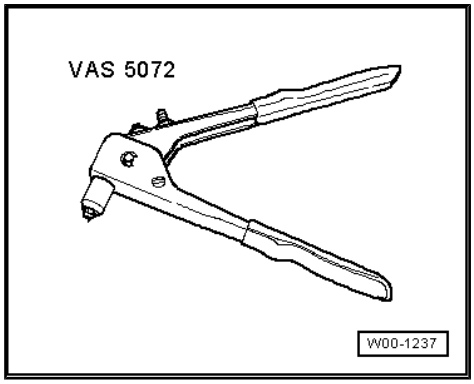
3.6.2 Removing and installing storage net

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072A-



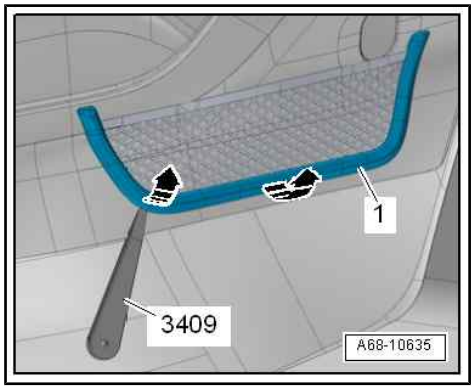
- Drill
- Drill bit, ∅ 3.5 mm
- Safety goggles

Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 46 .

– Starting at bottom, unclip trim -1- -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Disengage trim at top of frame and detach.



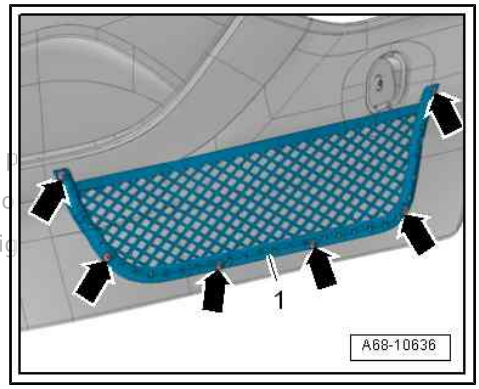
WARNING

Risk of eye injuries!

- ***Put on safety goggles.***

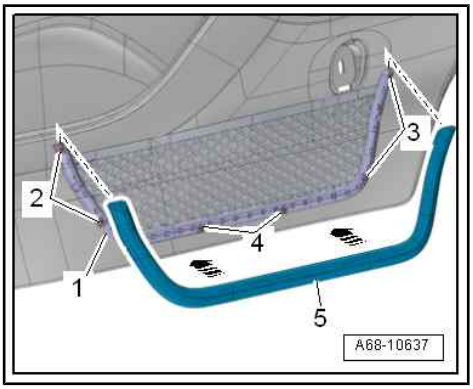
– Carefully drill out pop rivets -arrows- using ∅ 3.5 mm bit.

– Detach frame -1- with storage net.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee c
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyri

Installing



– Starting in centre, rivet frame -1- with storage net to centre console -2, 3, 4- using pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072A- .

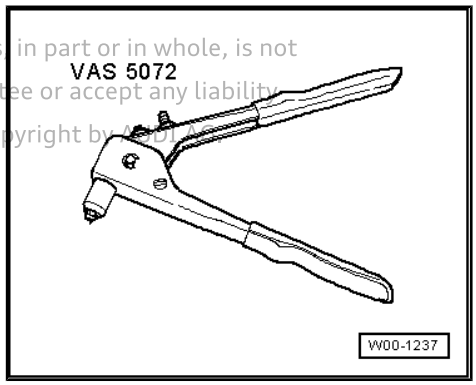
– Engage trim -5- at top of frame and press on so that it engages audibly -arrows-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 36

3.6.3 Fitting storage net in new centre console

Special tools and workshop equipment required



♦ Pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072A-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Drill (angle drill or angled drill attachment)

♦ Drill bit, ∅ 3.5 mm

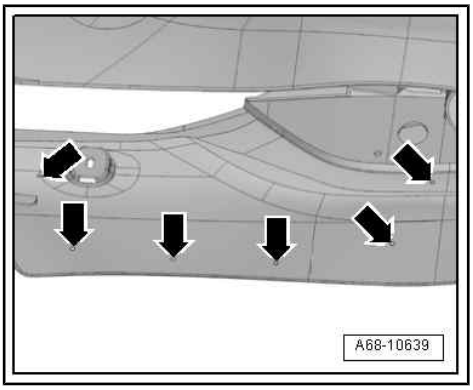
♦ Safety goggles

Note

♦ *The centre console does not include the storage net when it is supplied as a genuine replacement part.*

♦ *For the equipment version with a storage net, the storage net must be fitted in the new centre console as described below.*

Procedure



– Set down centre console on a stable, clean surface.

WARNING

Risk of eye injuries!

♦ ***Put on safety goggles.***

– Punch holes (∅ approx. 3.5 mm) according to embossing -arrows- on inside of centre console, as shown in illustration.

– Install storage net ⇒ page 47 .

– Install centre console ⇒ page 46 .

3.7 Removing and installing brackets for centre console

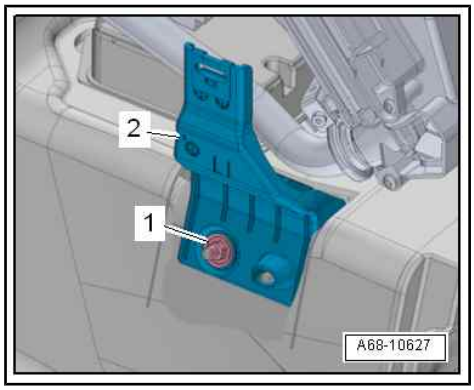
Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 46 .

Bracket (front) for centre console:

– Press floor covering to side in vicinity of bolted connection and unscrew nut -1-.

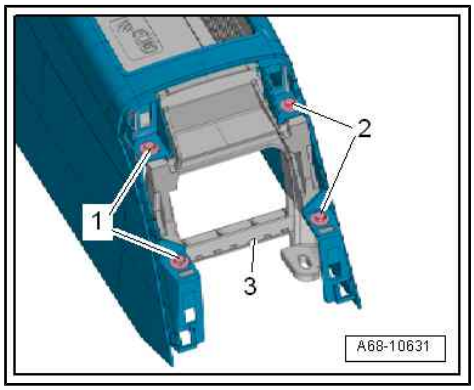
– Detach bracket -2- for centre console.



Bracket (rear) for centre console:

– Remove bolts -1, 2-.

– Take bracket -3- out of centre console.

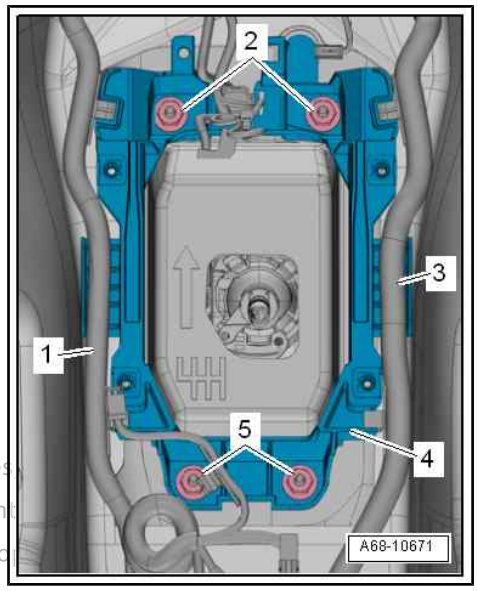


Mounting bracket for centre console:

– Unclip electrical wiring harnesses -1 and 3- from mounting bracket.

– Unplug electrical connectors and move clear.

– Unscrew nuts -2 and 5- and detach mounting bracket -4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 36

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

3.8 Removing and installing storage compartment in centre console (front)

⇒ “3.8.1 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (front)”, page 51

⇒ “3.8.2 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (rear)”, page 51

⇒ “3.8.3 Making opening for cigarette lighter/socket in storage compartment”, page 52

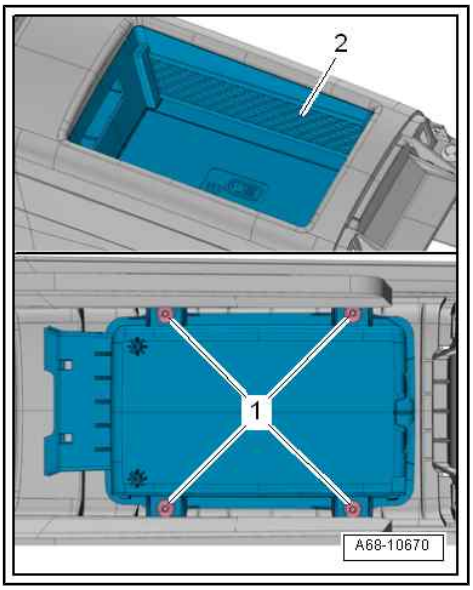
3.8.1 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (front)

Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 46 .

– Equipment version with telephone bracket: Remove telephone bracket - R126- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Telephone system; Overview of fitting locations - telephone system .

– Remove bolts -1- and detach storage compartment -2- downwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

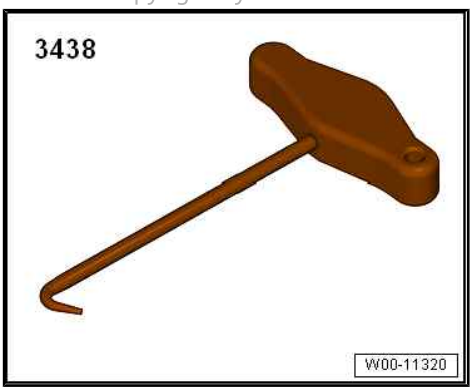
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 36

3.8.2 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (rear)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hook - 3438-



Removing

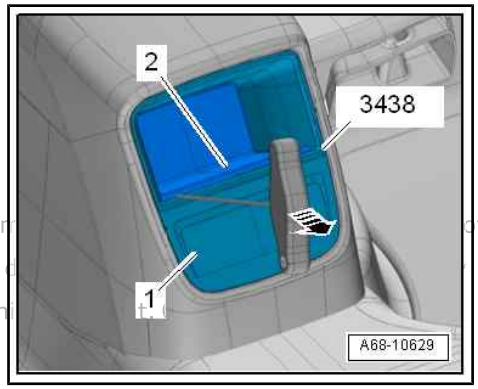
– Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.

– Take out lining mat -2-.

– Engage hook - 3438- in storage compartment.

– Pull storage compartment -1- towards rear out of centre console -arrow-.

– Equipment version with cigarette lighter/socket: Unplug electrical connector.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
with respect to the correctness of information in th

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 36

3.8.3 Making opening for cigarette lighter/ socket in storage compartment

Note

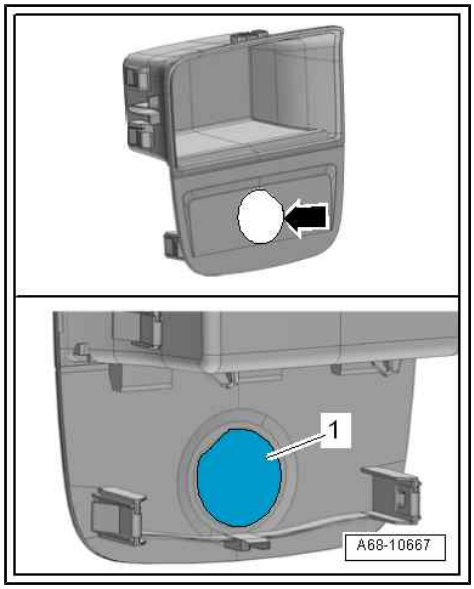
- *When it is supplied as a replacement part, the storage compartment does not have an opening for the cigarette lighter/ socket.*
- *For the equipment version with cigarette lighter/socket, the opening must be made as described below.*

Procedure

– Make opening -arrow- according to embossing -1- on reverse side of storage compartment, as shown in illustration.

– Install cigarette lighter/socket ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Cigarette lighter, socket; Exploded view - cigarette lighter, 12 V socket .

– Install storage compartment (rear) in centre console ⇒ page 51 .



4 Centre armrest (front)

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)”, page 53

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)”, page 53

⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)”, page 55

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)

1 - Cover

- ❑ For centre armrest (top section)
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

2 - Centre armrest (top section)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 53

3 - Centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 55

4 - Bolt

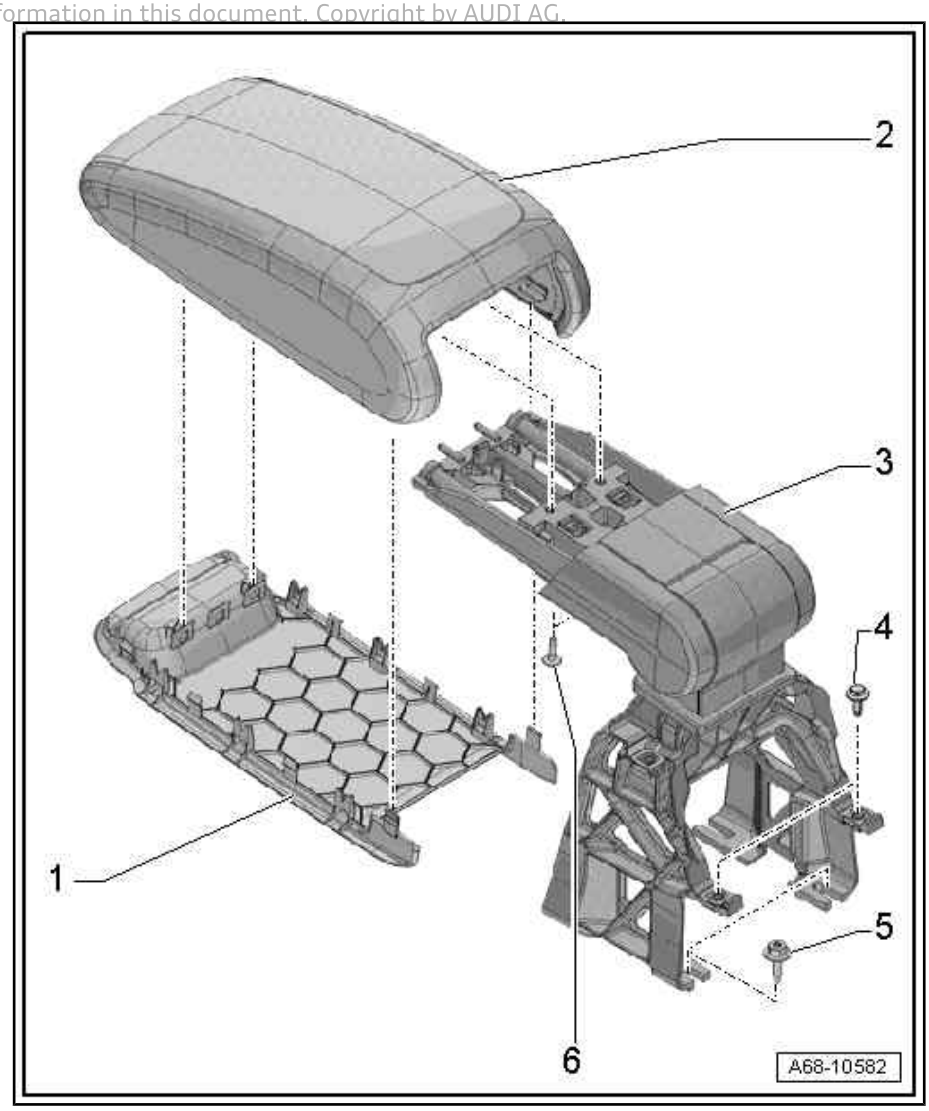
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Bolt

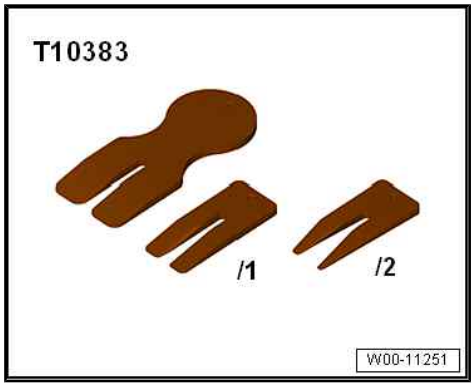
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm



4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

– Starting at side, unclip cover -1- from centre armrest (top section) -arrows- using wedge -T10383/1- .



– Unscrew bolts -1- and lift off centre armrest (top section) -2- -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)”, page 53

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)

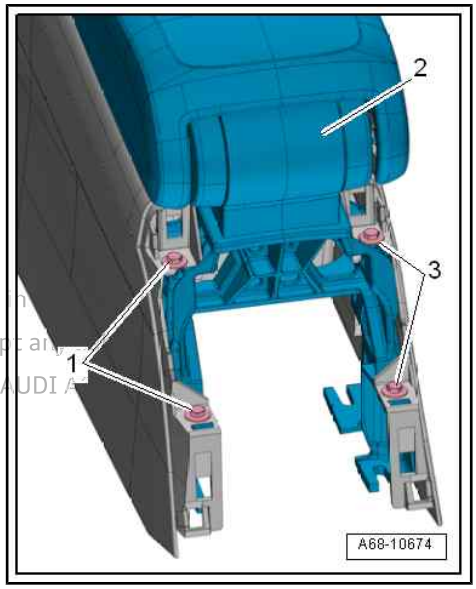
Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 46 .

– Remove bolts -1, 3-.

– Open centre armrest (top section).

– Press centre console slightly outwards at sides and off centre armrest, and at the same time take out centre armrest -2- downwards.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any
with regard to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI A

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)”, page 53

5 Interior mirror

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror”, page 56

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror”, page 57

⇒ “5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off”, page 59

⇒ “5.4 Switching compass display on and off”, page 60

⇒ “5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone”, page 60

⇒ “5.6 Calibrating digital compass”, page 61

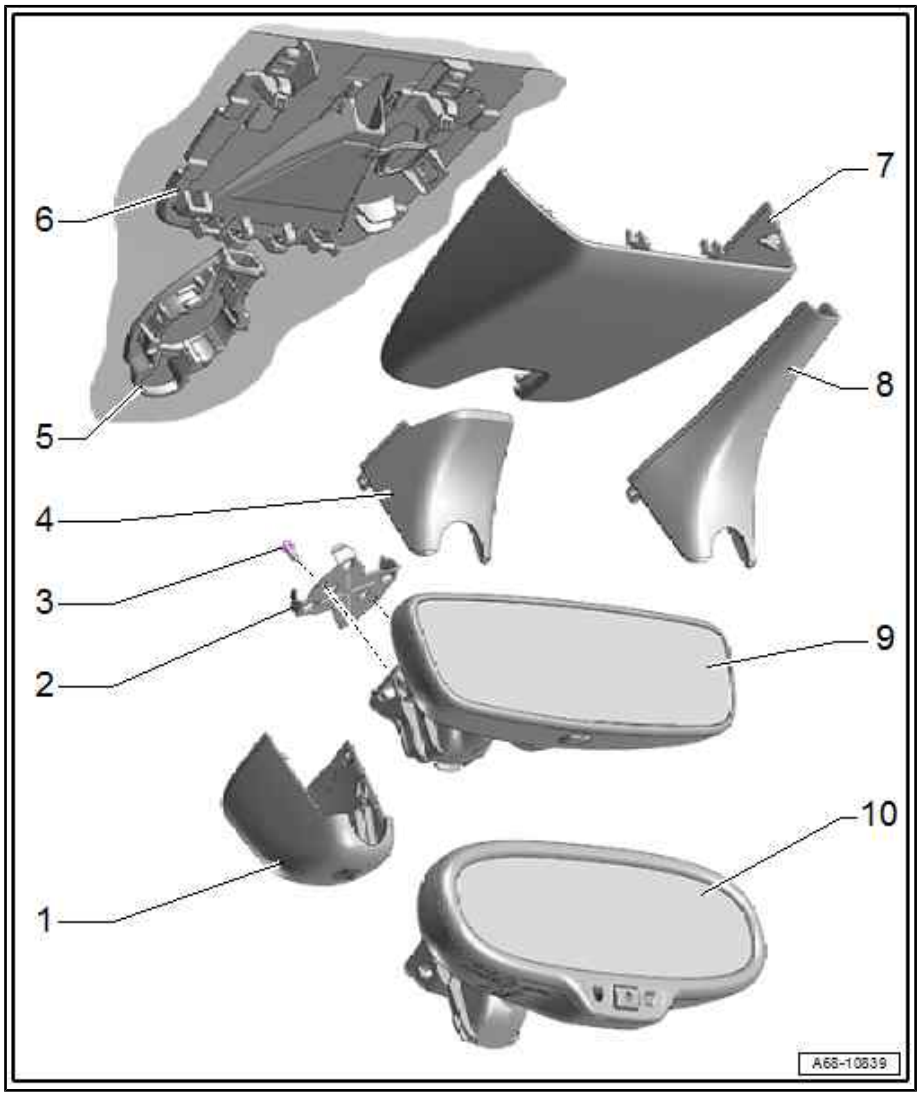
⇒ “5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles”, page 62

⇒ “5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map”, page 62

⇒ “5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror”, page 68

Audi and Volkswagen do not give any warranty relating to this document, its contents or any omissions. Reproduction or disclosure to third parties of this document or any part thereof, for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror



1 - Cover (front)
- ❑ For mirror base

2 - Retaining clip
- ❑ For interior mirror
- ❑ Renew after removing interior mirror

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

4 - Cover (rear)
- ❑ For mirror base
- ❑ For interior mirror with optional equipment
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Retaining plate
- ❑ For interior mirror
- ❑ Bonded to windscreen

6 - Retaining plate
- ❑ For sensors control unit
- ❑ Bonded to windscreen

7 - Cover
- ❑ For sensors control unit
- ❑ For interior mirror with optional equipment
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

8 - Cover (rear)
- ❑ For mirror base
- ❑ For interior mirror without optional equipment
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

9 - Interior mirror - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards

- ❑ Depending on equipment version: with integrated main beam assist control unit - J844-
- ❑ Main beam assist control unit - J844- cannot be renewed individually. Renew interior mirror if defective
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 57
- ❑ Position at 20° angle to installation position and turn clockwise as far as stop
- ❑ Renew retaining clip after removing

10 - Interior mirror - vehicles up to model year 2016

- ❑ Depending on equipment version: with integrated main beam assist control unit - J844-
- ❑ Main beam assist control unit - J844- cannot be renewed individually. Renew interior mirror if defective
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 57
- ❑ Position at 20° angle to installation position and turn clockwise as far as stop
- ❑ Renew retaining clip after removing

5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Medium hard clip release lever from scraper set - VAS 6845-

Removing

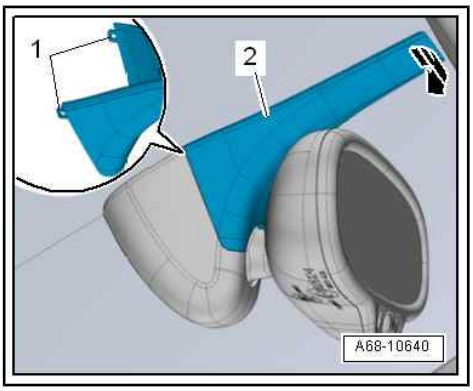
WARNING

- ♦ *Note safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror ⇒ page 14*

– Swivel interior mirror down as far as possible (approx. 25°).

– Pull cover -2- at rear downwards -arrow-, and at the same time release fasteners -1- with a screwdriver.

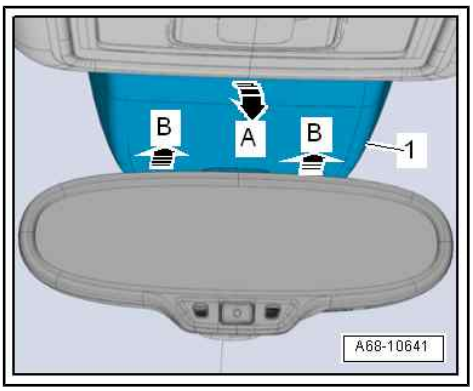
– Disengage cover at mirror base and detach.



Interior mirror with optional equipment:

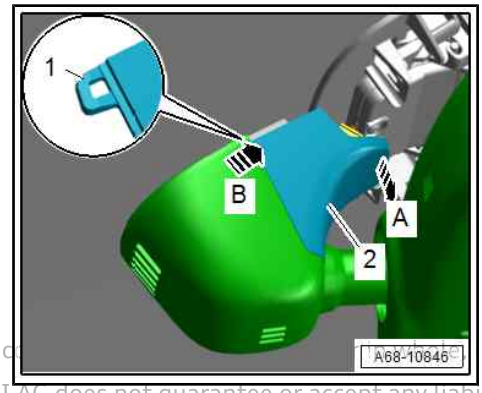
– Using medium hard clip release lever, unclip cover -1- at rear from moulded headliner and pull it downwards -arrow A-.

– Disengage cover at front from retaining plate for front camera -arrows B- and pull cover out towards rear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

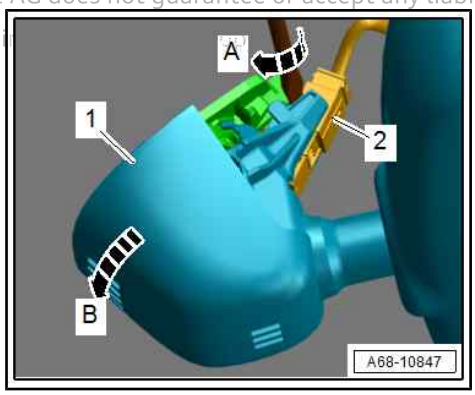
– Pull cover -2- downwards at rear -arrow A-, and at the same time release fasteners -1- by pressing firmly on cover -arrow B-.
– Disengage cover at mirror base and detach.



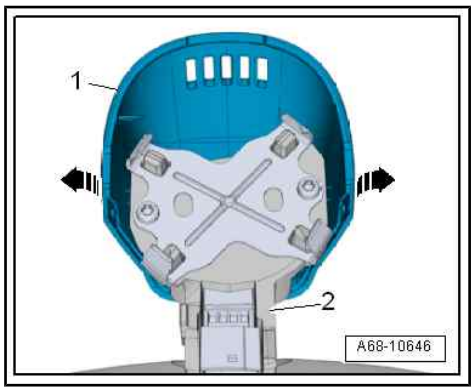
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information ...

All mirror versions (continued):

– Insert screwdriver between retainer and mirror base.
– Carefully rotate screwdriver about its own axis -arrow A- until retaining tab is disengaged from retainer.
– At the same time turn mirror base -1- as far as it will go in anti-clockwise direction -arrow B-.
– Detach interior mirror from retainer and unplug electrical connector -2-.



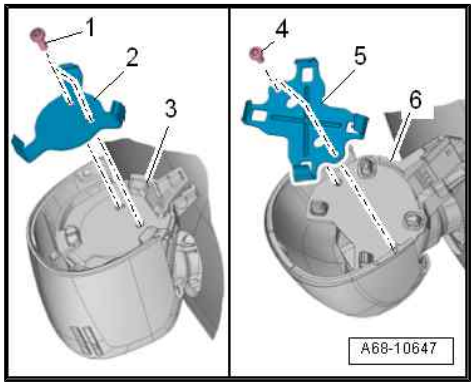
– Carefully disengage retaining tabs -arrows- and pull cover -1- at front downwards out of guide elements on interior mirror base -2-.



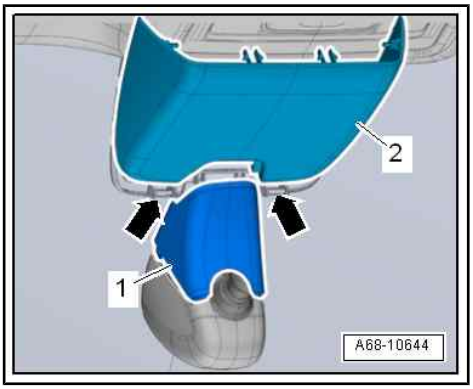
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Renew retaining clip -2- or -5- after removing interior mirror; for allocation see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
– Fit interior mirror at 30° angle to installation position.
– Turn interior mirror clockwise as far as it will go.



Interior mirror with optional equipment:



– Position both covers simultaneously and clip them in.
– To do so, engage cover -1- for mirror base loosely at mirror base.
– Guide cover -2- for front camera over cover for mirror base and engage hooks in retaining plate -arrows-.

Note

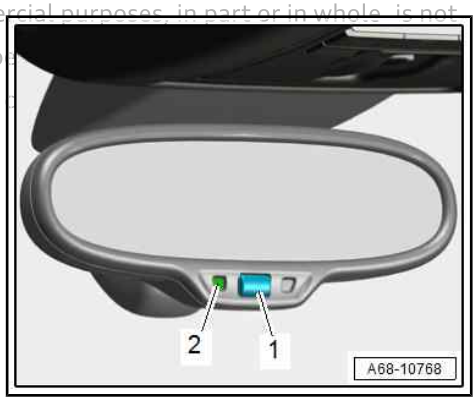
If renewing the interior mirror and the integrated main beam assist control unit - J844- , select the function "Replace control unit" of the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, `Diagnosis`.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror", page 56

5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this

Vehicles up to model year 2016:

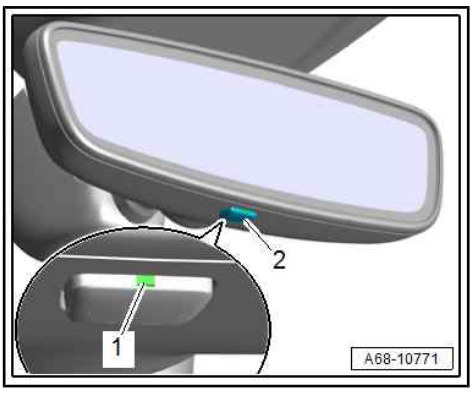


– Press button -1- briefly (up to 3 seconds) to switch automatic anti-dazzle function on or off.

  Automatic anti-dazzle function "On": Indicator lamp -2- lights up.

  Automatic anti-dazzle function "Off": Indicator lamp -2- goes out.

Vehicles from model year 2017 onwards:



– Press button -2- briefly (up to 3 seconds) to switch automatic anti-dazzle function on or off.

  Automatic anti-dazzle function "On": Indicator lamp -1- lights up.

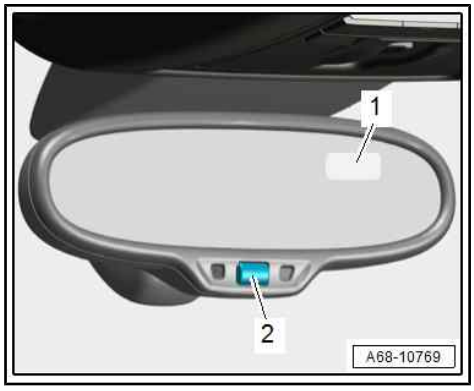
  Automatic anti-dazzle function "Off": Indicator lamp -1- goes out.

All mirror versions (continued):

- The automatic anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on.
- If you deactivate the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror this will also deactivate the anti-dazzle function for the exterior mirrors.
- When in anti-dazzle mode, the mirror will become lighter as soon as the interior light is switched on or reverse gear is engaged.
- The automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror can only function correctly if the rear sun blind is retracted.

5.4 Switching compass display on and off

Vehicles up to model year 2016:

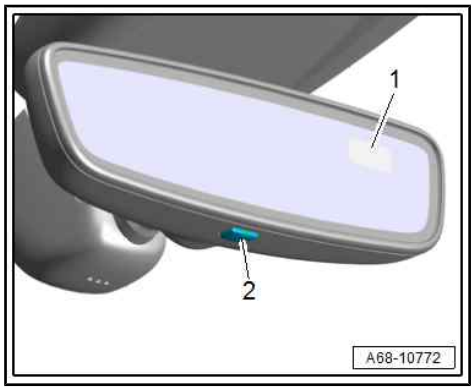


– Press button -2- for 3 to 6 seconds. The compass display -1- will be switched “on” or “off”.

  Compass display “on” - direction is indicated.

  Compass display “off” - direction is not indicated.

Vehicles from model year 2017 onwards:



– Press button -2- for 3 to 6 seconds. The compass display -1- will be switched “on” or “off”.

  Compass display “on” - direction is indicated.

  Compass display “off” - direction is not indicated.

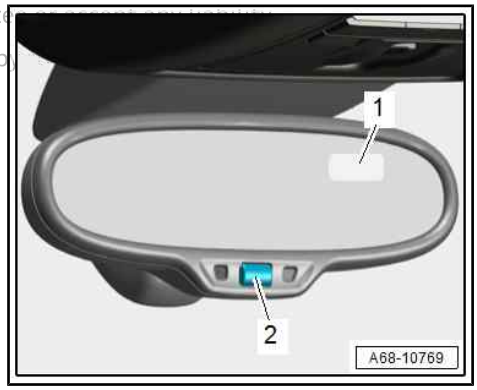
5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone

It is necessary to set the magnetic deflection zone if:

- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.
- You have reached a distance more than two zones away from the pre-set reference zone after travelling long distances; you should then set a different magnetic deflection zone.

Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

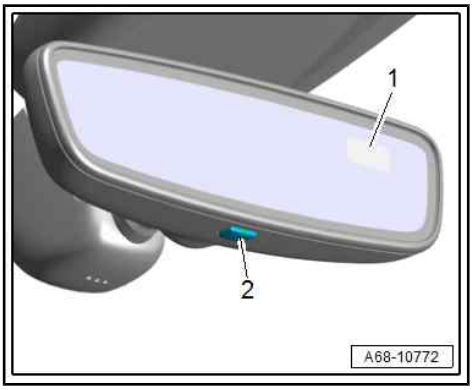
Setting magnetic deflection zone - vehicles up to model year 2016:



– Press and hold button -2- for 6 to 9 seconds until compass display shows “Z” and a number for the magnetic deflection zone.

– Press the button repeatedly until the number of the desired magnetic deflection zone appears.

Setting magnetic deflection zone - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards:



– Press and hold button -2- for 6 to 9 seconds until compass display shows “Z” and a number for the magnetic deflection zone.

– Press the button repeatedly until the number of the desired magnetic deflection zone appears.

All mirror versions (continued):

– Select applicable deflection zone from the world map:

♦ Europe ⇒ page 62

♦ North America ⇒ page 63

♦ South America ⇒ page 64

♦ Asia ⇒ page 65

♦ Africa ⇒ page 66

♦ Australia ⇒ page 67

After a few seconds the compass display will switch from the magnetic deflection zone to the current direction/point of the compass.

– Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 60 after setting the magnetic deflection zone.

5.6 Calibrating digital compass

It is necessary to calibrate the digital compass if:

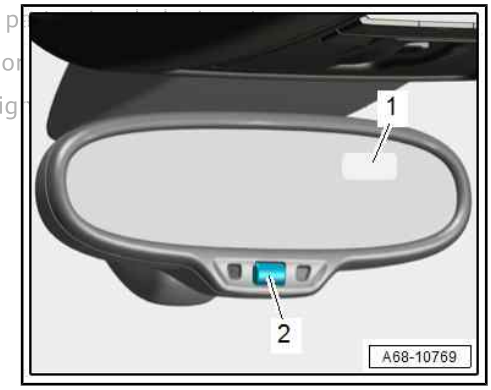
- The directions the digital compass shows are inaccurate.
- The compass display shows a “C” instead of a point of the compass, or if the display remains blank.
- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.

In exceptional circumstances, the digital compass may also have to be calibrated, for example if:

- The vehicle battery is reconnected after it has been disconnected for a long period.
- A new audio system or audio system components has/have been fitted.

...ses, in p... ...thorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ... ...with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrigh...

Calibrating digital compass - vehicles up to model year 2016:



– Switch on ignition.

– Compass display -1- should show “C”.

– If display does not show “C”, press and hold button -2- for 9 to 12 seconds until letter “C” appears in compass display.

Calibrating digital compass - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards:

– Switch on ignition.

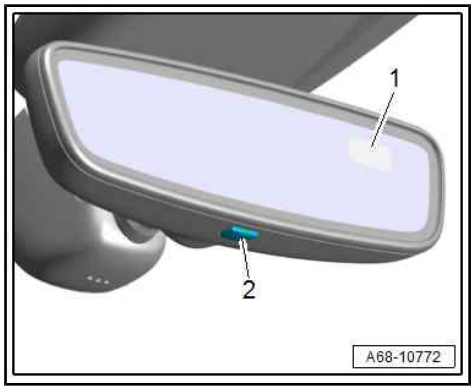
• Compass display -1- should show “C”.

– If display does not show “C”, press and hold button -2- for 9 to 12 seconds until letter “C” appears in compass display.

All mirror versions (continued):

– Drive the vehicle in a circle two or three times at a speed of approx. 10 km/h (5 mph) until a direction is indicated on the compass display.

– After completing the calibration, re-activate the automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror ⇒ page 59 .



5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles

It is necessary to adjust the mirror to right-hand or left-hand drive if:

• A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.

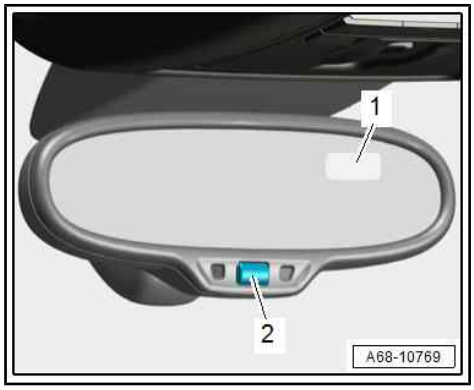
Vehicles up to model year 2016:

– Press and hold button -2- for 12 to 15 seconds until display shows “L” (for left-hand drive vehicles) or “A” (for right-hand drive vehicles).

– Press the button again briefly to change the setting for right-hand or left-hand drive.

– After a short while, the display will automatically show “C” (for calibration). The digital compass must now be calibrated ⇒ page 61 .

– Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 59 after adjusting the mirror for right-hand or left-hand drive.



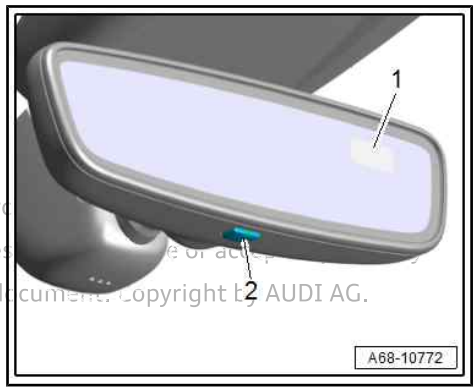
Vehicles from model year 2017 onwards:

– Press and hold button -2- for 12 to 15 seconds until display shows “L” (for left-hand drive vehicles) or “A” (for right-hand drive vehicles).

– Press the button again briefly to change the setting for right-hand or left-hand drive.

– After a short while, the display will automatically show “C” (for calibration). The digital compass must now be calibrated ⇒ page 61 .

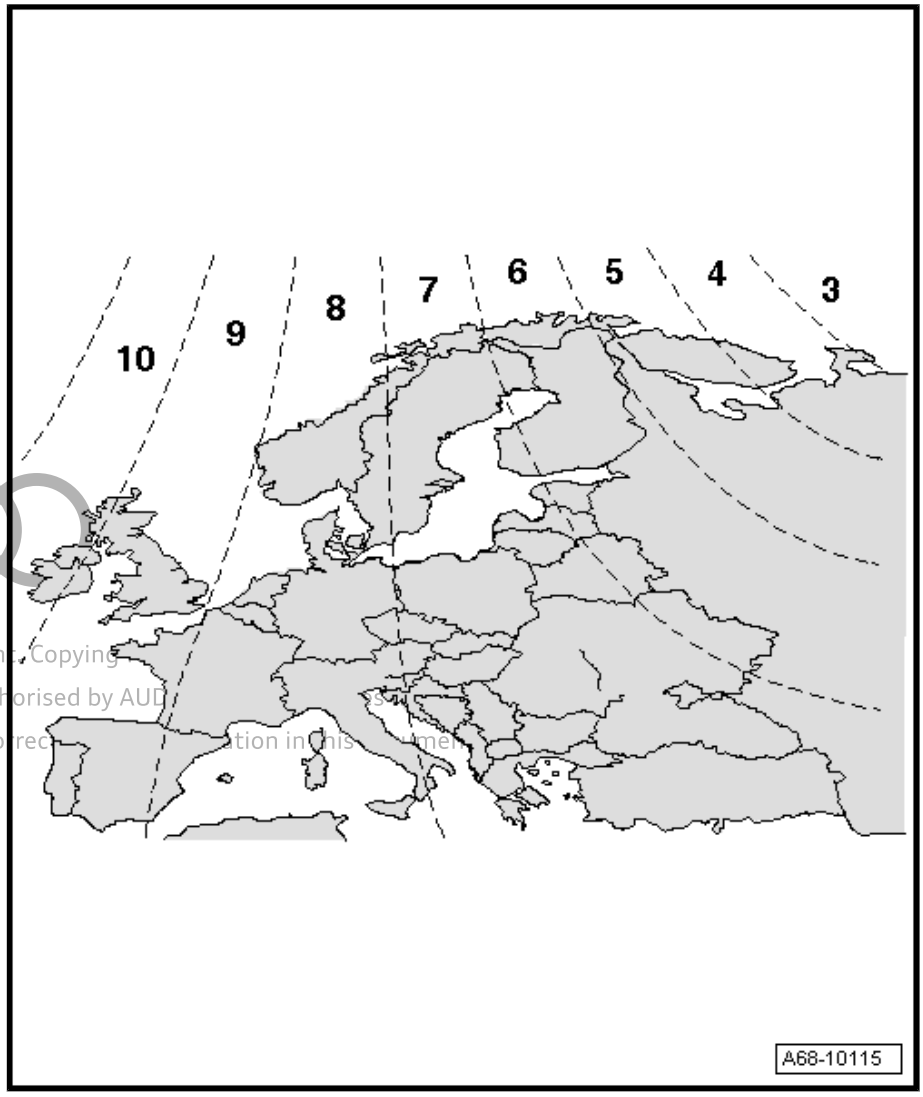
– Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 59 after adjusting the mirror for right-hand or left-hand drive.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc
Distributed unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this d
Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map

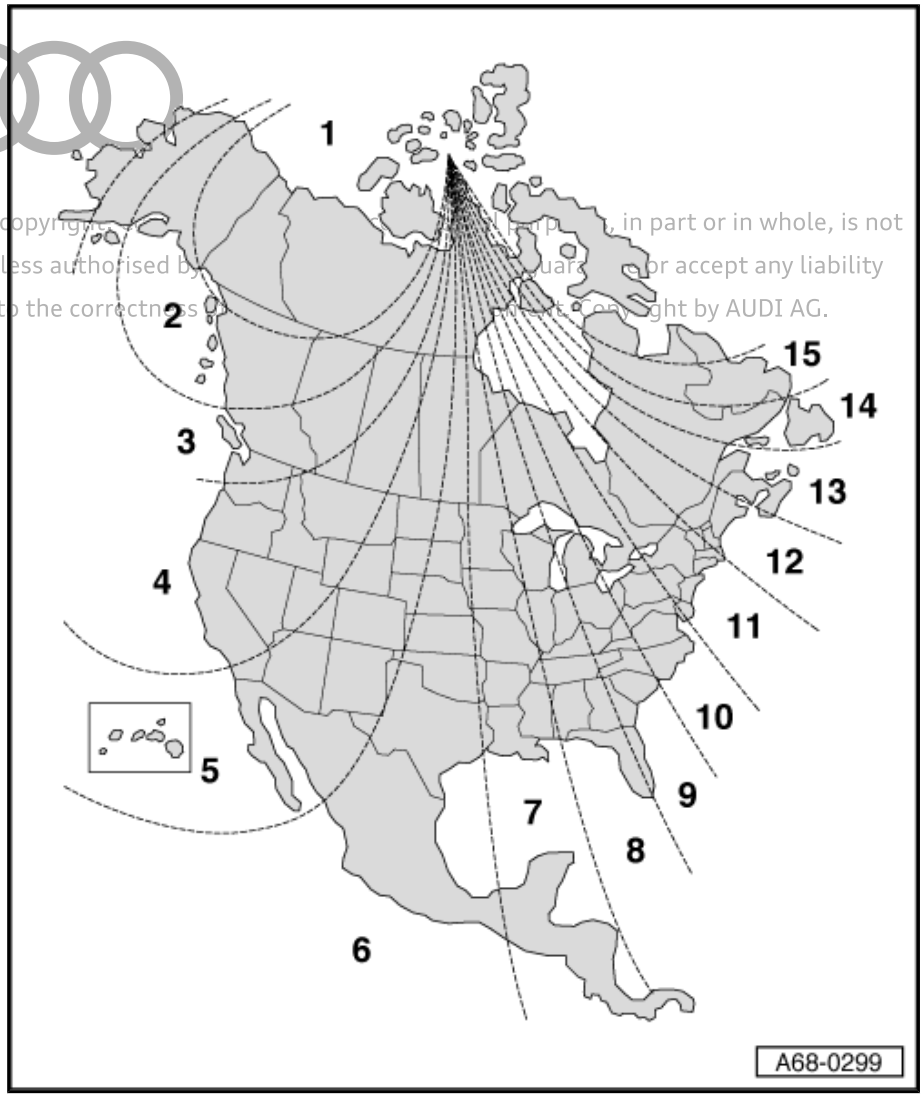
Europe



Protected by copyright. Copying
permitted unless authorised by AUD
with respect to the co rec tion in this me

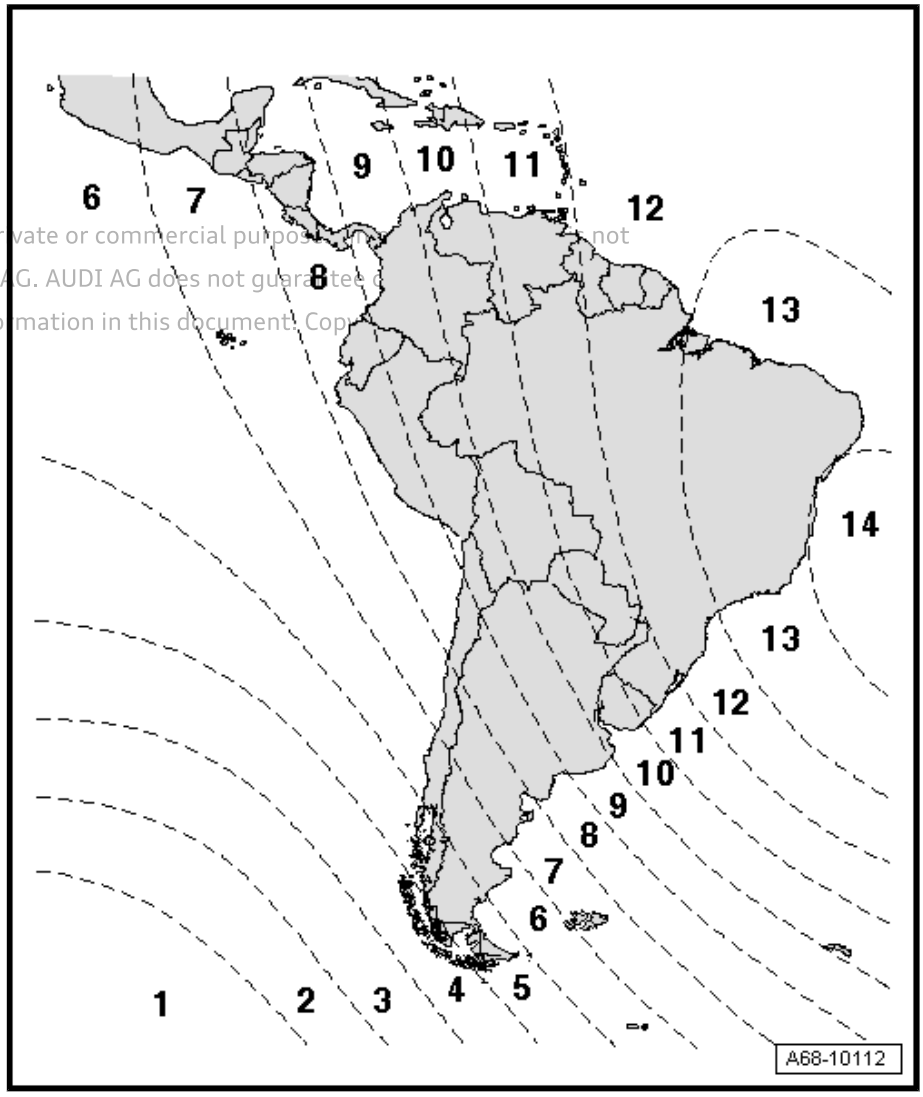
North America

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

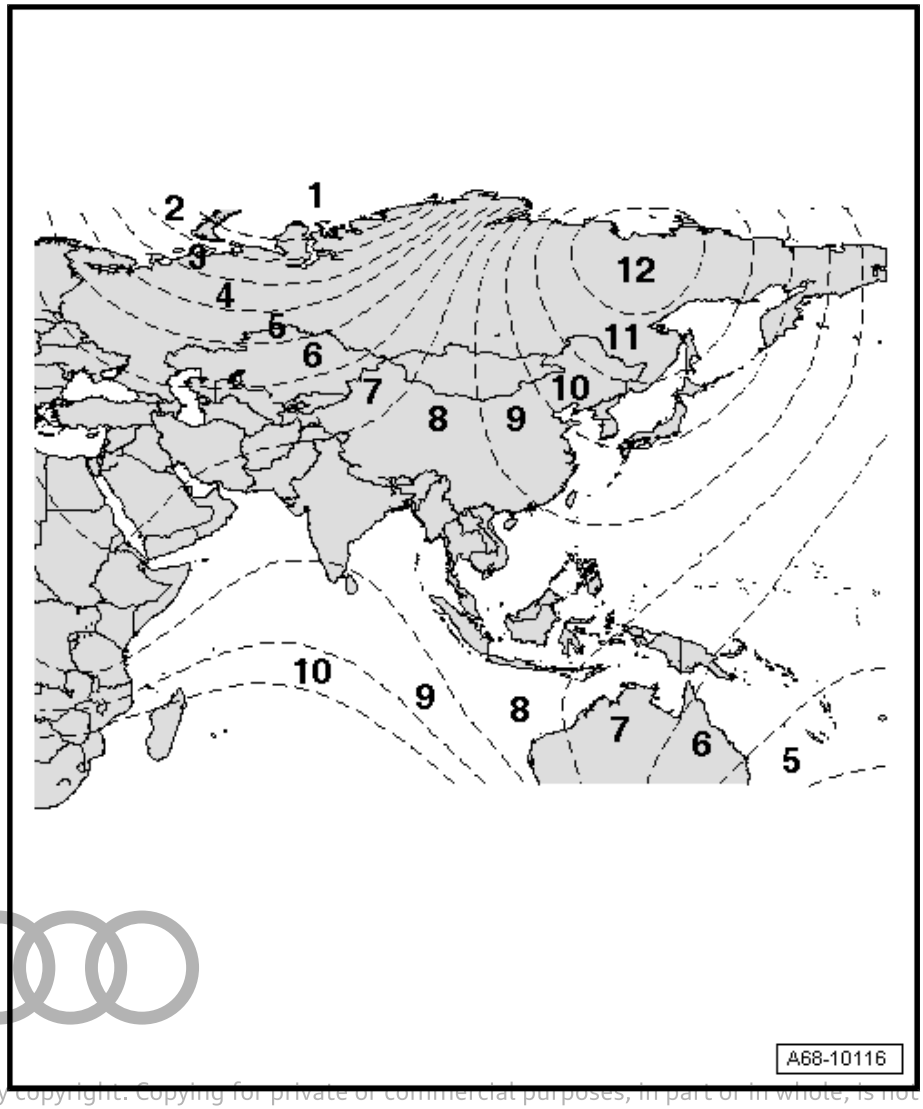


South America

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

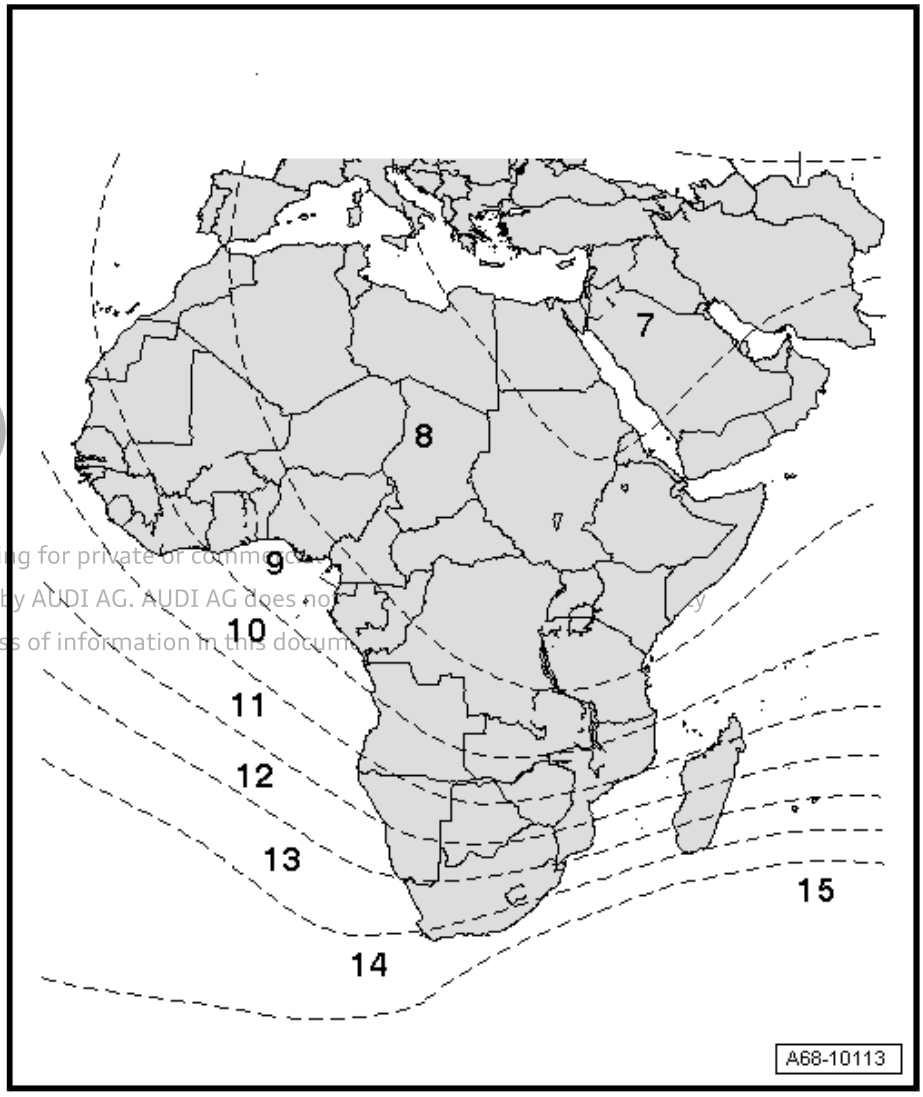


Asia



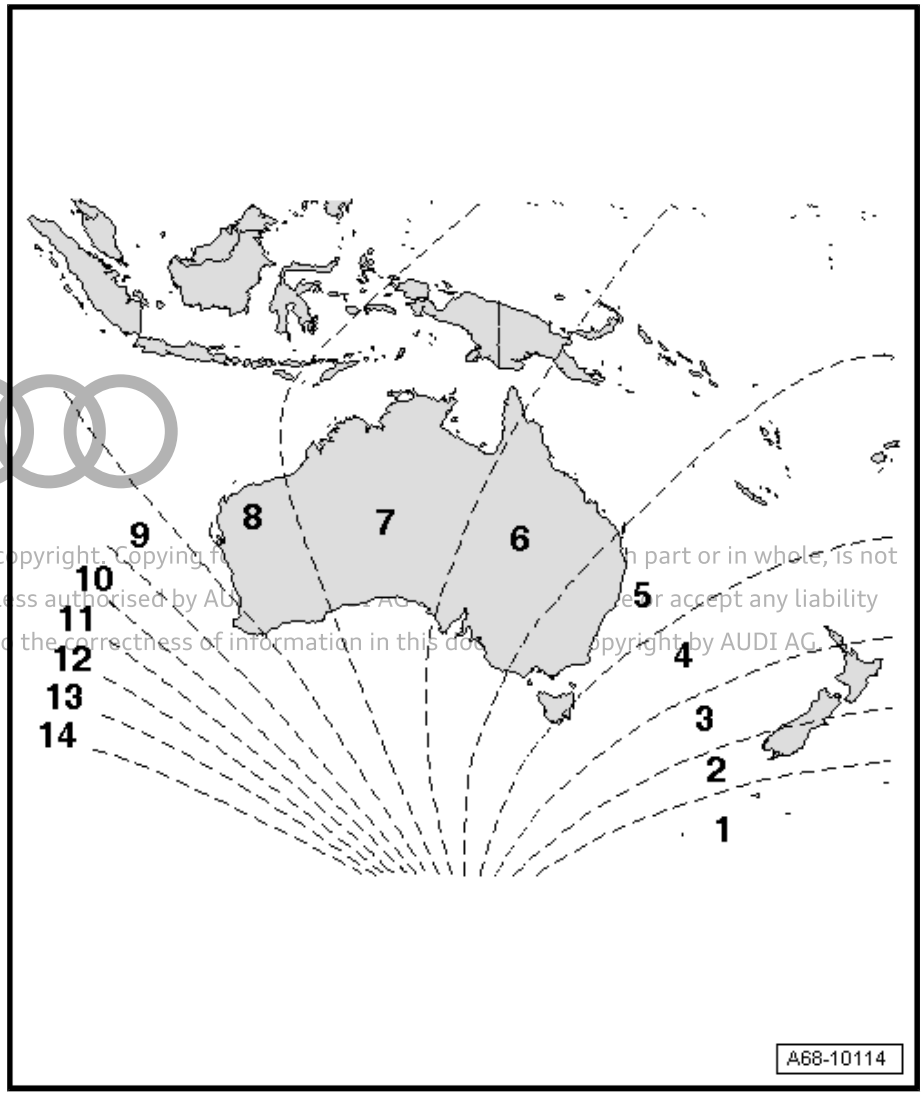
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Africa



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Australia



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

The test can only be carried out if the following conditions are met:

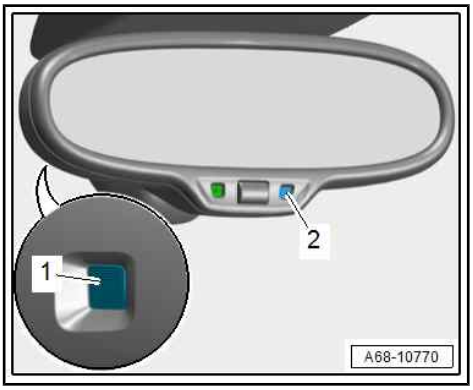
- Interior mirror is fitted.
- Ignition is switched on.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Automatic anti-dazzle function is switched on, indicator lamp must be lit.

Test sequence - vehicles up to model year 2016

– Cover photosensor -1- on housing side.

– Aim a light source, e.g. a torch, at photosensor -2- on mirror side.

• Interior mirror should darken quickly.

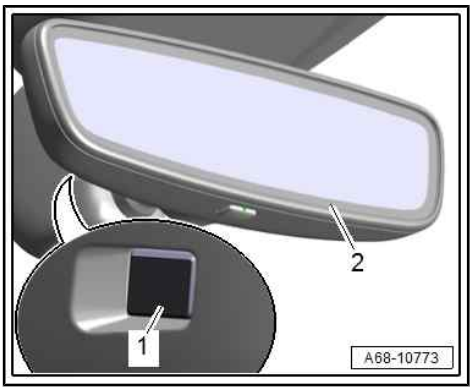


Test sequence - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards

– Cover photosensor -1- on housing side.

– Aim a light source, e.g. a torch, at photosensor -2- (in mirror) on mirror side.

• Interior mirror should darken quickly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

69 – Passenger protection

1 Seat belts

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points”, page 70

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)”, page 74

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 80

⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 82

⇒ “1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)”, page 83

⇒ “1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)”, page 84

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)”, page 85

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 93

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing belt guide (front)”, page 98

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing belt guide (rear)”, page 99

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front)”, page 102

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing belt height adjuster”, page 105

⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing belt buckle (front)”, page 106

⇒ “1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)”, page 107

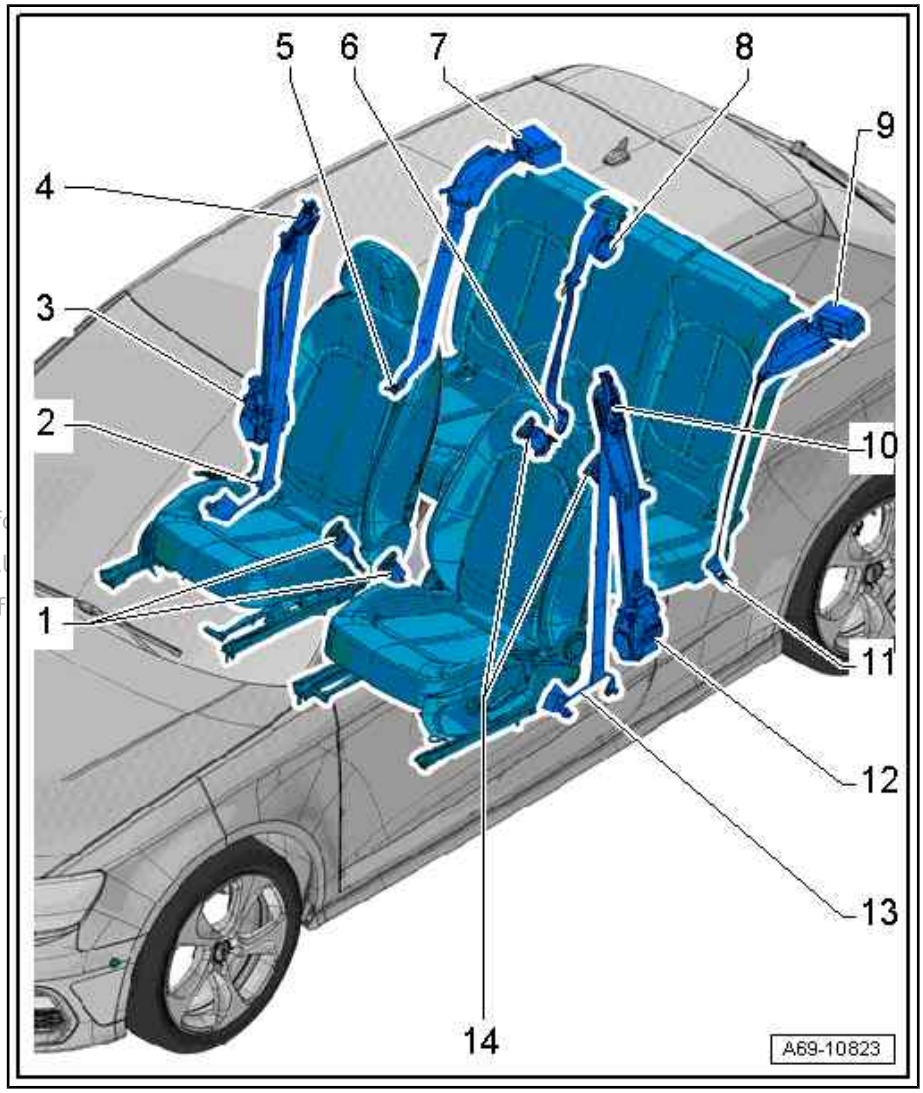
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points

⇒ “1.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points, A3/A3 Sportback”, page 70

⇒ “1.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points, Saloon”, page 72

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points, A3/A3 Sportback



1 - Belt buckle (front)

- Exploded view ⇒ page 83

2 - Belt end fitting (front)

- Country-specific version: with igniter for front passenger side seat belt tensioner 2 - N298-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 74

3 - Automatic belt retractor

- For three-point seat belt (front)
- With front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- and control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-
- Country-specific version: with front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 74

4 - Belt height adjuster

- Exploded view ⇒ page 74

5 - Outer belt end fitting (rear)

- Exploded view ⇒ page 80

6 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- Exploded view ⇒ page 82

7 - Automatic belt retractor

- For outer three-point seat belt (rear)
- Country-specific version: with rear belt tensioner igniter on front passenger side - N197-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 80

8 - Automatic belt retractor

- For centre three-point seat belt (rear)
- Exploded view ⇒ page 82

9 - Automatic belt retractor

- For outer three-point seat belt (rear)
- Country-specific version: with rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 80

10 - Belt height adjuster

- Exploded view ⇒ page 74

11 - Outer belt end fitting (rear)

- Exploded view ⇒ page 80

12 - Automatic belt retractor

- For three-point seat belt (front)
- With driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- and control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-
- Country-specific version: with driver side belt force limiter - G551-

Protected by copyright. Copying for permitted purposes is authorised by Audi with respect to the correctness of

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 74

13 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ❑ Country-specific version: with igniter for driver side seat belt tensioner 2 - N297-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 74

14 - Belt buckle (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 84

1.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points, Saloon

1 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 82

2 - Igniter for front passenger side seat belt tensioner 2 - N298-

- ❑ Country-specific version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 78

3 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 74

4 - Automatic belt retractor

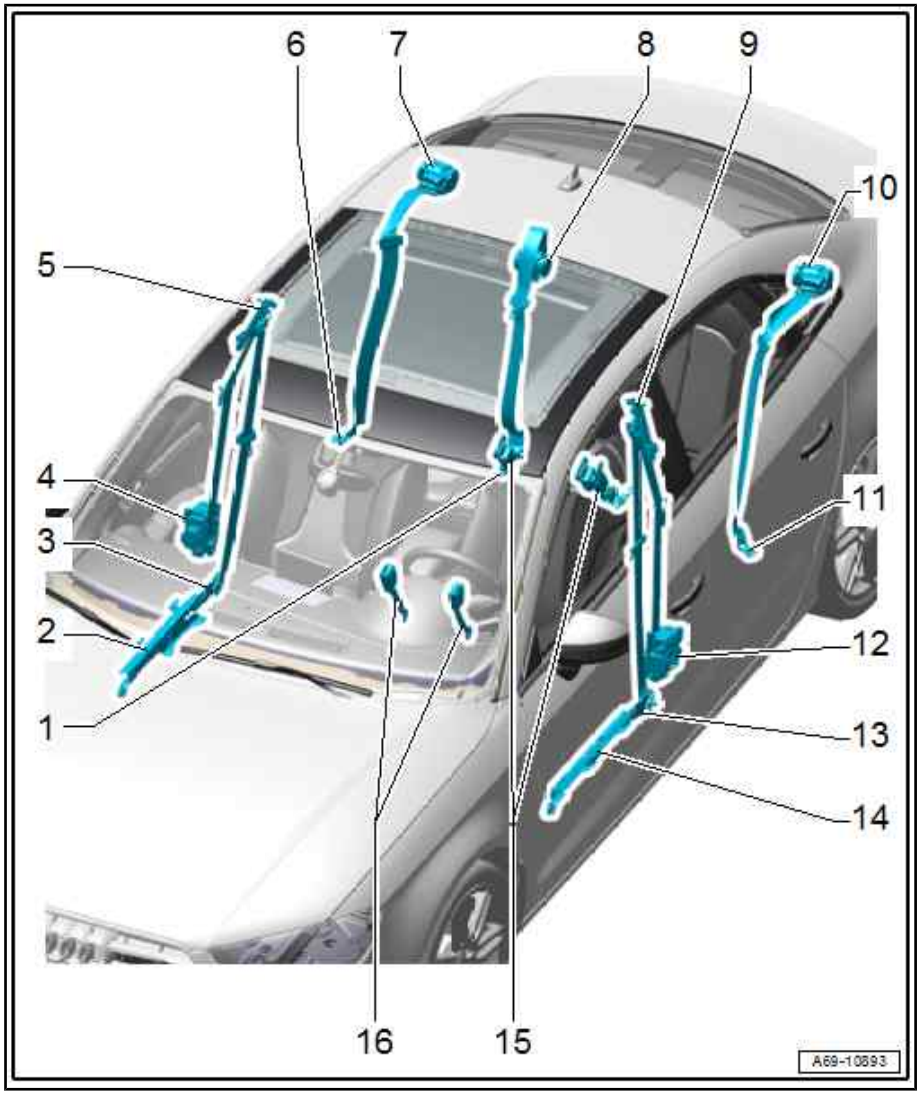
- ❑ For three-point seat belt (front)
- ❑ With front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- and control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-
- ❑ Country-specific version: with front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 74

5 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 74

6 - Outer belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 80



7 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For outer three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ Country-specific version: with rear belt tensioner igniter on front passenger side - N197-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 80

8 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For centre three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 82

9 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 74

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For outer three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ Country-specific version: with rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 80

11 - Outer belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 80

12 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (front)
- ❑ With driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- and control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-
- ❑ Country-specific version: with driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 74

13 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 74

14 - Igniter for driver side seat belt tensioner 2 - N297-

- ❑ Country-specific version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 78

15 - Belt buckle (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 84

16 - Belt buckle (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 83

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

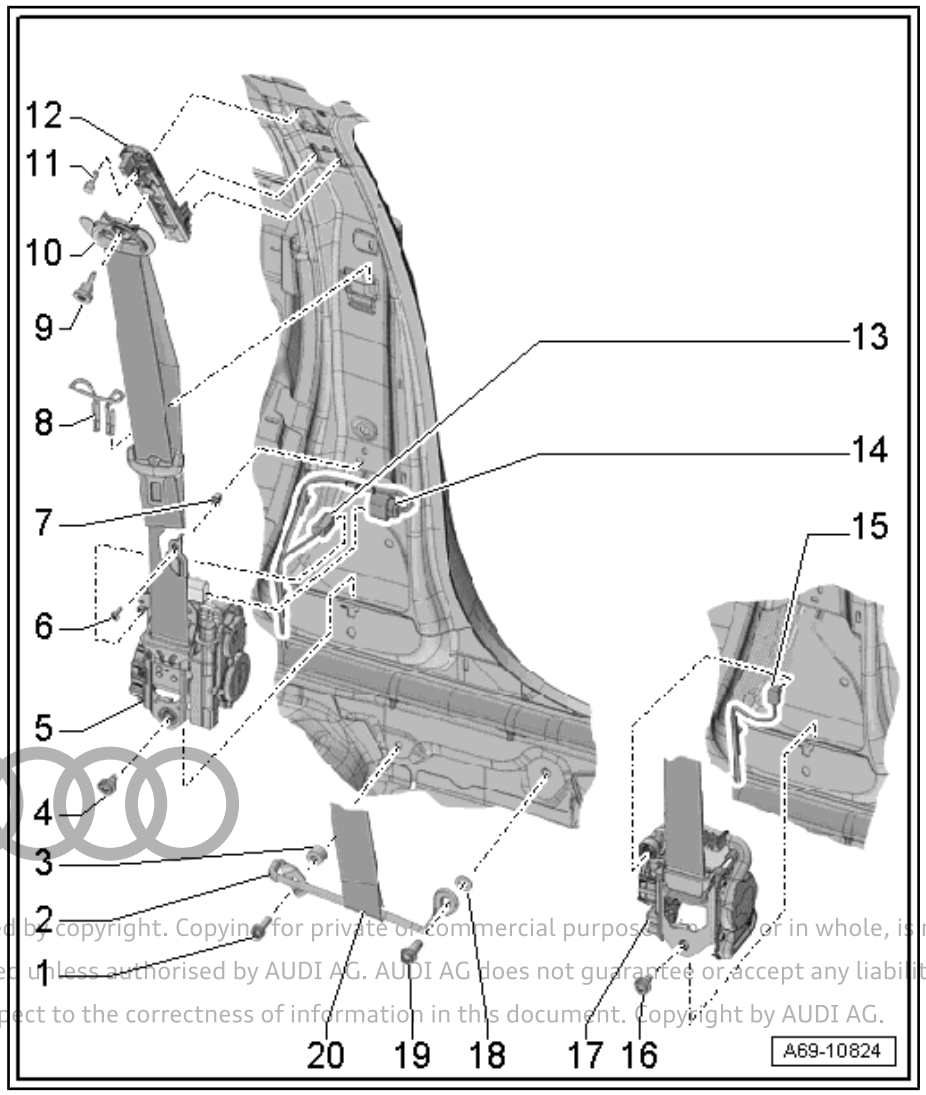
1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)

⇒ “1.2.1 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A3”, page 74

⇒ “1.2.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon”, page 76

⇒ “1.2.3 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), country-specific version”, page 78

1.2.1 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A3



1 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 20 Nm

2 - Belt end fitting

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 102

3 - Stop sleeve

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

5 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Equipment version with electric belt tensioning
- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- and control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- and control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 85
- ❑ Control unit -J854- / -J855- must be encoded after renewal ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Only for equipment version with electric belt tensioning
- ❑ 2 Nm

7 - Expanding nut

- ❑ Clip into B-pillar

8 - Belt guide (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 98
- ❑ Lay belt in belt guide (front)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Do not trap or damage belt

9 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

10 - Belt guide fitting

- ❑ After tightening bolt, guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical position or in fastening direction

11 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 27 Nm

12 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 105
- ❑ Renew belt height adjuster if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened

13 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ❑ Passenger side: for front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-

14 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-
- ❑ Passenger side: for control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-

15 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ❑ Passenger side: for front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-

16 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

17 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Equipment version without electric belt tensioning
- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 85

18 - Washer

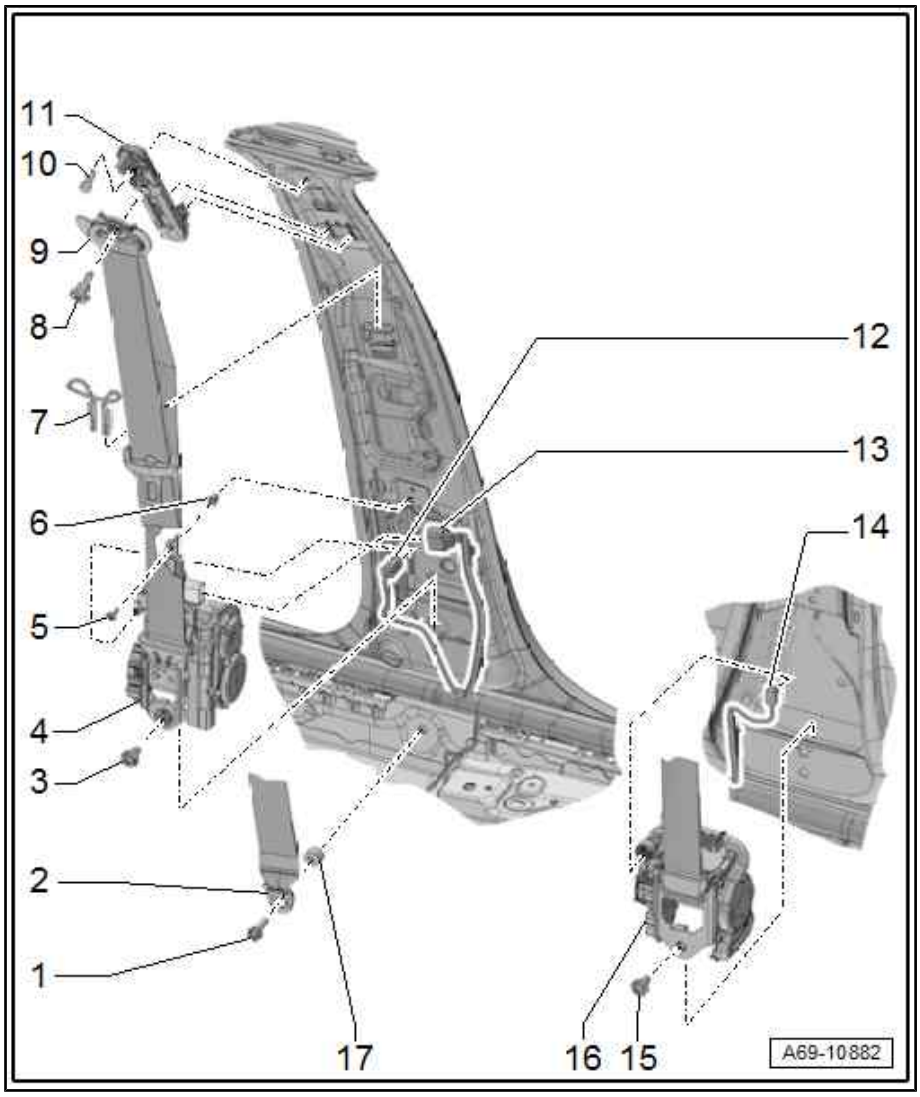
19 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

20 - Belt strap

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon



1 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

2 - Belt end fitting

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 102

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

4 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Equipment version with electric belt tensioning
- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- and control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- and control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 85
- ❑ Control unit -J854- / -J855- must be encoded after renewal ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Only for equipment version with electric belt tensioning
- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Expanding nut

- ❑ Clip into B-pillar

7 - Belt guide (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 98
- ❑ Lay belt in belt guide (front)
- ❑ Do not trap or damage belt

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

9 - Belt guide fitting

- ❑ After tightening bolt, guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical position or in fastening direction

10 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ 27 Nm

11 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 105
- ❑ Renew belt height adjuster if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened

12 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ❑ Passenger side: for front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-

13 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-
- ❑ Passenger side: for control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-

14 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ❑ Passenger side: for front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-

15 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

16 - Automatic belt retractor

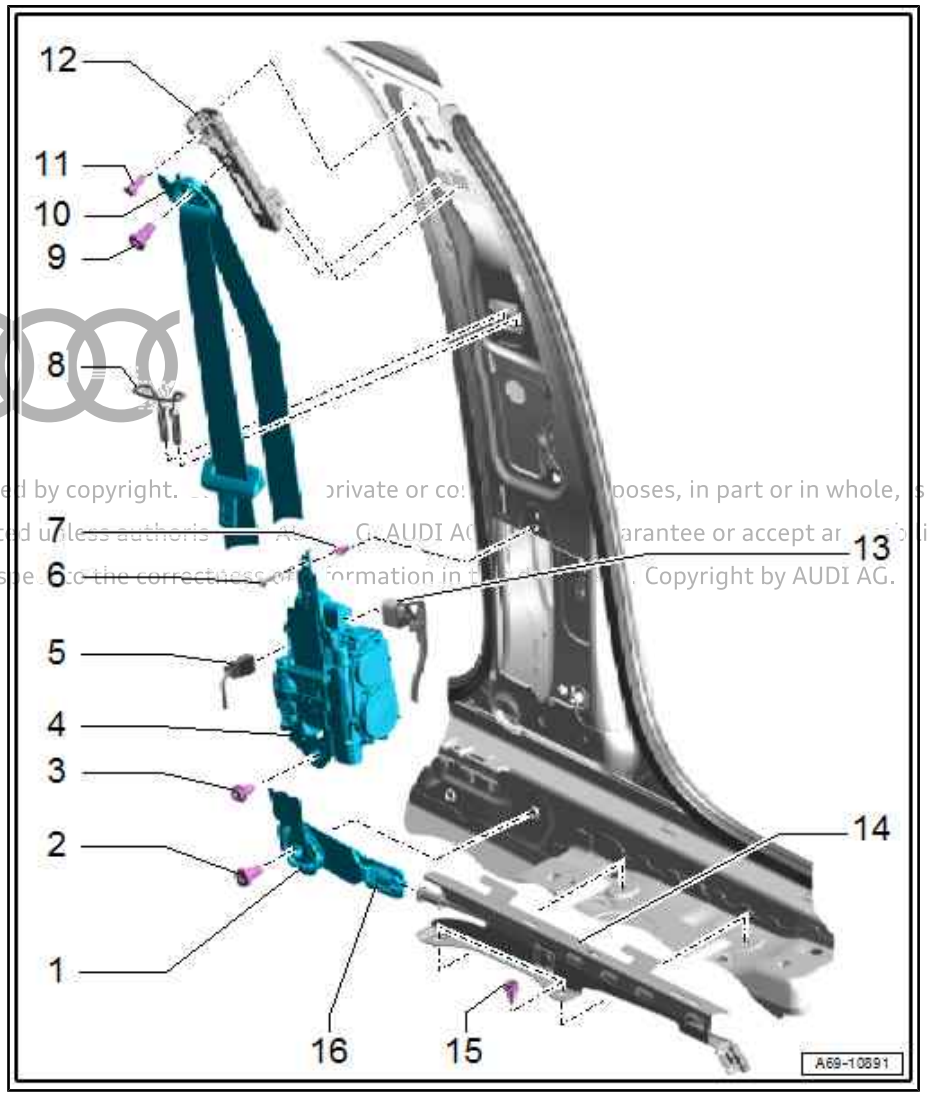
- ❑ Equipment version without electric belt tensioning
- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 85

17 - Stop sleeve

- ❑ For Audi A3 Sportback only

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2.3 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), country-specific version



1 - Belt guide fitting

- ❑ After tightening bolt, guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical position or in fastening direction

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

4 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- , driver side belt force limiter - G551- and control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- , front passenger side belt force limiter - G552- and control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 87
- ❑ Control unit -J854- / -J855- must be encoded after renewal ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester

5 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- and driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ❑ Passenger side: for front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- and front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

7 - Pop rivet nut

- ❑ Riveted into B-pillar

8 - Belt guide (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 98
- ❑ Lay belt in belt guide (front)
- ❑ Do not trap or damage belt

9 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

Protected by copyright. ... private or co... poses, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authoris... A... G. AUDI AG ... arantee or accept ar... bility with respe... to the correctness of ... formation in ... Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Belt guide fitting

- ❑ After tightening bolt, guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical position or in fastening direction

11 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 27 Nm

12 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 105
- ❑ Renew belt height adjuster if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened

13 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-
- ❑ Passenger side: for control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-

14 - Igniter for driver side seat belt tensioner 2 - N297-

- ❑ Passenger side: igniter for front passenger side seat belt tensioner 2 - N298-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 90

15 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

16 - Belt end fitting

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 103

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)

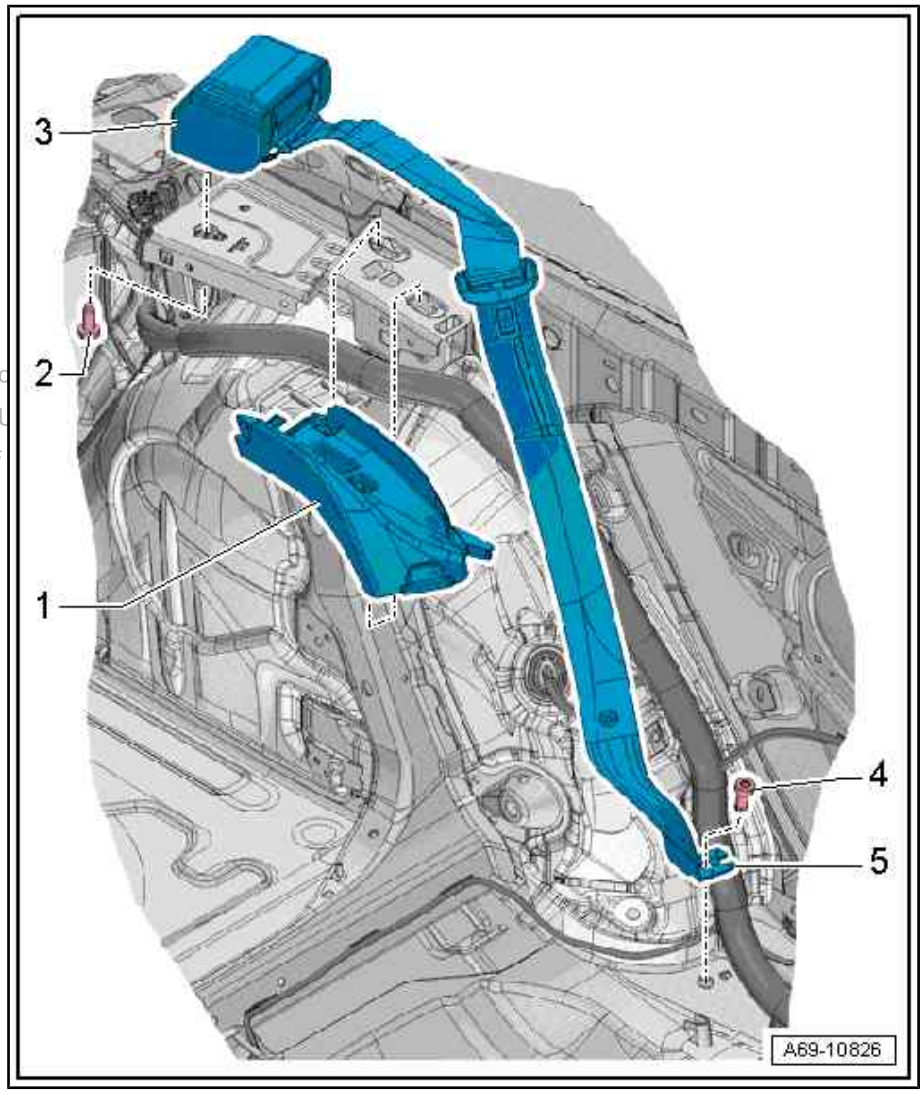
⇒ “1.3.1 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 80

⇒ “1.3.2 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), country-specific version”, page 81

1.3.1 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)

Note

The illustration shows the three-point seat belt (rear) for the A3.



1 - Belt guide

Caution

When removing and installing the belt guide, never turn the bolts. They have been set by the manufacturer.

Renew entire belt guide if damaged.

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 99
- ❑ Insert with bolt heads in guide elements at bracket and pull forwards until retaining hook engages

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

3 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 93

4 - Bolt

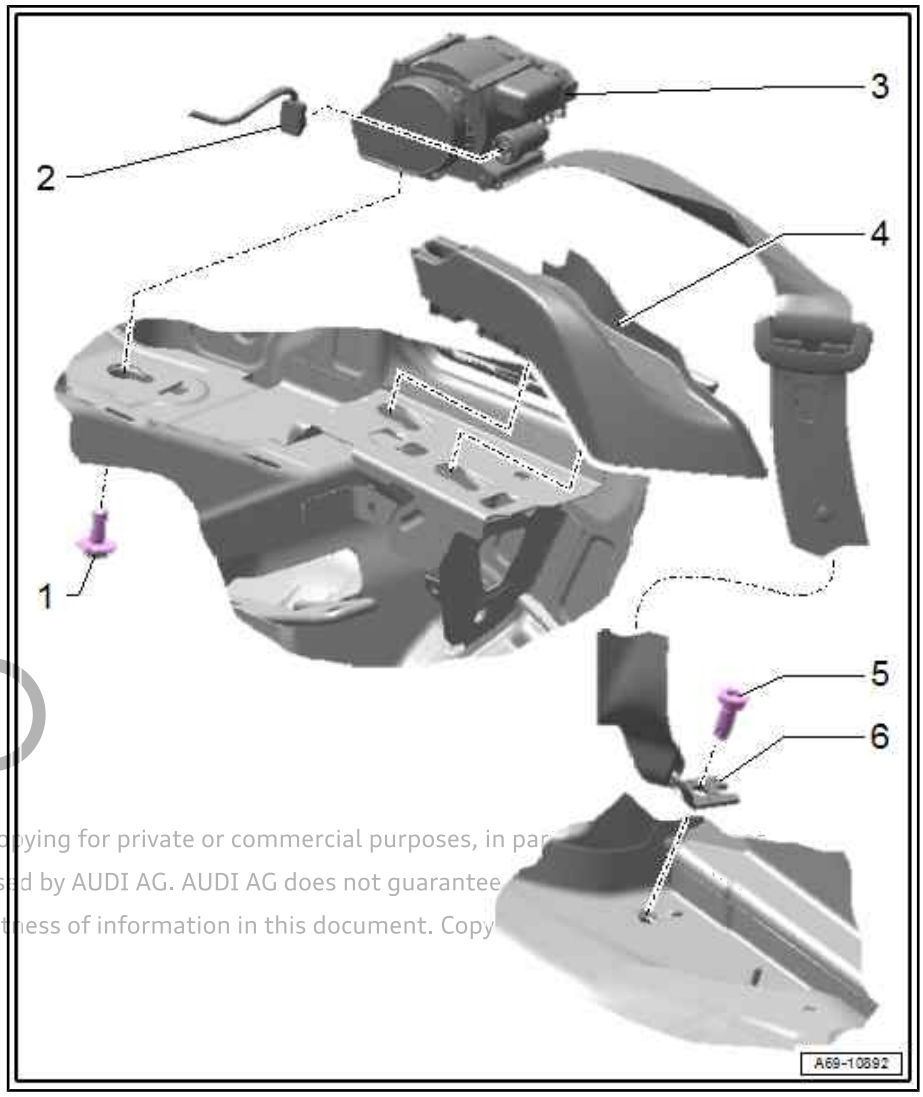
- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

5 - Outer belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 93

Protected by copyright. Copying for
permitted unless authorised by AU
with respect to the correctness of

1.3.2 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), country-specific version



1 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

2 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- ❑ Passenger side: for rear belt tensioner igniter on front passenger side - N197-

3 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Driver side: with rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- ❑ Passenger side: with rear belt tensioner igniter on front passenger side - N197-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

4 - Belt guide

Caution

When removing and installing the belt guide, never turn the bolts. They have been set by the manufacturer.

Renew entire belt guide if damaged.

otected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in par
mitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
correctness of information in this document. Copy

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 100
- ❑ Insert with bolt heads in guide elements at bracket and pull forwards until retaining hook engages

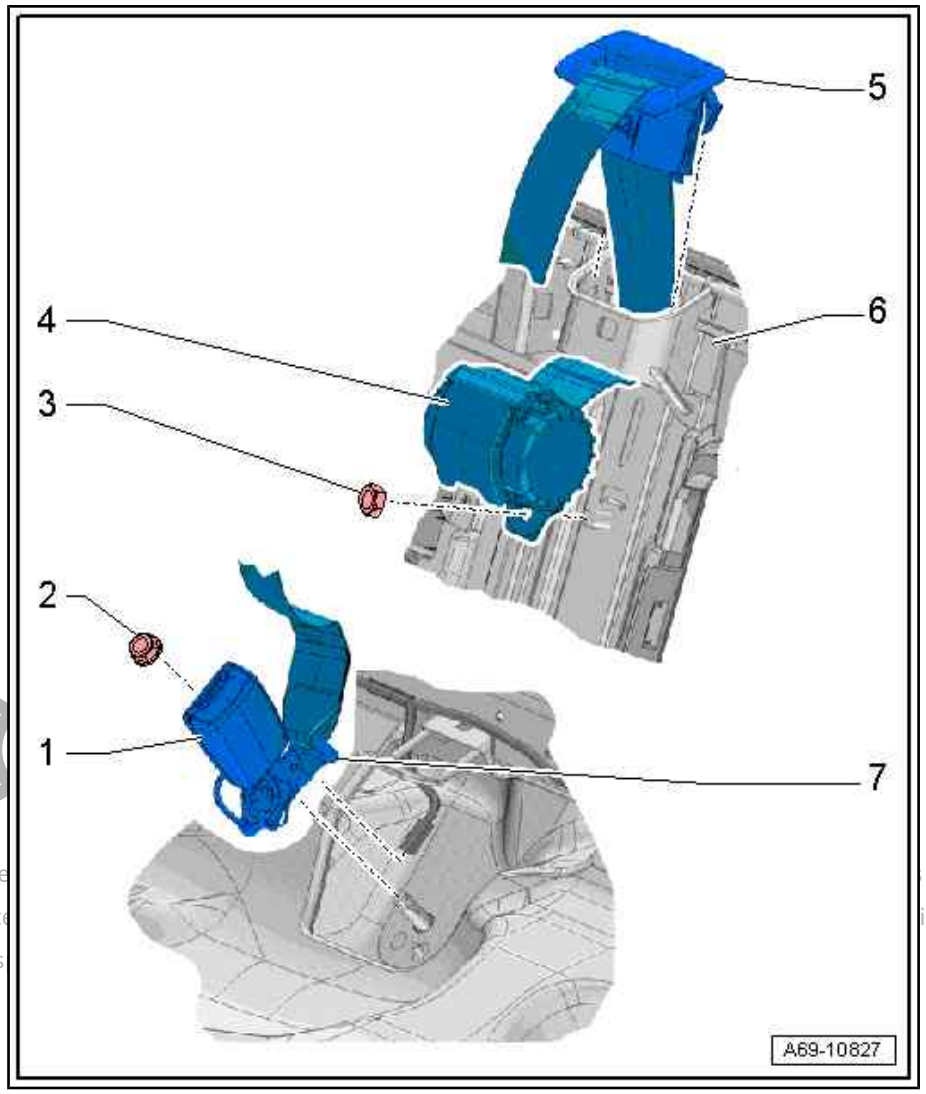
5 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

6 - Outer belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ “1.8.3 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - Saloon”, page 96

1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)



1 - Belt buckle

- ❑ With rear belt switch, front passenger side - E259-
- ❑ Country-specific version: without belt switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 107
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Must rest against stop when nut is tightened

2 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 84

3 - Nut

- ❑ Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

4 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 97

5 - Centre belt guide (rear)

- ❑ Renew entire belt guide if damaged
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 101
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side)

7 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)”, page 107

Protecte not
transmitte ity
with res

1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)

1 - Front seat

2 - Belt buckle (front)

- ❑ Driver side: with driver side belt switch - E24-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger side belt switch - E25-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 106
- ❑ Renew belt buckle if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened

3 - Electrical connector

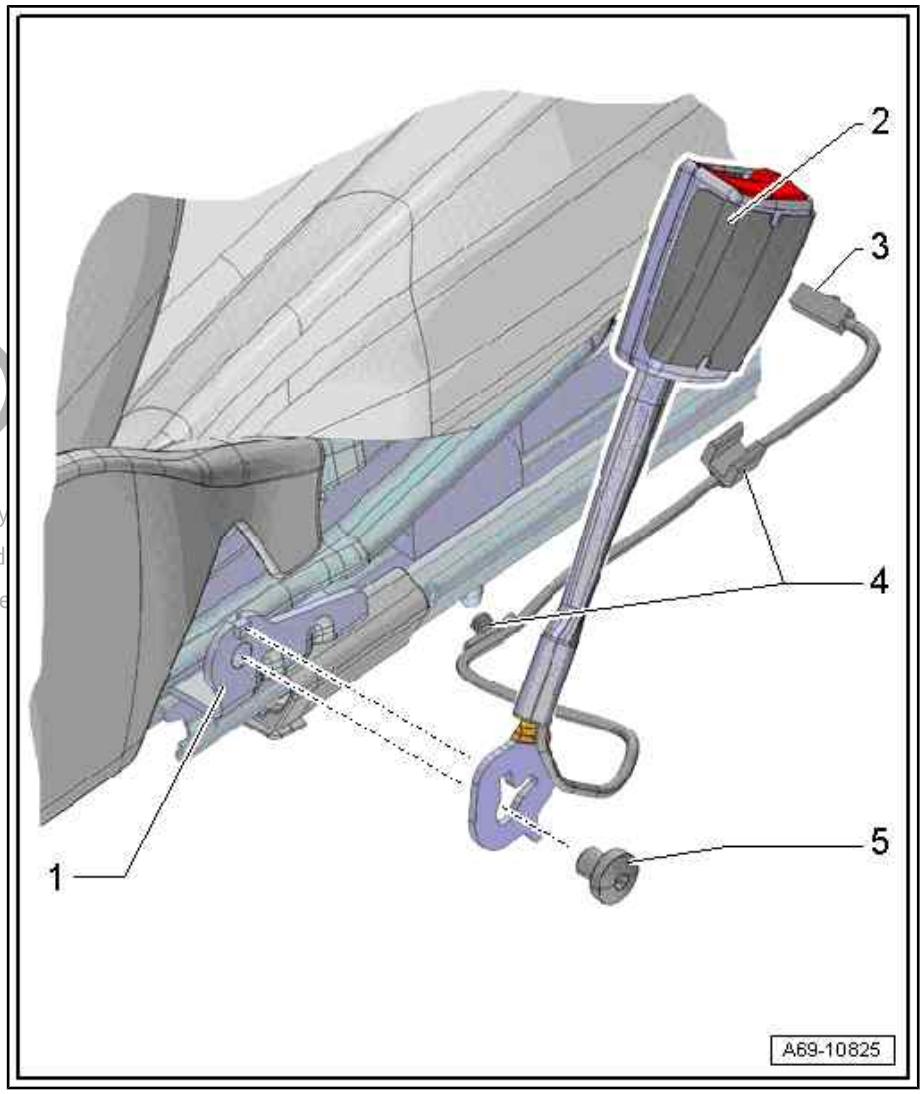
- ❑ For belt switch

4 - Cable retainer

- ❑ Clip into seat pan

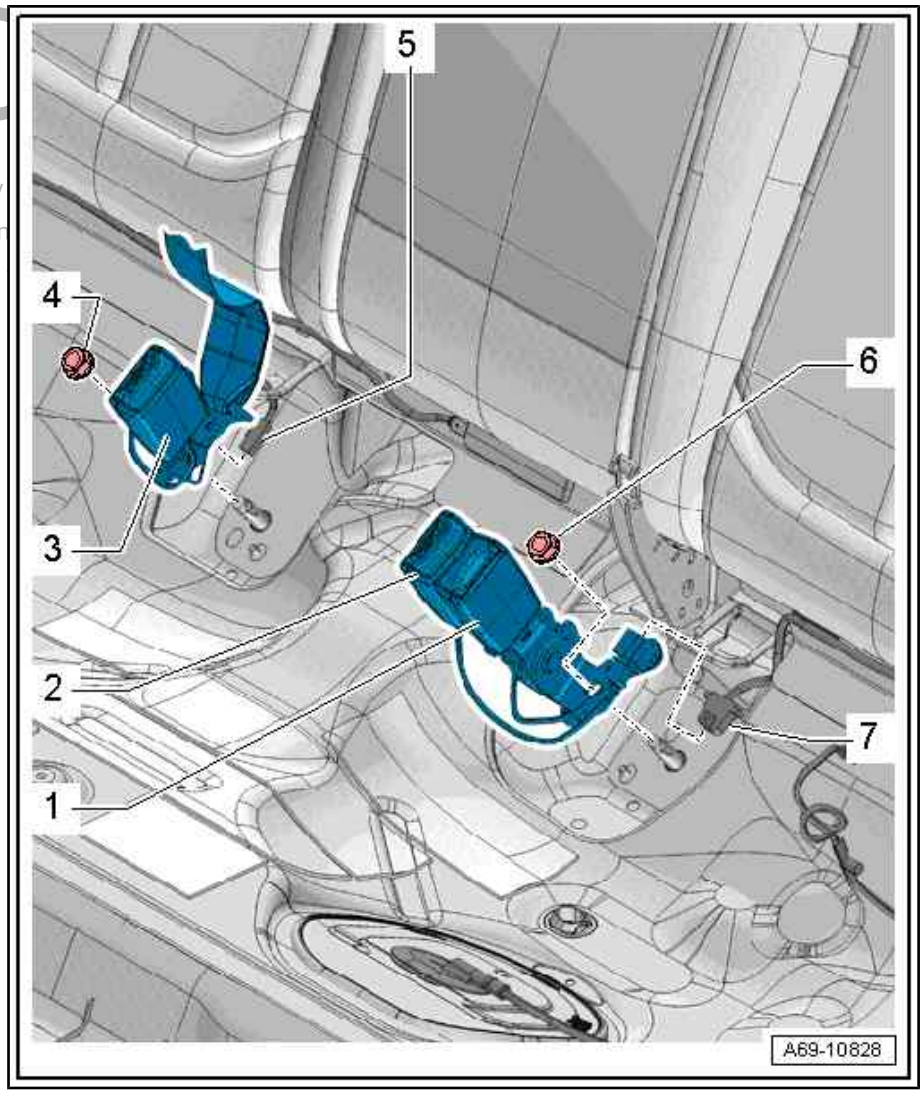
5 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 33 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copy
permitted unless authorised
with respect to the correctne

1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)



1 - Belt buckle (left-side)

- ❑ With rear belt switch, driver side - E258-
- ❑ Country-specific version: without belt switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 107
- ❑ Renew belt buckle if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Press belt buckle against stop when bolting on
- ❑ Must rest against stop

2 - Belt buckle (centre)

- ❑ With rear centre belt switch - E609-
- ❑ Country-specific version: without belt switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 107
- ❑ Renew belt buckle if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Press belt buckle against stop when bolting on
- ❑ Must rest against stop

3 - Belt buckle (right-side) with centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ With rear belt switch, front passenger side - E259-
- ❑ Country-specific version: without belt switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 107
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Must rest against stop when nut is tightened

4 - Nut

- ❑ Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

5 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For equipment version with rear belt switch, front passenger side - E259-

6 - Nut

- ❑ Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

7 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For equipment version with rear belt switch, driver side - E258- and rear centre belt switch - E609-

1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)

⇒ "1.7.1 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)", page 85

⇒ "1.7.2 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) - country-specific version", page 87

⇒ "1.7.3 Removing and installing belt tensioner (front) - country-specific version", page 90

1.7.1 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 102 .

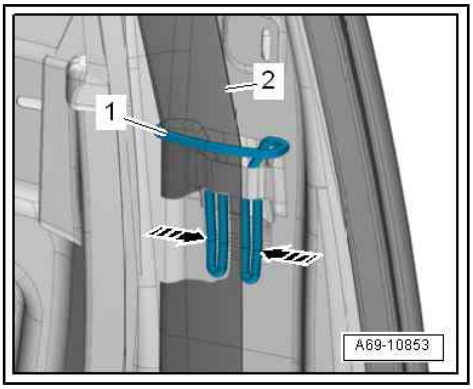
– Remove B-pillar trim ⇒ page 295 and guide out belt.

– A3 Sportback/Saloon: Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) and bracket for B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 295 .

– A3: Remove side trim ⇒ page 309 .

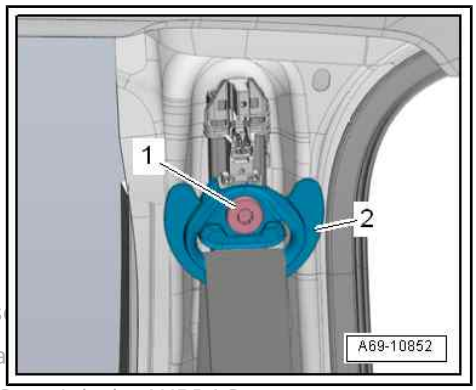
– Press retainers together -arrows- and pull out belt guide -1- upwards.

– Thread out belt -2- and detach belt guide.



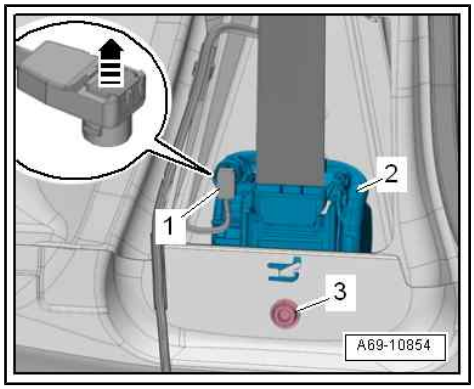
– Remove bolt -1-.

– Detach belt guide fitting -2- with belt.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Equipment version without electric belt tensioning:

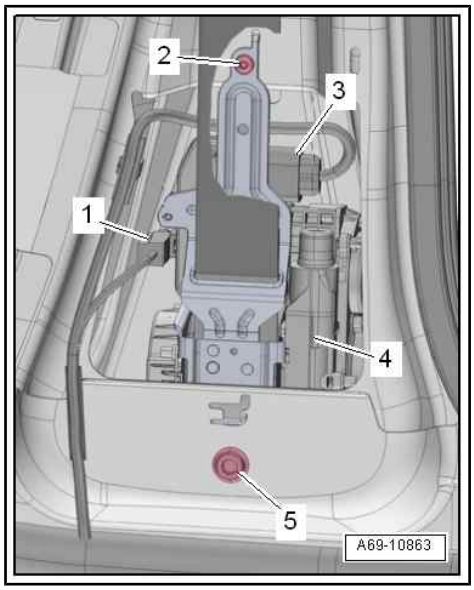


WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Release connector locking element with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector for belt tensioner igniter 1 -item 1-.
- Remove bolt -3- and take automatic belt retractor -2- out of mounting.

Equipment version with electric belt tensioning:



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Unplug electrical connector -1- for belt tensioner igniter; to do so, pull out and press down connector locking element.
- Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connector -3- for control unit for belt tensioner.
- Move electrical wiring clear.
- Remove bolts -2 and 5- and take automatic belt retractor -4- out of mounting.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

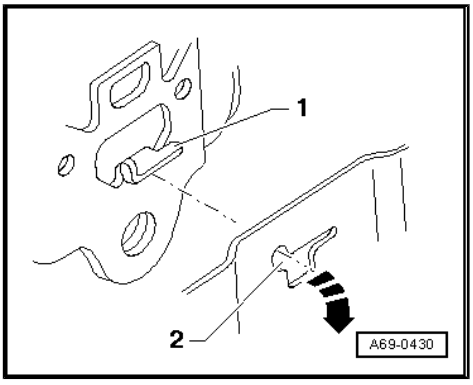
- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Control unit -J854- / -J855- must be encoded after renewal ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

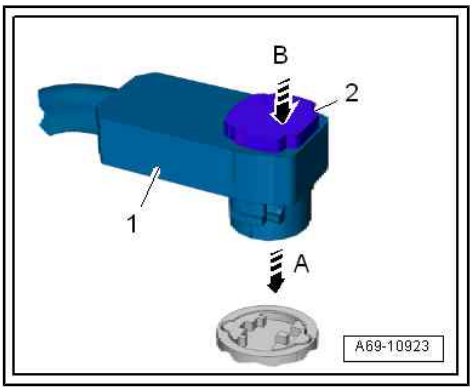
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Insert automatic belt retractor with locating element -1- in mounting -2- -arrow- and tighten bolt.



– Attach connector -1- to igniter -arrow A-.

– Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in igniter while at the same time locking it.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)", page 74

1.7.2 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) - country-specific version

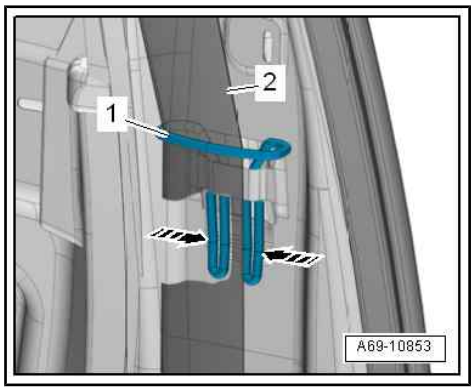
Removing

WARNING

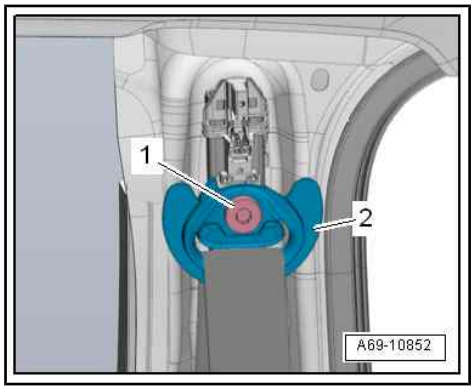
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Remove B-pillar trim (top) and bracket ⇒ page 297 .
– Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 300 .
– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 103 .
– Guide belt out of B-pillar trim.
– Press retainers together -arrows- and pull out belt guide -1- upwards.
– Thread out belt -2- and detach belt guide.



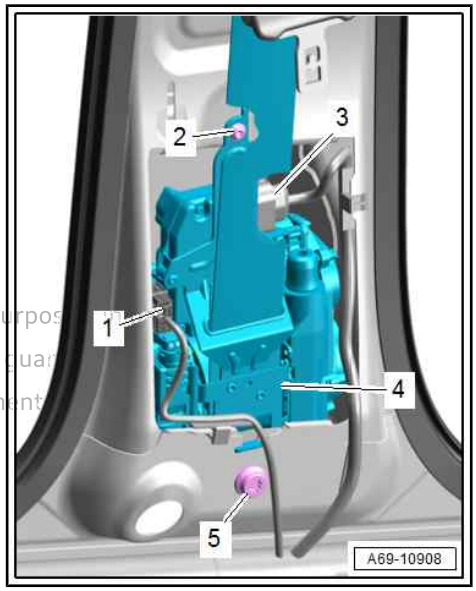
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Detach belt guide fitting -2- with belt.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Unplug electrical connector -1- for belt tensioner igniter and belt force limiter, to do so, pull out and press down connector locking element.
– Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connector -3- for control unit for belt tensioner.
– Remove bolts -2 and 5- and take automatic belt retractor -4- out of mounting.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

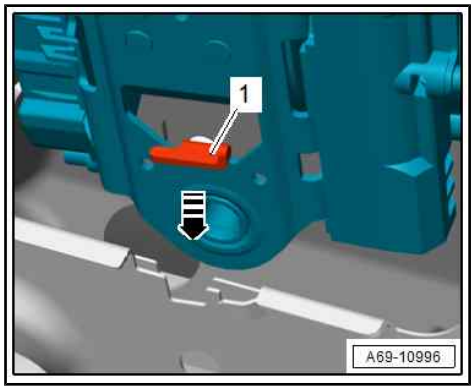
– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Control unit -J854- / -J855- must be encoded after renewal ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Insert automatic belt retractor with locating element -1- in mounting -arrow- and tighten bolt.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Printed by a customer with a valid licence. Any use for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2.3 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), country-specific version", page 78

1.7.3 Removing and installing belt tensioner (front) - country-specific version

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

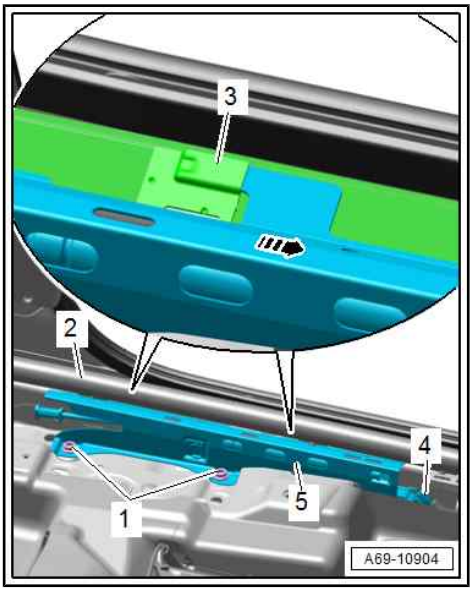
– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 103 .

– Unclip wiring harness -2- from side member and belt tensioner.
– Remove bolts -1-.
– Pull belt tensioner -5- towards front out of mountings -3- -arrow-.

WARNING

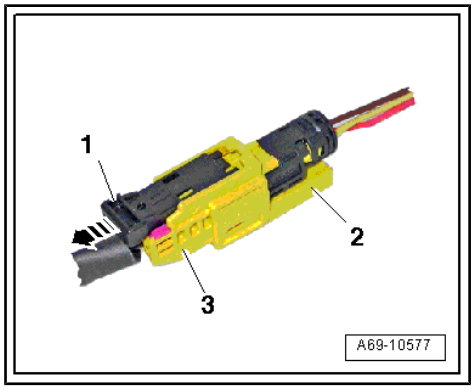
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Unplug electrical connector -4- for belt tensioner (front).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To do so, pull catch -1- in direction of -arrow- and unplug electrical connectors -2- and -3-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “1.2.3 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), country-specific version”, page 78

1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)

⇒ “1.8.1 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - A3”, page 93

⇒ “1.8.2 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - A3 Sportback”, page 94

⇒ “1.8.3 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - Saloon”, page 96

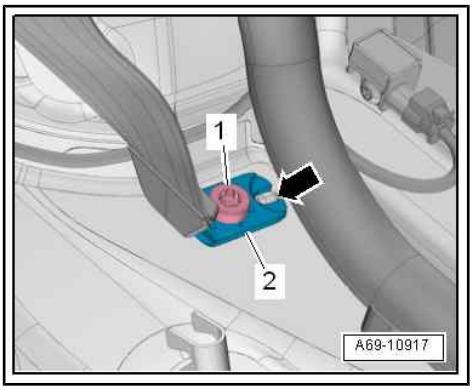
⇒ “1.8.4 Removing and installing centre three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 97

1.8.1 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - A3

Removing

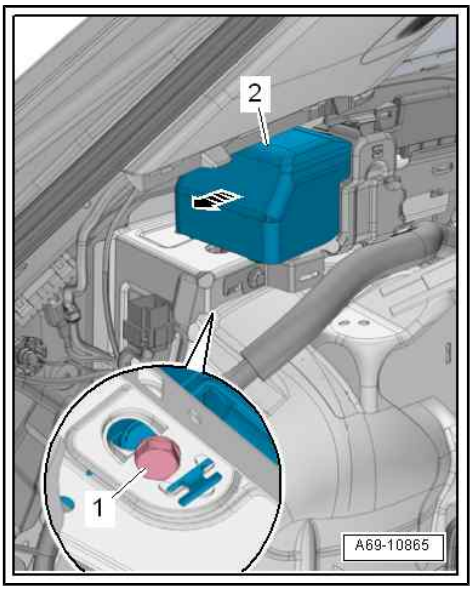
– Remove side trim ⇒ page 309 .

– Remove bolt -1- from belt end fitting -2-.



– Loosen bolt -1- approx. 5 turns.

– Slide three-point seat belt -2- to rear -arrow- and take out of mounting.



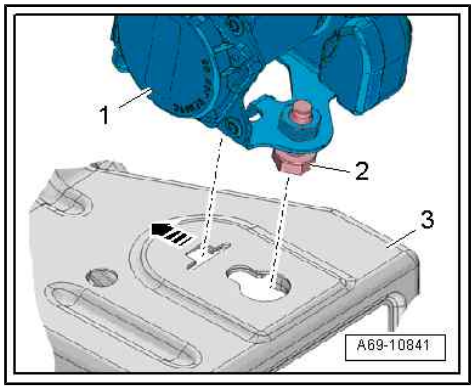
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element and bolt -2- in mounting -3-.

– Press three-point seat belt -1- forwards as far as stop -arrow- and at the same time tighten bolt.

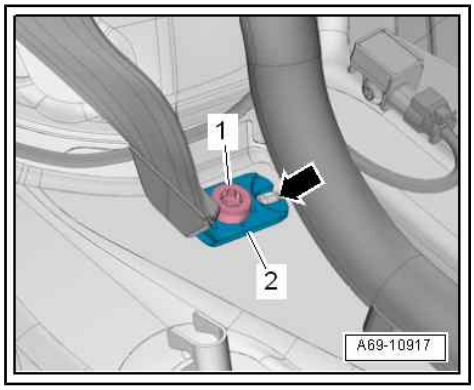


• Locating lug -arrow- on floor panel must be located in recess in belt end fitting -2-.

– Tighten bolt -1- at belt end fitting.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)", page 80



1.8.2 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - A3 Sportback

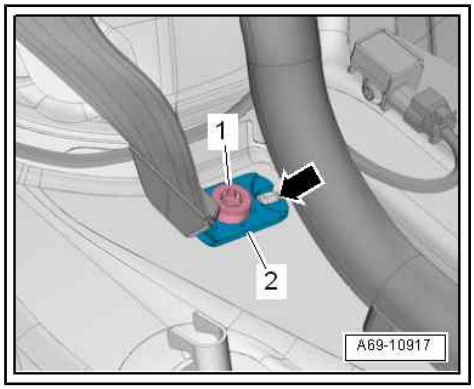
Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 336 .

– Remove sill panel trim ⇒ page 287 .

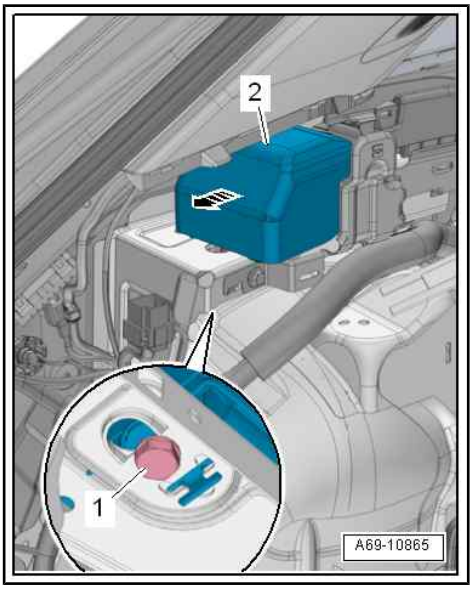
– Remove intermediate cover ⇒ page 304 .

– Remove bolt -1- from belt end fitting -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

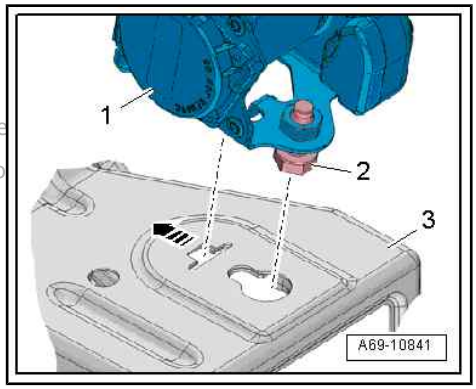
– Loosen bolt -1- approx. 5 turns.
– Slide three-point seat belt -2- to rear -arrow- and take out of mounting.



Installing

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.
– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element and bolt -2- in mounting -3-.
– Press three-point seat belt -1- forwards as far as stop -arrow- and at the same time tighten bolt.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do
liability for the correctness of information in this

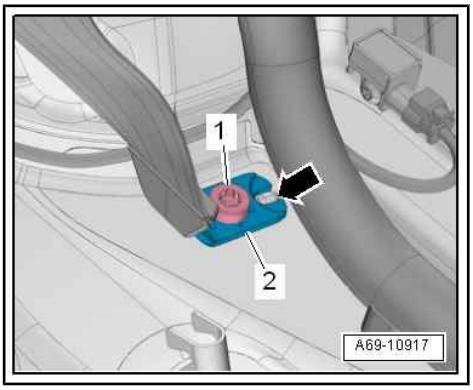


• Locating lug -arrow- on floor panel must be located in recess in belt end fitting -2-.
– Tighten bolt -1- at belt end fitting.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 80



1.8.3 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - Saloon

Removing

– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ page 305 .

– Remove rear shelf ⇒ page 313 .

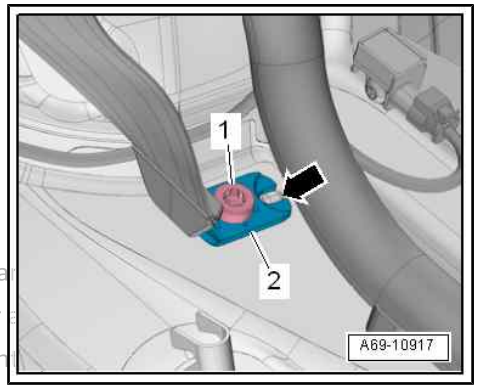
– Remove sill panel trim (rear) ⇒ page 285 .

– Remove bolt -1- from belt end fitting -2-.

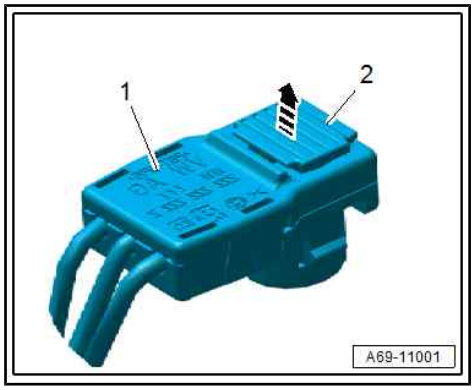
– Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ page 301 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrigh

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 336 .

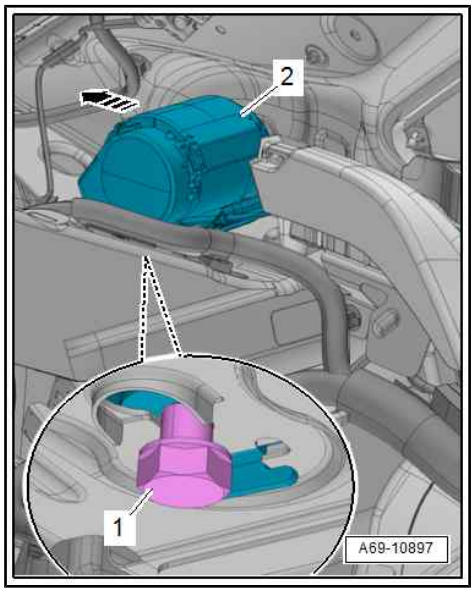


– Equipment version with belt tensioners: Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.



– Loosen bolt -1- approx. 5 turns.

– Slide three-point seat belt -2- to rear -arrow- and take out of mounting.

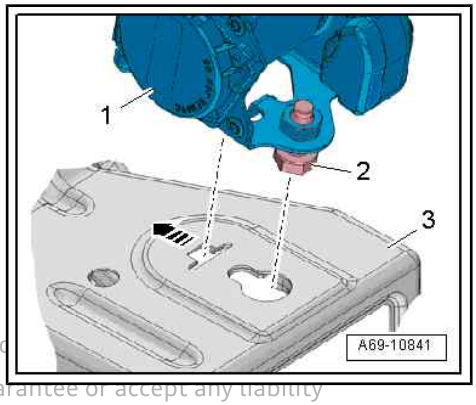


Installing

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

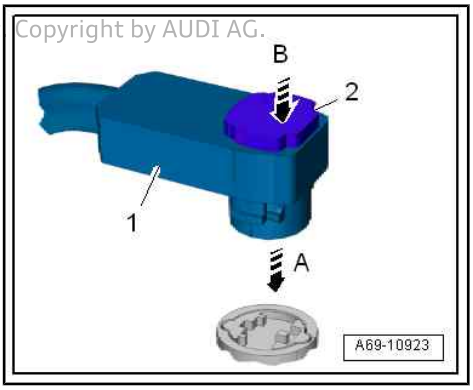
– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element and bolt -2- in mounting -3-.

– Press three-point seat belt -1- forwards as far as stop -arrow- and at the same time tighten bolt.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Equipment version with belt tensioners: Attach connector -1- to igniter -arrow A- and press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in igniter while at the same time locking it.

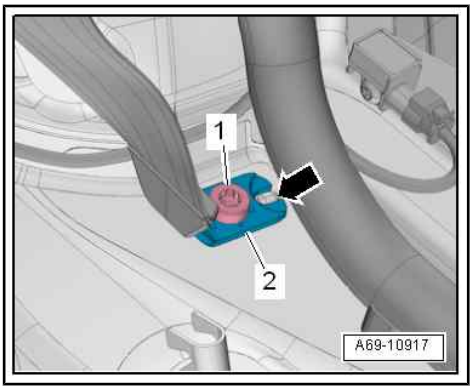


• Locating lug -arrow- on floor panel must be located in recess in belt end fitting -2-.

– Tighten bolt -1- at belt end fitting.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)", page 80



1.8.4 Removing and installing centre three-point seat belt (rear)

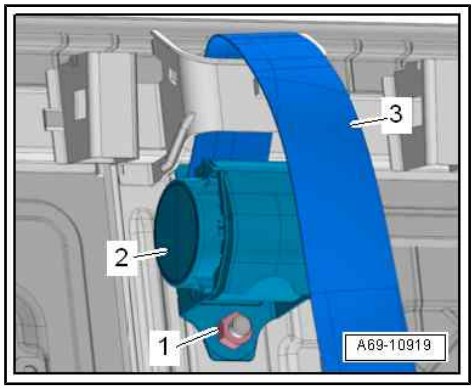
Removing

– Remove seat bench/individual seats ⇒ page 464 .

– Remove 2/3 section (right-side) of rear seat backrest ⇒ page 466 .

– Remove seat cover and padding ⇒ page 511 .

– Unscrew nut -1-.
– Disengage three-point seat belt -2- and detach.
– Thread out belt -3-.



Installing

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.
– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element in mounting and tighten nut.

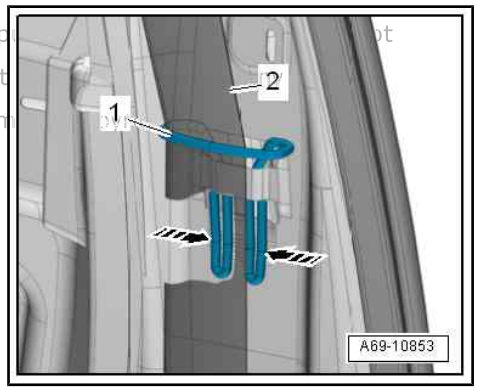
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 82

1.9 Removing and installing belt guide (front)

Removing

– A3: Remove side trim ⇒ page 309 .
– A3 Sportback/Saloon: Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) and bracket for B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 295 .
– Press retainers together -arrows- and pull out belt guide -1- upwards.
– Thread out belt -2- and detach belt guide.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p ot permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)”, page 74

1.10 Removing and installing belt guide (rear)

⇒ “1.10.1 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear) - A3”, page 99

⇒ “1.10.2 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear) - A3 Sportback”, page 99

⇒ “1.10.3 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear) - Saloon”, page 100

⇒ “1.10.4 Removing and installing centre belt guide (rear)”, page 101

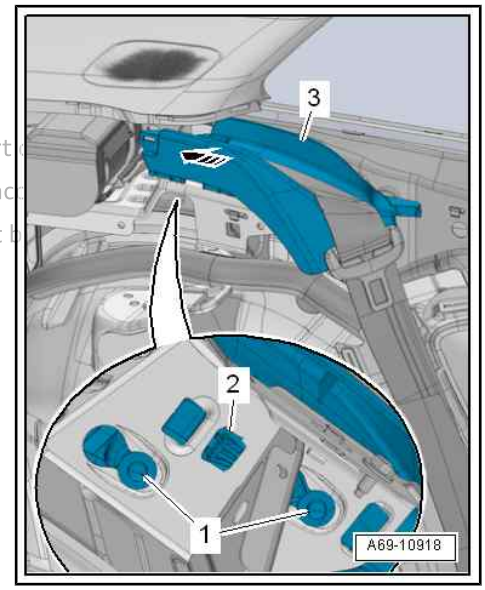
1.10.1 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear) - A3

Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ page 309 .

Caution

- *When removing and installing belt guide -3-, never turn bolts -1-. They have been set by the manufacturer.*
- *Renew entire belt guide if damaged.*



– Press retaining hooks -2- on belt guide upwards and hold.

– Slide belt guide to rear -arrow- until bolt heads -1- can be disengaged from bracket on body.

– Thread out belt and detach belt guide.

Installing

– Place belt in recess in belt guide -3- and position belt guide on bracket.

– Press belt guide downwards and at the same time pull it forwards, making bolt heads engage in guide elements.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 80

1.10.2 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear) - A3 Sportback

Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 336 .

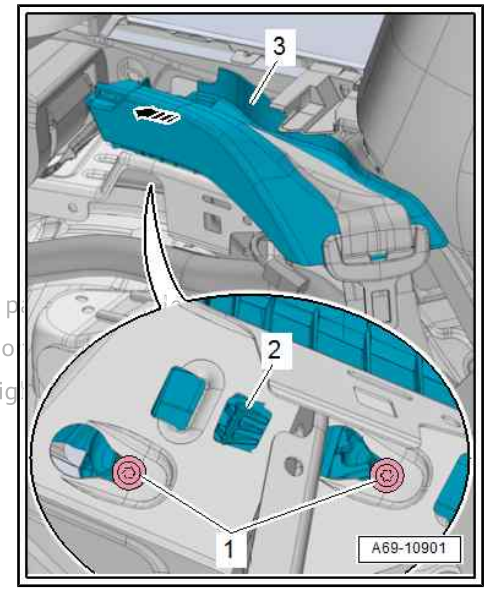
– Remove intermediate cover ⇒ page 304 .

– Remove sill panel trim ⇒ page 287 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright b

Caution

- *When removing and installing belt guide -3-, never turn bolts -1-. They have been set by the manufacturer.*
- *Renew entire belt guide if damaged.*



– Press retaining hooks -2- on belt guide upwards and hold.
– Slide belt guide to rear -arrow- until bolt heads -1- can be disengaged from bracket on body.
– Thread out belt and detach belt guide.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted except with the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee o
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig

Installing

– Place belt in recess in belt guide -3- and position belt guide on bracket.
– Press belt guide downwards and at the same time pull it forwards, making bolt heads engage in guide elements.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)", page 80

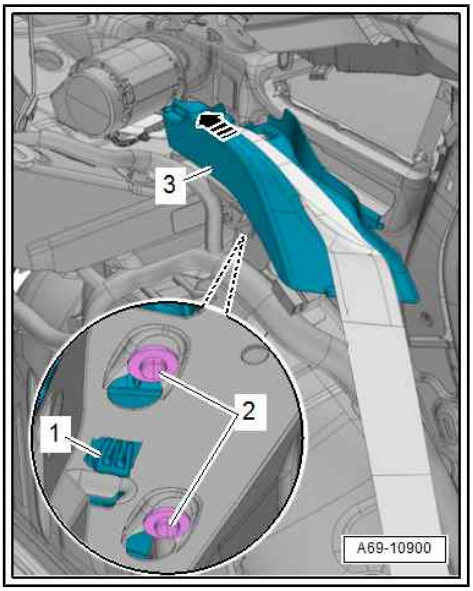
1.10.3 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear) - Saloon

Removing

– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ page 305 .
– Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ page 301 .
– Remove rear shelf ⇒ page 313 .
– Remove sill panel trim (rear) ⇒ page 285 .

Caution

- *When removing and installing belt guide -3-, never turn bolts -2-. They have been set by the manufacturer.*
- *Renew entire belt guide if damaged.*



– Press retaining hooks -1- on belt guide upwards and hold.
– Slide belt guide to rear -arrow- until bolt heads -2- can be disengaged from bracket on body.
– Thread out belt and detach belt guide.

Installing

– Place belt in recess in belt guide -3- and position belt guide on bracket.
– Press belt guide downwards and at the same time pull it forwards, making bolt heads engage in guide elements.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

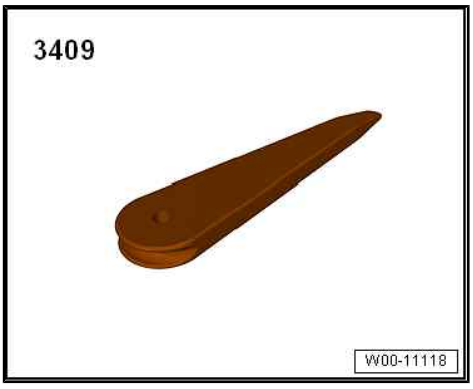
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)", page 80

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the written authority of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.10.4 Removing and installing centre belt guide (rear)

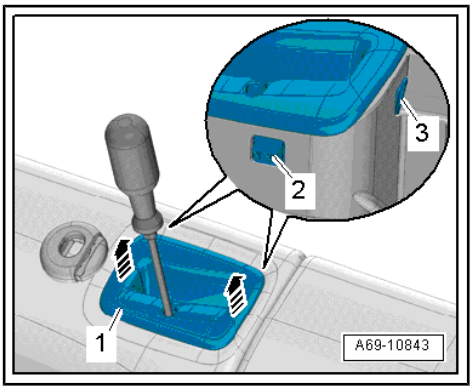
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Release retaining tabs -2 and 3- using a screwdriver.
– At the same time unclip belt guide -1- upwards -arrows-.
– Open up gap at belt guide and guide out belt.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)", page 82

1.11 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front)

⇒ “1.11.1 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - A3”, page 102

⇒ “1.11.2 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - A3 Sportback”, page 103

⇒ “1.11.3 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - Saloon”, page 103

⇒ “1.11.4 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - country-specific version”, page 103

1.11.1 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - A3

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



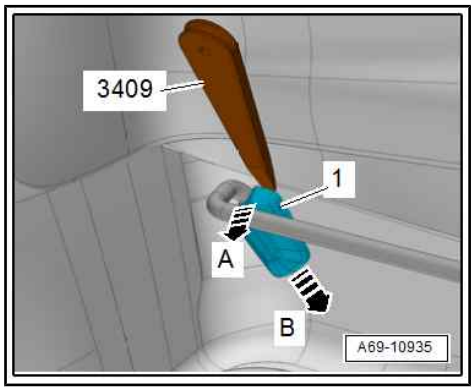
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in ... le, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara... any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this do...ument. C...by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove sill panel trim ⇒ page 285 .

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

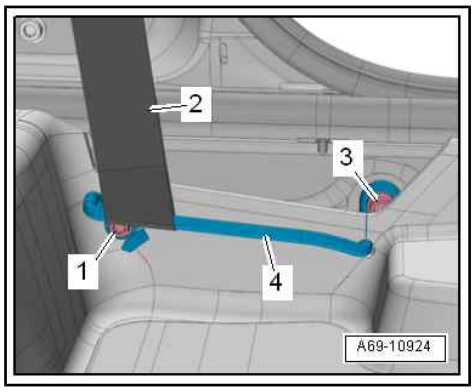
– Prise off cap -1- with removal wedge - 3409- -arrow A-, disengage at belt end fitting -arrow B- and detach.



– Remove bolts -1, 3-.

– Remove bolt with belt end fitting -4- and stop sleeve.

– Take belt end fitting out of belt strap -2-.



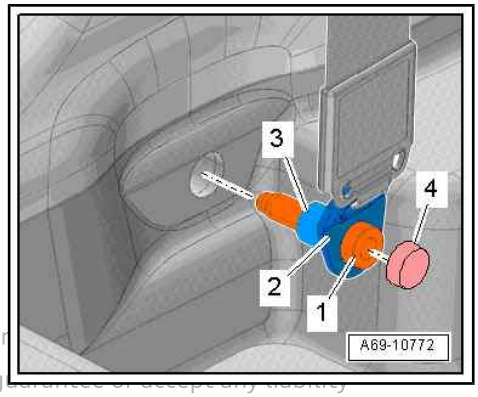
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)”, page 74

1.11.2 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - A3 Sportback



Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
– Use a screwdriver to prise off cap -4- (if fitted).
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Remove bolt with belt end fitting -2- and stop sleeve -3-.

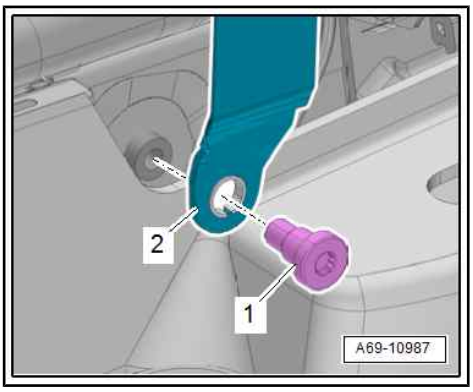
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)", page 74

Reproduction or disclosure to third parties of this document or any part thereof for commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.11.3 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - Saloon



Removing

– Remove sill panel trim (front) ⇒ page 285 .
– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Remove bolt with belt end fitting -2-.

Installing

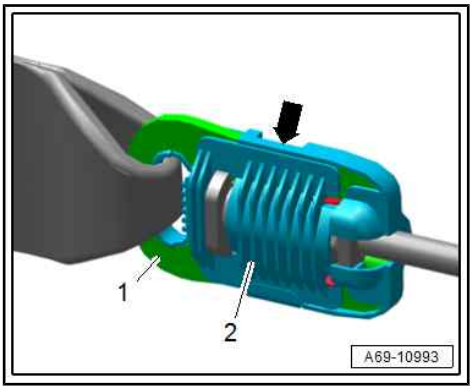
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)", page 74

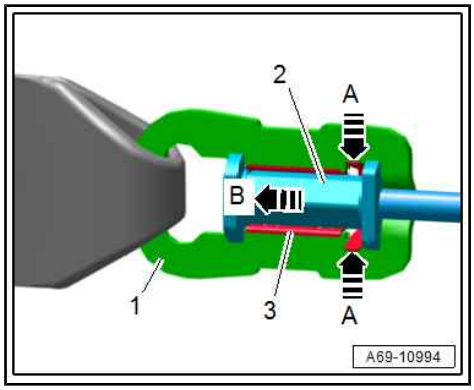
1.11.4 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - country-specific version

Removing

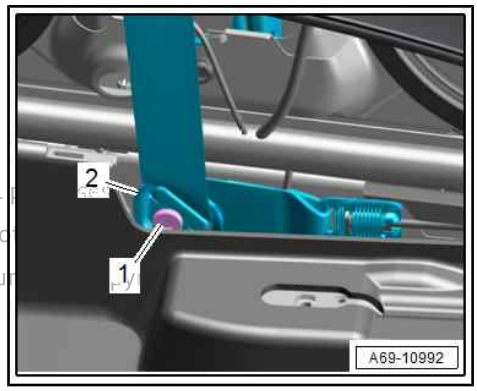
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Remove sill panel trim (front) ⇒ page 286 .
– Take belt end fitting out of bracket.
– Using a screwdriver, open cover -2- for belt end fitting -1- at catch -arrow- and slide to the side.



– Press retaining tabs of securing clip towards each other -arrows A- with pliers.
– At the same time slide anchoring pin -2- and securing clip -3- in direction of -arrow B- to release them.
– Disengage anchoring pin from securing clip in belt end fitting -1-.



– Unscrew bolt -1- and detach belt guide fitting -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

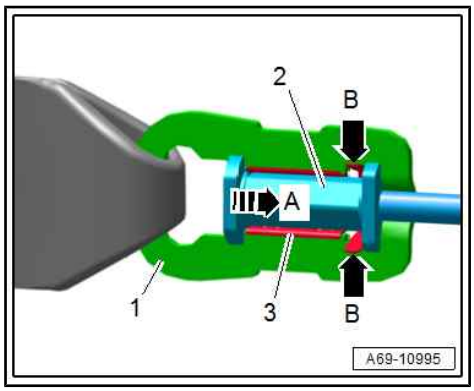
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

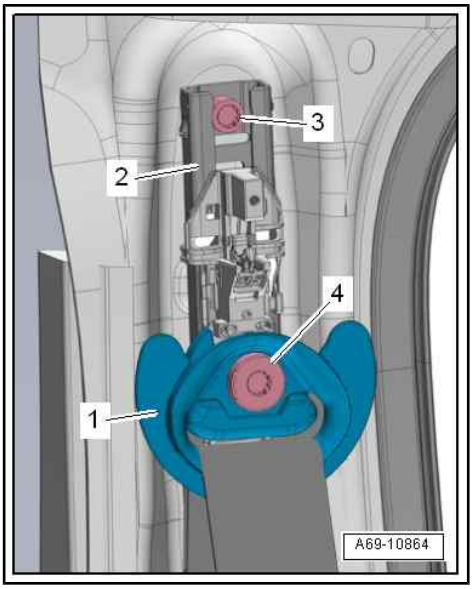
– Engage anchoring pin -2- in securing clip -3- and slide both in direction of -arrow A- until retaining tabs engage -arrows B-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “1.2.3 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), country-specific version”, page 78



1.12 Removing and installing belt height adjuster



Removing

– Press belt height adjustment button and move slide for belt height adjuster to bottom detent position.
– Remove B-pillar trim ⇒ page 295 .
– Move B-pillar trim to side with belt inserted.
– Remove bolt -4-.
– Detach belt guide fitting -1- with belt.
– Remove bolt -3-.
– Lift belt height adjuster -2- off B-pillar.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

Note

- *When supplied as replacement parts, belt height adjusters are always supplied with belt height adjustment slide and set to bottom detent position (assembly position).*
- *If belt height adjusters are removed and re-fitted, they must be set to bottom detent position (assembly position).*

– Engage belt height adjuster -2- in B-pillar.
– Tighten bolt -3-.
– Install belt guide fitting -1- and tighten bolt -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Do not operate belt height adjustment button when fitting B-pillar trim.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– First insert B-pillar trim -3- upwards into mounting at roof.

• Mounting -2- of sliding element of B-pillar trim must engage in retainer -1- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.

– Belt height adjuster as replacement part: After fitting B-pillar trim, press slide firmly upwards.

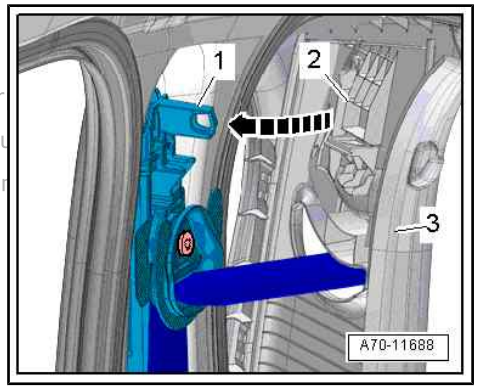
• This will release belt height adjuster from assembly position.

– The following functions must be tested successfully:

• Belt height adjuster must engage audibly in each of the three possible positions (including top position).

• Belt height adjustment button must always automatically return to top position whenever it has been operated.

• After tightening bolt, belt guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical position or in fastening direction.



If any of the listed functions are not OK, check installation of belt height adjuster and renew adjuster if necessary.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)”, page 74

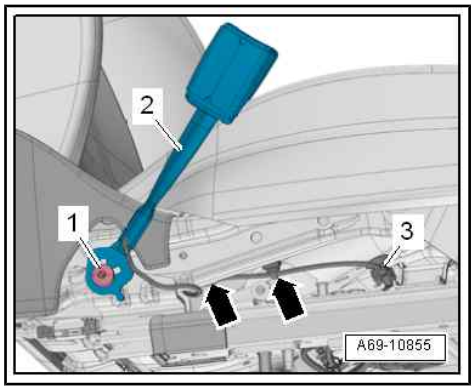
1.13 Removing and installing belt buckle (front)

Removing

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .

– Unplug electrical connector -3- and move wiring clear -arrows-.

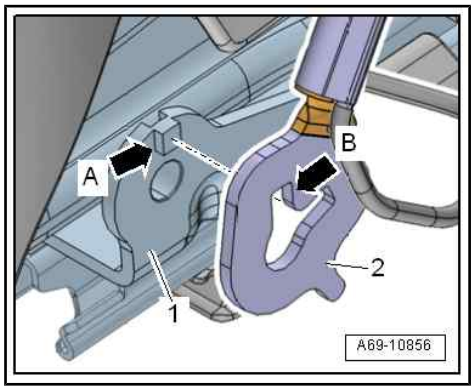
– Remove bolt -1- and detach belt buckle -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Position belt buckle -2- so that recess -arrow B- coincides with lug -arrow A- on seat pan -1-.



WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)”, page 83

1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Drill
- Safety goggles

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

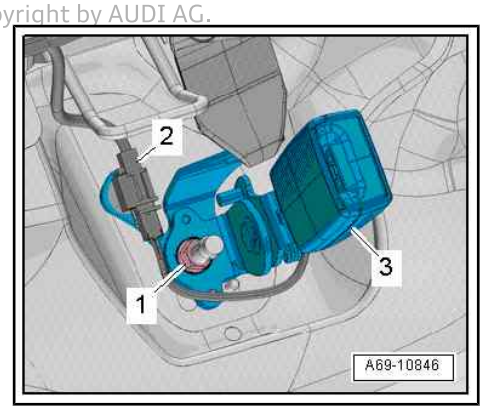
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 464 .

Belt buckle (right-side) with centre belt end fitting (rear):

– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -2- for belt switch.

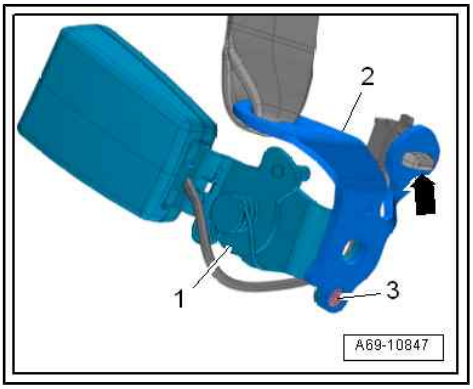
– Unscrew nut -1-.

– Detach belt buckle -3- with belt end fitting.



– If fitted, unclip electrical connector -arrow- for belt switch at belt end fitting.

> **WARNING**
>
> *Risk of eye injuries.*
>
> - *Put on safety goggles.*



– Drill out rivet -3-.

– Detach belt buckle -1- from belt end fitting -2-.

Belt buckles (centre and left-side):

– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -3- for belt switch.

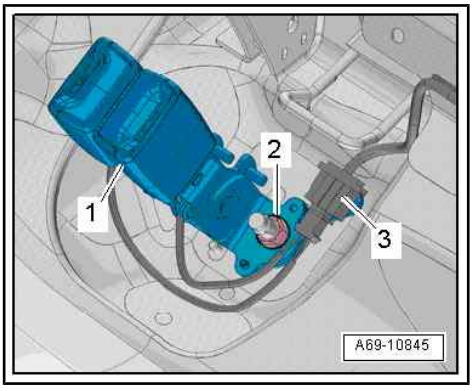
– Unscrew nut -2-.

– Remove belt buckles -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)”, page 84



2 Child seat anchors

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)”, page 108

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)”, page 109

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front)”, page 109

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear)”, page 110

2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)

1 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ Front passenger seat only
- ❑ Bolted to seat pan
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 14
- ❑ Renew child seat anchor if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 109

2 - Cover

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 109

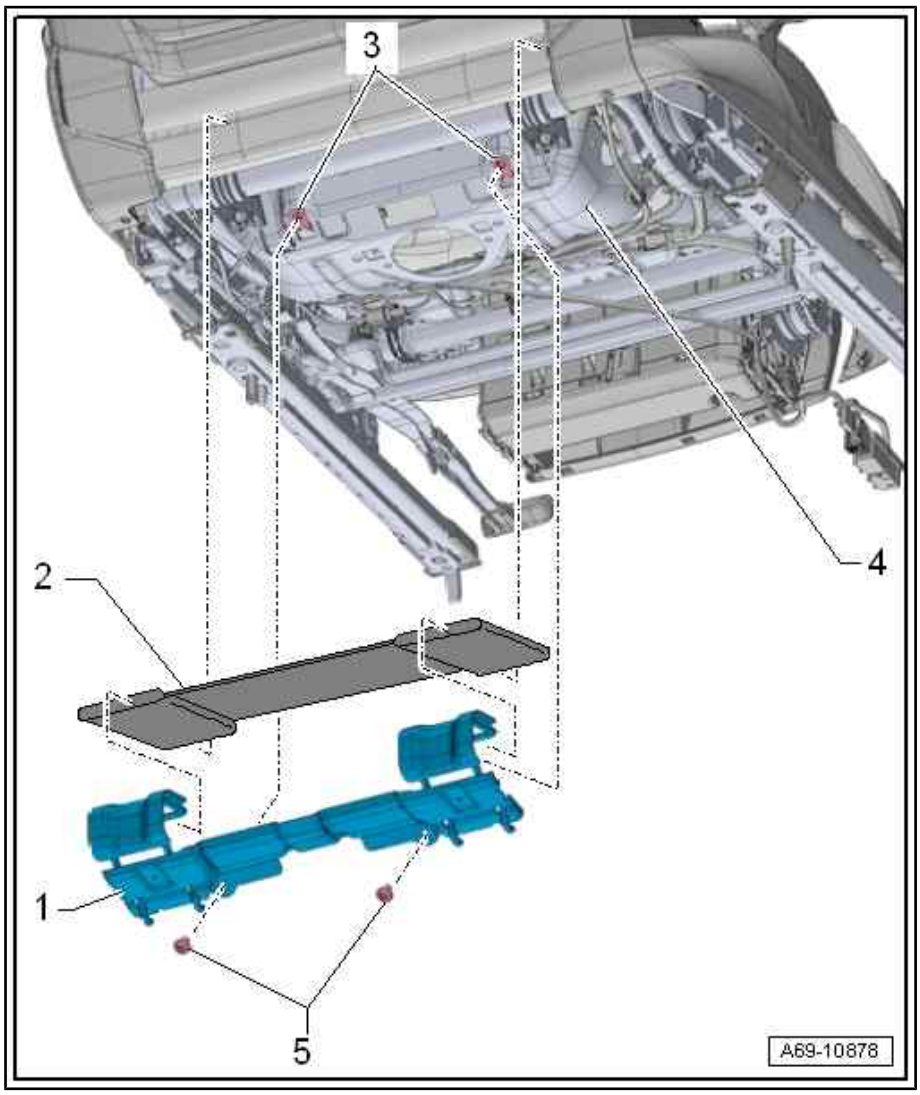
3 - Speed nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Inserted in seat pan
- ❑ Renew speed nuts if damaged or deformed

4 - Seat pan

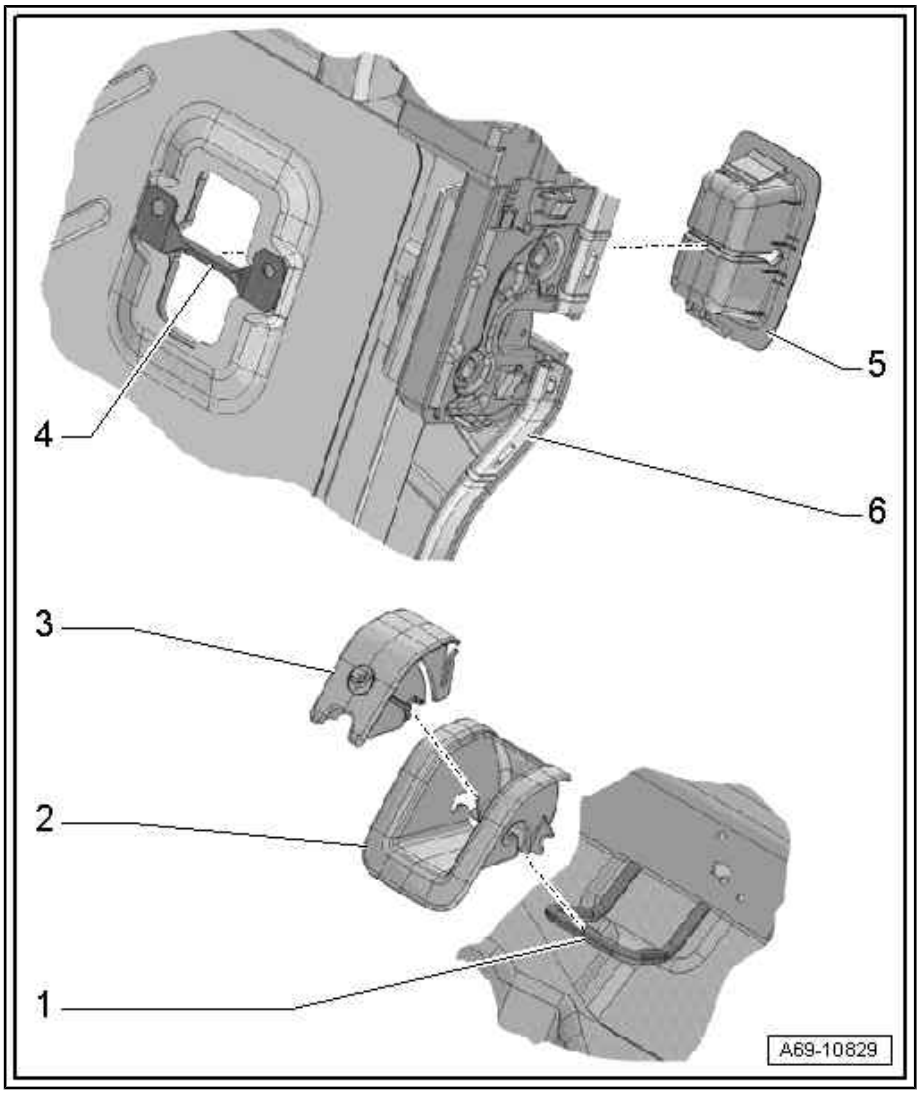
5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)



1 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Welded to vehicle floor

2 - Guide

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 110
- ❑ Must be seated firmly on anchor

3 - Cover

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.4.1 Removing and installing guide for child seat anchor (rear) - rear seat”, page 110
- ❑ Must be seated firmly on anchor

4 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Welded to outer backrest frame

5 - Cover

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 110
- ❑ Engage in anchor and press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Can only be pressed onto rear seat backrest in one position

6 - Rear seat backrest

2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

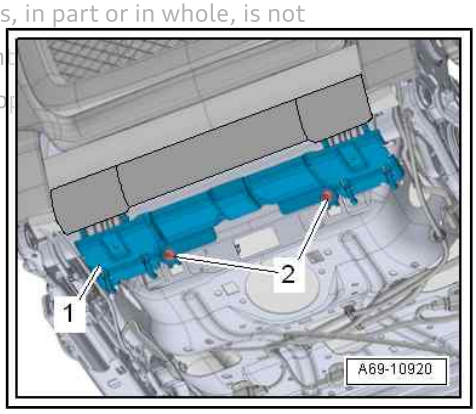
Removing

– Move front passenger seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

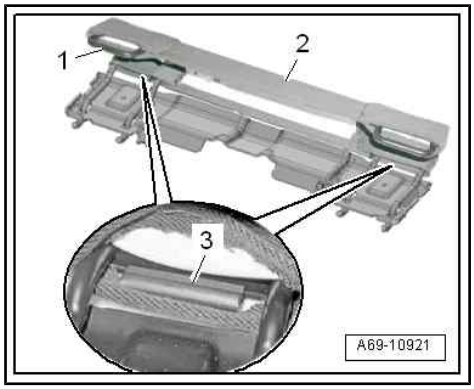
– Fold backrest forwards, or move it forwards as far as it will go.

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Detach child seat anchor -1- with cover from seat pan towards rear.



– Pull cover -2- off child seat anchor -1-; to do so, disengage piping -3- on both sides.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)”, page 108

2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear)

⇒ “2.4.1 Removing and installing guide for child seat anchor (rear) - rear seat”, page 110

⇒ “2.4.2 Removing and installing cover for child seat anchor - rear seat backrest”, page 110

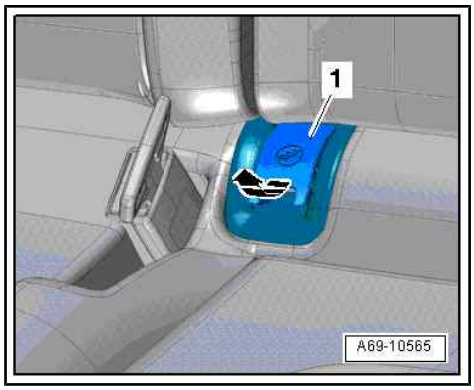
⇒ “2.4.3 Removing and installing cover for child seat anchor on rear shelf - Saloon”, page 111

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.1 Removing and installing guide for child seat anchor (rear) - rear seat

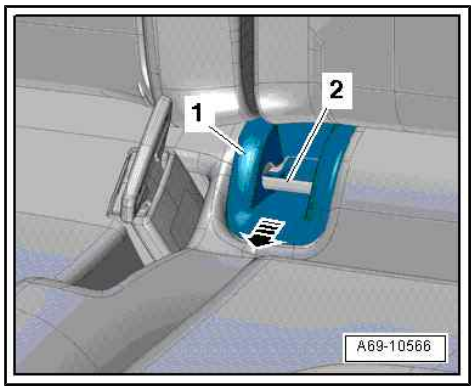
Removing

– Unclip cover -1- for child seat anchor from anchor -arrow- and detach.



– Press guide -1- for child seat anchor downwards into recess and disengage from anchor -2-.

– Take guide for child seat anchor out towards front -arrow-.



Installing

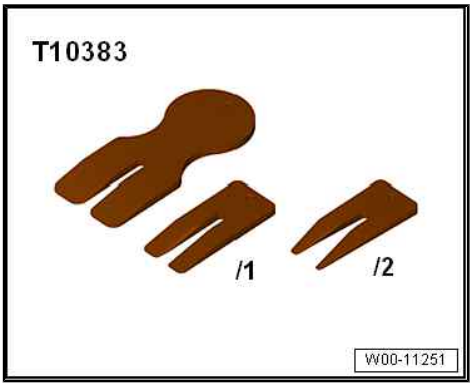
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)”, page 109

2.4.2 Removing and installing cover for child seat anchor - rear seat backrest

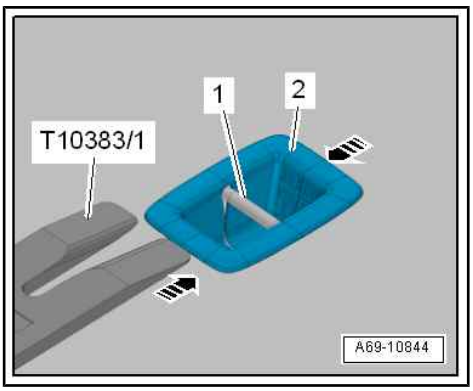
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.
– Release retaining tabs using wedge -T10383/1- -arrows- and prise off cover -2- for child seat anchor upwards off rear seat backrest.
– Carefully pull cover for child seat anchor off anchor -1- and remove.



Installing

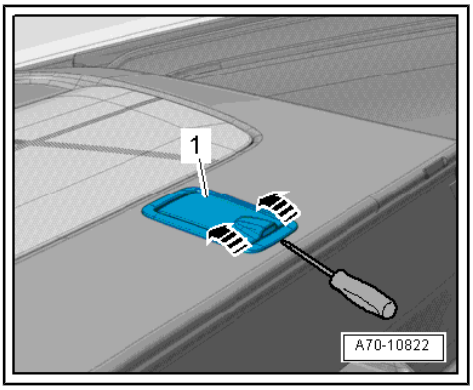
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)", page 109

2.4.3 Removing and installing cover for child seat anchor on rear shelf - Saloon

Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.
– Use screwdriver to unclip cover for child seat anchor -1- -arrows- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.9 Exploded view - rear shelf", page 284

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Airbag system

⇒ “3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system”, page 112

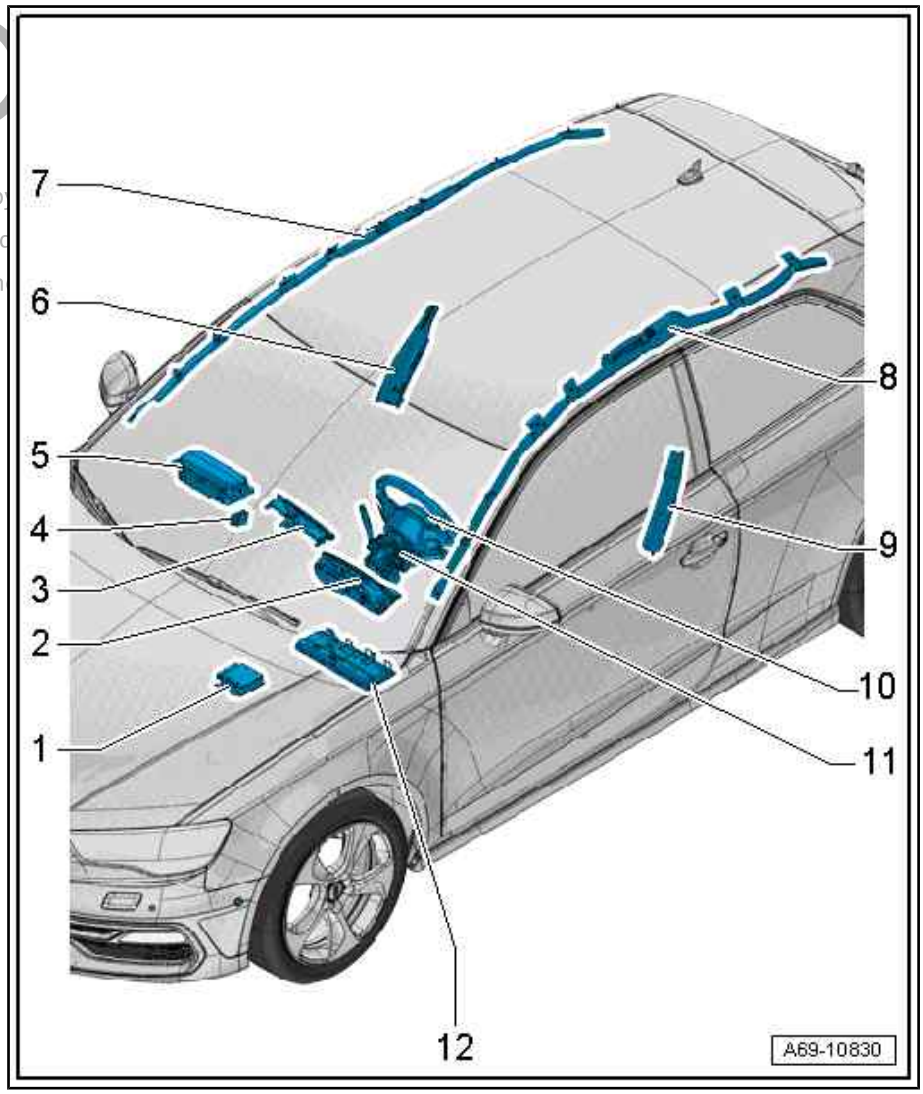
3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system

⇒ “3.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system, A3”, page 112

⇒ “3.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system, A3 Sportback”, page 114

⇒ “3.1.3 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system, Saloon”, page 116

3.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system, A3



1 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- Exploded view ⇒ page 118

2 - Airbag warning lamp - K75-

- Integrated in dash panel insert
- Cannot be renewed separately
- Removing and installing dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert

3 - Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145-

- Cannot be renewed separately
- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

4 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 146

5 - Airbag (front passenger side)

- With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-
- Can be disabled and deactivated via key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 139

6 - Side airbag (front passenger side)

- With side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 149

Protected by copyright. Copy
permitted unless authorised
with respect to the correctn

7 - Curtain airbag (front passenger side)

- ❑ With front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 155

8 - Curtain airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 155

9 - Side airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 149

10 - Airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With airbag igniter on driver side - N95-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 126

11 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- ❑ With coil connector - F350-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Exploded view - steering column switch module

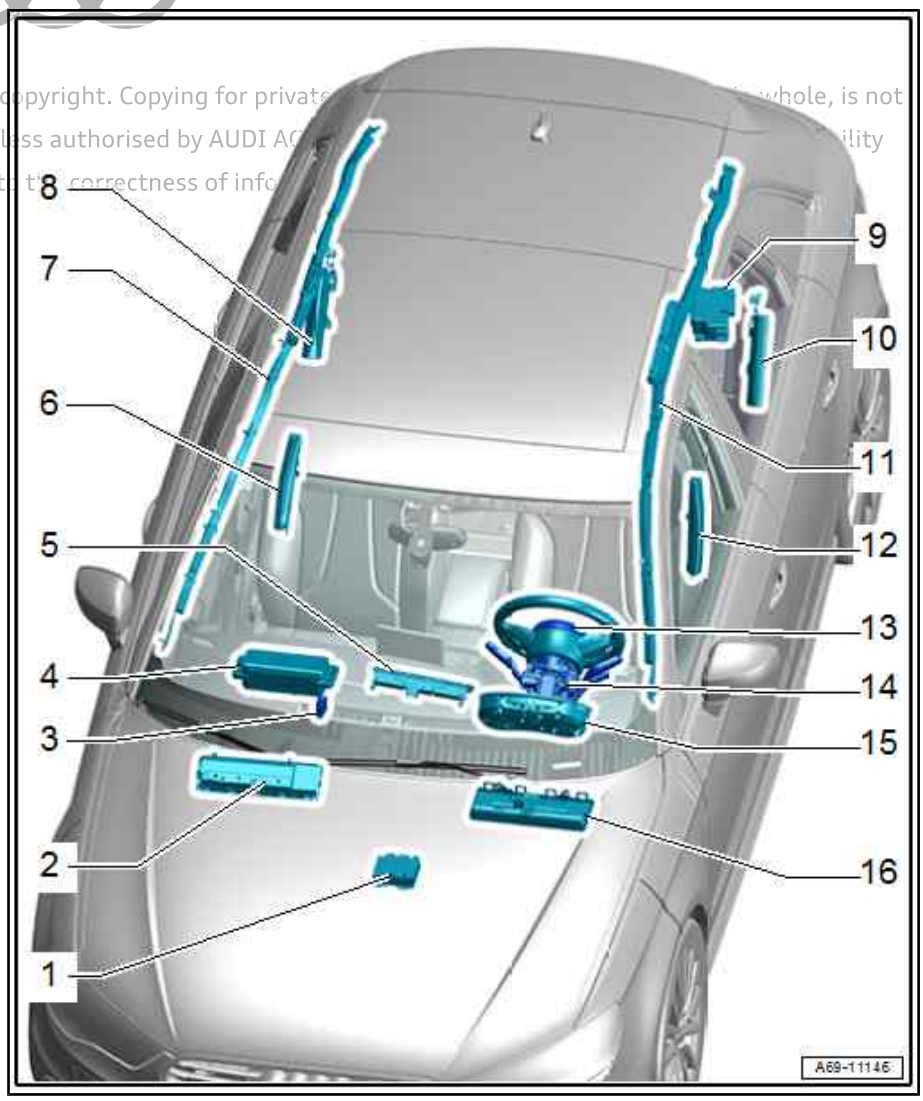
12 - Driver side knee airbag igniter - N295-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 167

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system, A3 Sportback

Protected by copyright. Copying for private ... whole, is not ... unless authorised by AUDI AG ... ility with respect to the correctness of info...



1 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- Exploded view ⇒ page 118

2 - Front passenger side knee airbag igniter - N296-

- Country-specific version
- Exploded view ⇒ page 168

3 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 146

4 - Airbag (front passenger side)

- With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-
- Country-specific version: with airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-
- Can be disabled and deactivated via key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 139

5 - Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145-

- Cannot be renewed separately
- Removing and installing
  ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

6 - Side airbag (front passenger side)

- With side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 149

7 - Curtain airbag (front passenger side)

- With front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 155

8 - Side airbag, rear (passenger side)

- With rear side airbag igniter on passenger side - N202-
- Depending on vehicle equipment
- Exploded view ⇒ page 150

9 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- Only on Audi RS3
- Exploded view ⇒ page 122

10 - Side airbag, rear (driver side)

- With rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 150

11 - Curtain airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 155

12 - Side airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 149

13 - Airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With airbag igniter on driver side - N95-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 126

14 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- ❑ With coil connector - F350-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Exploded view - steering column switch module

15 - Airbag warning lamp - K75-

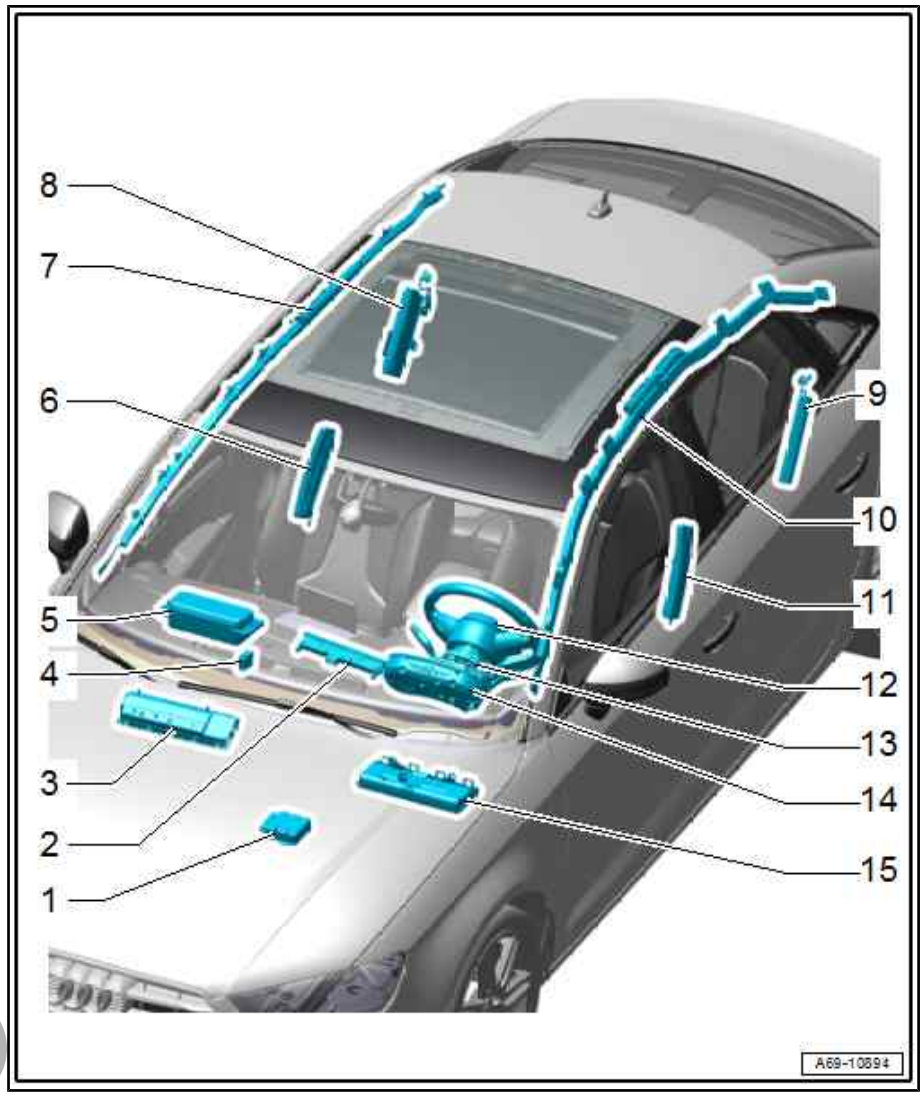
- ❑ Integrated in dash panel insert
- ❑ Cannot be renewed separately
- ❑ Removing and installing dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert

16 - Driver side knee airbag igniter - N295-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 167

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1.3 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system, Saloon



1 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- Exploded view ⇒ page 118

2 - Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145-

- Cannot be renewed separately
- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

3 - Knee airbag (front passenger side)

- With front passenger side knee airbag igniter - N296-
- Country-specific version
- Exploded view ⇒ page 168

4 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 146

5 - Airbag (front passenger side)

- With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-
- Country-specific version: with airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-
- Can be disabled and deactivated via key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 139

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 - Side airbag (front passenger side)

- With side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 149

7 - Curtain airbag (front passenger side)

- With front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 155

8 - Side airbag, rear (passenger side)

- With rear side airbag igniter on passenger side - N202-
- Depending on vehicle equipment
- Exploded view ⇒ page 150

9 - Side airbag, rear (driver side)

- With rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- Depending on vehicle equipment

- Exploded view ⇒ page 150

10 - Curtain airbag (driver side)

- With driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 155

11 - Side airbag (driver side)

- With side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 149

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Airbag (driver side)

- With airbag igniter on driver side - N95-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 126

13 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- With coil connector - F350-
- Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Exploded view - steering column switch module

14 - Airbag warning lamp - K75-

- Integrated in dash panel insert
- Cannot be renewed separately
- Removing and installing dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert

15 - Knee airbag (driver side)

- With driver side knee airbag igniter - N295-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 167

4 Airbag control unit

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit”, page 118

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 ”, page 118

4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit

1 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 118
- ❑ Earth connection for airbag control unit is provided by securing housing to body

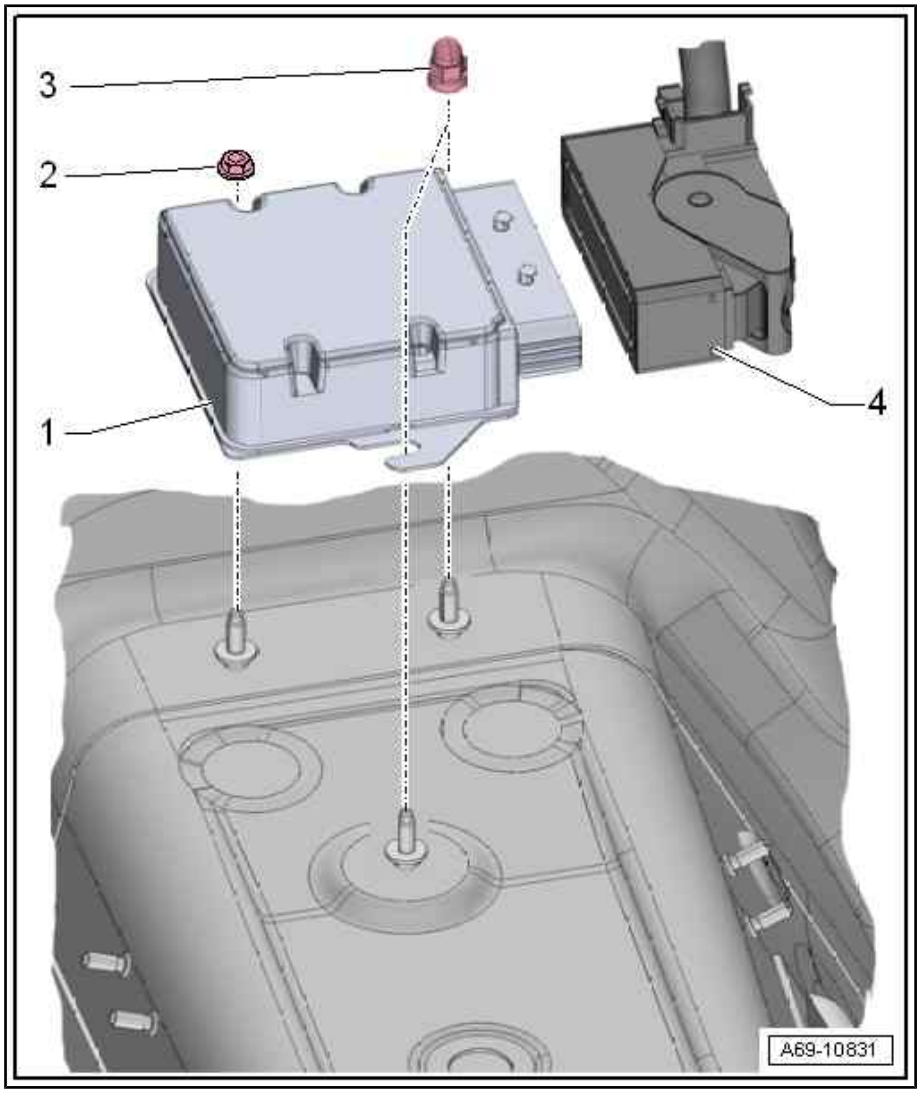
2 - Nut

- ❑ 9 Nm
- ❑ Threads must be free of paint and dirt; nut and earth stud provide earth connection for control unit

3 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm
- ❑ Threads must be free of paint and dirt; nut and earth stud provide earth connection for control unit

4 - Electrical connector



4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit - J234-

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

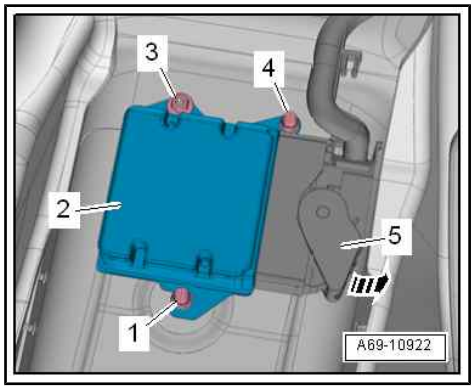
– Remove centre console ⇒ page 46 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove brackets (front) for centre console (driver and passenger side) ⇒ page 50 .
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew nut -3- at front of driver's footwell.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Unplug electrical connector at front of front passenger's footwell; to do so, release catch and open retaining clip -5- at connector -arrow-.
– Remove nuts -1, 4-.
– Lift airbag control unit -2- off studs and take out towards passenger side.

Note

For greater clarity the dash panel and heater and air conditioning unit are not shown in the illustration.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

- *The airbag control unit -J234- must be encoded after it has been renewed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit”, page 118

5 Battery isolation igniter

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter”, page 122

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter”, page 124

5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter

- Vehicles with battery isolation igniter that is not available individually ⇒ page 122
- Vehicles with individually available battery isolation igniter ⇒ page 122

Vehicles with battery isolation igniter that is not available individually

1 - Positive wire

- ❑ Leading to engine

2 - Nuts

18 Nm

3 - Main fuse box in luggage compartment

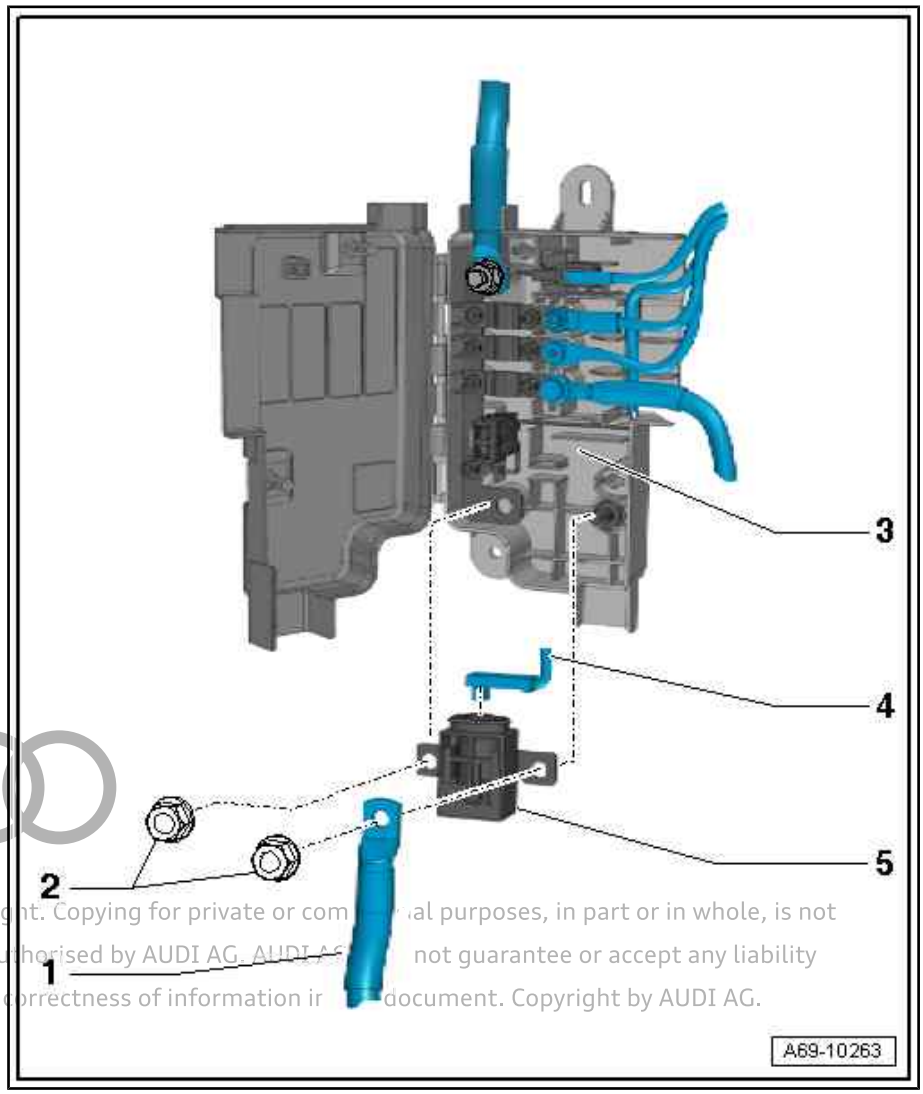
- ❑ Fitting location: in main fuse box in luggage compartment (underneath moulded insert for tools)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Removing and installing electronics box

4 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For battery isolation igniter - N253-

5 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

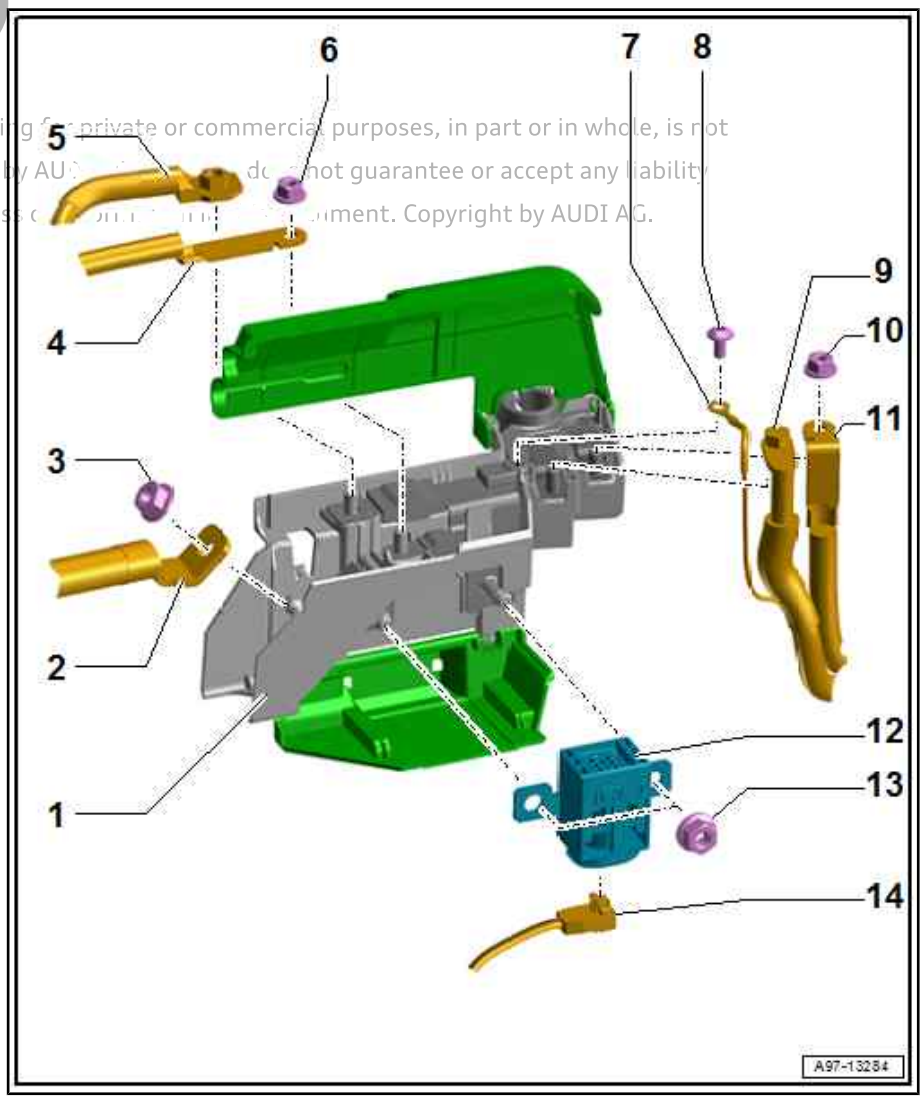
- ❑ Integrated into main fuse box in luggage compartment
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Only available together with -item 3-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Removing and installing electronics box



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Vehicles with individually available battery isolation igniter

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AU... do not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness ... ument. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Main fuse holder

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

2 - Wire

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

3 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

4 - Wire

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

5 - Wire

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

6 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

7 - Wire

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

9 - Wire

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

10 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

11 - Wire

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

12 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 124

13 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 15 Nm

14 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For battery isolation igniter - N253-

5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter

Depending on the version, the battery isolation igniter - N253- can be renewed individually; allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue . The following description refers to the battery isolation igniter that can be renewed individually.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Vehicle diagnostic tester

Removing

WARNING

- ♦ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- ♦ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*

Note

- ♦ *If the airbag warning lamp - K75- is on after an accident, use the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester to check whether crash data have been stored. If this is the case, check whether the fault »Resistance too high« is stored in the event memory for the battery isolation igniter - N253- . If this fault is stored in the memory, the battery isolation igniter - N253- must be renewed.*
- ♦ *Each time the airbag is triggered, the battery isolation igniter - N253- electrically isolates the circuit. Battery isolation igniter - N253- must be renewed after triggering.*

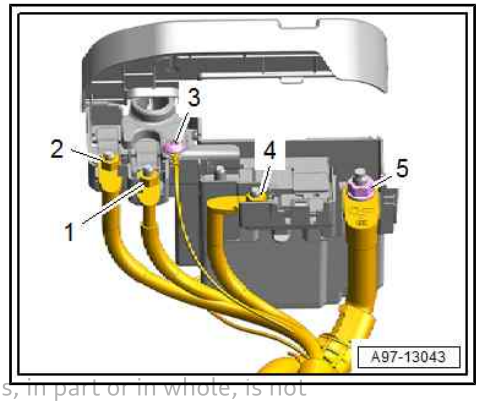
– Remove luggage compartment floor.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove tool box with tools.

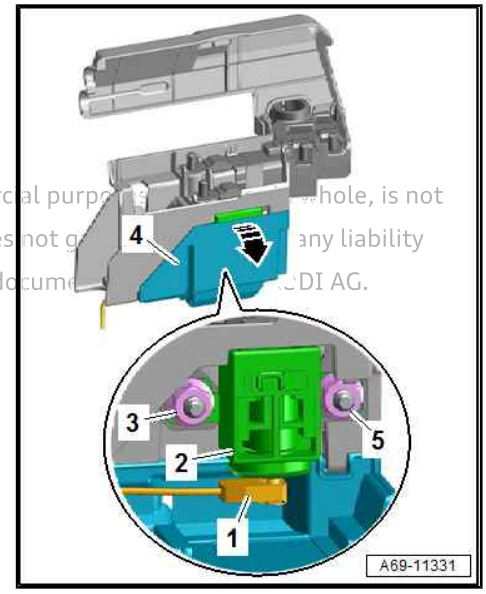
– Unbolt electrical wiring -4, 5-.

– Move electrical wiring clear to the side.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release catch and open cover -4- -arrow-.
– Remove nuts -3, 5-.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Reproduction of this Audi publication in whole or in part for commercial purposes, in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove battery isolation igniter - N253- .
– Release connector locking element with a small flat-bladed screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -1- at igniter -2-.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– As a final step, interrogate event memory of airbag control unit -J234- and deal with any entries ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter", page 122

6 Airbag (driver side)

⇒ “6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)”, page 126

⇒ “6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters”, page 129

⇒ “6.3 Renewing connector at airbag”, page 136

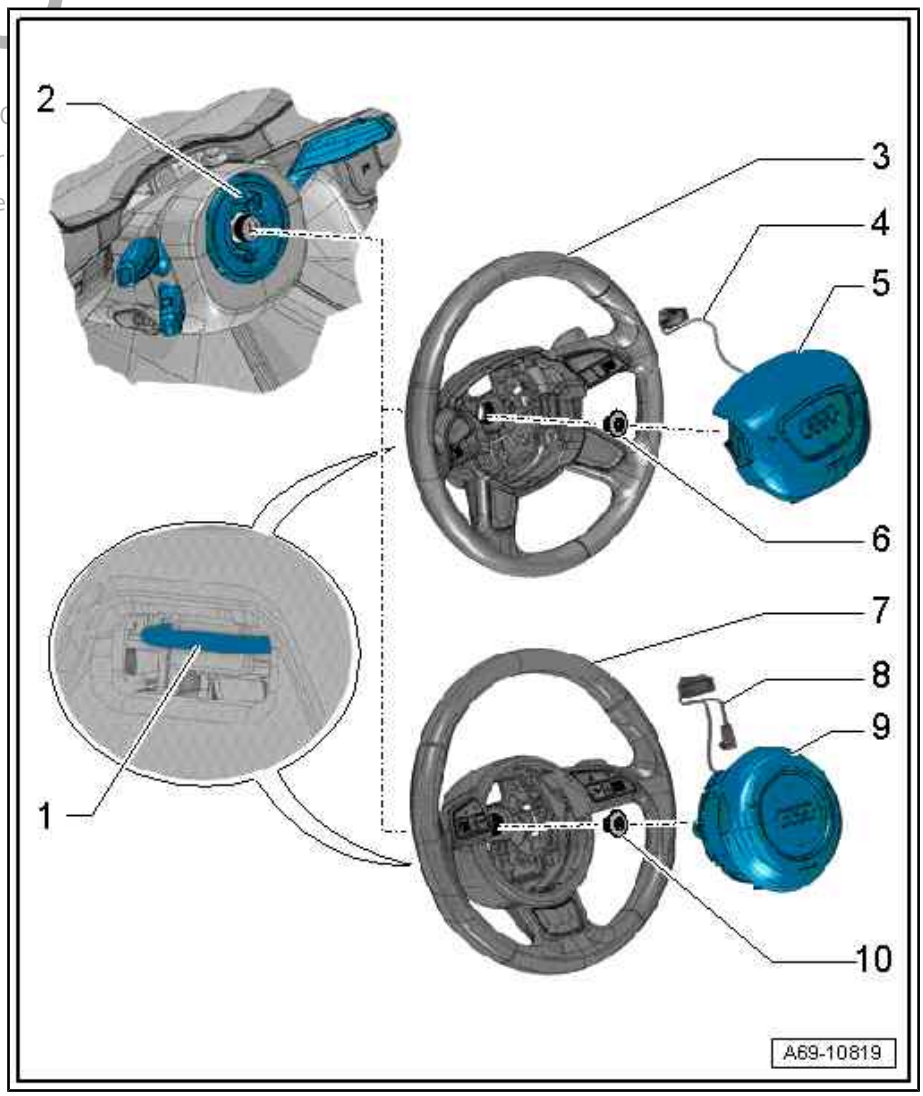
6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)

⇒ “6.1.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side), vehicles up to model year 2016”, page 126

⇒ “6.1.2 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side), vehicles from model year 2017 onwards”, page 128

6.1.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side), vehicles up to model year 2016

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, with respect to the corre



1 - Retaining clip

- To release, use Torx screwdriver T25 (length approx. 100 mm)

2 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- With coil connector - F350-
- Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Exploded view - steering column switch module

3 - 4-spoke steering wheel

- Equipment version
- Exploded view ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

4 - Wiring harness

- For airbag igniter on driver side - N95-
- Renewing ⇒ page 136
- To secure in position, press into recesses in steering wheel

5 - Airbag (driver side)

- With airbag igniter on driver side - N95-

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 129

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

7 - 3-spoke steering wheel

- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

8 - Wiring harness

- ❑ For airbag igniter on driver side - N95-
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 136
- ❑ To secure in position, press into recesses in steering wheel

9 - Airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With airbag igniter on driver side - N95-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 129

10 - Bolt

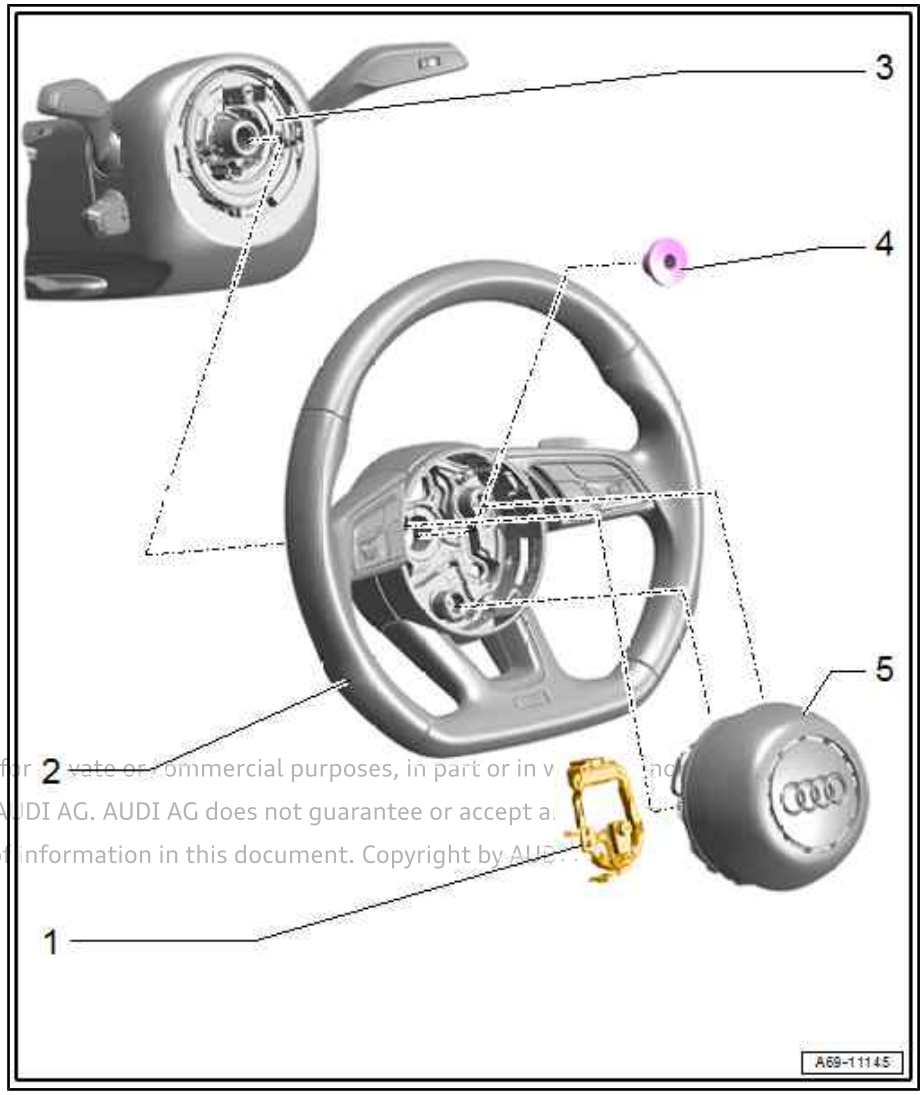
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.1.2 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side), vehicles from model year 2017 onwards

Note

The illustration shows the round airbag unit as an example.



1 - Electrical wiring harness

- For airbag igniter on driver side - N95-
- Renewing ⇒ page 136

2 - Steering wheel

- Exploded view ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

3 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Exploded view - steering column switch module

4 - Bolt

- Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

5 - Airbag (driver side)

- With airbag igniter on driver side - N95-

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently. Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

- To release, use Torx screwdriver T25 (length approx. 100 mm)
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 131

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in v... no... authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept a... with regard to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI...

6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters

⇒ "6.2.1 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters - vehicles up to model year 2016", page 129

⇒ "6.2.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards", page 131

6.2.1 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters - vehicles up to model year 2016

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torx screwdriver T25, approx. 100 mm (commercially available)

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*

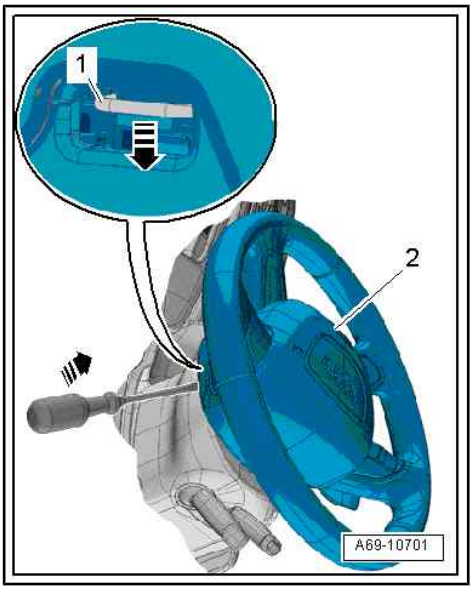
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Turn steering wheel so that opening in back of steering wheel is pointing straight upwards (approx. 12 o'clock position).

– Using Torx screwdriver T25 (length approx. 100 mm), release retaining clip -1- for airbag (driver side) -2- -arrows-.



Note

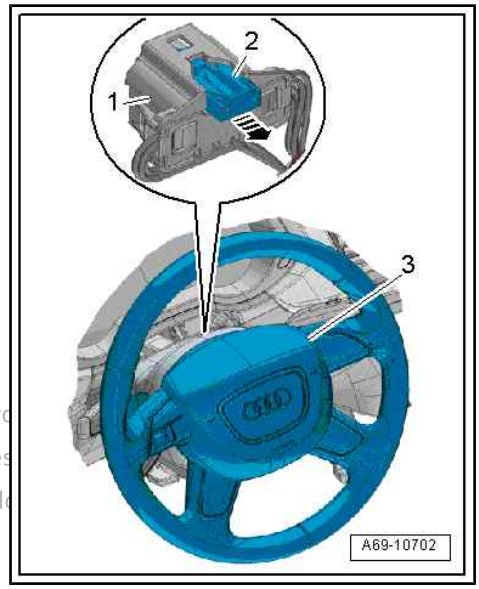
Using a flat-bladed screwdriver could damage the electrical wiring.

– Turn steering wheel back through 180° and repeat procedure on opposite side of steering wheel.

– Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Pull airbag (driver side) -3- slightly away from steering wheel.
– Pull out connector locking element -2- -arrow-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Equipment version with multi-function and tiptronic steering wheel: Unplug electrical connector.

WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Connect electrical plug for coil connector to airbag coupling at return ring with slip ring.
– To secure electrical connector in position, press it into recesses in steering wheel.
– Position airbag (driver side) in steering wheel and press on until it engages audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this d

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

– As a final step, interrogate and erase the event memory of the airbag control unit as unplugging the electrical connectors may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "6.1.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side), vehicles up to model year 2016", page 126

6.2.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torx screwdriver T25, approx. 100 mm (commercially available)

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

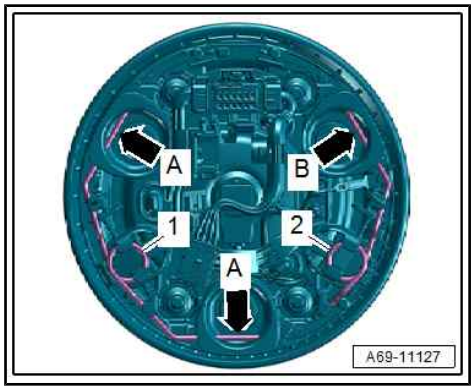
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

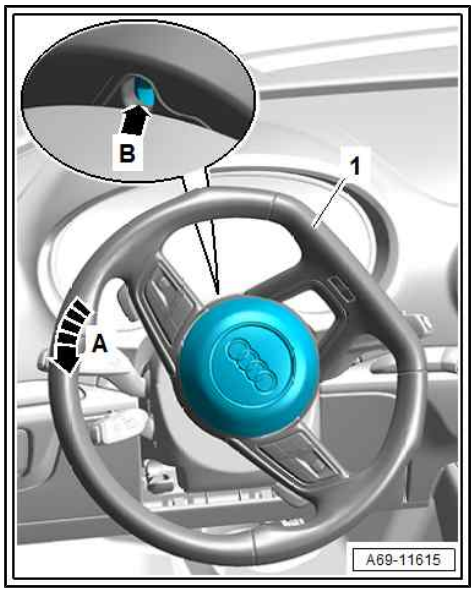
Note:

Airbag unit is engaged in steering wheel at three points -arrows-.

- Retaining clips -1- secure fasteners -A- of airbag unit to steering wheel.
- Retaining clips -2- secure fastener -B- of airbag unit to steering wheel.



– Turn steering wheel -1- approx. 120° anti-clockwise -arrow A- from straight-ahead position so that opening -arrow B- in back of steering wheel is pointing straight upwards (approx. 12 o'clock position).

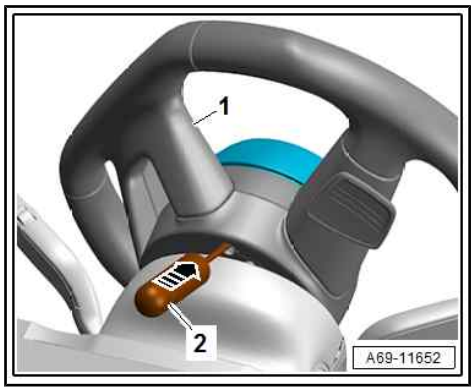


Caution

Risk of damage to electrical wiring.

- *Do not use a flat-bladed screwdriver.*

– Insert a cross-head screwdriver -2- or Torx screwdriver T25 (approx. 100 mm long) as far as it will go into opening -arrow-; this will perforate a thin layer of foam inside the steering wheel -1-.



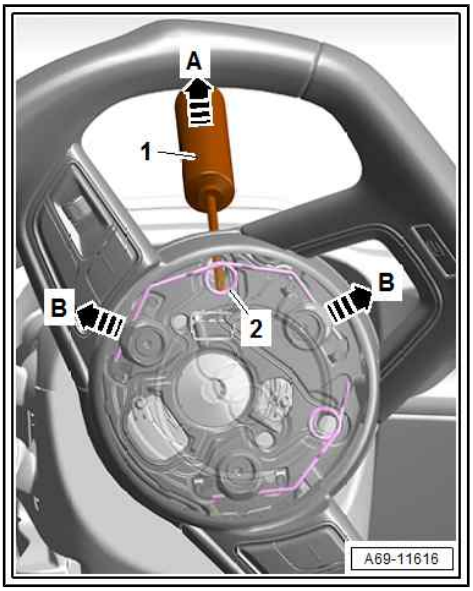
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

Risk of damage to airbag unit

- *Do not use any force when attempting to remove the airbag unit. If the airbag unit cannot be released, press it back into the steering wheel and repeat the procedure.*

– Airbag fasteners on steering wheel are released -arrows B- by pressing down retaining clip -2-; to do so, pull screwdriver -1- firmly upwards -arrow A-.

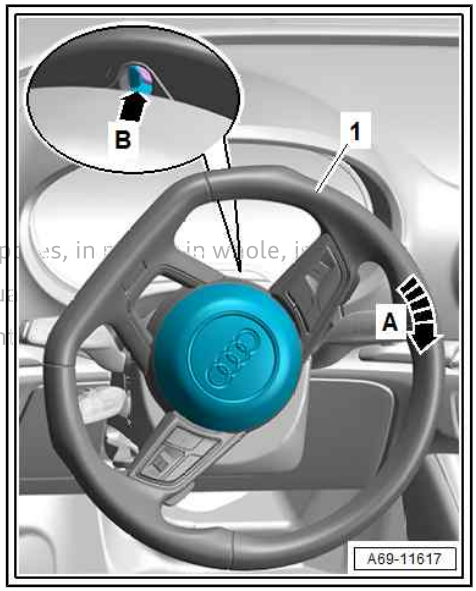


Note:

Check that both airbag fasteners -arrows B- have been released at steering wheel.

– Turn steering wheel back and make sure that airbag does not engage again on side that has already been released.

– Turn steering wheel -1- approx. 120° clockwise -arrow A- from straight-ahead position so that opening -arrow B- in back of steering wheel is pointing straight upwards (approx. 12 o'clock position).



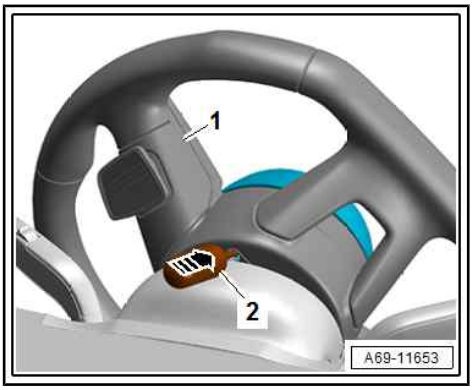
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Caution

Risk of damage to electrical wiring.

- *Do not use a flat-bladed screwdriver.*

– Insert a cross-head screwdriver -2- or Torx screwdriver T25 (approx. 100 mm long) as far as it will go into opening -arrow-; this will perforate a thin layer of foam inside the steering wheel -1-.

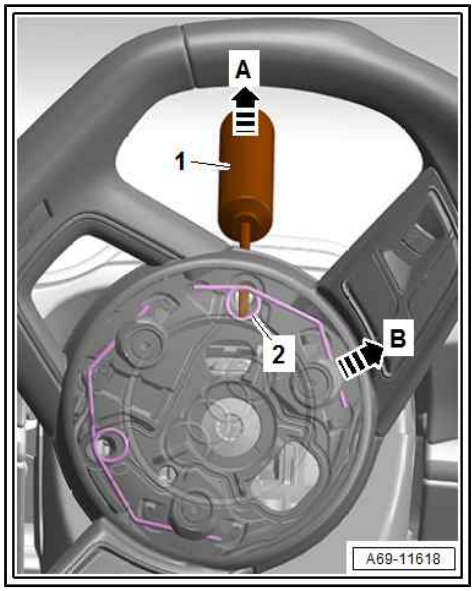


Caution

Risk of damage to airbag unit

- *Do not use any force when attempting to remove the airbag unit. If the airbag unit cannot be released, press it back into the steering wheel and repeat the procedure.*

– Airbag fastener on steering wheel is released -arrow B- by pressing down retaining clip -2-; to do so, pull screwdriver -1- firmly upwards -arrow A-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead) and make sure that airbag does not engage again.

WARNING

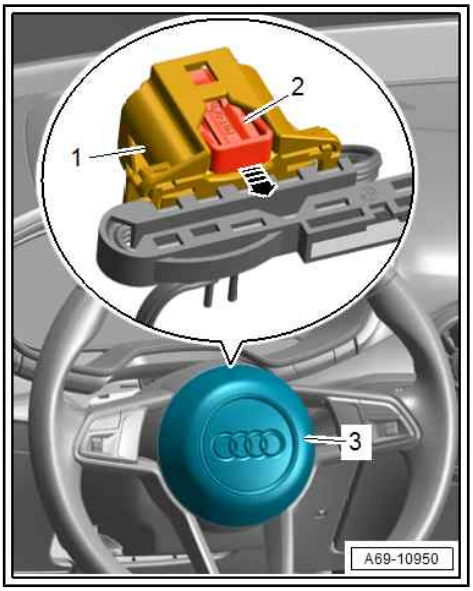
Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Pull airbag -3- slightly away from steering wheel.

– Pull out connector locking element -2- -arrow-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for steering wheel buttons.



WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.*

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

– Connect electrical plug for coil connector to airbag coupling at return ring with slip ring.

– To secure electrical connector in position, press it into recesses in steering wheel.

– Position airbag (driver side) in steering wheel and press on until it engages audibly.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

– As a final step, interrogate and erase the event memory of the airbag control unit as unplugging the electrical connectors may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.1.2 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side), vehicles from model year 2017 onwards", page 128

6.3 Renewing connector at airbag

Note

The procedure for the round airbag unit is described as an example.

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

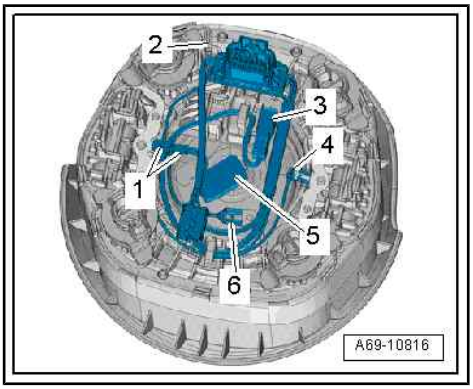
– Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ page 129 .

Vehicles up to model year 2016:

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *The mechanic must remain in the vehicle for the duration of the procedure to avoid electrostatic charge.*

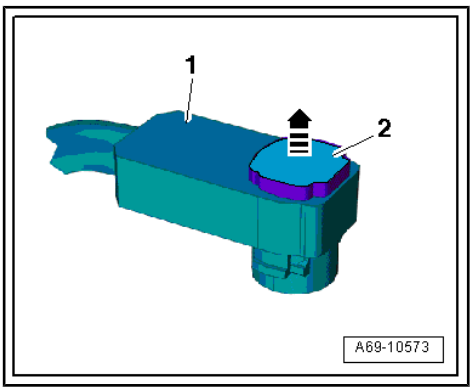


– Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connectors -1, 2, 4 and 6-.

– Unplug electrical connectors -3- at adapter and -5- for -N95- .

– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Disengage wiring harness at retainers and detach.

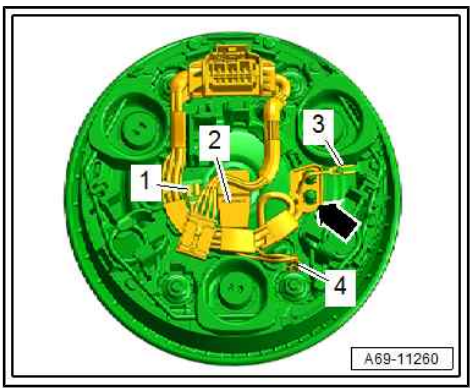


Vehicles from model year 2017 onwards:

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *The mechanic must remain in the vehicle for the duration of the procedure to avoid electrostatic charge.*



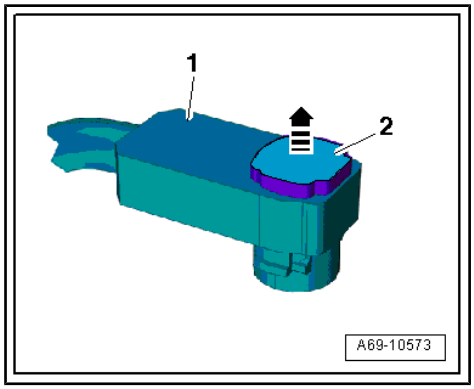
– Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connectors -1, 3 and 4-.

– Unclip wiring harness from mountings -arrow-.

– Unplug electrical connector -2- for -N95- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.

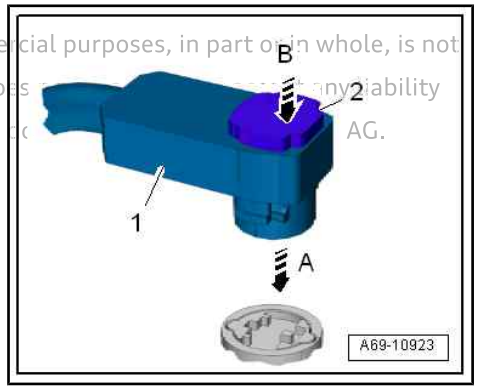


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *The mechanic must remain in the vehicle for the duration of the procedure to avoid electrostatic charge.*



– Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.

– Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ **"6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)", page 126**

7 Airbag (front passenger side)

⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)”, page 139

⇒ “7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters”, page 142

⇒ “7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side”, page 146

7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)

⇒ “7.1.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)”, page 139

⇒ “7.1.2 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side), country-specific version”, page 141

7.1.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)

1 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

2 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Stud

- ❑ For airbag

Caution

Risk of malfunctions if earth connection is not OK.

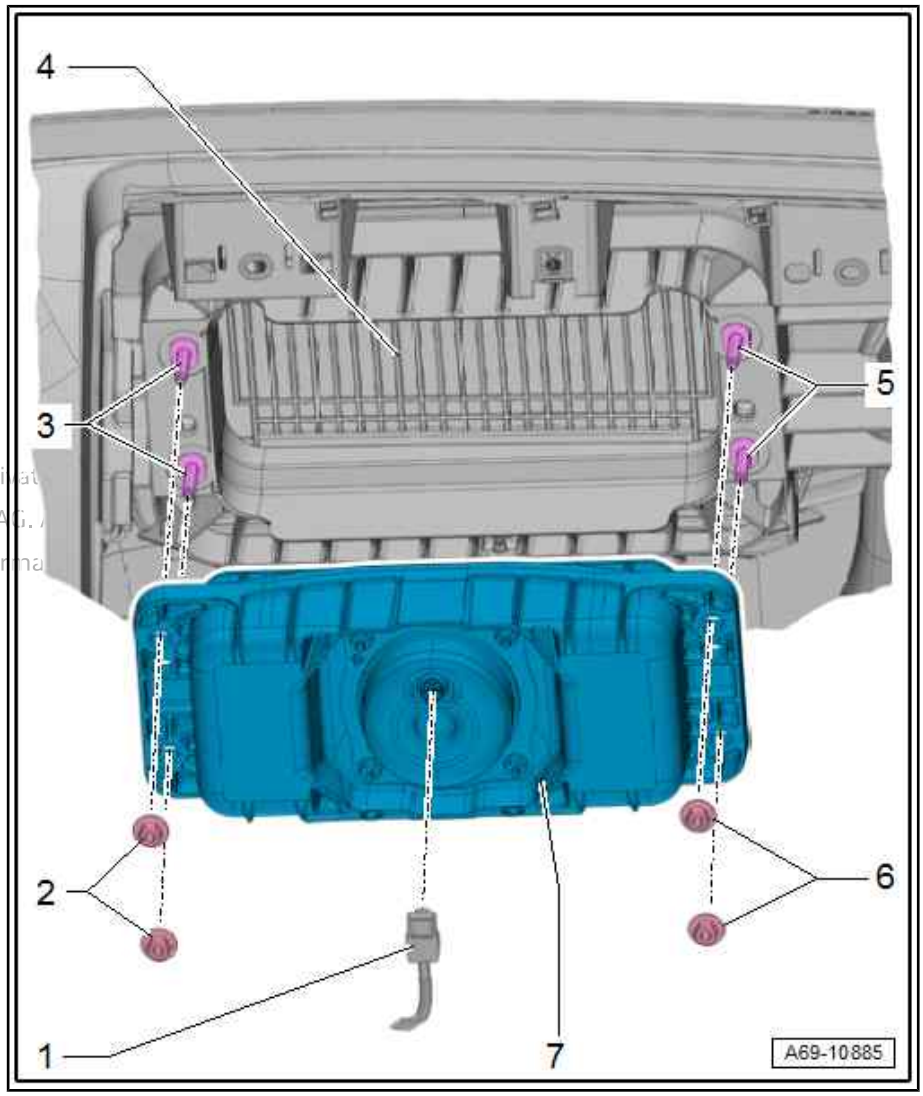
Studs and contact surface must be free of paint, coating and corrosion; bolted connection provides earth connection for airbag

- ❑ Check that threaded bushes are securely seated before installing airbag ⇒ page 144

4 - Dash panel

5 - Stud

- ❑ For airbag



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Caution

Risk of malfunctions if earth connection is not OK.

Studs and contact surface must be free of paint, coating and corrosion; bolted connection provides earth connection for airbag

- ❑ Check that threaded bushes are securely seated before installing airbag ⇒ page 144

6 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

7 - Airbag (front passenger side)

- ❑ With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

WARNING

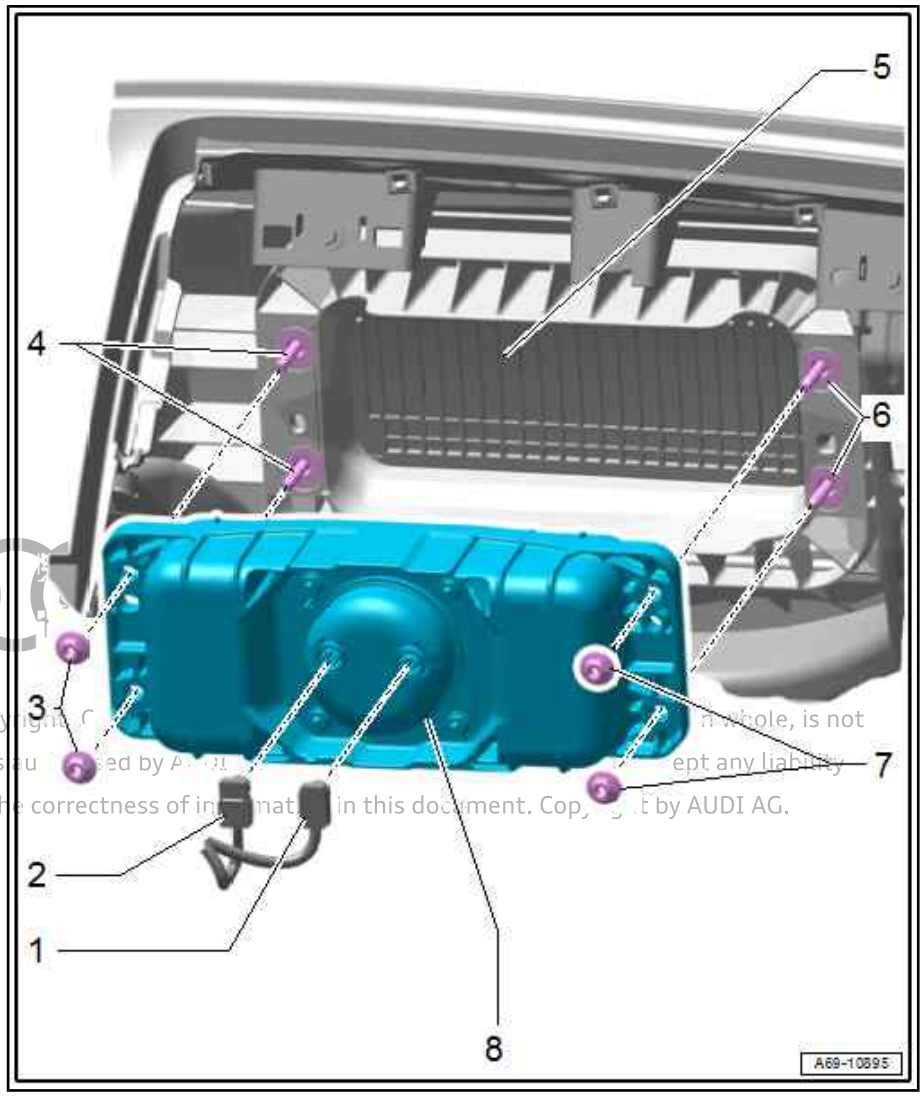
Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 142

7.1.2 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side), country-specific version



1 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-

2 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

3 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Stud

- ❑ For airbag

Caution

Risk of malfunctions if earth connection is not OK.
Studs and contact surface must be free of paint, coating and corrosion; bolted connection provides earth connection for airbag

- ❑ Check that threaded bushes are securely seated before installing airbag ⇒ page 144

5 - Dash panel

6 - Stud

- ❑ For airbag

Caution

Risk of malfunctions if earth connection is not OK.
Studs and contact surface must be free of paint, coating and corrosion; bolted connection provides earth connection for airbag

- ❑ Check that threaded bushes are securely seated before installing airbag ⇒ page 144

7 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

8 - Airbag (front passenger side)

- ❑ With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131- and airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- ❑ Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 142

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*
- *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

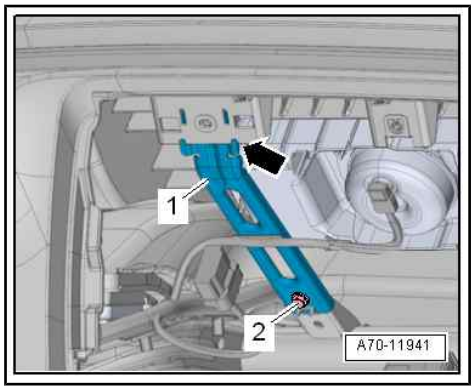
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 27 .

– Unclip electrical wiring at support for dash panel.

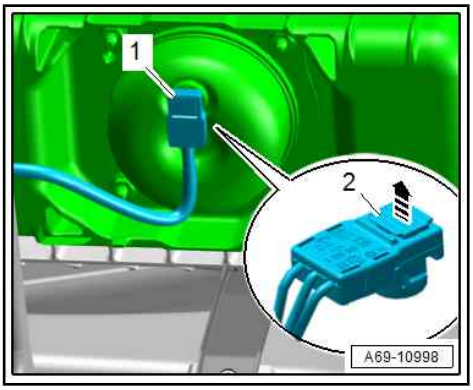
– Remove bolt -2-.

– Disengage support -1- at dash panel -arrow- and detach.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

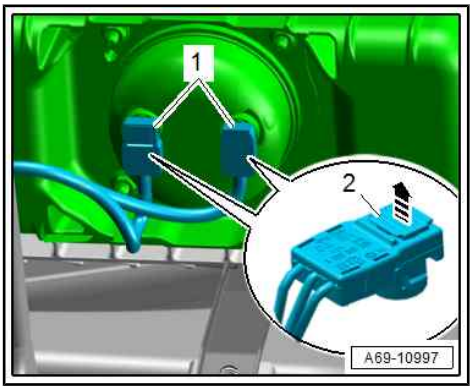


– Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connector -1- at airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131- .

Country-specific version:

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



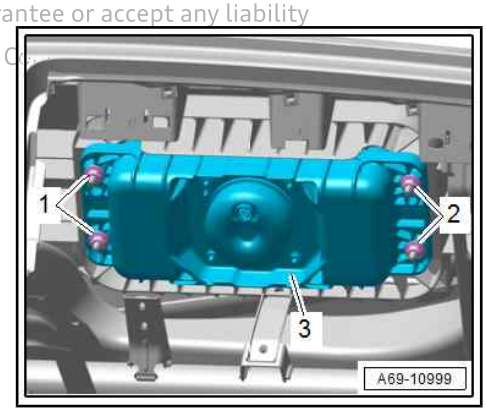
– Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connectors -1- at airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131- and airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

All vehicles (continued):

WARNING

Hold airbag unit to prevent it from dropping.



– Remove nuts -1, 2-.
– Take out airbag (front passenger side) -3- downwards.

WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

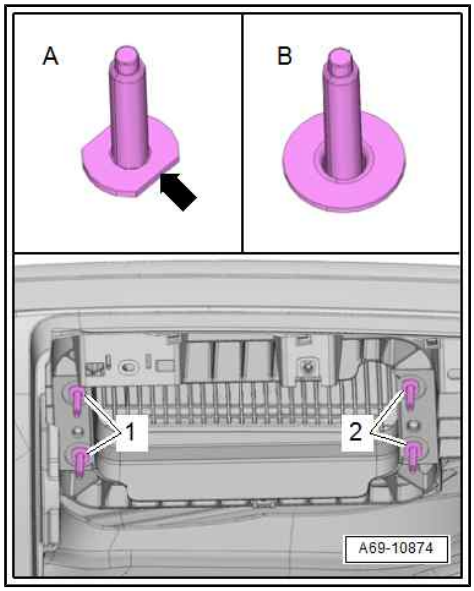
Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

Check that threaded bushes -1, 2- are securely seated on studs for airbag:

- Version A: Threaded bush with flat section -arrow- (if necessary tighten to 2 Nm).
- Version B: Do not tighten round threaded bushes further.

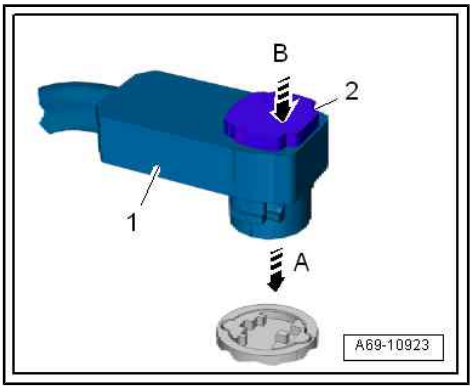


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

– Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.

– Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.



Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)”, page 139 ,
⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 241

7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

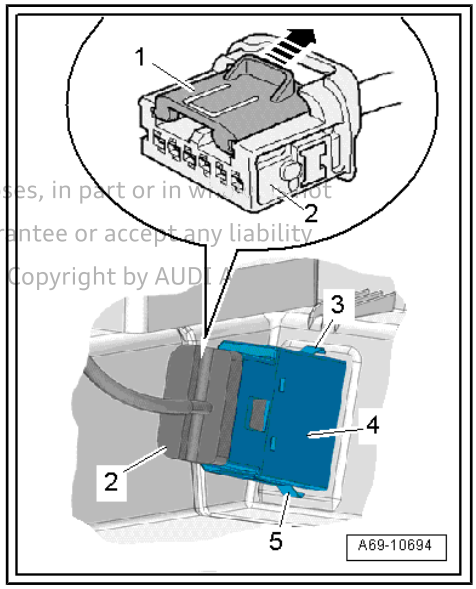
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 27 .

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Distribution and/or reproduction of this document for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector is disengaged.
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Release retaining springs -3- and -5- and press key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- -item 4- out of housing for key-operated switch.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Make sure that key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- engages audibly in housing.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 21

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 Side airbags

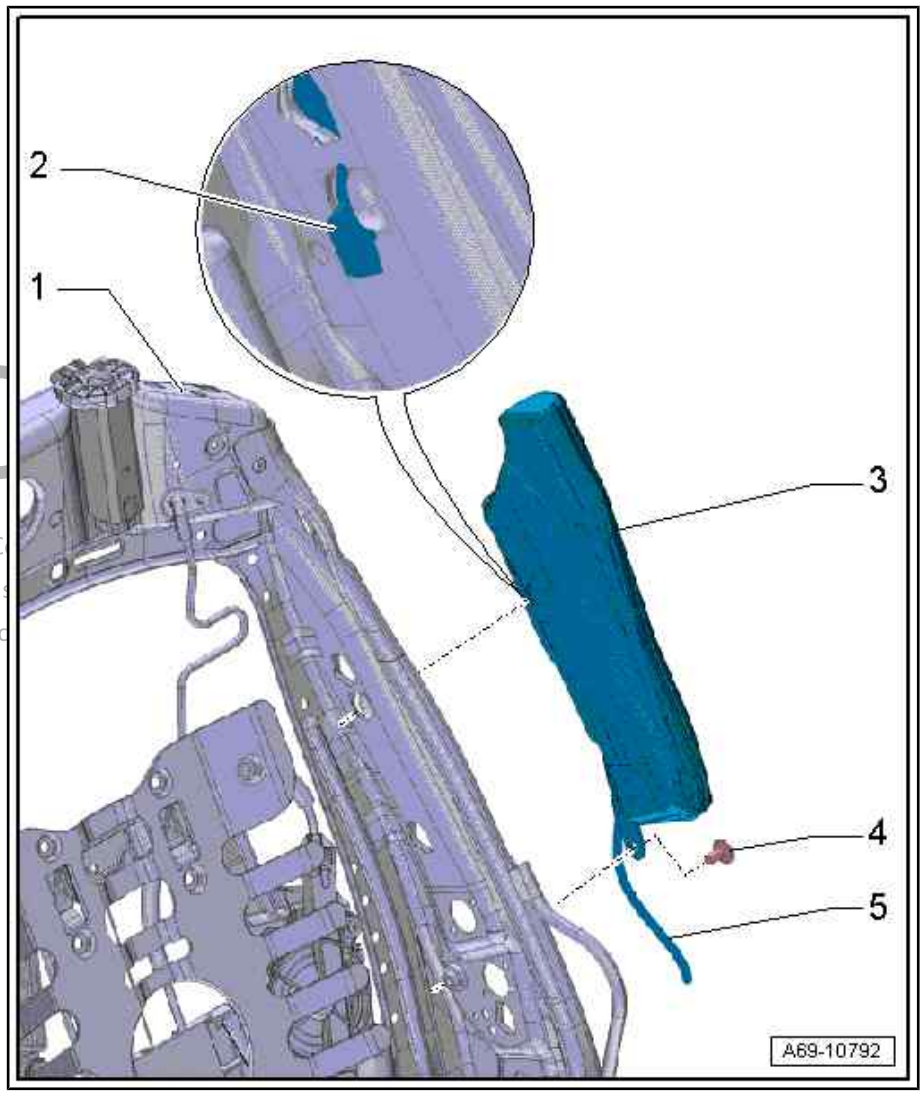
⇒ "8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)", page 149

⇒ "8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)", page 150

⇒ "8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter", page 150

⇒ "8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter", page 152

8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)



1 - Outer backrest frame

2 - Hook

- For securing side airbag to outer backrest frame

3 - Side airbag (front)

- Driver side: with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- Passenger side: with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 150

4 - Bolt

- Renew after removing
- Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- 8 Nm

5 - Electrical wire

- Routed all the way through from side airbag igniter on driver side - N199- / side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200- to connector point

8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)

1 - Nut

- ❑ 9 Nm

2 - Side padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 468

3 - Bolt

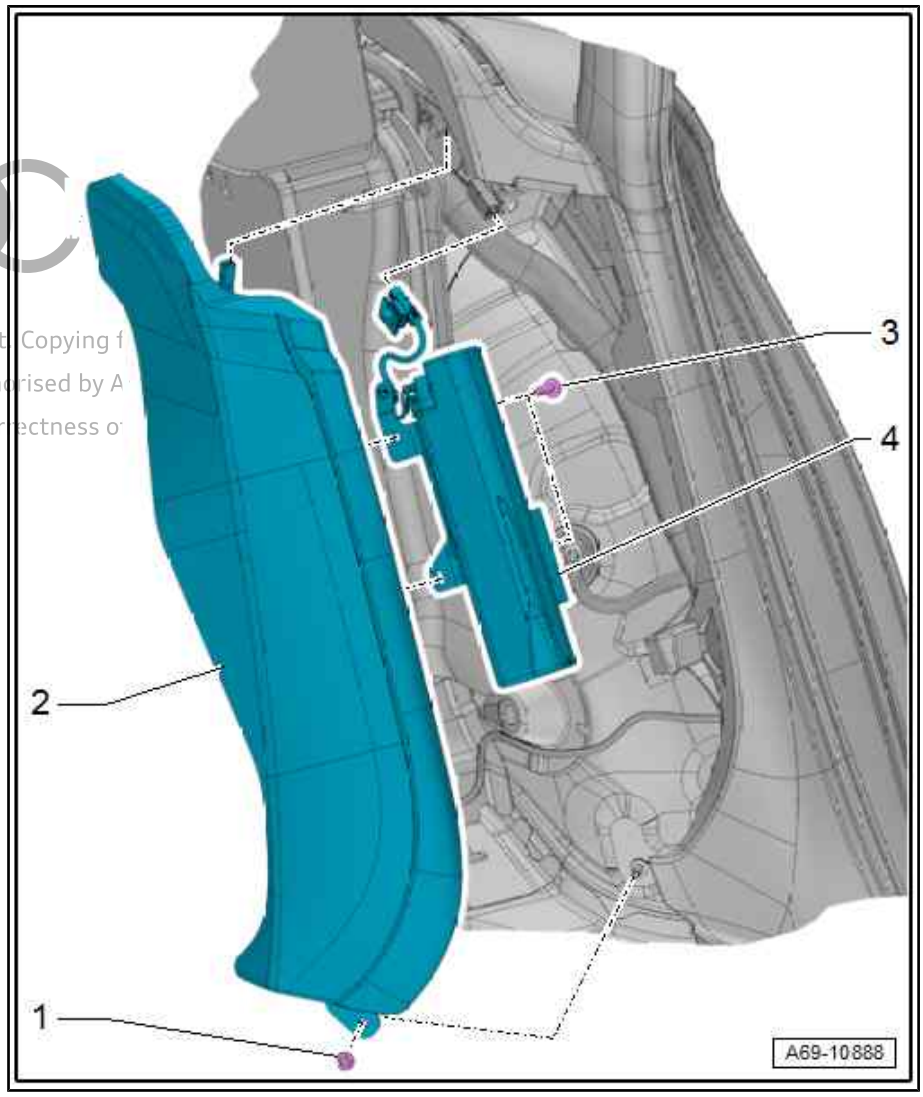
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Side airbag (rear)

- ❑ Driver side: with rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- ❑ Passenger side: with rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 152



Protected by copyright. Copying f
permitted unless authorised by A
We accept no liability for the correctness o

8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter

Removing

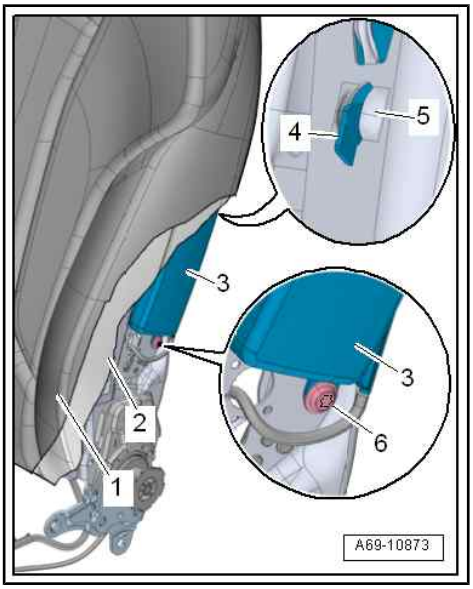
> **WARNING**
> - *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
> - *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 6 .*
> - *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 405 .

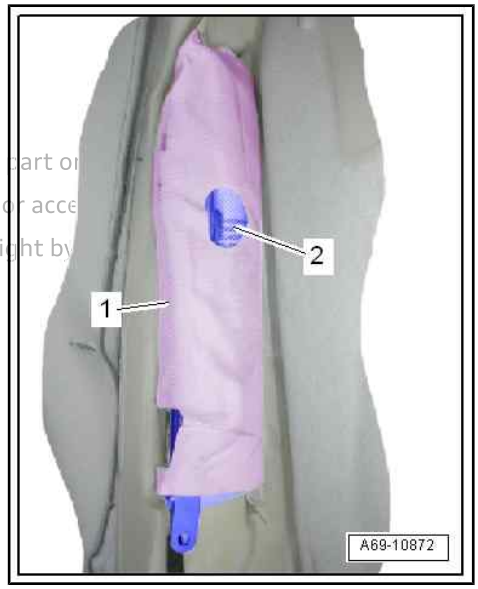
– Move wiring harness for side airbag clear at seat pan ⇒ page 440 .
– Detach padding from backrest in area of side airbag until bolt -6- for side airbag is accessible ⇒ page 494 .
– In area of side airbag, carefully pull cover -1- with padding -2- forwards as far as possible.
– Remove bolt -6-.
– Disengage side airbag -3- with hook -4- from outer backrest frame -5-.
– Version with pouch opening at top: Leave side airbag -3- in pouch (pouch stitched into cover) and detach cover with padding from backrest ⇒ page 494 .



Note

For greater clarity, the seat pan is not shown in the illustration.

– Remove side airbag -2- from pouch -1- stitched into cover.
– Carefully pull wiring harness for side airbag out of outer backrest frame.



Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
tted WARNING orised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acce
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .***

– Insert side airbag -2- into pouch -1- stitched into cover.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)", page 149

8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter

Removing

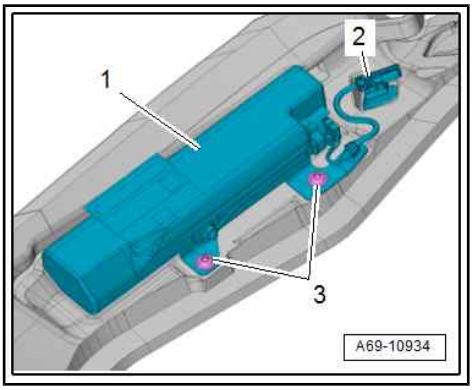
WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 468 .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Move clear electrical connector -2- for side airbag (rear).
– Remove bolts -3-.
– Detach side airbag (rear) -1- from side padding and remove it from pouch stitched into cover.

WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)", page 150

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 Curtain airbags

⇒ “9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag”, page 155

⇒ “9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter”, page 157

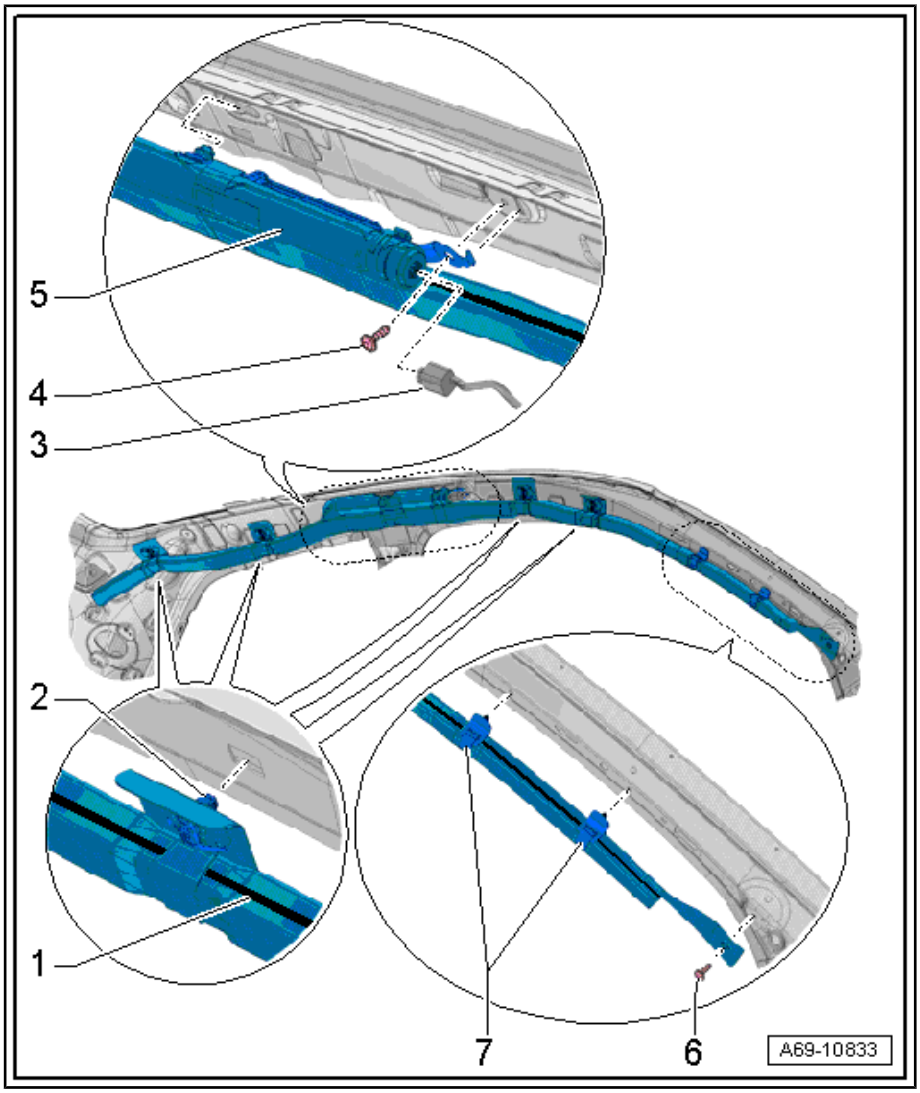
9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag

⇒ “9.1.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag, A3/A3 Sportback”, page 155

⇒ “9.1.2 Exploded view - curtain airbag, Saloon”, page 156

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9.1.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag, A3/A3 Sportback



1 - Black line

- ❑ Designed to prevent twisting
- ❑ Must be visible all along airbag after installation

2 - Retaining clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 158

3 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ❑ Passenger side: for front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 159

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm

5 - Curtain airbag

- ❑ Driver side: with driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 157

6 - Bolt

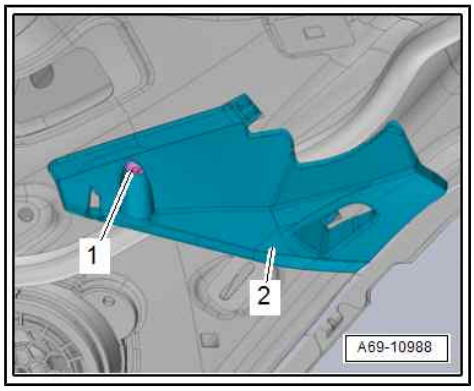
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm

7 - Clip

- ❑ 2x

Guide for curtain airbag, A3 - tightening torque

– Tighten bolts -1- to 3.5 Nm.



9.1.2 Exploded view - curtain airbag, Saloon

1 - Black line

- ❑ Designed to prevent twisting
- ❑ Must be visible all along airbag after installation

2 - Retaining clip

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 162

3 - Fastener

- ❑ 3x

4 - Guide for curtain airbag

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 165

5 - Curtain airbag

- ❑ Driver side: with driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-

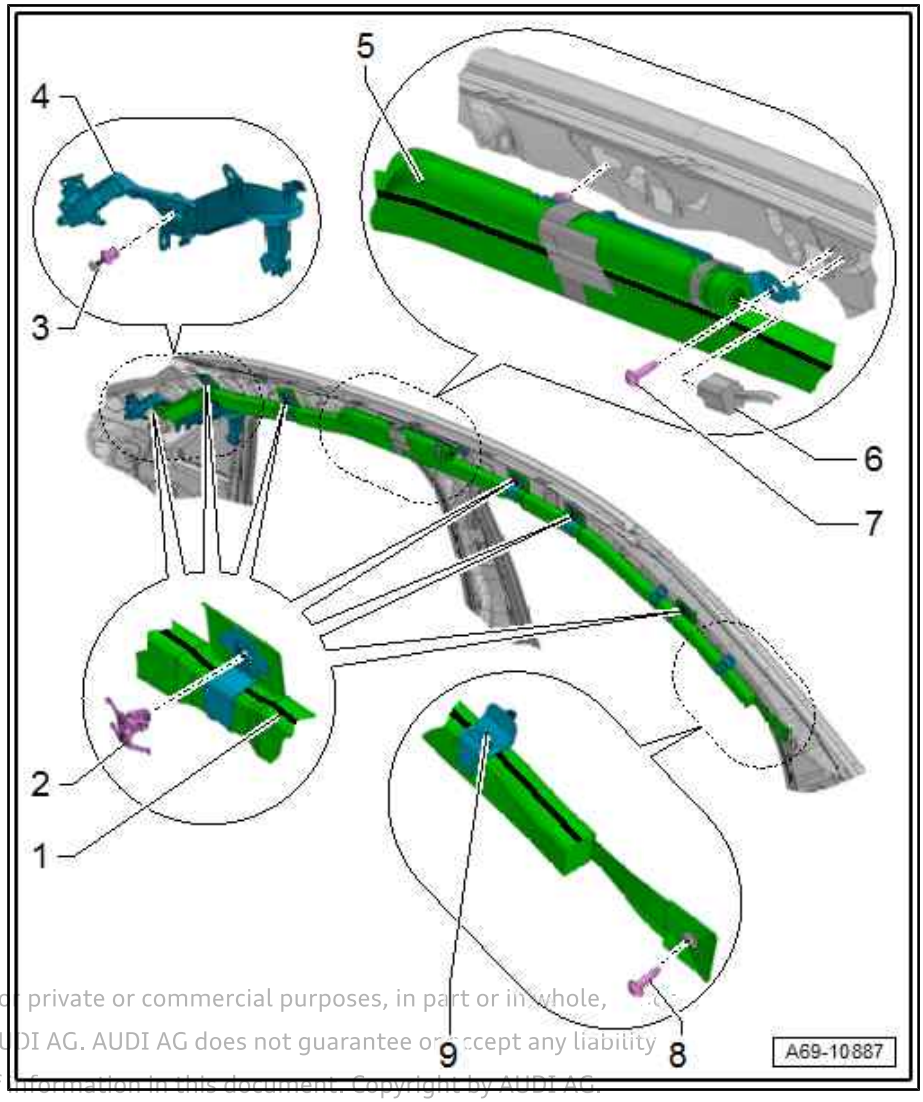
WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 157

6 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ❑ Passenger side: for front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 163



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm

9 - Clip

- ❑ 2x

Deformation element at A-pillar (country-specific version) - tightening torque

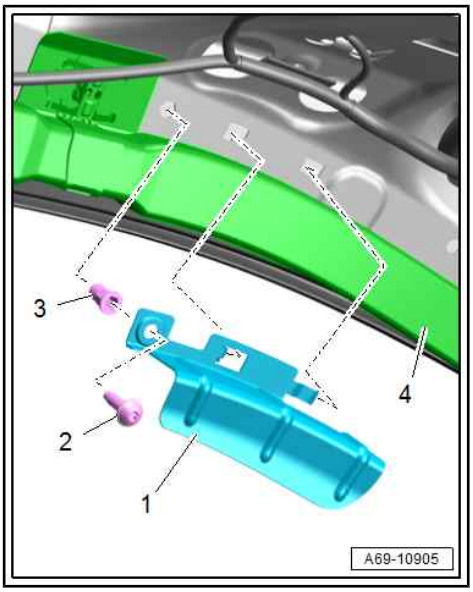
- ♦ Fitting location: Above A-pillar (on left and right)

1 - Deformation element

2 - Bolt, 4 Nm

3 - Pop rivet nut

4 - Curtain airbag



9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter

⇒ “9.2.1 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter - A3/A3 Sportback”, page 157

⇒ “9.2.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter - Saloon”, page 161

⇒ “9.2.3 Removing and installing guide for curtain airbag”, page 165

⇒ “9.2.4 Removing and installing deformation element for curtain airbag - country-specific version”, page 166

9.2.1 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter - A3/A3 Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Release tool - VAS 1978/17- from release tool set - VAS 1978/35-



Removing

WARNING

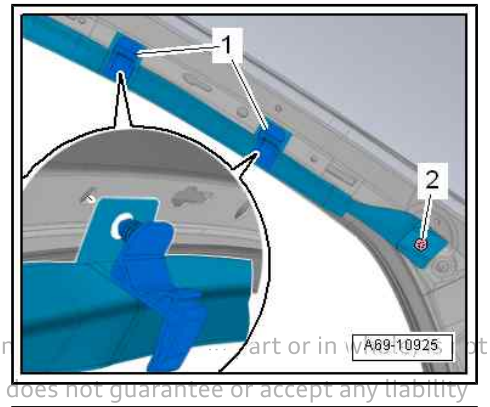
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 346 .

– Unscrew bolt -2- for tether for curtain airbag from A-pillar.

– Remove clips -1- from A-pillar.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm... art or in ... ct permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

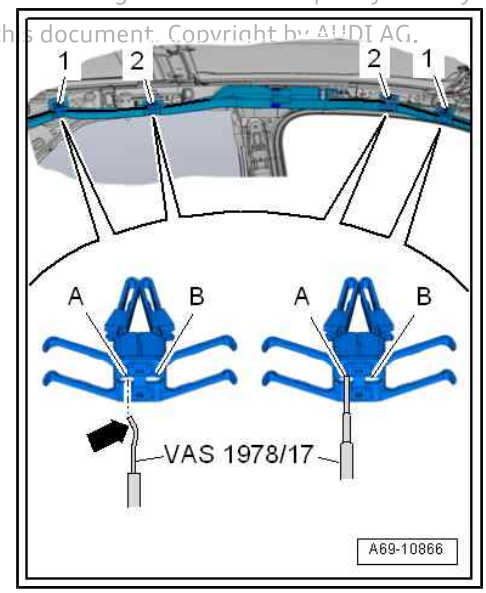
– Disengage clips -1 and 2- of retaining tabs for curtain airbag from body.

– To do so, carefully insert curved end -arrow- of release tool - VAS 1978/17- in opening -A- just as far as stop, as shown in illustration.

– At the same time, pull left section of clip out of body.

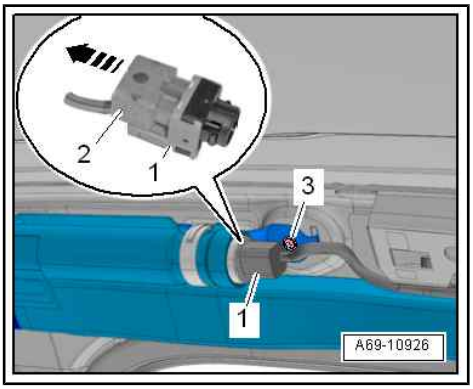
– Remove release tool - VAS 1978/17- again and make sure that clip does not engage again on side you have released.

– Turn release tool - VAS 1978/17- 180° and repeat procedure for opening -B-.

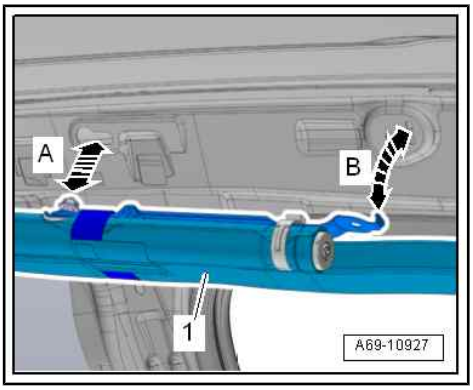


WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Pull out connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Remove bolt -3- at curtain airbag.

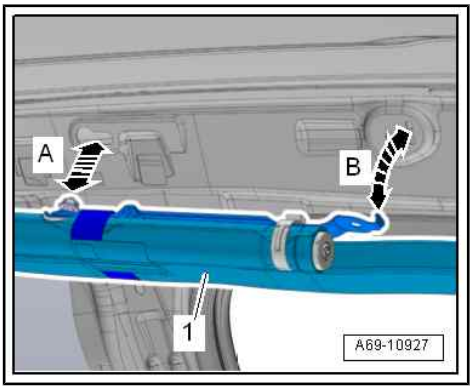


– Disengage curtain airbag -1- at front from mounting on body -arrow B- and then slide it towards rear.
– Disengage curtain airbag at rear from mounting on body -arrow A- and detach.

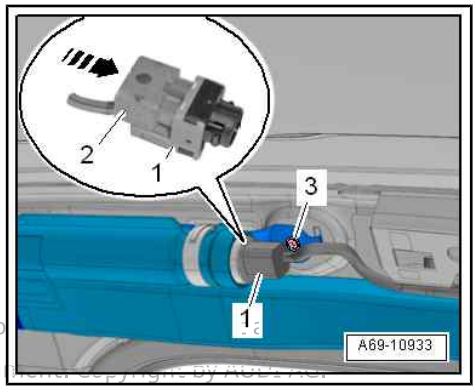
Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Always observe correct sequence for installing curtain airbag.*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



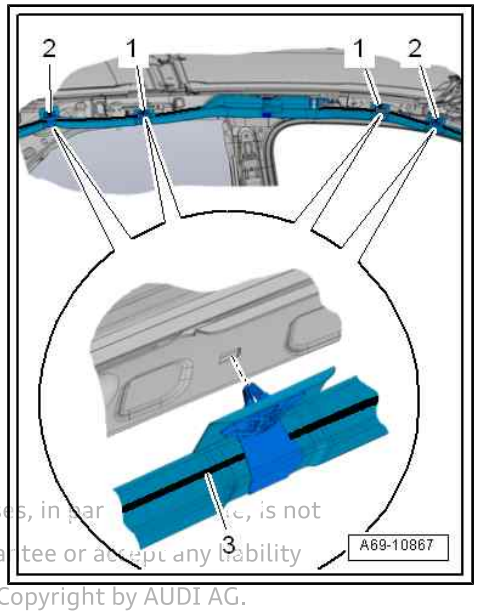
– First engage curtain airbag -1- at rear in mounting on body -arrow A- and then slide forwards.
– Engage curtain airbag at front in mounting on body -arrow B-.



– Tighten bolt -3-.
– Attach connector -1- to curtain airbag igniter.
– Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow-. This inserts connector as far as possible in curtain airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.

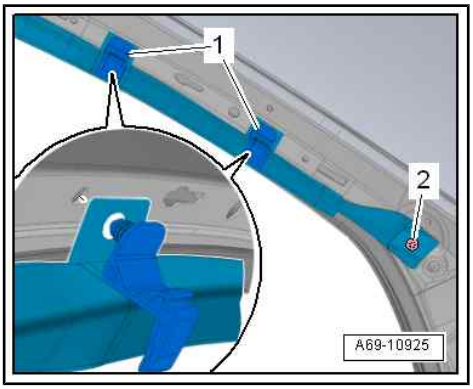
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

– Fasten retaining clips for curtain airbag in body in the sequence -1 and 2- until they engage audibly.
– Check that black line -3- is visible over entire length to make sure that curtain airbag is not twisted.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Tighten bolt -2- for tether for curtain airbag at A-pillar.
– Fasten clips -1- in body.



Note

Renew clips if they were removed following an accident.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private and commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "9.1.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag, A3/A3 Sportback", page 155

9.2.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Release tool - VAS 1978/17- from release tool set - VAS 1978/35-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

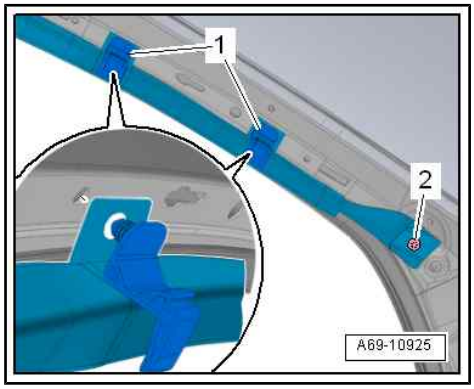
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 346 .

– Unscrew bolt -2- for tether for curtain airbag from A-pillar.

– Remove clips -1- from A-pillar.



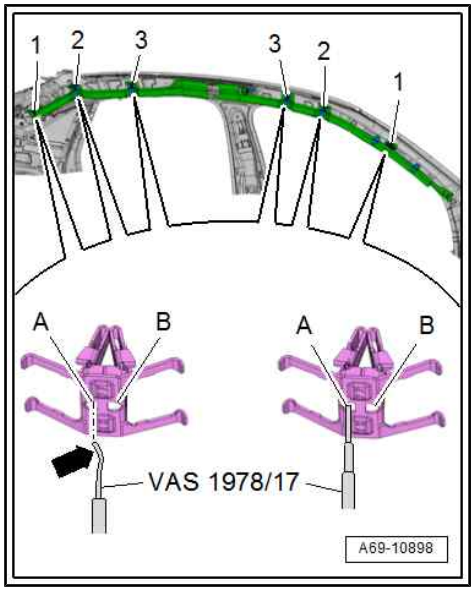
– Disengage clips -1, 2, 3- of retaining tabs for curtain airbag from body.

– To do so, carefully insert curved end -arrow- of release tool - VAS 1978/17- in opening -A- just as far as stop, as shown in illustration.

– At the same time, pull left section of clip out of body.

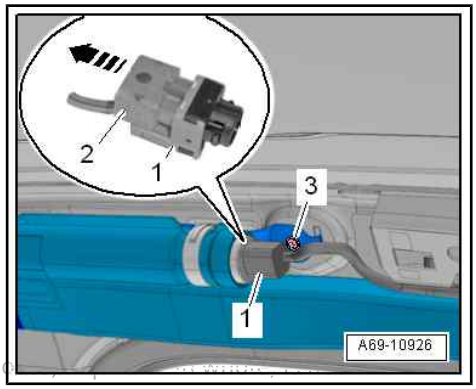
– Remove release tool - VAS 1978/17- again and make sure that clip does not engage again on side you have released.

– Turn release tool - VAS 1978/17- 180° and repeat procedure for opening -B-.



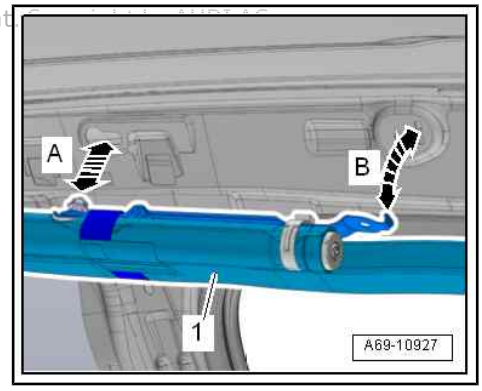
WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Pull out connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Remove bolt -3- at curtain airbag.
– Disengage curtain airbag -1- at front from mounting on body -arrow B- and then slide it towards rear.
– Disengage curtain airbag at rear from mounting on body -arrow A- and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

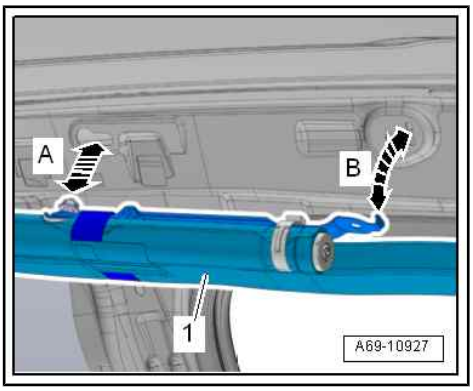


Installing

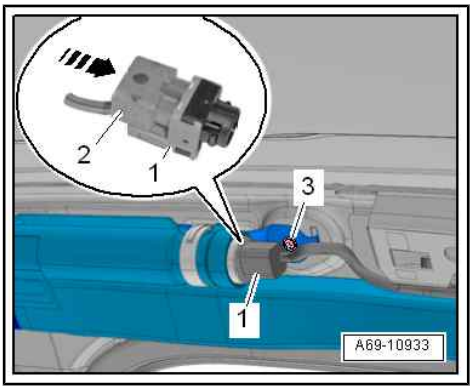
WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Always observe correct sequence for installing curtain airbag.*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

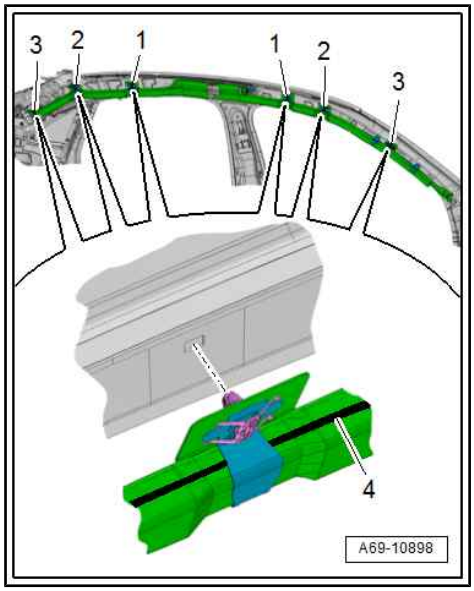
– First engage curtain airbag -1- at rear in mounting on body -arrow A- and then slide forwards.
– Engage curtain airbag at front in mounting on body -arrow B-.



– Tighten bolt -3-.
– Attach connector -1- to curtain airbag igniter.
– Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow-. This inserts connector as far as possible in curtain airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.

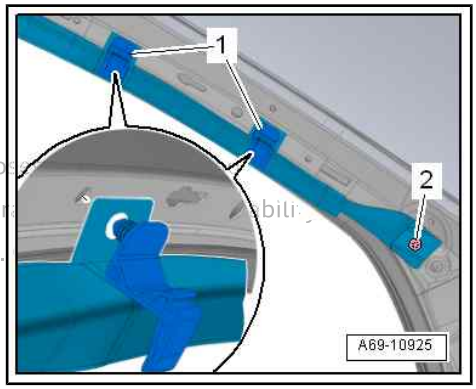


– Fasten retaining clips for curtain airbag in body in the sequence -1, 2, 3- until they engage audibly.
– Check that black line -4- is visible over entire length to make sure that curtain airbag is not twisted.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Tighten bolt -2- for tether for curtain airbag at A-pillar.
– Fasten clips -1- in body.



Note

Renew clips if they were removed following an accident.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
does not guar
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “9.1.2 Exploded view - curtain airbag, Saloon”, page 156

9.2.3 Removing and installing guide for curtain airbag

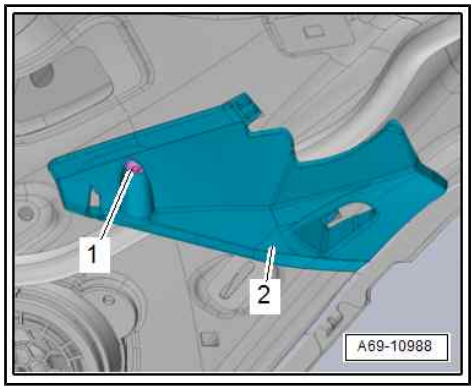
Removing

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 346 .

A3:

– Remove bolt -1-.

– Disengage guide -2- for curtain airbag from body and detach.



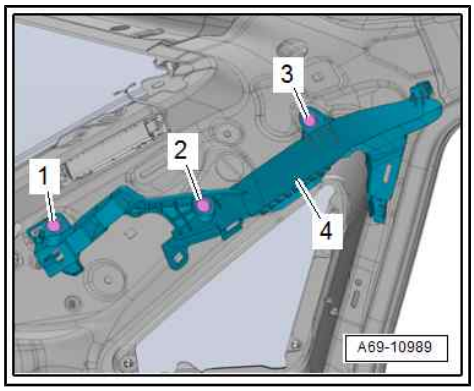
Saloon:

– Equipment version with sliding sunroof: Disengage water drain hose.

– Detach rear retaining clips for curtain airbag ⇒ page 162 .

– Remove fasteners -1, 2, 3-.

– Disengage guide -4- for curtain airbag from body and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag", page 155

9.2.4 Removing and installing deformation element for curtain airbag - country-specific version

Removing

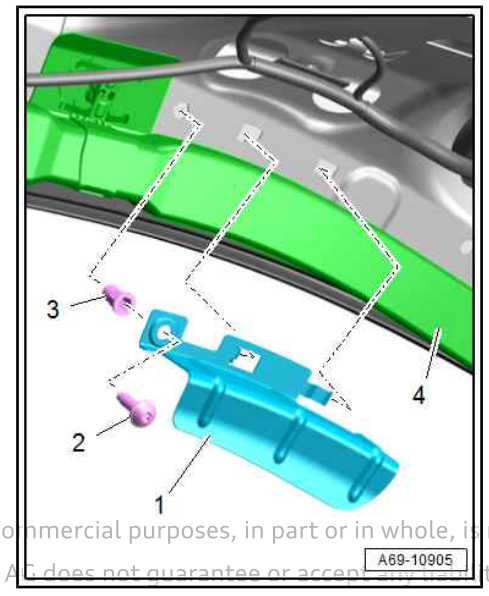
– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 346 .

– Remove bolt -2-.

– Disengage deformation element -1- for curtain airbag from body and detach.

3 - Pop rivet nut

4 - Curtain airbag



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "9.1.2 Exploded view - curtain airbag, Saloon", page 156

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 Knee airbags

⇒ “10.1 Exploded view - knee airbag”, page 167

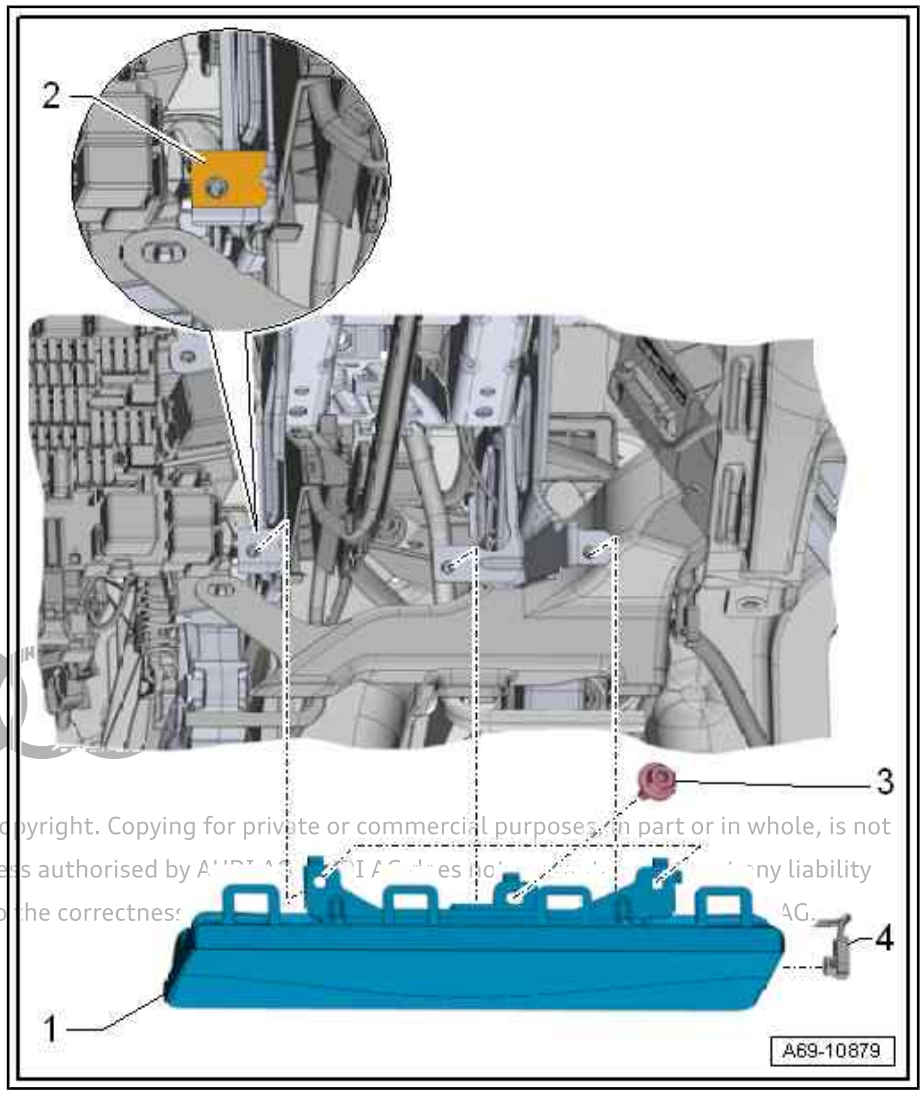
⇒ “10.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter”, page 169

10.1 Exploded view - knee airbag

⇒ “10.1.1 Exploded view - knee airbag (driver side)”, page 167

⇒ “10.1.2 Exploded view - knee airbag (front passenger side)”, page 168

10.1.1 Exploded view - knee airbag (driver side)



1 - Driver side knee airbag igniter - N295-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 169

> **Caution**
> *Risk of damage to the surface of the knee airbag due to mechanical stress.*
> *After completing the repair, inspect the surface of the knee airbag for visible damage, especially at the perforation.*

2 - Attachment point

- ❑ For knee airbag

> **Caution**
> *Risk of malfunctions if earth connection is not OK.*
> *Threads and contact surface must be free of paint, coating and corrosion; bolted connection provides earth connection for knee airbag*

3 - Bolt

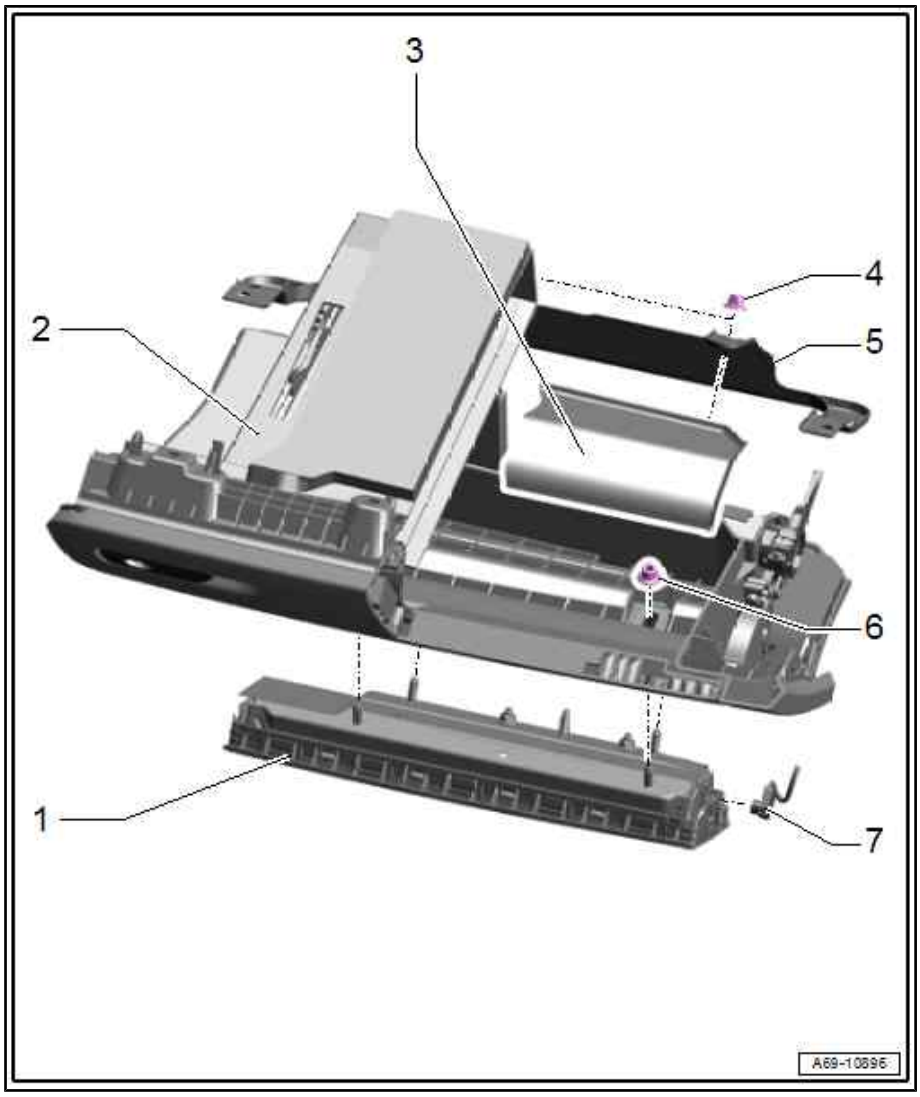
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For driver side knee airbag igniter - N295-

Copyright by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

10.1.2 Exploded view - knee airbag (front passenger side)



1 - Front passenger side knee airbag igniter - N296-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 171

> **Caution**
> *Risk of damage to the surface of the knee airbag due to mechanical stress.*
> *After completing the repair, inspect the surface of the knee airbag for visible damage.*

2 - Glove box

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 27

3 - Lining mat

- ❑ For glove box

4 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

5 - Bracket

- ❑ For knee airbag

> **Caution**
> *Risk of malfunctions if earth connection is not OK.*
> *Threads and contact surface must be free of paint, coating and corrosion; bolted connection provides earth connection for knee airbag*

6 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

7 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For front passenger side knee airbag igniter - N296-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter

⇒ "10.2.1 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (driver side)", page 169

⇒ "10.2.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (front passenger side)", page 171

10.2.1 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (driver side)

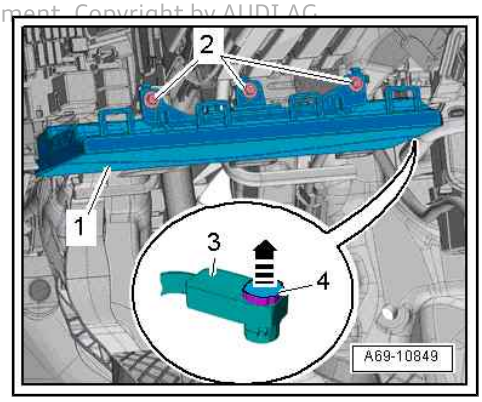
Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*
- *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 22 .
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Take out knee airbag (driver side) -1- towards rear.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Unplug electrical connector -3- at driver side knee airbag igniter - N295- .
– To do so, release connector locking element -4- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector.

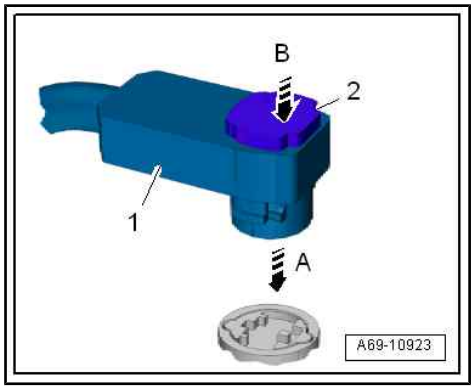
WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*



– Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.

– Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

Caution

Risk of damage to the surface of the knee airbag due to mechanical stress.

- ***After completing the repair, inspect the surface of the knee airbag for visible damage.***

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

ected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

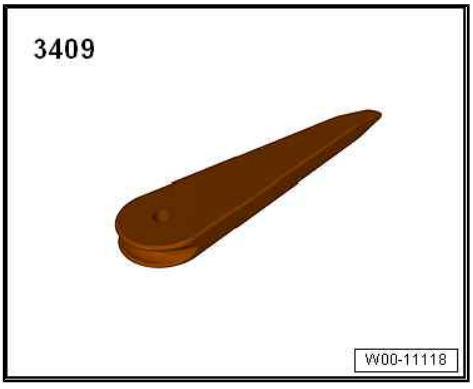
If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "10.1.1 Exploded view - knee airbag (driver side)", page 167

10.2.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (front passenger side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

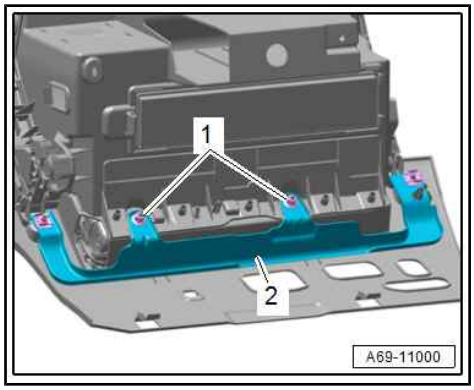
WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*
- *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

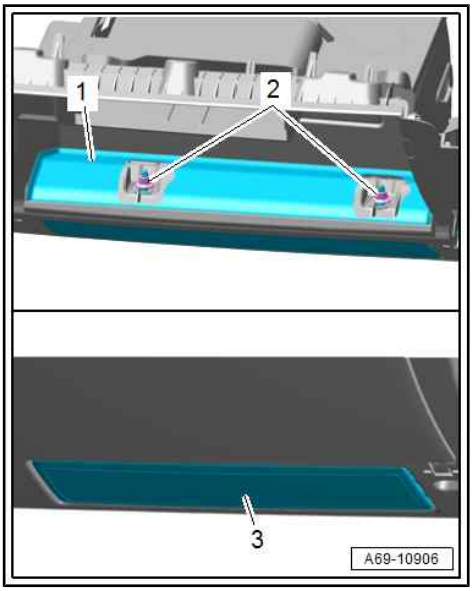
– Remove glove box ⇒ page 27 .

– Remove nuts -1-.
– Detach bracket -2- for knee airbag.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Lift lining mat -1- with removal wedge - 3409- and remove it from glove box.
– Remove nuts -2-.
– Detach knee airbag -3- downwards from glove box.



WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Install glove box ⇒ page 27 .

Caution

Risk of damage to the surface of the knee airbag due to mechanical stress.

- *After completing the repair, inspect the surface of the knee airbag for visible damage.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "10.1.2 Exploded view - knee airbag (front passenger side)", page 168

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 Crash sensors for airbags

⇒ “11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags”, page 175

⇒ “11.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor G283 / G284 ”, page 178

⇒ “11.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180 ”, page 183

⇒ “11.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor G256 / G257 ”, page 186

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags

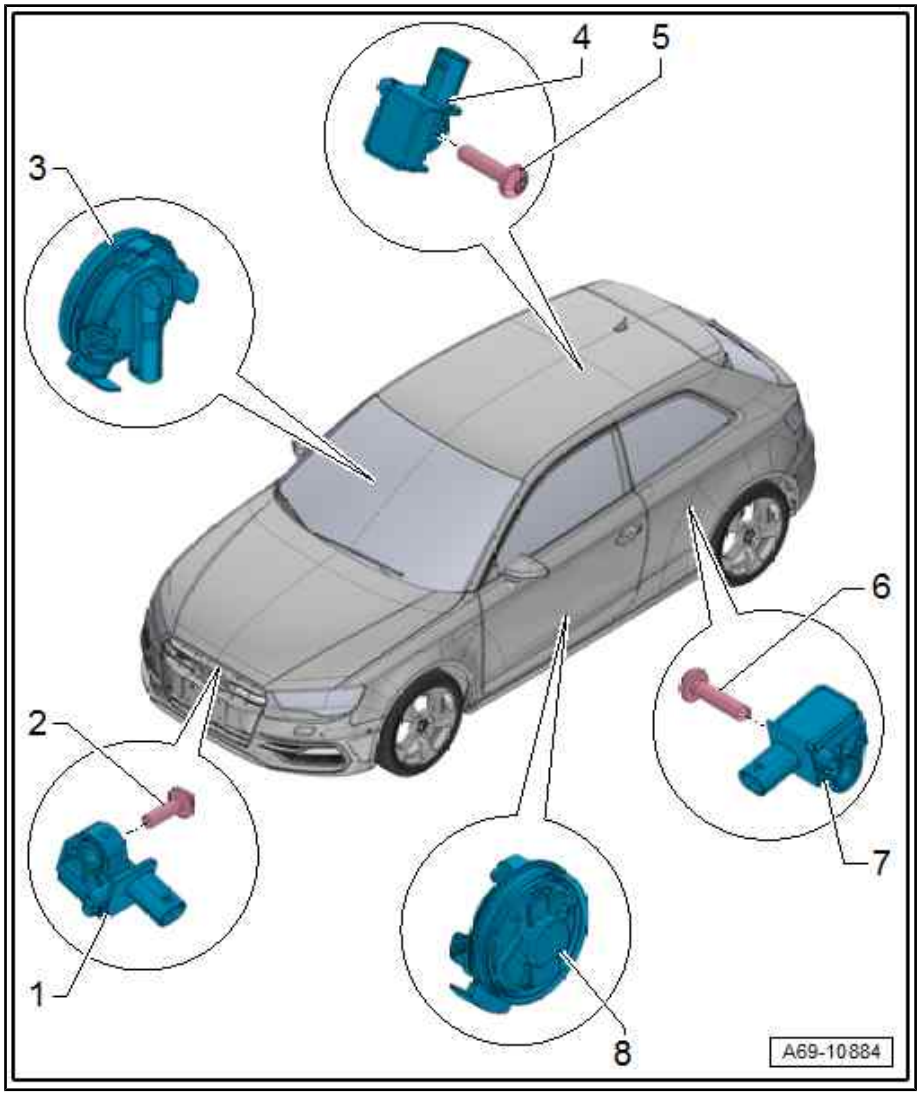
⇒ “11.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags”, page 175

⇒ “11.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags, country-specific version”, page 177

11.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags

Note

The illustration shows the overview of fitting locations for the A3 as an example.



1 - Front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-

- ❑ Fitting location: in centre of vehicle on lock carrier
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 178

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side - G180-

- ❑ Fitting location: in door
- ❑ Precautionary measures when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 7
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 183

4 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on passenger side - G257-

- ❑ Fitting location for A3: behind side trim
- ❑ Fitting location for A3 Sportback/Saloon: behind sill panel trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 186

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

7 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G256-

- ❑ Fitting location for A3: behind side trim
- ❑ Fitting location for A3 Sportback/Saloon: behind sill panel trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 186

8 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G179-

- ❑ Fitting location: in door
- ❑ Precautionary measures when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 7
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 183

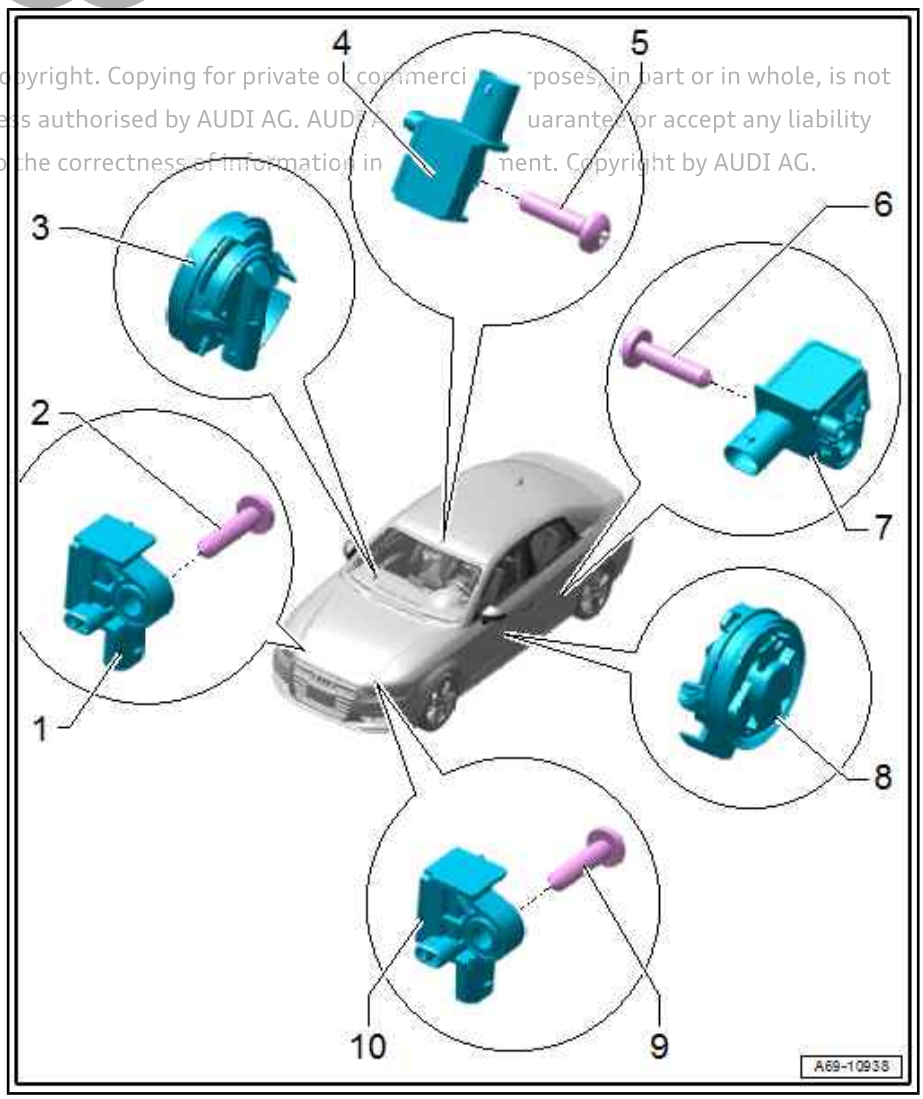
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags, country-specific version

Note

The illustration shows the overview of fitting locations for the Saloon as an example.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side - G284-

- ❑ Fitting location: on right side of lock carrier
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 180

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side - G180-

- ❑ Fitting location: in door
- ❑ Precautionary measures when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 7
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 183

4 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on passenger side - G257-

- ❑ Fitting location: behind sill panel trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 186

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

7 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G256-

- ❑ Fitting location: behind sill panel trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 186

8 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G179-

- ❑ Fitting location: in door
- ❑ Precautionary measures when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 7
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 183

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

10 - Front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-

- ❑ Fitting location: on left side of lock carrier
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 180

11.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor -G283- / -G284-

⇒ "11.2.1 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283 ", page 178

⇒ "11.2.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor G283 / G284 - country-specific version", page 180

11.2.1 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-

Removing

WARNING

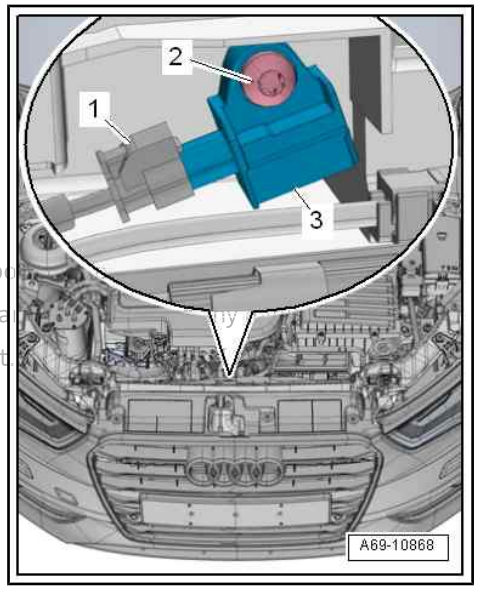
Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Open bonnet.

– Remove air duct on lock carrier ⇒ Rep. gr. 23 ; Air cleaner; Removing and installing air cleaner housing or ⇒ Rep. gr. 24 ; Air cleaner; Removing and installing air cleaner housing .

– Remove bolt -2- and detach crash sensor -3- for front airbag at lock carrier.



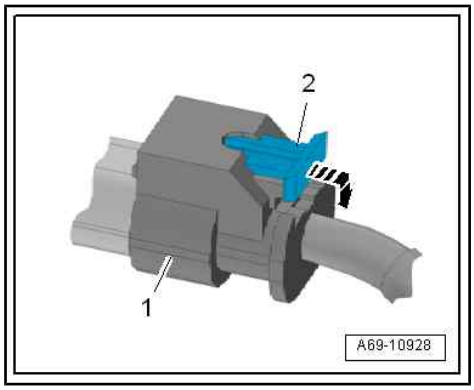
WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.

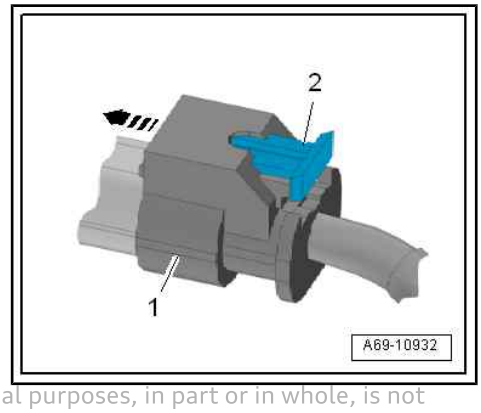
– To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 175

11.2.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor -G283- / -G284- - country-specific version

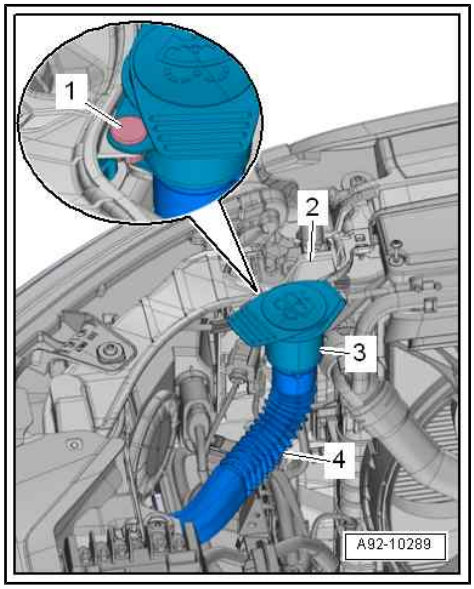
Removing

> **WARNING**
>
> *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Open bonnet.

– Front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283- : Remove filler neck -3- with filler pipe -4- for washer fluid reservoir ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing washer fluid reservoir .

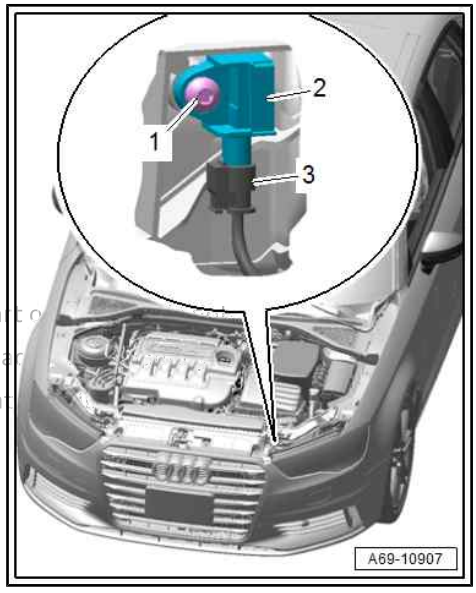


– Remove bolt -1- and detach crash sensor -2- for front airbag at lock carrier.

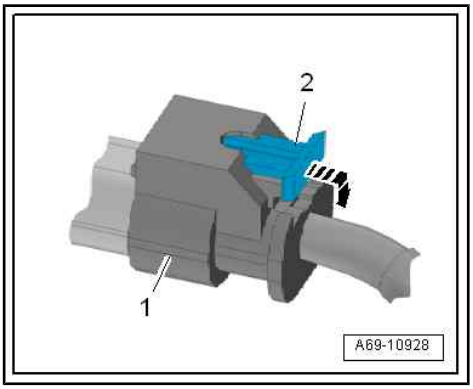
> **WARNING**
>
> *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part o
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.



– To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.

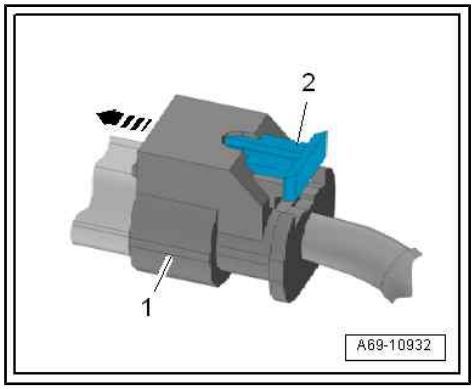


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.

– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "11.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags, country-specific version", page 177

11.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor -G179- / -G180-

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 7 .*

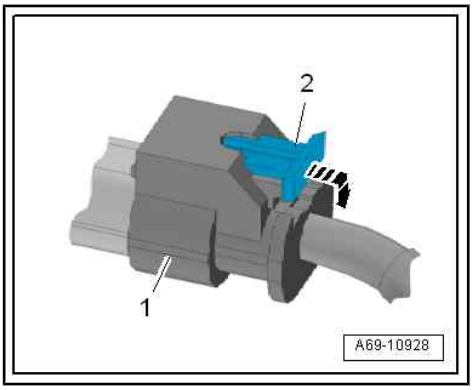
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ page 221 .

WARNING

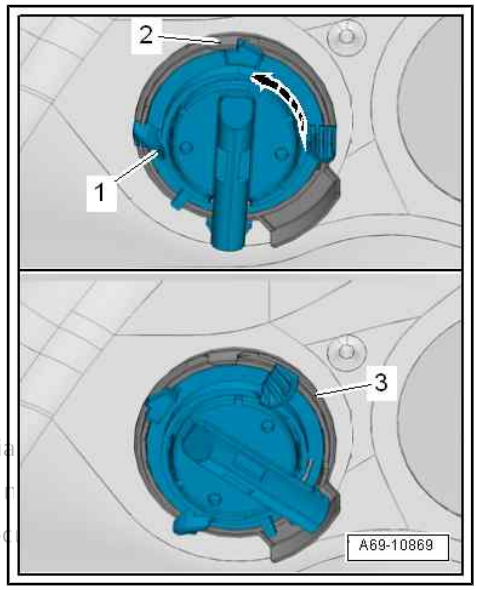
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.



– Release catch -2- and turn locking mechanism -1- for crash sensor approx. 45° in anti-clockwise direction -arrow-.

– Disengage crash sensor for side airbag -3- from door and detach.

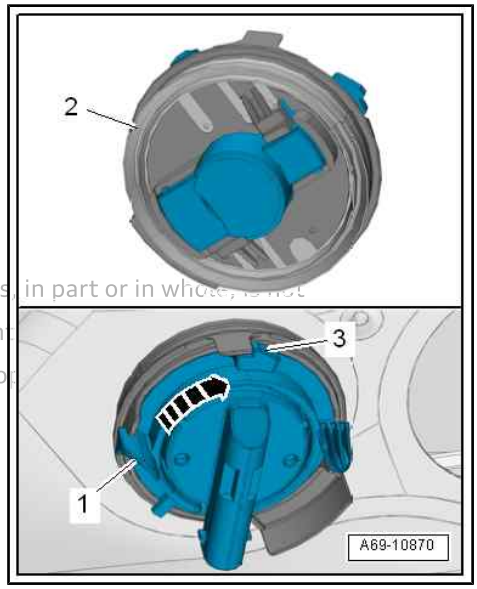


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercia
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

Installing

WARNING

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.



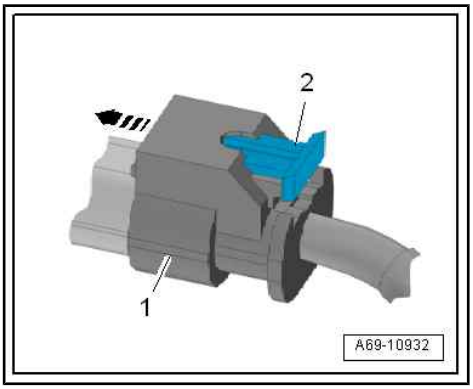
– Make sure seal -2- is properly positioned. Renew crash sensor if seal is damaged or deformed.
– Engage crash sensor for side airbag in door.
– Turn locking mechanism -1- for crash sensor in clockwise direction -arrow-.

• You should hear the retaining tab -3- engage.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 7 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.

– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 175

11.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor -G256- / -G257-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

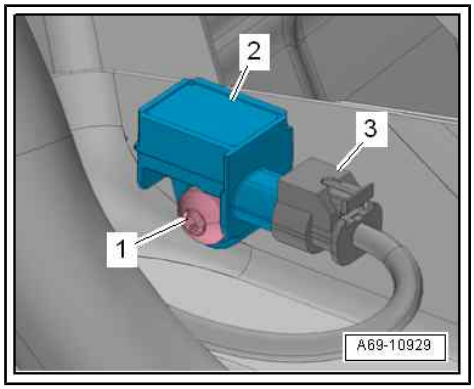
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– A3: Remove side trim ⇒ page 309 .

– A3 Sportback/Saloon: Remove sill panel trim ⇒ page 287 .

– Remove bolt -1- and detach crash sensor -2- for side airbag from body.

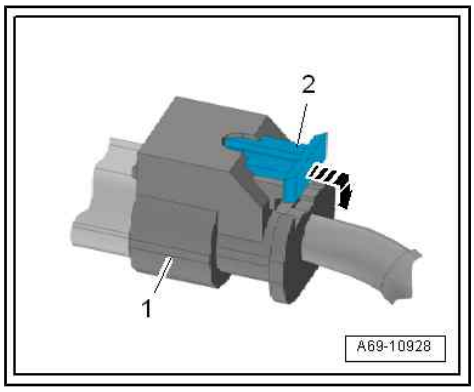


WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

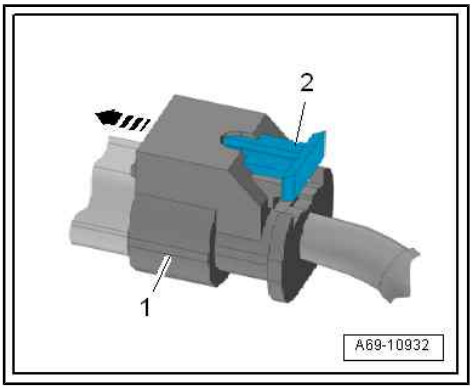
– To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.

– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags”, page 175

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 Seat position sensor

⇒ "12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor", page 189

⇒ "12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor", page 189

12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor

Note

The illustration shows the seat position sensor with wiring harness for the front passenger seat as an example.

1 - Coupling connector
- ❑ Connector point in vehicle floor at side member under seat

2 - Cable retainer/cable tie
- ❑ Clip into seat pan

3 - Coupling connector
- ❑ For belt buckle

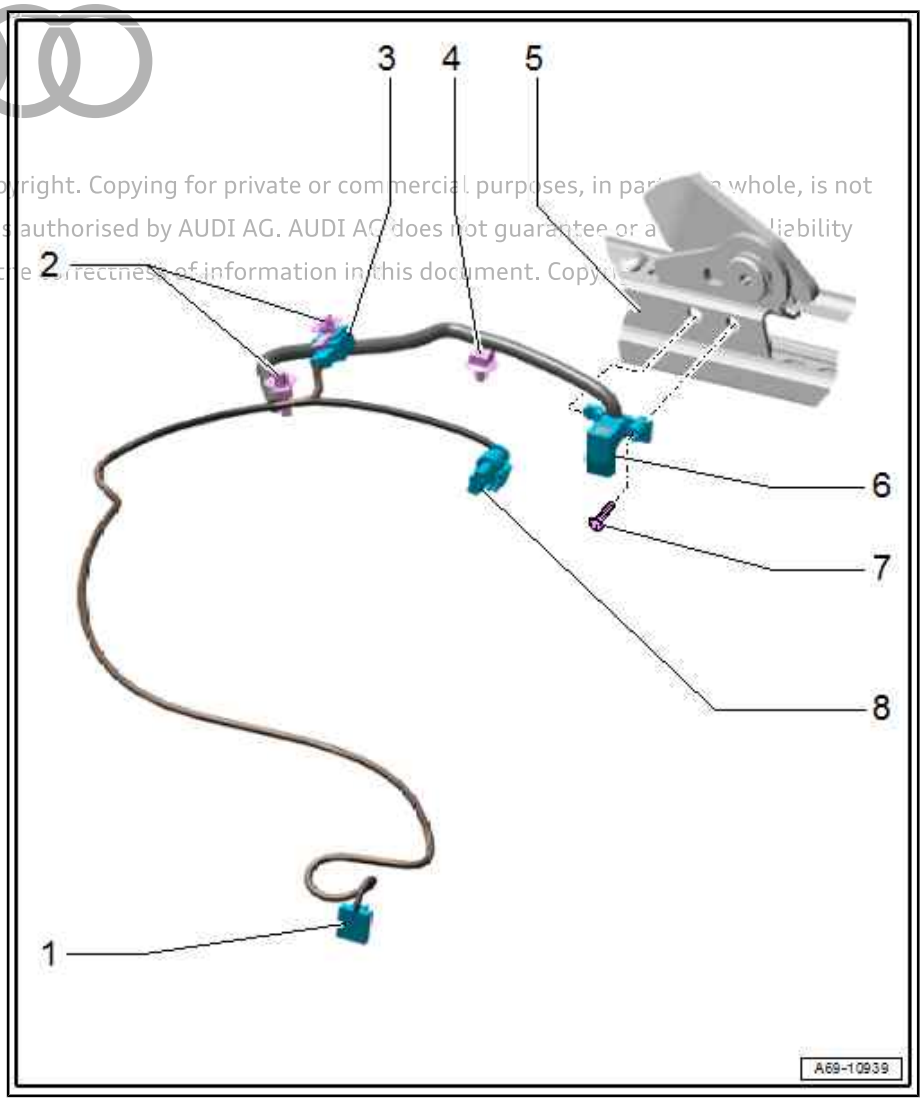
4 - Cable retainer/cable tie
- ❑ Clip into seat pan

5 - Seat rail
- ❑ Tunnel side

6 - Front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-
- ❑ Driver seat: driver side seat position sensor - G553-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 189

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

8 - Coupling connector
- ❑ Passenger seat only: for seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor

Replacement seat position sensors are available with wiring harness and electrical connector. The following wires with connectors are incorporated into the wiring harness:

- ♦ Driver seat: wire with connector for belt buckle coupling

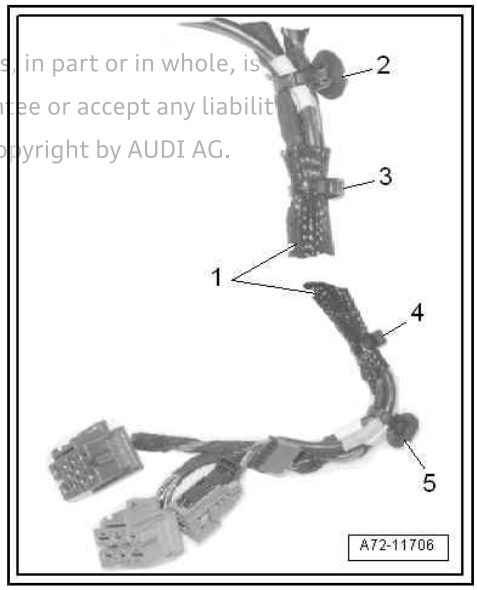
- Front passenger seat: Wire with connector for belt buckle coupling and seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

Removing

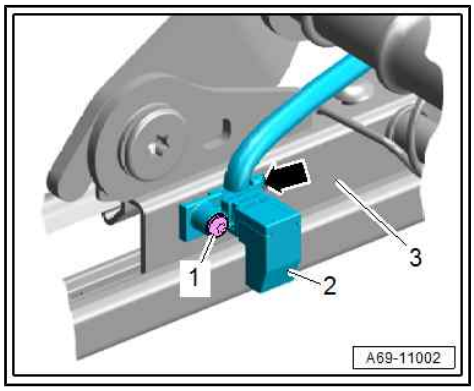
WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Remove retainer (rear) for wire routing from seat pan with a screwdriver.
– Cut through cable retainers -2 and 5- and cable ties -3 and 4-.
– Pull wire for seat position sensor -G553- / -G554- out of protective sleeve -1- and move clear.



– Remove bolt -1-.
– Unclip and disengage seat position sensor -2- from lower seat pan frame -3- -arrow-.
– Unfasten cable ties/cable clips for wiring from lower seat pan frame.

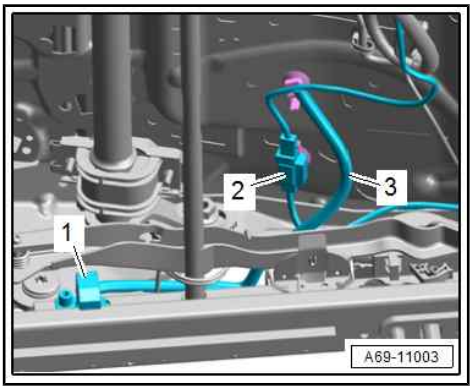


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Driver seat:

– Unplug electrical connector -2- for belt buckle.

– Detach seat position sensor -1- with wires -3-.

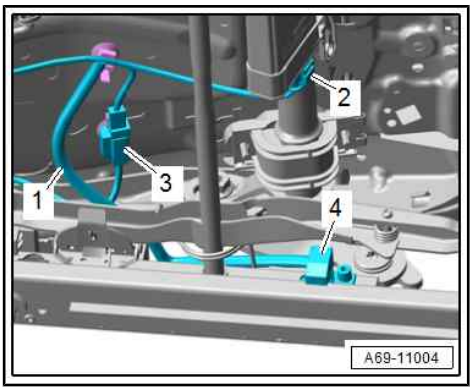


Front passenger seat:

– Unplug electrical connector -3- for belt buckle.

– Unplug electrical connector -2- at seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .

– Detach seat position sensor -4- with wires -1-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor", page 189

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unauthorized use may violate copyright laws and does not guarantee that accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 Belt-fastened recognition system

⇒ “13.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor, front passenger side G128 ”, page 192

13.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor, front passenger side - G128-

Note

The seat occupied sensor is only fitted on the front passenger seat.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

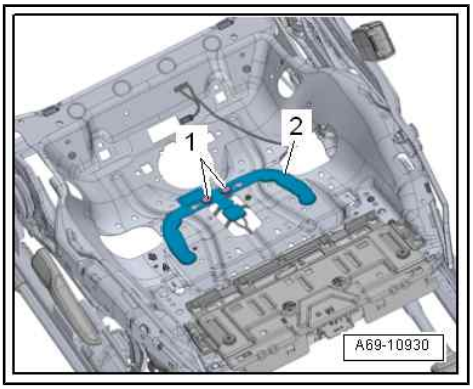
– Remove front passenger seat ⇒ page 392 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .

– Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ page 487 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector for seat occupied sensor.
– Unfasten clips -1- from seat pan and detach seat occupied sensor -2-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

Caution

Install new seat occupied sensor in same position as old seat occupied sensor.

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Press clips for seat occupied sensor into seat pan until they engage audibly.

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 Seat occupied recognition system

⇒ “14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system”, page 194

⇒ “14.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor”, page 196

14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system

Note

The seat occupied sensor is only fitted in the front passenger seat.

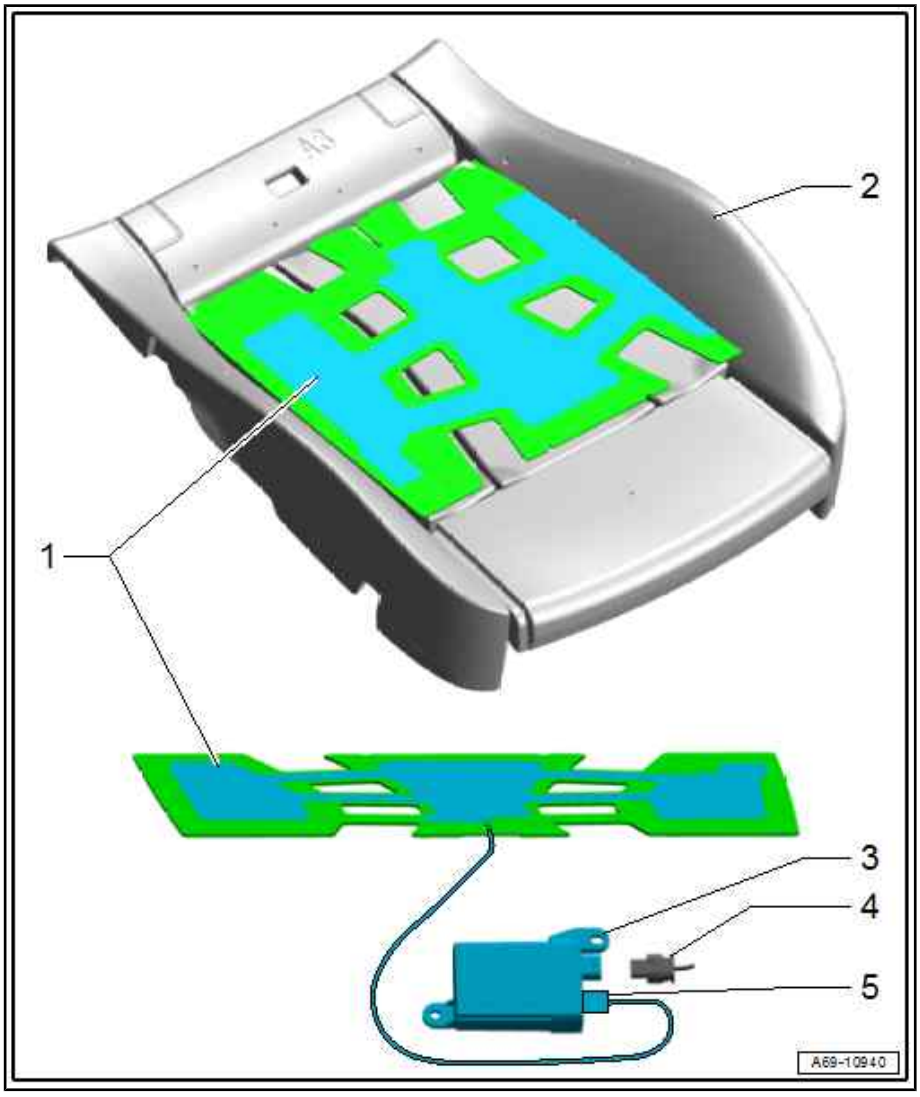
WARNING

The replacement part (service kit) for the seat occupied recognition system (country-specific version) is already pre-assembled. Do NOT unplug the connector between the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- and the seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- . The service kit varies depending on the seat version and consists of:

- ***Seat padding with or without seat heating element***
- ***Seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- (bonded onto seat padding or seat heating element)***
- ***Seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-***

Observe safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensors ⇒ page 8 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Seat occupied sensor, front passenger side - G128-

Caution

Do NOT unplug the connector between the seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- and the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .

Do NOT detach the seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- from the seat padding.

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 196

2 - Seat padding

Caution

Do NOT detach the seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- from the seat padding.

3 - Seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

Caution

Do NOT unplug the connector between the seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- and the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .

- ❑ Clipped into storage compartment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 196

4 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Between connector point beneath seat and seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

5 - Connector

- ❑ For wire between seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- and seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

Caution

Do NOT unplug the connector between the seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- and the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor

Note

The seat occupied sensor is only fitted in the front passenger seat.

WARNING

The replacement part (service kit) for the seat occupied recognition system (country-specific version) is already pre-assembled. Do NOT unplug the connector between the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- and the seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- . The service kit varies depending on the seat version and consists of:

- *Seat padding with or without seat heating element*
- *Seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- (bonded onto seat padding)*
- *Seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

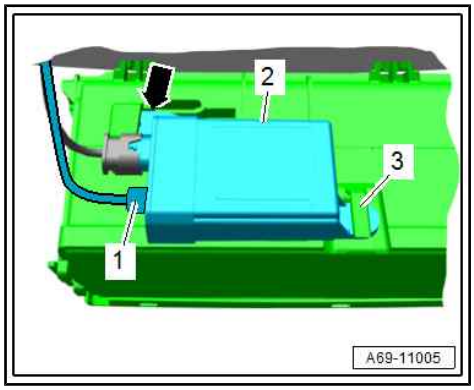
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front passenger seat ⇒ page 392 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .

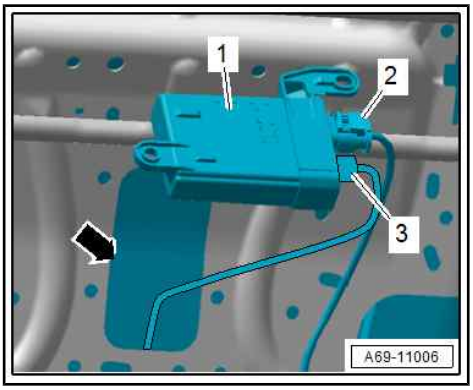
Caution

Do NOT unplug connector -1- at seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .



– Release control unit from fastener -3-.

– Disengage control unit -2- at storage compartment -arrow-.



Caution

Do NOT unplug connector -3- at seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .

– Unplug electrical connector -2- at control unit.
– Move wire for seat occupied sensor clear at seat pan.
– Remove seat cover with padding for seat pan ⇒ page 487 .
– Guide control unit -1- out through opening -arrow- in seat pan and detach together with seat padding.
– Separate seat cover and padding ⇒ page 491 .

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

The basic setting of the seat occupied recognition control unit has to be performed when a new service kit is installed ⇒ page 8 .

– Finally, select “Airbag” function in “Guided Fault Finding” mode using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

♦ Basic setting for seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system”, page 194

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

15 Pedestrian protection

⇒ “15.1 Overview - pedestrian protection”, page 198

⇒ “15.2 Removing and installing crash sensor for pedestrian protection G570 / G571 ”, page 203

⇒ “15.3 Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection G693 ”, page 205

⇒ “15.4 Removing and installing crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection G851 and G852 ”, page 208

⇒ “15.5 Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection G598 / G599 ”, page 214

⇒ “15.6 Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered”, page 217

15.1 Overview - pedestrian protection

⇒ “15.1.1 Overview - pedestrian protection, vehicles with 3 senders up to model year 2016”, page 198

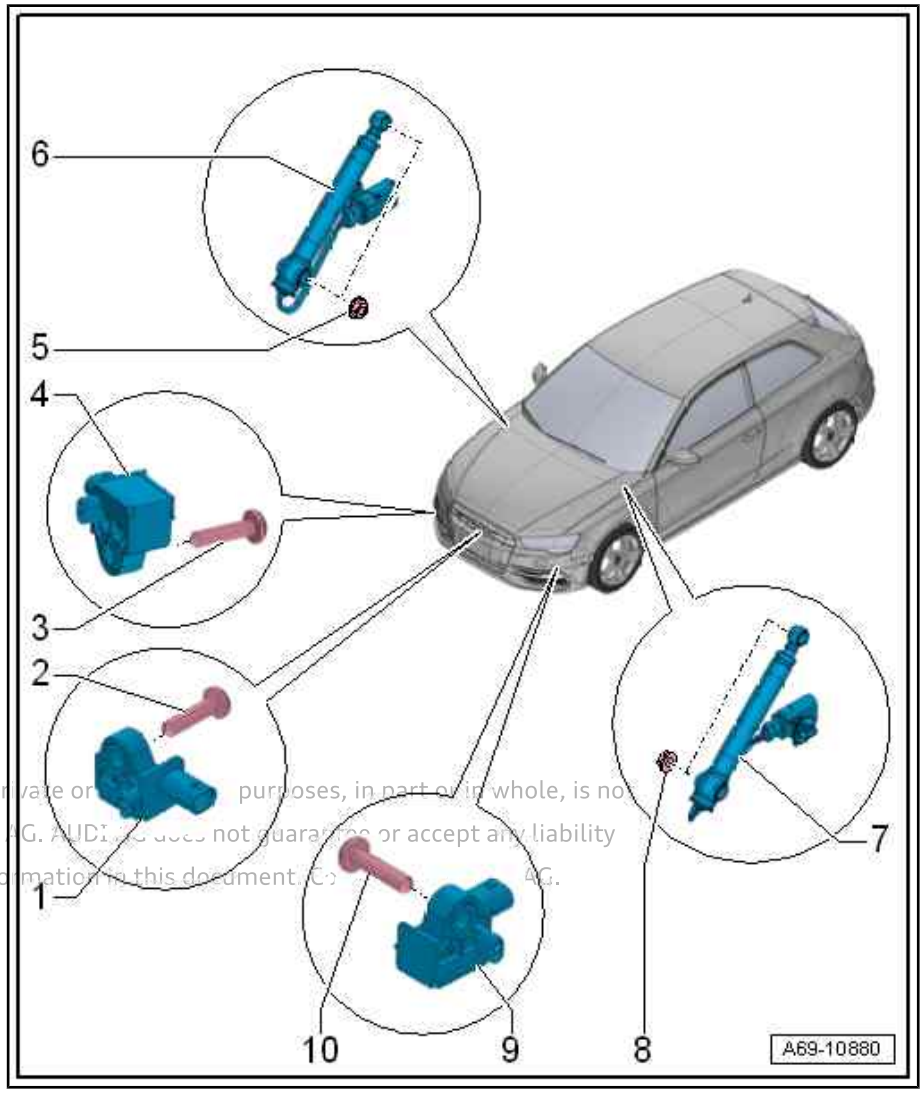
⇒ “15.1.2 Overview - pedestrian protection, vehicles with 2 senders and pressure sensors up to model year 2016”, page 200

⇒ “15.1.3 Overview - pedestrian protection, vehicles with 2 senders and pressure sensors from model year 2017 onwards”, page 202

15.1.1 Overview - pedestrian protection, vehicles with 3 senders up to model year 2016



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G693-

- ❑ Fitting location: in centre of vehicle on bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 205

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

4 - Front passenger side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G571-

- ❑ Fitting location: On bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 203

5 - Nut/clip

- ❑ 2 nuts, or nut and clip (depending on equipment version)
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Trigger 2 for pedestrian protection - G599-

- ❑ Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Resetting hinge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

7 - Trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598-

- ❑ Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Resetting hinge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

8 - Nut/clip

- ❑ 2 nuts, or nut and clip (depending on equipment version)
- ❑ 8 Nm

9 - Driver side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G570-

- ❑ Fitting location: On bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 203

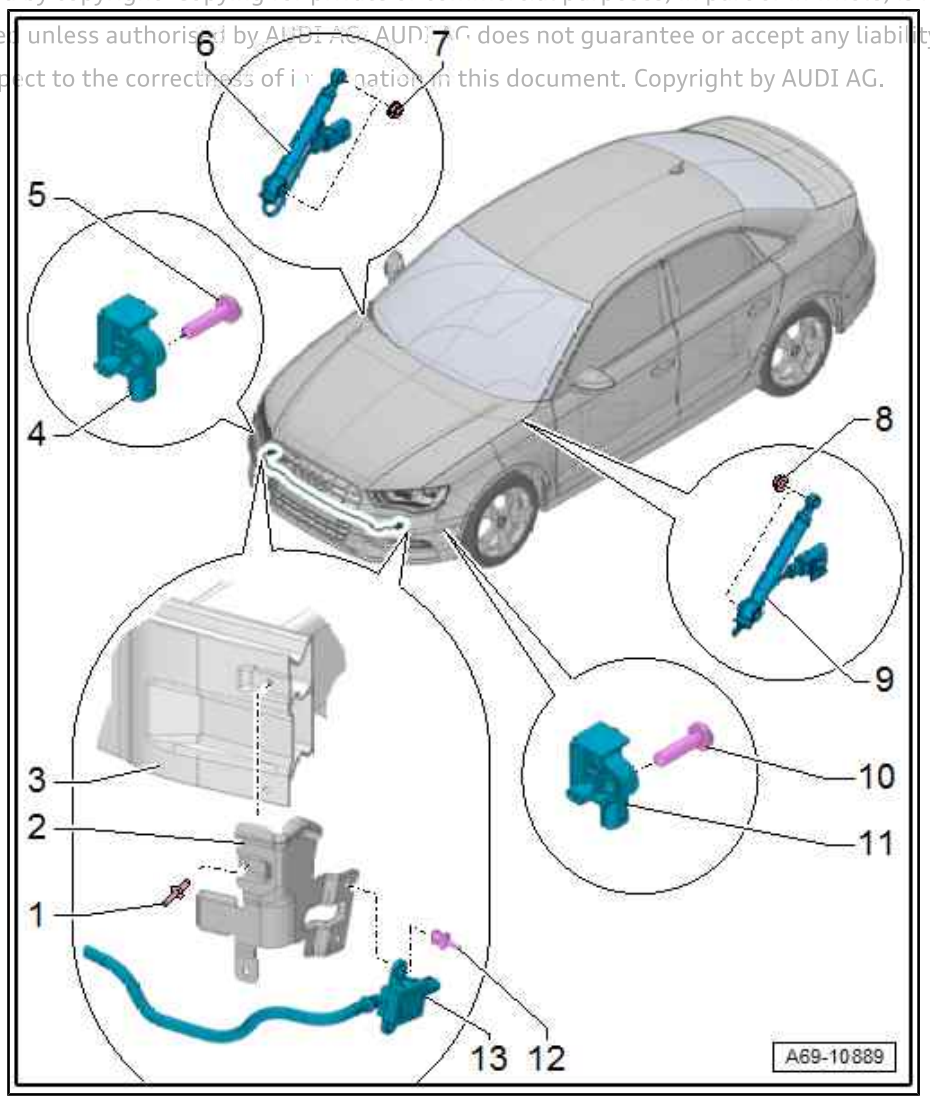
10 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

15.1.2 Overview - pedestrian protection, vehicles with 2 senders and pressure sensors up to model year 2016

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Rivet

- ❑ 4x

2 - Bracket for crash sensor

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Riveted to impact bar
- ❑ Renew bracket with crash sensor if it is deformed
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 213

3 - Impact bar

- ❑ Renew impact bar with crash sensor if it is visibly deformed

4 - Front passenger side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G571-

- ❑ Fitting location: On bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 203

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

6 - Trigger 2 for pedestrian protection - G599-

- ❑ Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Resetting hinge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

7 - Nut/clip

- ❑ 1 nut and 1 clip
- ❑ 8 Nm

8 - Nut/clip

- ❑ 1 nut and 1 clip
- ❑ 8 Nm

9 - Trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598-

- ❑ Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Resetting hinge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

11 - Driver side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G570-

- ❑ Fitting location: On bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 203

12 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ 4x

13 - Driver side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G851- and front passenger side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G852-

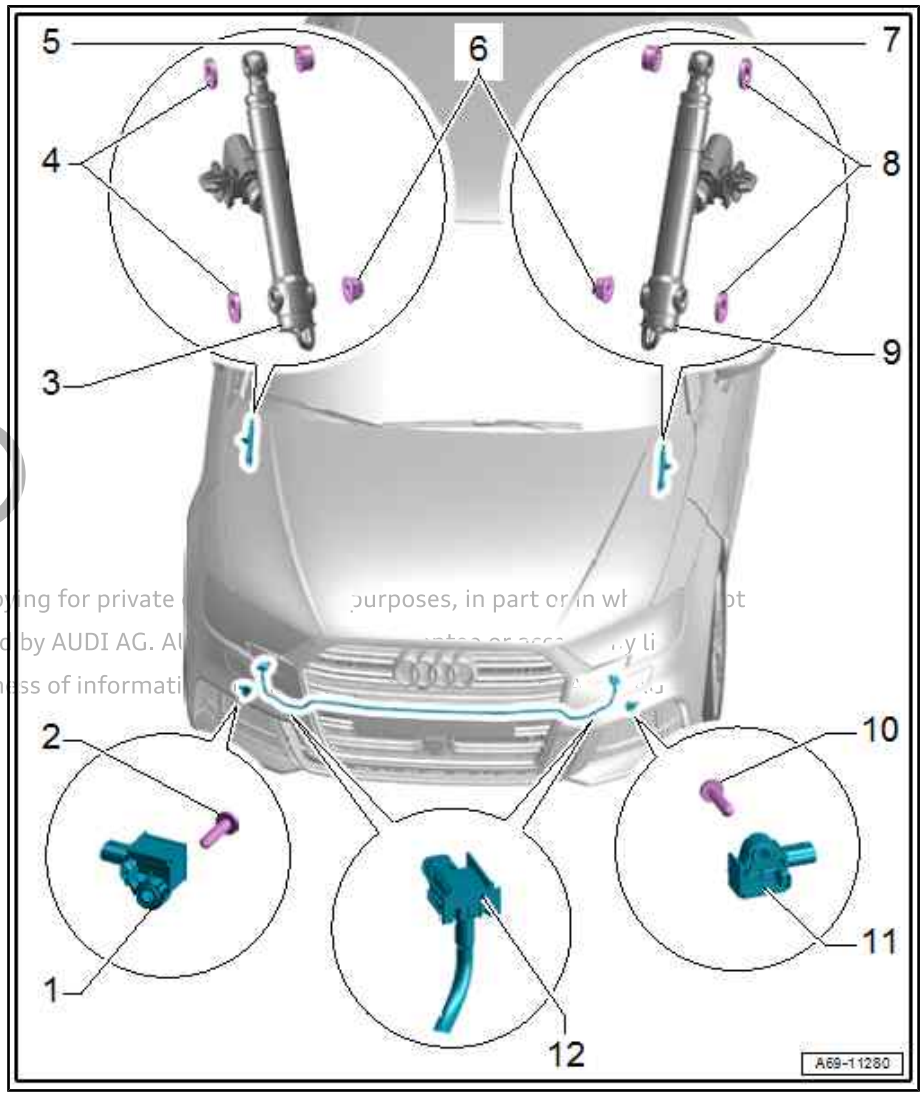
- ❑ Sensor unit: pressure-based impact sensor
- ❑ Must be renewed if:

- ♦ Moulded foam insert is visibly damaged
- ♦ Impact bar is visibly deformed
- ♦ Bracket is deformed
- ♦ Pressure hose is damaged
  - ❑ Fitting location: On impact bar
  - ❑ Cannot be dismantled; -G851- , -G852- and pressure hose comprise a single unit
  - ❑ Insert pressure hose into groove on moulded foam insert of bumper
  - ❑ Installation position of pressure hose: Centred in moulded foam insert of bumper, protrudes equally on left and right
  - ❑ Do not kink or crimp pressure hose
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 208



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

15.1.3 Overview - pedestrian protection, vehicles with 2 senders and pressure sensors from model year 2017 onwards



1 - Front passenger side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G571-

- ❑ Fitting location: On bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 203

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

3 - Trigger 2 for pedestrian protection - G599-

- ❑ Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Resetting hinge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

Protected by copyright. Copying for private purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or assume any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

4 - Seals

5 - Clip

6 - Nut

- ❑ 8 Nm

7 - Clip

8 - Seals

9 - Trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598-

- ❑ Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Resetting hinge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

11 - Driver side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G570-

- ❑ Fitting location: On bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 203

12 - Driver side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G851- / front passenger side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G852-

- ❑ Fitting location: in moulded foam insert on impact bar
- ❑ Combined with pressure hose; renew together with moulded foam insert if defective
- ❑ Must be renewed if:

- ♦ Moulded foam insert is visibly damaged
- ♦ Impact bar is visibly deformed
- ♦ Bumper cover is deformed
- ♦ Pressure hose is damaged

- ❑ Starting on the outside and working inwards, insert pressure hose evenly into groove on moulded foam insert
- ❑ Do not kink, pull or crimp pressure hose
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 210

15.2 Removing and installing crash sensor for pedestrian protection -G570- / -G571-

- ♦ Vehicles from model year 2017 onwards: Bumper cover, crash sensors for pedestrian protection and airbag control unit -J234- are different for the basic and S line equipment versions.
- ♦ It is not permitted to interchange components.
- ♦ For assignment of bumper cover, crash sensors for pedestrian protection and airbag control unit -J234- , refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .

– Equipment version with auxiliary radiator (left-side/right-side): Remove bumper cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front); Removing and installing bumper cover .

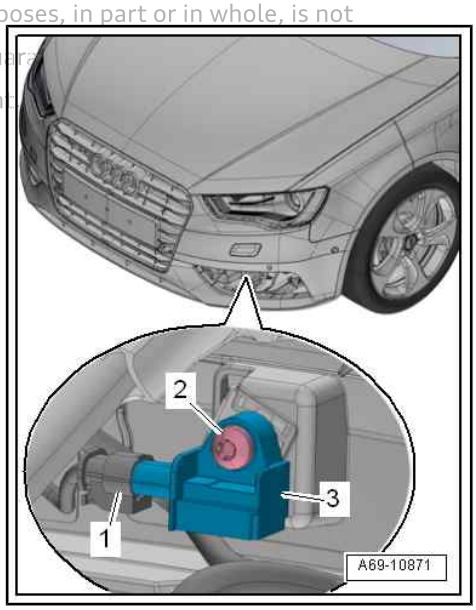
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Remove bolt -2- and detach crash sensor -3- for pedestrian protection from bumper.

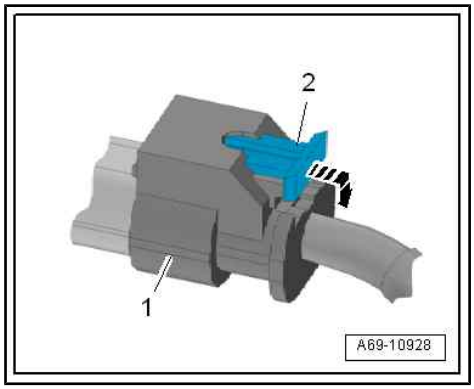
WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.



– To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.



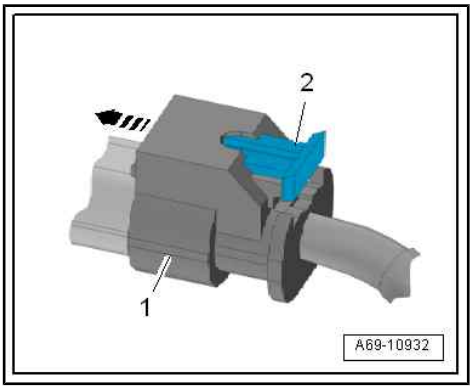
Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the area of the bonnet when the battery is being connected.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “15.1 Overview - pedestrian protection”, page 198

15.3 Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G693-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

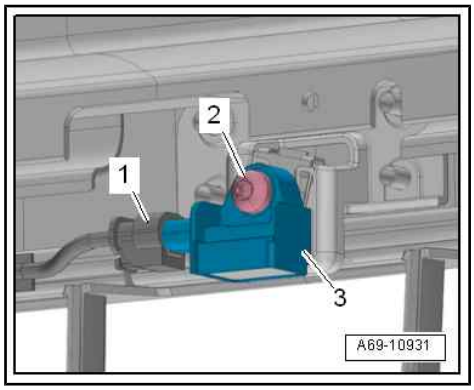
WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ***⇒ page 4*** ***.***

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front); Removing and installing bumper cover .

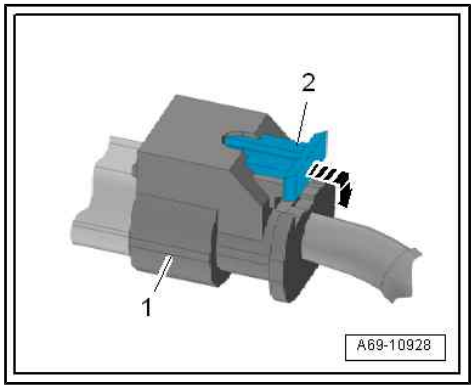
– Remove bolt -2- and detach centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G693- -item 3- from bumper.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.



– To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.

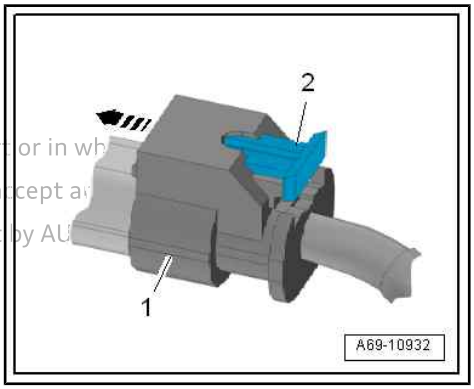
Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in wh
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the area of the bonnet when the battery is being connected.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “15.1 Overview - pedestrian protection”, page 198

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

15.4 Removing and installing crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection -G851- and -G852-

⇒ “15.4.1 Removing and installing crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection G851 and G852 - vehicles up to model year 2016”, page 208

⇒ “15.4.2 Removing and installing crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection G851 and G852 - vehicles from model year 2017 on-wards”, page 210

⇒ “15.4.3 Removing and installing bracket for crash sensor for pedestrian protection”, page 213

15.4.1 Removing and installing crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection -G851- and -G852- - vehicles up to model year 2016

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

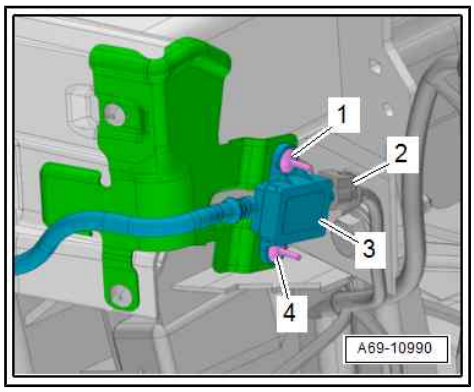
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove moulded foam insert ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front) .

– Remove spreader rivets -1, 4- and detach crash sensor -3- for pedestrian protection from bracket.

WARNING

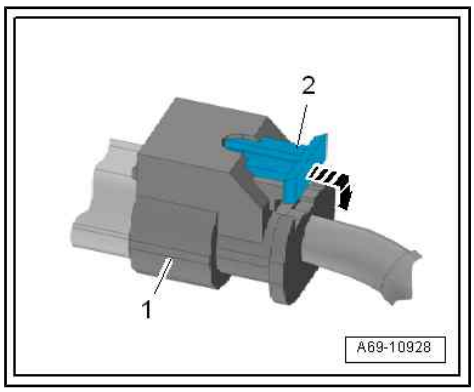
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.

– Repeat procedure on opposite side.

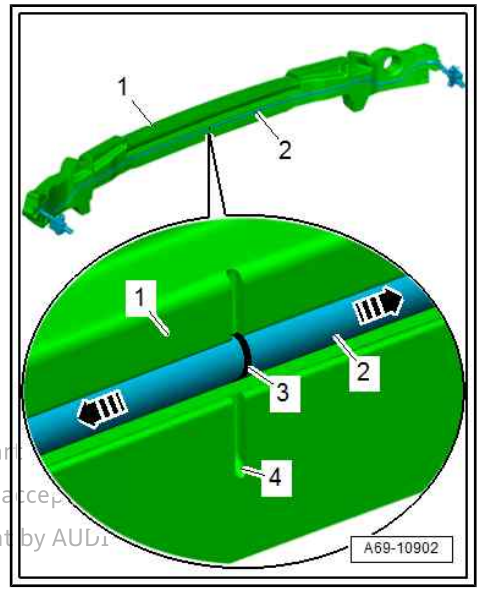


Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Insert pressure hose -2- centrally in recess in moulded foam insert -1-, ensuring that coloured marking -3- is aligned with marking -4- on moulded foam insert.



Note

- *Not all pressure hoses -2- have a coloured marking -3-.*
- *If you are using a pressure hose -2- without a coloured marking -3-, measure and mark the middle of the hose.*

– Insert pressure hose into recess in moulded foam insert evenly in both directions -arrows-.

WARNING

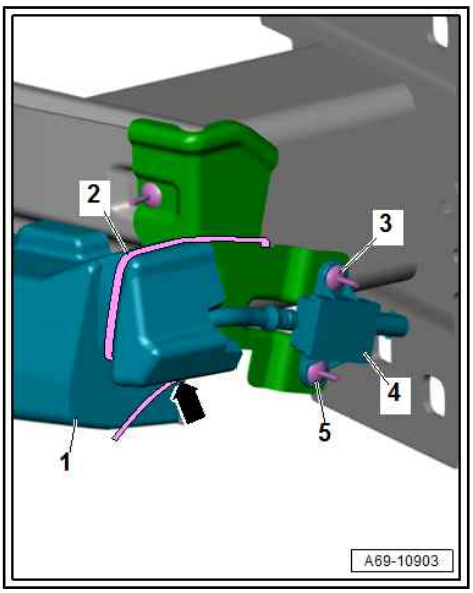
Do not kink or stretch the pressure hose.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Install moulded foam insert with crash sensors for pedestrian protection ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front) .

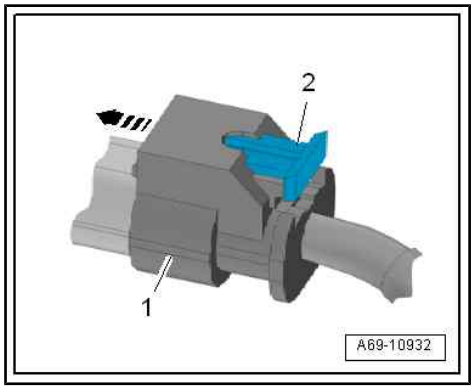
– Install crash sensor -4- for pedestrian protection with spreader rivets -3, 5- on bracket.

– Secure moulded foam insert -1- to bracket on both sides with cable ties -2-; cable tie fastener -arrow- must be located at bottom of moulded foam insert.



– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.

– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the area of the bonnet when the battery is being connected.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "15.1.2 Overview - pedestrian protection, vehicles with 2 senders and pressure sensors up to model year 2016", page 200

15.4.2 Removing and installing crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection -G851- and -G852- - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards

- Vehicles from model year 2017 onwards: Bumper cover, crash sensors for pedestrian protection and airbag control unit -J234- are different for the basic and S line equipment versions.
- It is not permitted to interchange components.

- For assignment of bumper cover, crash sensors for pedestrian protection and airbag control unit - J234- , refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front); Removing and installing bumper cover .

WARNING

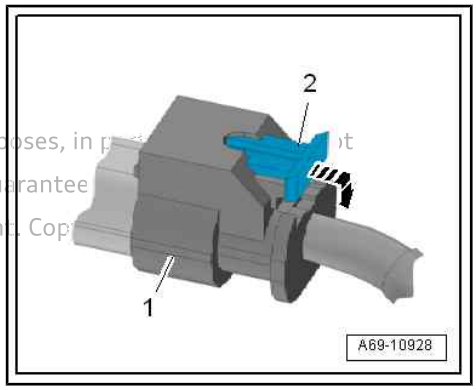
Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- from crash sensor.

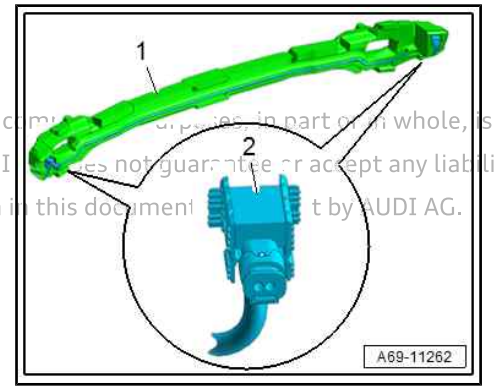
– Repeat procedure for connector on opposite side.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p... ...t permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu...rantee ... with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Cop...



Copyright by AUDI AG.
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document copied by AUDI AG.

– Remove moulded foam insert ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front) .
– Moulded foam insert -1- cannot be disconnected from crash sensors -2- for pedestrian protection without being damaged irreparably.



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

The crash sensor for pedestrian protection cannot be renewed separately; if it is defective, renew it together with the moulded foam insert.

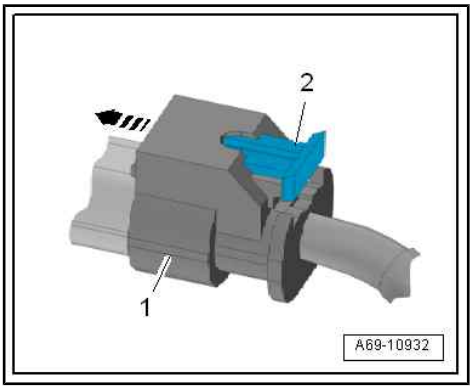
WARNING

Risk of malfunction

- *Do not kink, twist or stretch the pressure hose.*

• The pressure hose must be inserted so that it is free of tension.
– Install moulded foam insert with crash sensor for pedestrian protection ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front) .

– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.***
- ***Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

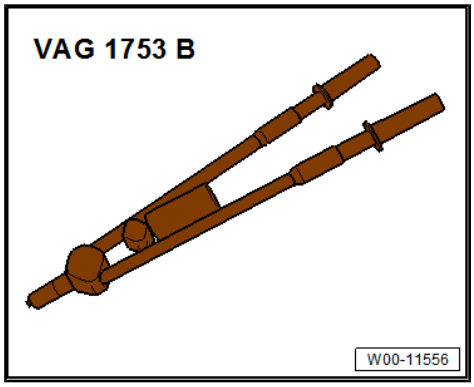
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “15.1.3 Overview - pedestrian protection, vehicles with 2 senders and pressure sensors from model year 2017 onwards”, page 202

15.4.3 Removing and installing bracket for crash sensor for pedestrian protection

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Audi Self-Study Programme for training or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



- Drill
- Safety goggles

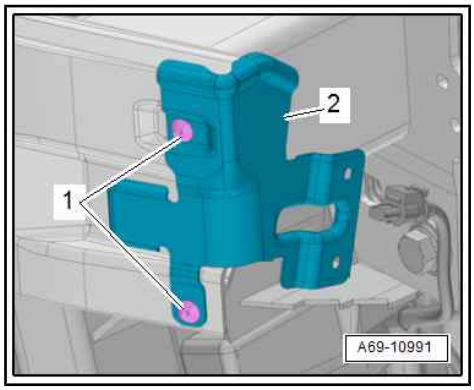
Removing

– Remove crash sensor for pedestrian protection -G851- / -G852- ⇒ page 208 .

WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

- *Put on safety goggles.*



– Drill out rivets -1- and detach bracket -2- for crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "15.1.2 Overview - pedestrian protection, vehicles with 2 senders and pressure sensors up to model year 2016", page 200

15.5 Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection -G598- / -G599-

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 *.*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

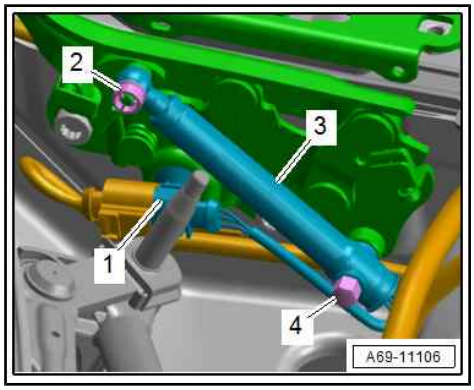
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove plenum chamber cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50 ; Bulkhead; Removing and installing plenum chamber cover .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Press release catch, and unplug and move clear electrical connector -1- for trigger for pedestrian protection.
– Remove nut/remove clip -2- with a screwdriver.
– Remove nut -4- and detach trigger for pedestrian protection -3- from mounting pins.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the area of the bonnet when the battery is being connected.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "15.1 Overview - pedestrian protection", page 198

15.6 Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered

Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered
⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Resetting hinge

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

70 – Trim, insulation

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 Door trim (front)

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 218
⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing door trim (front)”, page 221
⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing trim panel”, page 224
⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing armrest (front)”, page 225
⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing interior door handle”, page 229
⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing window frame trim”, page 229

1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)

Note

The illustration shows the door trim (front) on the A3.

1 - Lining mat

2 - Cover

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Clip into door pocket

3 - Door trim

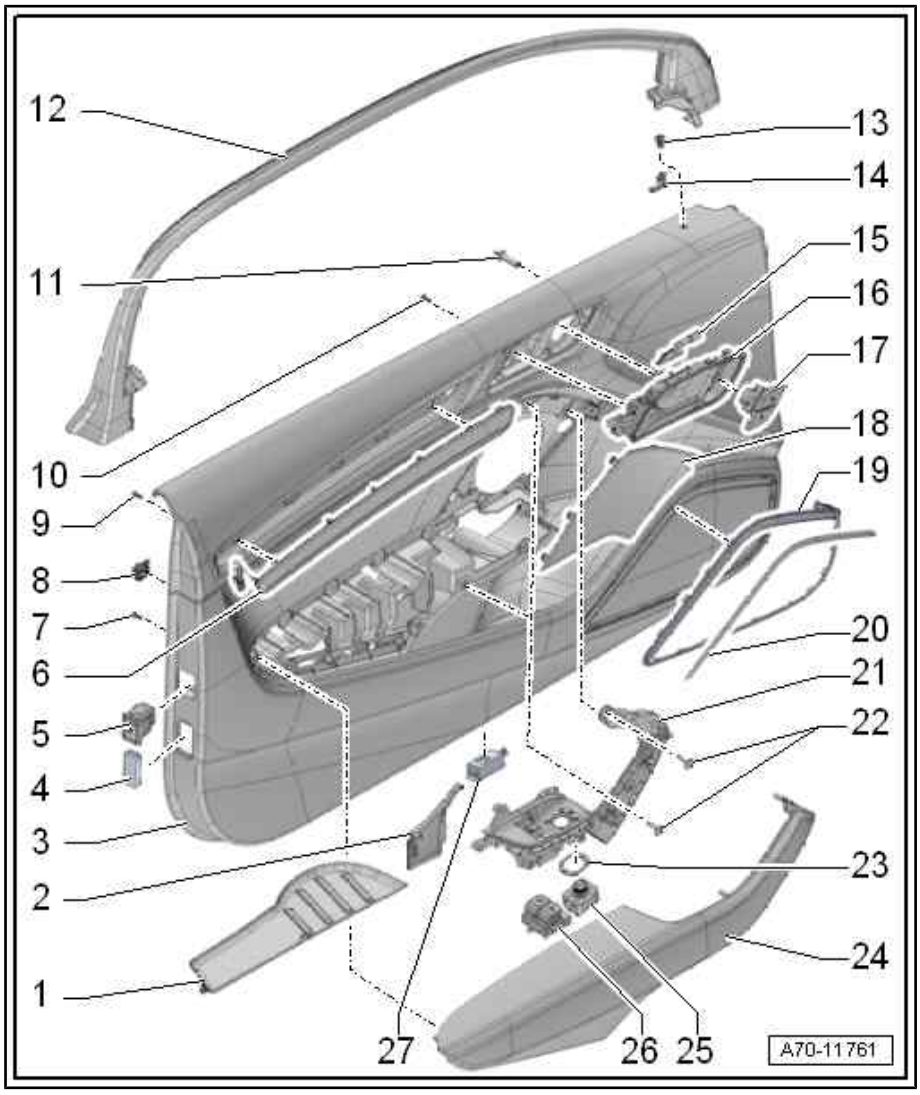
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 221
- ❑ If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve -item 13- must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

4 - Door warning lamp

- ❑ Driver side (equipment version): driver side door warning lamp - W30-
- ❑ Passenger side (equipment version): front passenger side door warning lamp - W36-
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors

5 - Button for deactivating interior monitoring and vehicle inclination sensor - E616-

- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Anti-theft alarm system; Overview - interior monitoring



6 - Trim panel

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 224

7 - Bolt

- ❑ For door puller/armrest
- ❑ A3: 16x
- ❑ A3 Sportback/Saloon: 12x
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

8 - Clip

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ A3: 8x
- ❑ A3 Sportback/Saloon: 7x
- ❑ Insert in trim

9 - Bolt

- ❑ For trim panel
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

10 - Bolt

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

11 - Stop

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

12 - Trim

- ❑ For window frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 229

13 - Sleeve

- ❑ For central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-
- ❑ Driver's door only
- ❑ If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

14 - Central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-

15 - Driver door opener illumination bulb - L108-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger door opener illumination bulb - L109-
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors

16 - Interior door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 229

17 - Driver side interior locking button for central locking system - E308-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger side interior locking button for central locking system - E309-
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

18 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing door trim (front)", page 221
- ❑ Hook into door trim and press on until it engages audibly

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

19 - Light for driver side door loudspeaker trim - L223-

- ❑ Passenger side: light for passenger side door loudspeaker trim - L224-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors

20 - Trim

- ❑ For light conductor

21 - Door puller

- ❑ With switch mounting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing armrest (front)”, page 225

22 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

23 - Symbol trim

24 - Armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 225

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

25 - Mirror adjustment switch - E43-

- ❑ Depending on equipment version: adjustment switch for mirror with fold-in feature - E168-
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

26 - Operating unit for window regulator in driver door - E512-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger side window regulator button - E716-
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

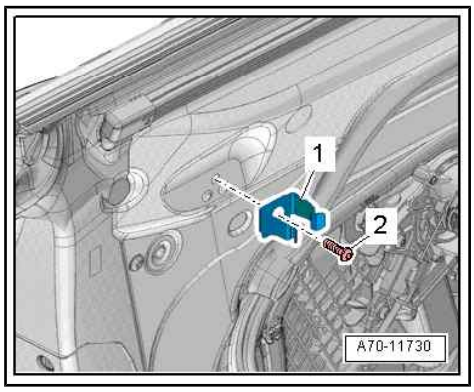
27 - Driver side entry light - W92-

- ❑ Passenger side: passenger side entry light - W93-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors

Clip for door trim (A3 Sportback only)

1 - Clip for door trim

2 - Bolt, 2.5 Nm



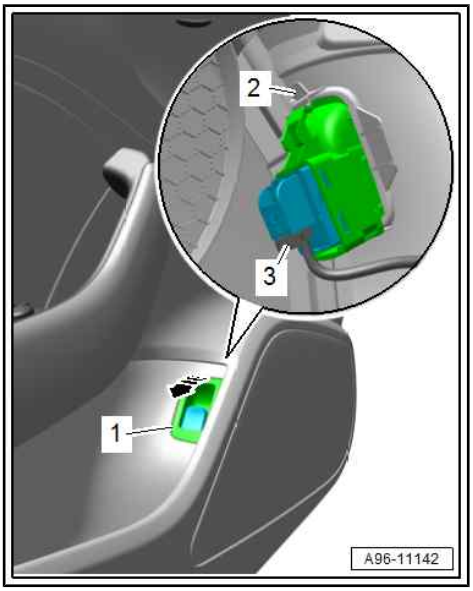
Rear lid release switch - E165- (market-specific version for NAR) / fuel tank flap release button - E319- (A3 e-tron)

– Remove switch -E165- / button -E319- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors .

1 - Trim

2 - Retaining clip

3 - Electrical connector



1.2 Removing and installing door trim (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

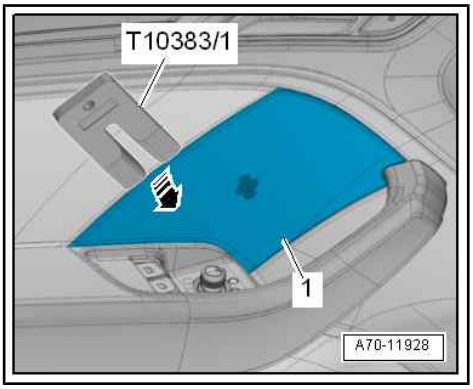
♦ Wedges - T10383-



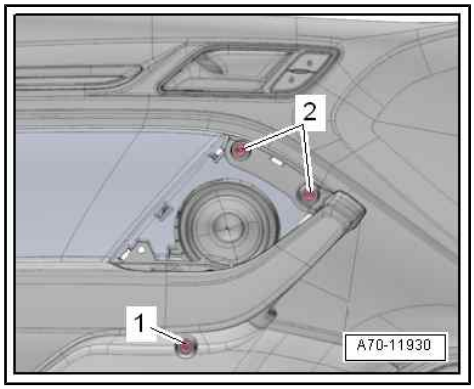
Removing

– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.

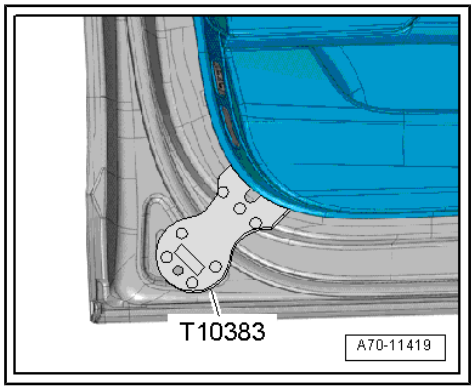
– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim along gap -arrow- and detach.



– Remove bolts -1, 2-.

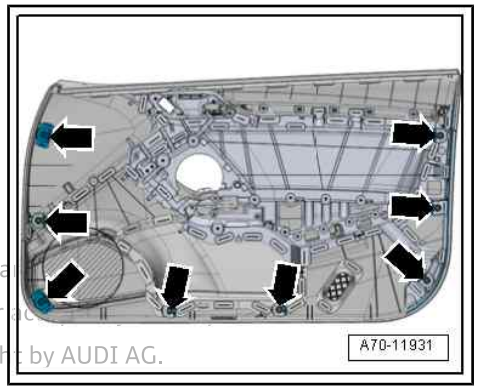


– Starting in bottom rear corner, use wedge -T10383- to unclip door trim from door. To do so, insert wedge between door trim and door in area of retaining clips.



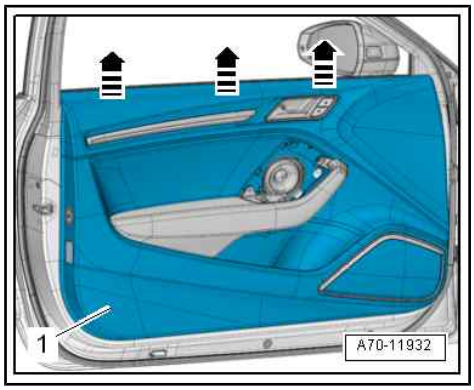
Position of retaining clips -arrows-

- A3: 8 retaining clips
- A3 Sportback/Saloon: 7 retaining clips

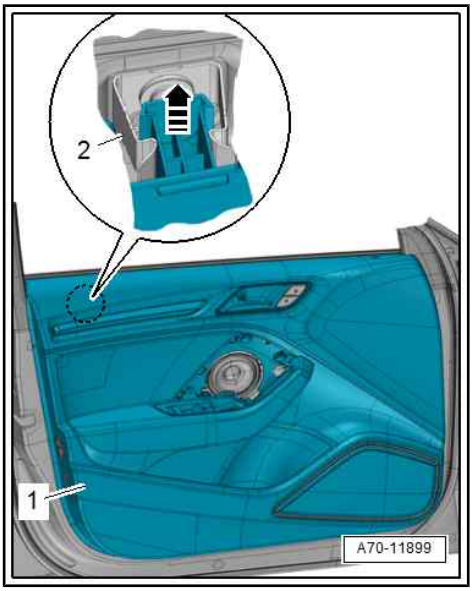


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrigh by AUDI AG.

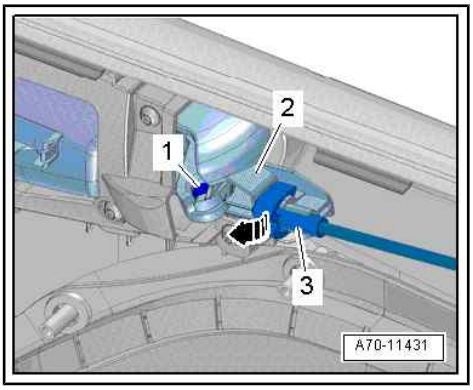
– Pull door trim -1- approx. 15 mm away from the door all around.
• Do not leave retaining clips in door.
– Disengage door trim from door at top of window slot -arrows- and detach.



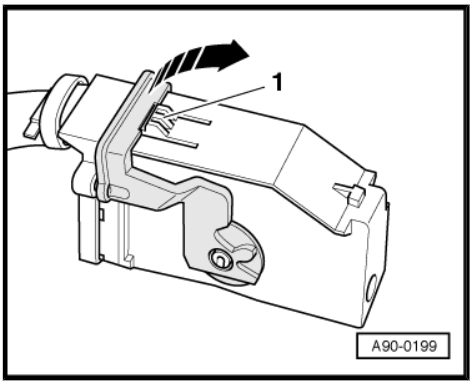
– A3 Sportback/Saloon: In addition, press door trim -1- upwards out of clip -2- in direction of -arrow- at location indicated.



– Carefully unclip Bowden cable -3- from interior door handle -2-.
– Swivel Bowden cable for interior door handle inwards -arrow-.
– Disengage end of cable -1- at interior door handle.

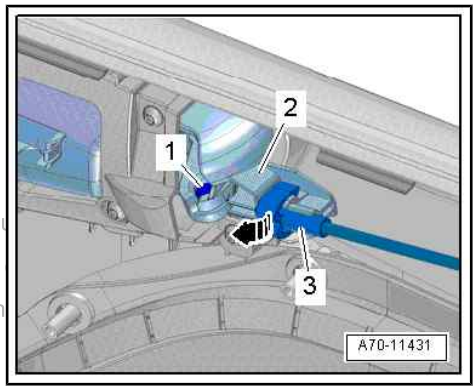


– To unplug electrical connector, press catch -1-, turn retaining bracket in direction of -arrow- and unplug connector.
– Detach door trim.



Installing

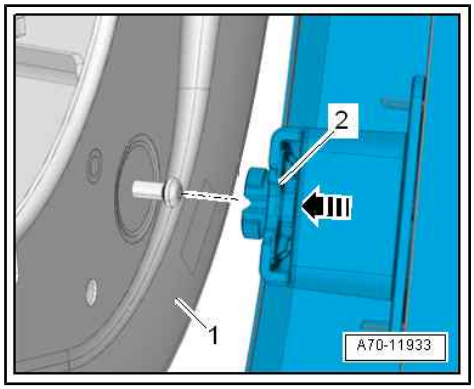
– Engage end of cable -1- in lever of interior door handle.
– Clip in Bowden cable -3- for interior door handle at interior door handle -2-.
• Bowden cable must engage audibly.
– Plug in electrical connector at door control unit.



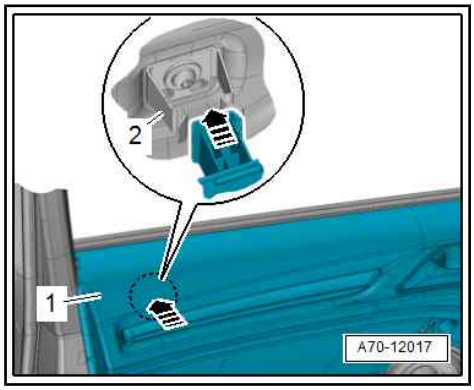
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum

– Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.

– Carefully position clips -2- for door trim all around door -1- and press door trim onto door -arrow- until it engages audibly at anchorage points ⇒ page 222 .



– A3 Sportback/Saloon: In addition, engage door trim -1- in clip -2- by pressing door trim onto door -arrows- at location indicated.



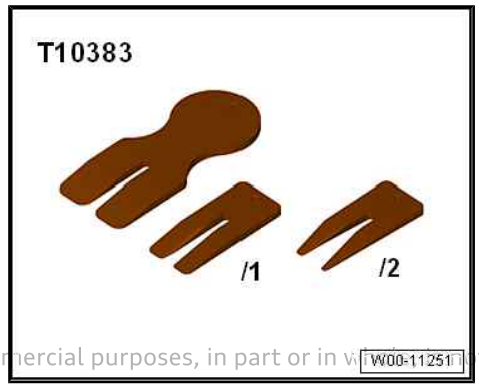
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 218

1.3 Removing and installing trim panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

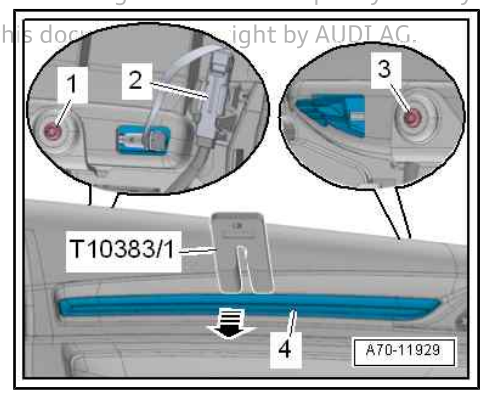
– Remove door trim ⇒ page 221 .

– Remove bolts -1, 3-.

– Equipment version with ambient lighting: Unplug electrical connector -2- for ambient lighting bulb and move wiring clear.

– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully prise trim panel -4- off door trim along gap -arrow-.

– Disengage hook on inside of trim from recess in door trim and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 218

1.4 Removing and installing armrest (front)

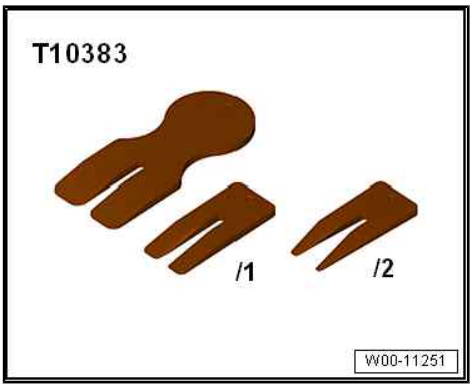
⇒ “1.4.1 Removing and installing armrest - A3”, page 225

⇒ “1.4.2 Removing and installing armrest - A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon”, page 226

1.4.1 Removing and installing armrest - A3

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-



- Drill
- Drill bits (∅ 3.0 mm and ∅ 6.5 mm)
- Safety goggles

Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 221 .

– Remove insulating mat.

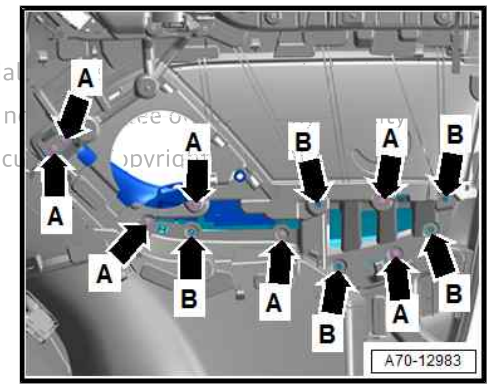
– Remove window regulator switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors .

– Driver side: Remove mirror adjustment switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors .

Version 1:

– Unscrew bolts -arrows A- at rear of door trim.

– Using ∅ 6.5 mm drill bit, drill armrest attachment points -arrows B- off door trim until armrest just starts to become detached from door trim.



Caution

Take care not to damage door trim when drilling.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

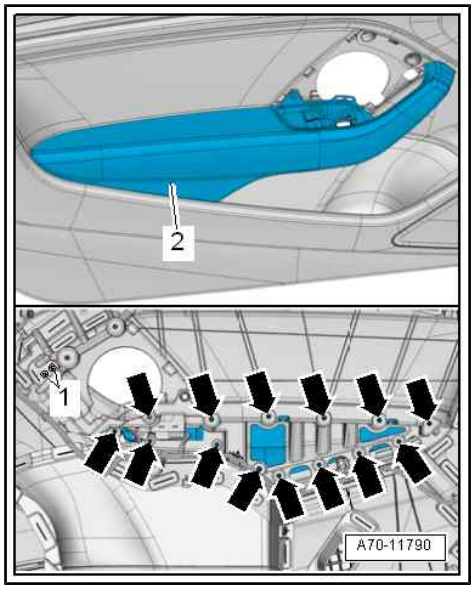
Version 2:

– Unscrew bolts -1- at rear of door trim.

– Using ∅ 6.5 mm drill bit, drill armrest attachment points -arrows- off door trim until armrest just starts to become detached from door trim.

Caution

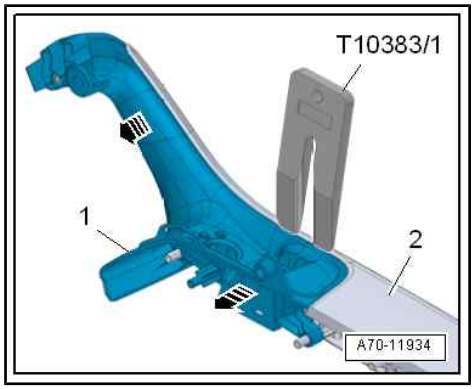
Take care not to damage door trim when drilling.



All vehicles (continued):

– Carefully release armrest at each attachment point and detach armrest -2- from door trim.

– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully unclip door puller -1- with switch mounting from armrest -2- -arrows- and detach.



Installing

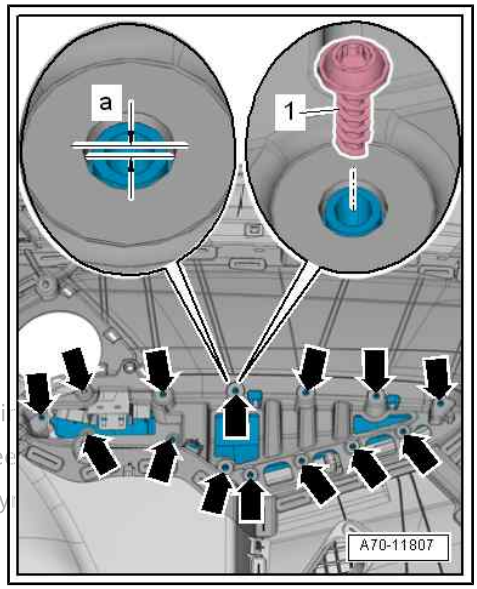
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Shorten plastic pegs (marked with -arrows-) on new armrest to dimension -a- = 0.2 mm beneath bolt-on surface for attachments.

• Dimension -a- = 0.2 mm

– When using an armrest that has already been welded once before, drill out bolt holes to ∅ 3.0 mm.

– Insert armrest in door trim and secure plastic pegs with bolts -1-.



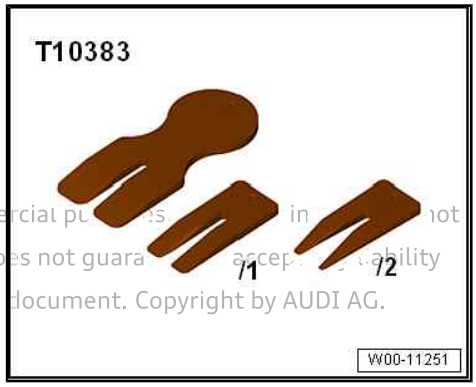
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 218

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarante
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

1.4.2 Removing and installing armrest - A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Drill

♦ Drill bits (∅ 3.0 mm and ∅ 6.5 mm)

♦ Safety goggles

Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 221 .

– Remove insulating mat.

– Remove window regulator switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors .

– Driver side: Remove mirror adjustment switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors .

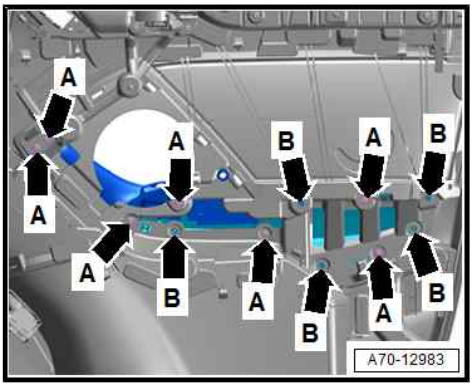
Version 1:

– Unscrew bolts -arrows A- at rear of door trim.

– Using ∅ 6.5 mm drill bit, drill armrest attachment points -arrows B- off door trim until armrest just starts to become detached from door trim.

Caution

Take care not to damage door trim when drilling.



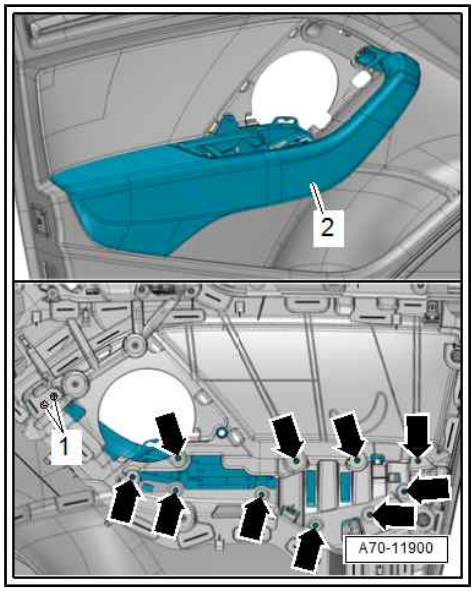
Version 2:

– Unscrew bolts -1- at rear of door trim.

– Using ∅ 6.5 mm drill bit, drill armrest attachment points -arrows- off door trim until armrest just starts to become detached from door trim.

Caution

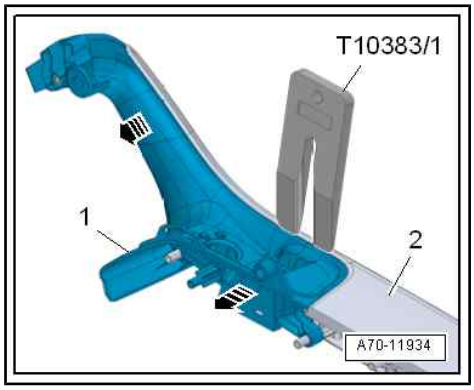
Take care not to damage door trim when drilling.



All vehicles (continued):

– Carefully release armrest at each attachment point and detach armrest -2- from door trim.

– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully unclip door puller -1- with switch mounting from armrest -2- -arrows- and detach.



Installing

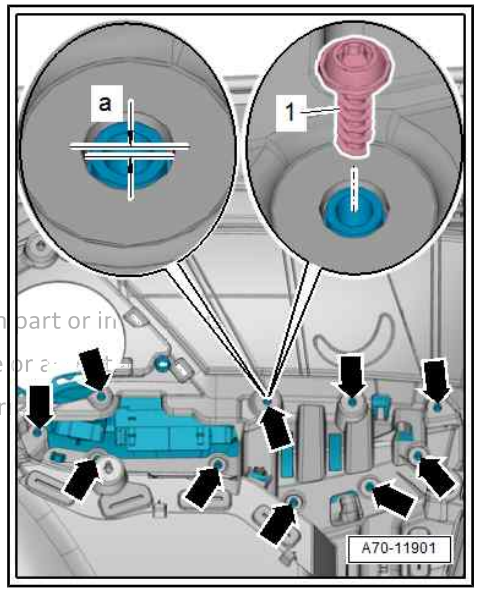
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Shorten plastic pegs (marked with -arrows-) on new armrest to dimension -a- = 0.2 mm beneath bolt-on surface for attachments.

• Dimension -a- = 0.2 mm

– When using an armrest that has already been welded once before, drill out bolt holes to ∅ 3.0 mm.

– Insert armrest in door trim and secure plastic pegs with bolts -1-.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 218

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to this software or any information in this document. Copyr

1.5 Removing and installing interior door handle

Removing

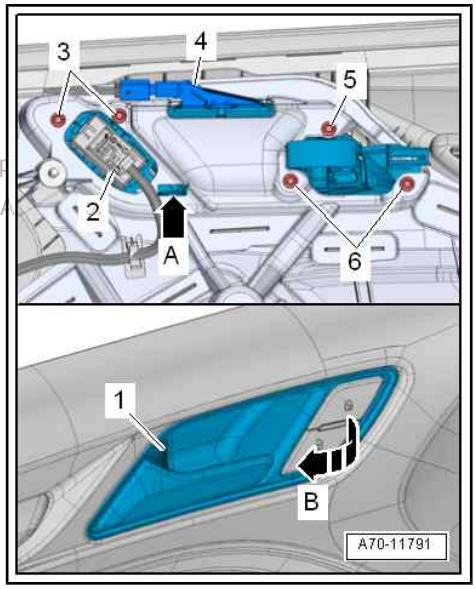
– Remove door trim ⇒ page 221 .

– Unplug electrical connector -2- at rear of door trim.

– Remove door opener illumination bulb -4- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors .

– Remove bolts -3, 5, 6-.

– Release fastener -arrow A- and detach interior door handle -1- from door trim -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

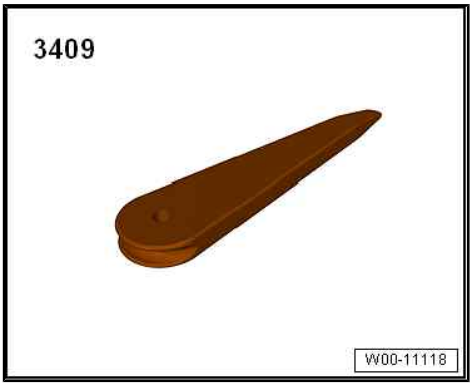
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 218

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by A

1.6 Removing and installing window frame trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

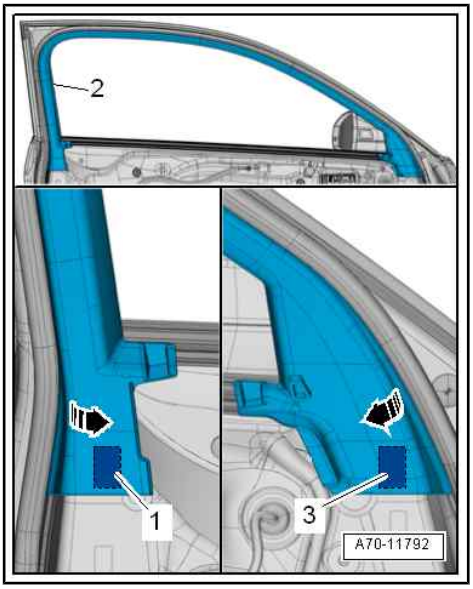
– Lower door window.

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 221 .

– Unfasten ends of trim from adhesive pads -1 and 3- on door using removal wedge - 3409- .

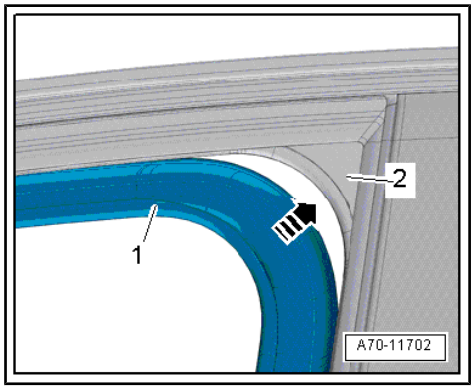
– Working from bottom to top, carefully prise off trim -2- for window frame working along window guide towards rear -arrows-.

– Pull window frame trim downwards off window frame and detach.

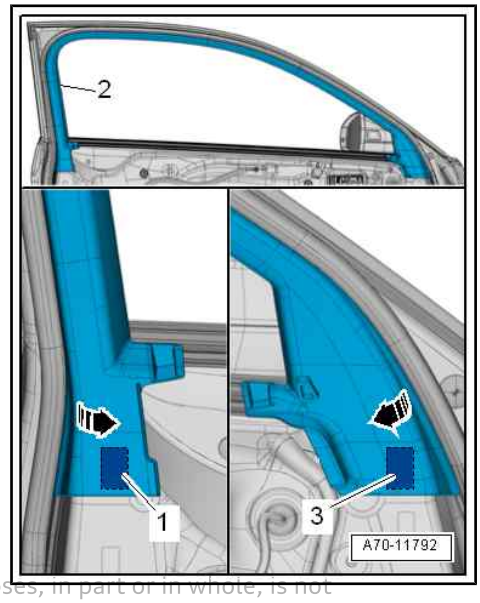


Installing

– Insert trim -1- for window frame in window guide -2- at top rear -arrow-.



– Install trim -2- for window frame over entire length of window guide.
– Peel protective film off adhesive pads on new part.
– Press trim firmly onto door in area of adhesive pads -1 and 3-.



Note

Disregard -arrows-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

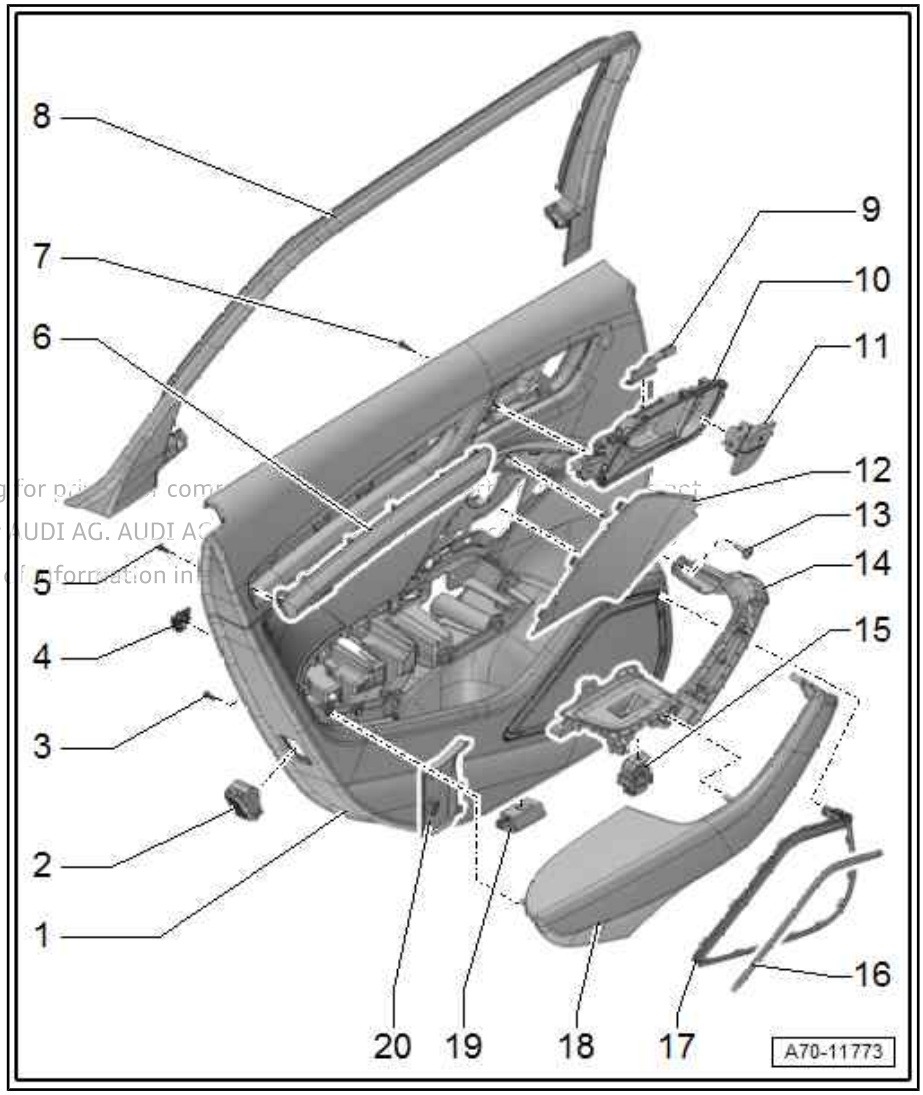
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ **“1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 218**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Door trim (rear)

⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 231
⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing door trim (rear)", page 233
⇒ "2.3 Removing and installing trim panel", page 235
⇒ "2.4 Removing and installing armrest (rear)", page 236
⇒ "2.5 Removing and installing interior door handle", page 237
⇒ "2.6 Removing and installing window frame trim", page 237

2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)



1 - Door trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 233

2 - Reflector
- ❑ Left side (equipment version): rear door warning lamp, driver side - W90-
- ❑ Right side (equipment version): rear door warning lamp, passenger side - W91-
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in rear doors

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

3 - Bolt
- ❑ For door puller/armrest
- ❑ 13x
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

4 - Clip
- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 7x
- ❑ Insert in trim

5 - Bolt
- ❑ For trim panel
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

6 - Trim panel
- ❑ Left side (equipment version): light for rear door ambient lighting, driver side - W88-
- ❑ Right side (equipment version): light for rear door ambient lighting, passenger side - W89-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 235

7 - Bolt
- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ 5x

- ❑ 1.2 Nm

8 - Trim

- ❑ For window frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 237

9 - Rear left door opener illumination bulb - L110-

- ❑ Passenger side: rear right door opener illumination bulb - L111-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in rear doors

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Interior door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 237

11 - Rear driver side interior locking button for central locking system - E717-

- ❑ Passenger side: rear passenger side interior locking button for central locking system - E718-
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in rear doors

12 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing door trim (rear)”, page 233
- ❑ Hook into door trim and press on until it engages audibly

13 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

14 - Door puller

- ❑ With switch mounting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing armrest (rear)”, page 236

15 - Rear driver side window regulator button - E711-

- ❑ Passenger side: rear passenger side window regulator button - E713-
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in rear doors

16 - Trim

- ❑ For light conductor

17 - Light for rear driver side door loudspeaker trim - L225-

- ❑ Passenger side: light for rear passenger side door loudspeaker trim - L226-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in rear doors

18 - Armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 236

19 - Rear driver side entry light - W83-

- ❑ Passenger side: rear passenger side entry light - W84-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in rear doors

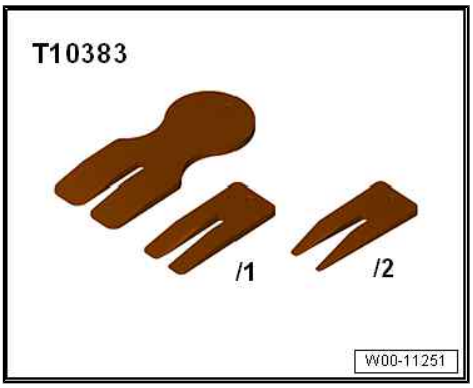
20 - Cover

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Clip into door pocket

2.2 Removing and installing door trim (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-

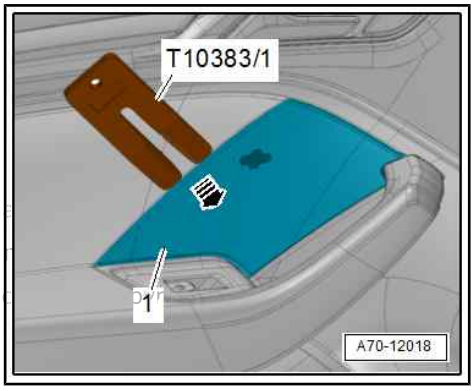


Removing

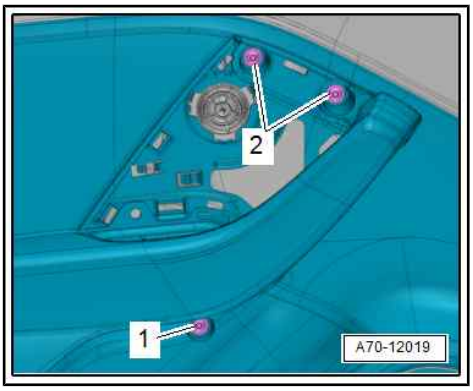
– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.

– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim along gap -arrow- and detach.

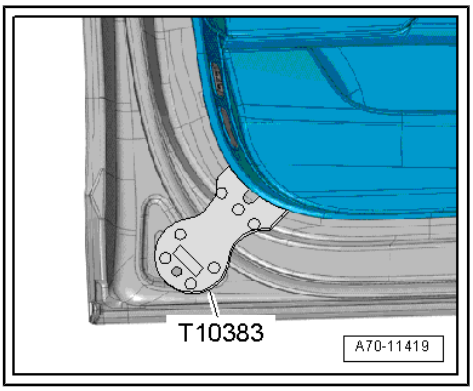
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerci
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this do



– Remove bolts -1, 2-.

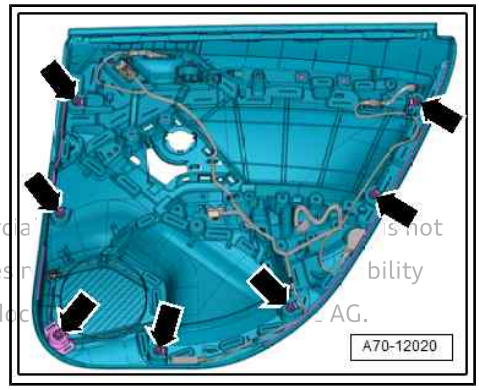


– Starting in bottom rear corner, use wedge -T10383- to unclip door trim from door. To do so, insert wedge between door trim and door in area of retaining clips.

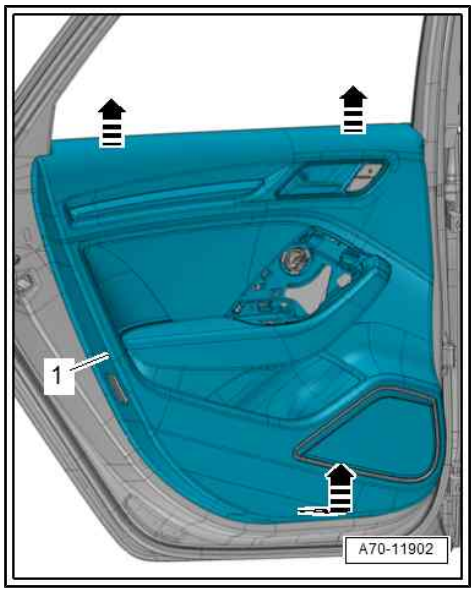


- Position of retaining clips -arrows-

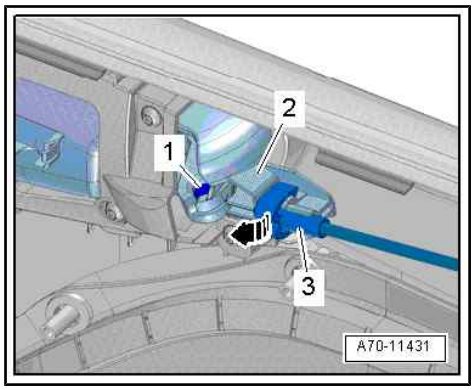
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not make any warranty or assume any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.



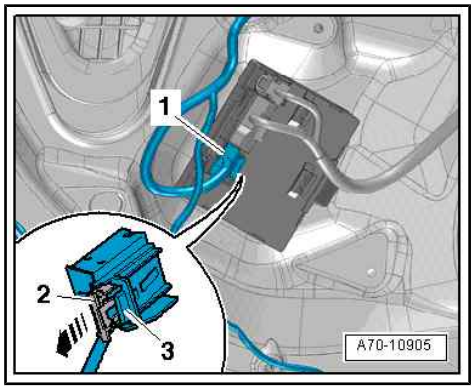
– Pull door trim -1- approx. 15 mm away from the door all around.
- Do not leave retaining clips in door.
– Disengage door trim from top of door at window slot. To do so, pull door trim upwards -arrows-.
– Equipment version with treble loudspeaker: Unplug electrical connector for treble loudspeaker.



– Carefully unclip Bowden cable -3- from interior door handle -2-.
– Swivel Bowden cable for interior door handle in direction of -arrow-.
– Disengage end of cable -1- at interior door handle.



– Unplug electrical connector -1- at door control unit. To do so, pull out fastener -2- -arrow- and press down release mechanism -3-.
– Detach door trim.



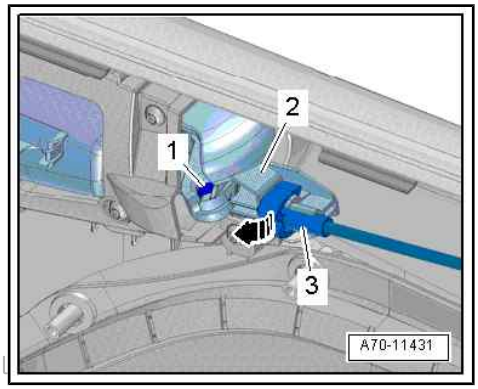
Installing

– Equipment version with treble loudspeaker: Plug in electrical connector for treble loudspeaker.

– Engage end of cable -1- in lever of interior door handle.

– Clip in Bowden cable -3- for interior door handle at interior door handle -2-.

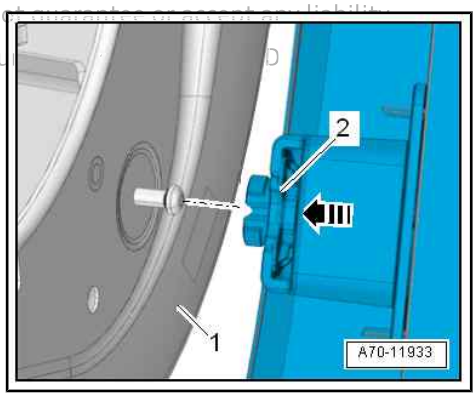
– Plug in electrical connector at door control unit.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this

– Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.

– Carefully position clips -2- for door trim all around door -1- and press door trim onto door -arrow- until it engages audibly at anchorage points ⇒ page 234 .



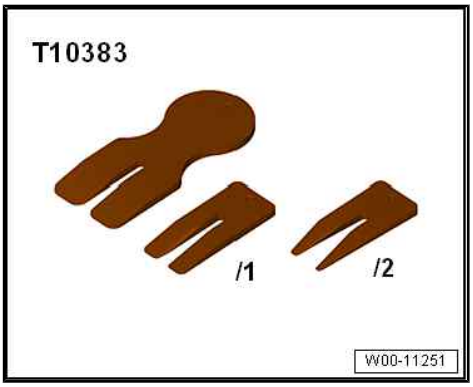
Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 231

2.3 Removing and installing trim panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

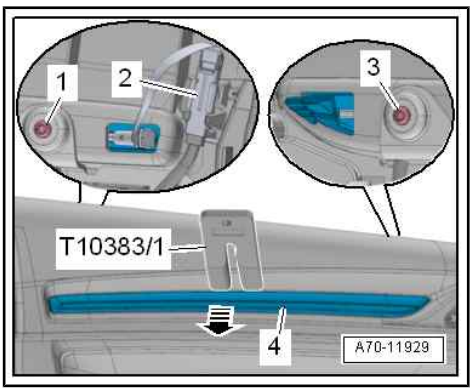
– Remove door trim ⇒ page 233 .

– Remove bolts -1, 3-.

– Equipment version with ambient lighting: Unplug electrical connector -2- for ambient lighting bulb and move wiring clear.

– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully prise trim panel -4- off door trim along gap -arrow-.

– Disengage hook on inside of trim from recess in door trim and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 231

2.4 Removing and installing armrest (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright b



- Drill
- Drill bits (∅ 3.0 mm and ∅ 6.5 mm)
- Safety goggles

Removing

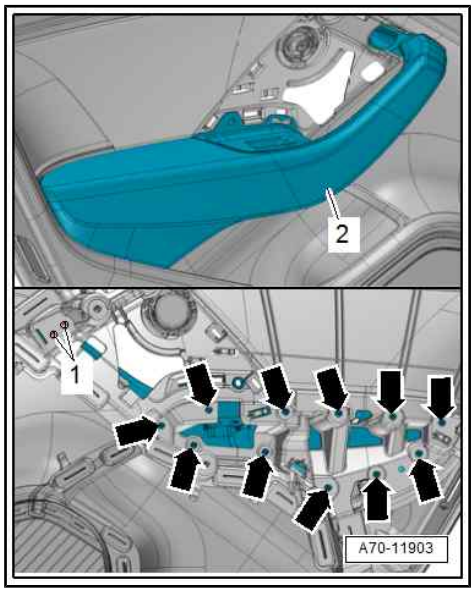
– Remove door trim ⇒ page 233 .

– Remove insulating mat.

– Remove window regulator switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in rear doors .

– Unscrew bolts -1- at rear of door trim.

– Using ∅ 6.5 mm drill bit, drill armrest attachment points -arrows- off door trim until armrest just starts to become detached from door trim.

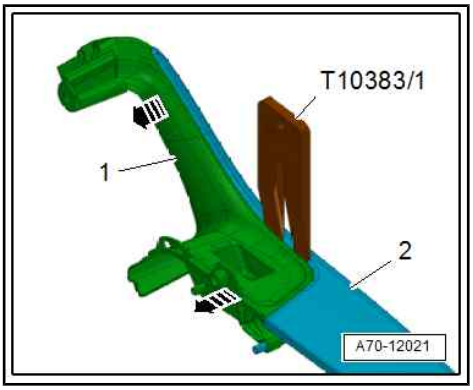


Caution

Take care not to damage door trim when drilling.

– Carefully release armrest at each attachment point and detach armrest -2- from door trim.

– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully unclip door puller -1- with switch mounting from armrest -2- -arrows- and detach.



Installing

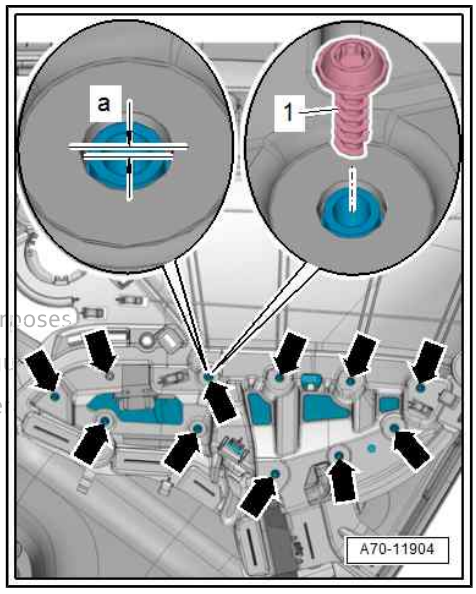
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Shorten plastic pegs (marked with -arrows-) on new armrest to dimension -a- = 0.2 mm beneath bolt-on surface for attachments.

• Dimension -a- = 0.2 mm

– When using an armrest that has already been welded once before, drill out bolt holes to ∅ 3.0 mm.

– Insert armrest in door trim and secure plastic pegs with bolts -1-.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)”, page 231

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
For spaces in the online version, the contents of this docume

2.5 Removing and installing interior door handle

Removing

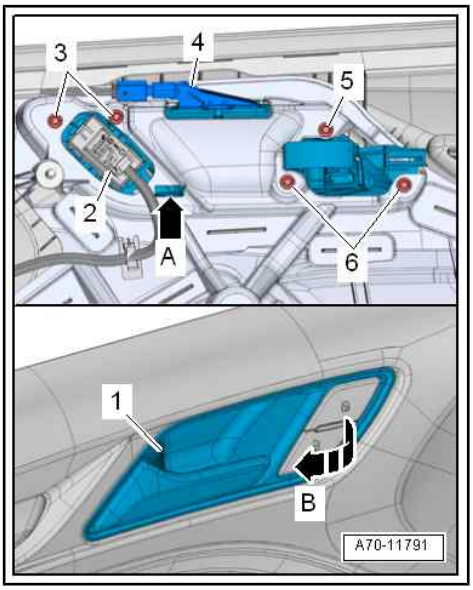
– Remove door trim ⇒ page 233 .

– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -2- at rear of door trim.

– Remove door opener illumination bulb -4- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in rear doors .

– Remove bolts -3, 5, 6-.

– Release fastener -arrow A- and detach interior door handle -1- from door trim -arrow B-.



Installing

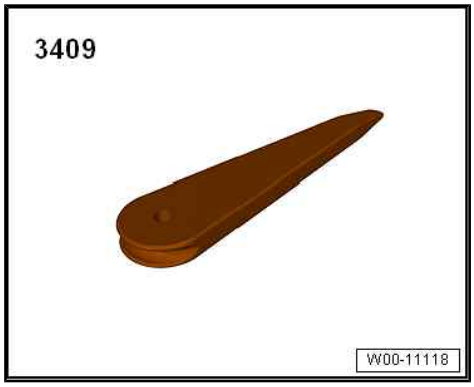
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)”, page 231

2.6 Removing and installing window frame trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

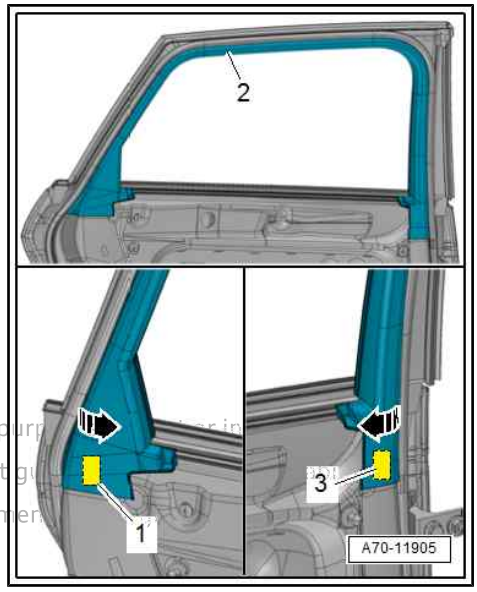
– Lower door window.

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 233 .

– Unfasten ends of trim from adhesive pads -1 and 3- on door using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Working from bottom to top, carefully prise off trim -2- for window frame working along window guide towards rear -arrows-.

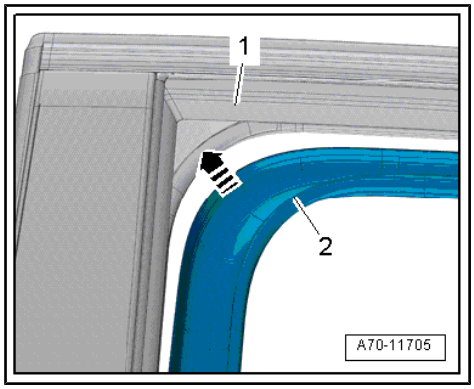
– Pull window frame trim downwards off window frame and detach.



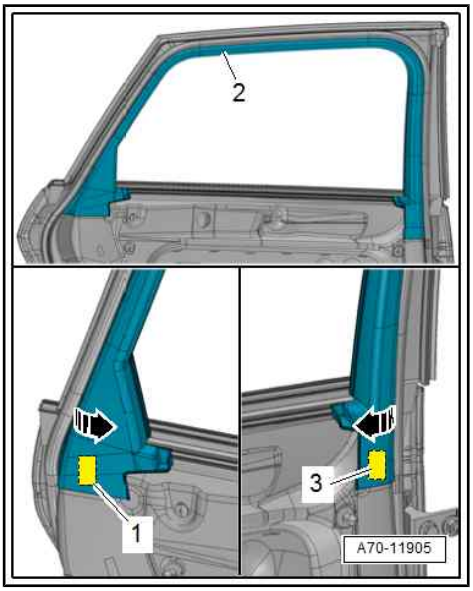
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Installing

– Insert trim -2- for window frame in window guide -1- (top front) -arrow-.



– Install trim -2- for window frame over entire length of window guide.
– Peel protective film off adhesive pads on new part.
– Press trim firmly onto door in area of adhesive pads -1 and 3-.



Note

Disregard -arrows-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)”, page 231

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Dash panel

⇒ “3.1 Overview of fitting locations - dash panel”, page 240

⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 241

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)”, page 244

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing dash panel vents”, page 244

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)”, page 246

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing defroster vent (side)”, page 247

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim”, page 247

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel”, page 248

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing cover for MMI screen”, page 250

⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing dash panel”, page 251

3.1 Overview of fitting locations - dash panel

1 - Centre console

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 36

2 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 19

3 - Steering column trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 20

4 - Cross member

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 257

5 - Dash panel

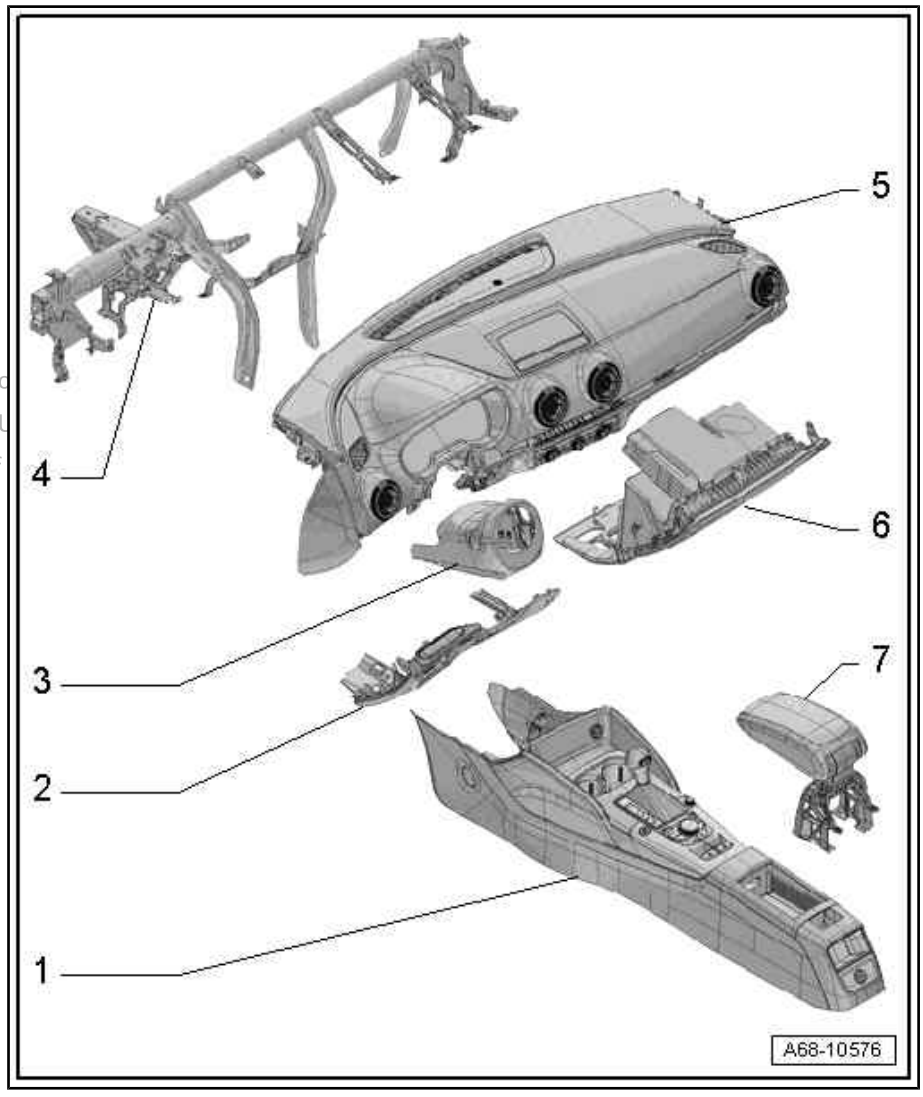
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 241

6 - Glove box

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 21

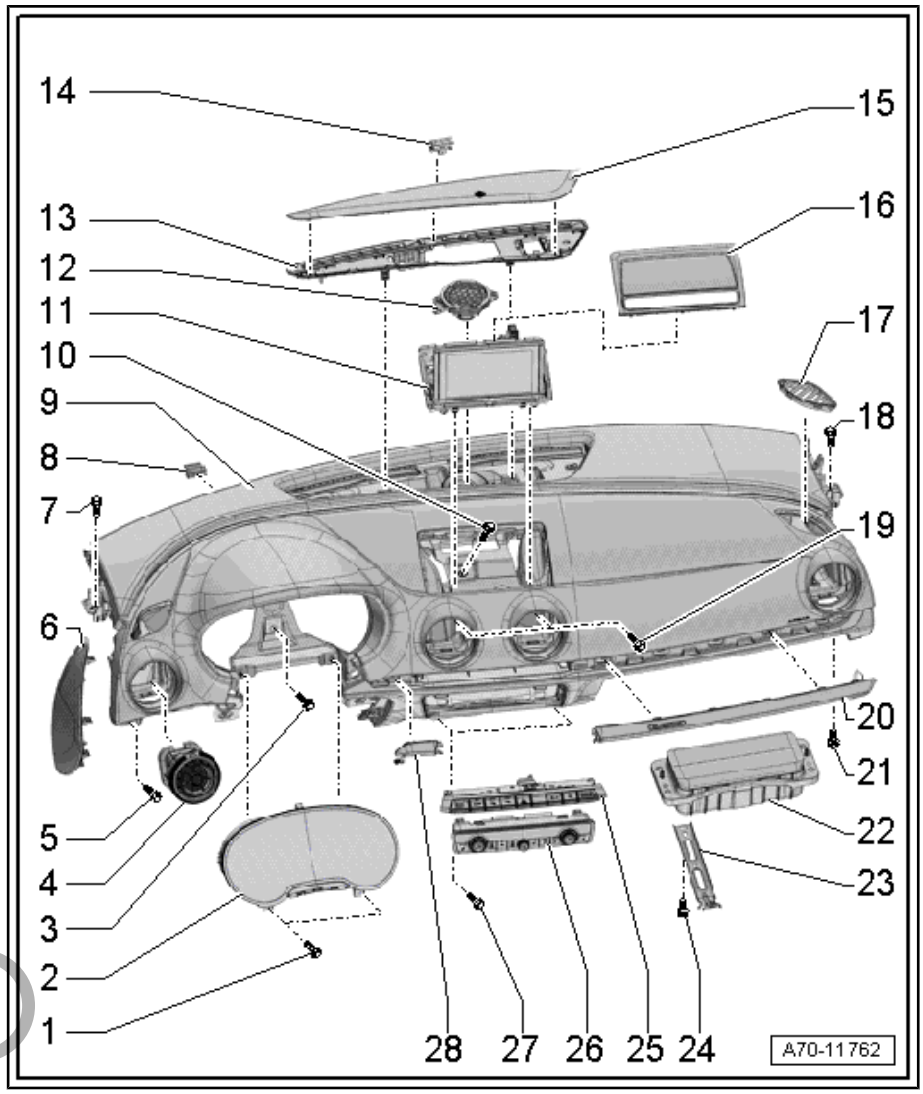
7 - Centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 53



Protected by copyright. Copying fo
permitted unless authorised by AU
with respect to the correctness of

3.2 Exploded view - dash panel



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert

2 - Dash panel insert

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

4 - Dash panel vent

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 244

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

6 - Dash panel cover (side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 244
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

8 - Rubber buffer

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Slide onto mountings for dash panel on windscreen frame (bottom)

9 - Dash panel

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 251

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

11 - Multimedia system operating unit - E380- or display unit for front information display and operating unit control unit - J685-

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Reproduction or Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations -E380- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Radio; Overview of fitting locations - radio , or -J685- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

12 - Mid-range and treble loudspeaker

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

13 - Defroster vent (front centre)

- ❑ Different versions ⇒ page 244 ; for correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 246

14 - Sunlight penetration photosensor - G107-

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Further control components

15 - Loudspeaker trim (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 247
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

16 - Cover for MMI screen

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 250
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Press on until it engages

17 - Side defroster vent

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 247

18 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

19 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

20 - Trim panel for dash panel

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 248
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

21 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

22 - Airbag (front passenger side)

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 139

23 - Support

- ❑ 2x

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing glove box”, page 27

24 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 15 (page 258)

25 - Controls in dash panel

❑ With:

♦ Hazard warning lights button - E229-

♦ TCS and ESP button - E256-

♦ Parking aid button - E266-

♦ Park assist steering button - E581-

♦ Open and close button for front display - E462-

♦ Switch module for driving mode selection - E592-

♦ Start/stop operation button - E693-

♦ Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145-

❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

26 - Operating and display unit

♦ Heater control unit - J65-

♦ Climatronic control unit - J255-

♦ Air conditioning system control unit - J301-

❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Overview of fitting locations - operating and display unit

27 - Bolt

❑ 2x

❑ 3 Nm

28 - Trim panel for dash panel

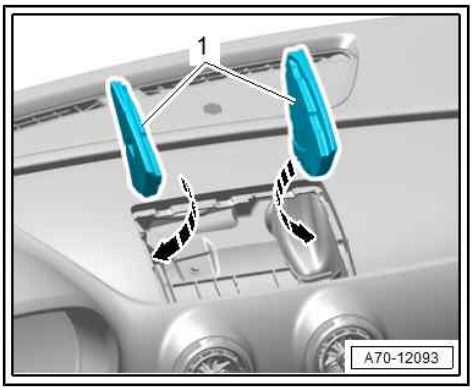
❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 248

❑ Push on until it engages audibly

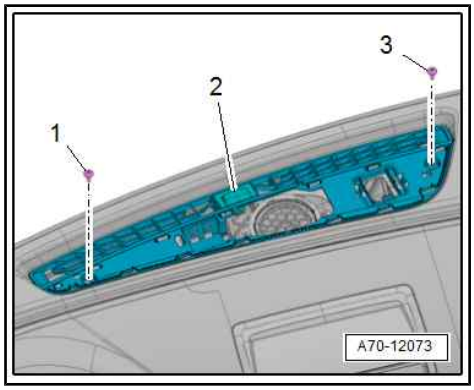
Deformation elements for dash panel - country-specific version

1 - Deformation elements



Defroster vent with additional bolts - tightening torque

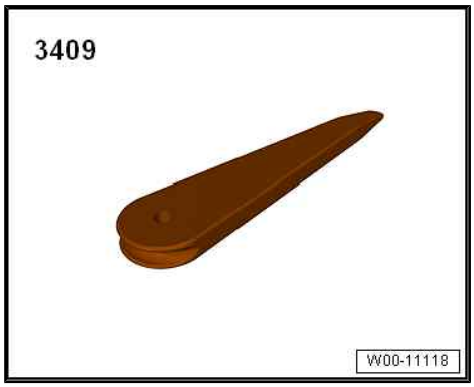
– Tighten bolts -1 and 3- to 2 Nm.



3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

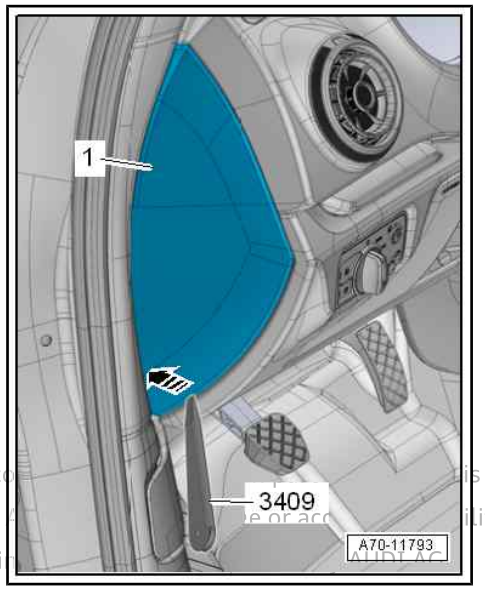
– Prise off dash panel cover (side) -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow-.

– Pull cover towards rear out of trim cover at A-pillar and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 241

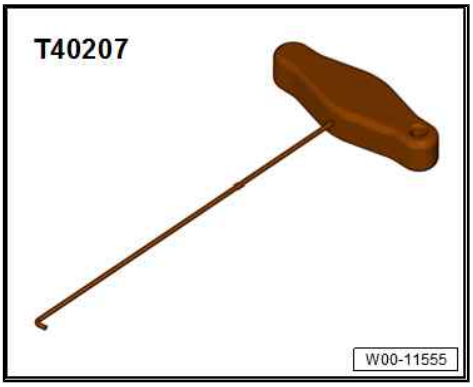


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI ... e or acc... ility with respect to the correctness of information i... AUDI AG.

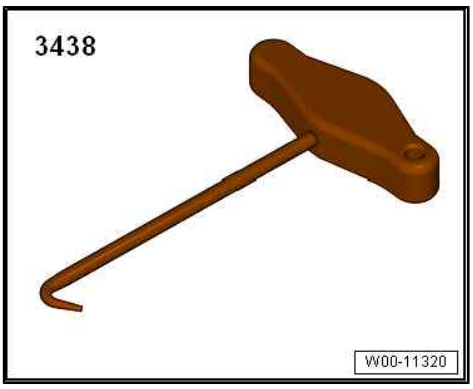
3.4 Removing and installing dash panel vents

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hook - T40207- (2x) or



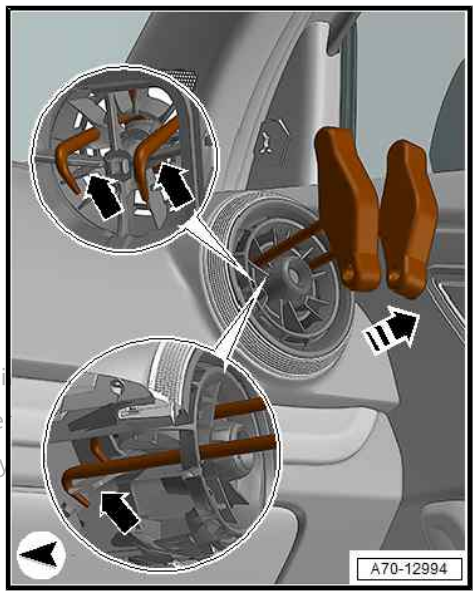
♦ Hook - 3438- (2x)



Removing

– Insert hooks carefully between louvres on left and right, and engage in central cross pieces -arrows in detailed views-.

– Carefully pull vent out of opening -arrow- (pull on both sides at same time).

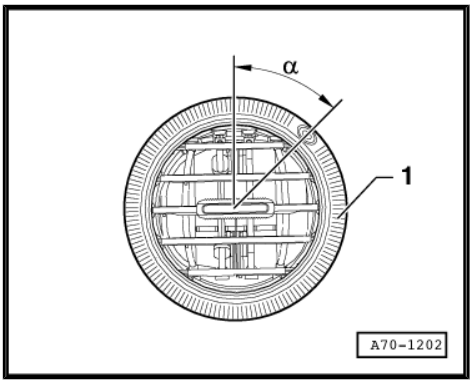


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, i
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarante
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Turn ring -1- -α- = 45° to right from vertical position.

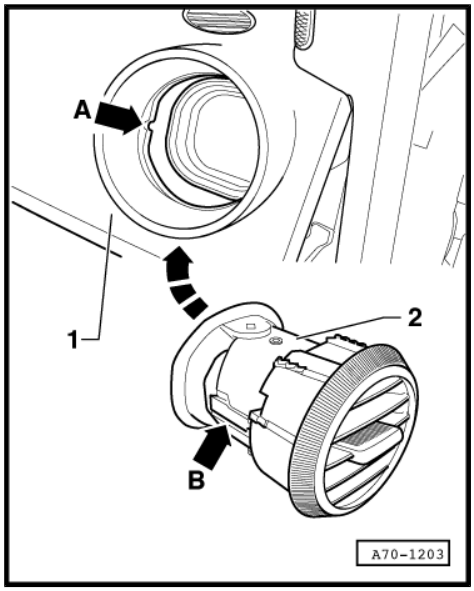


– Insert dash panel vent -2- into dash panel -1- as far as stop -arrow-.

• Guide -arrow B- must engage in recess -arrow A-.

– Turn ring until stop (must engage audibly).

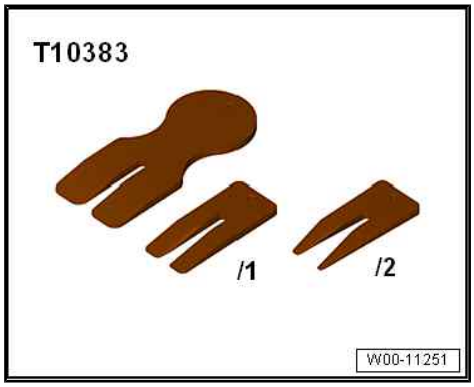
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 241



3.5 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-

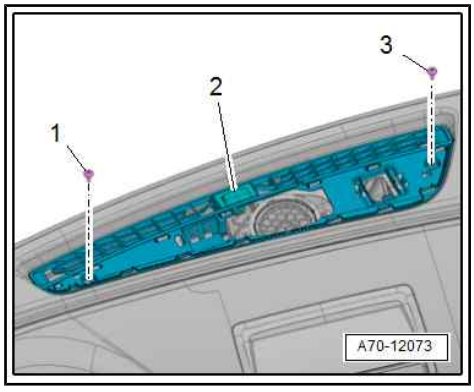


Removing

– Remove loudspeaker trim ⇒ page 247 .

– If installed: Remove sunlight penetration photosensor -2- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Further control components .

– Defroster vent with additional bolts: Remove bolts -1, 3-.



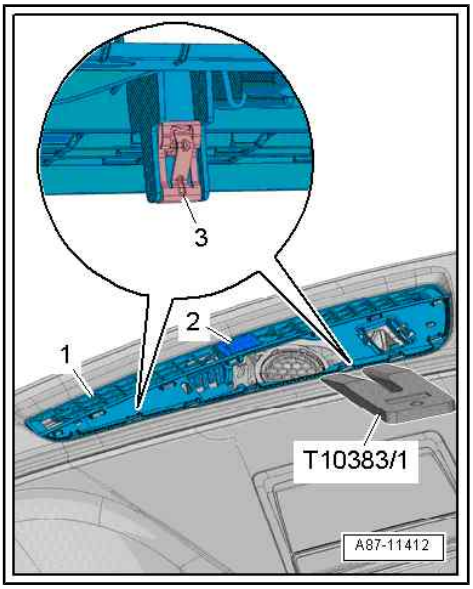
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release retaining clips -3- using wedge -T10383/1- and pull out defroster vent -1- towards rear.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 241 ;
⇒ Fig. ““Defroster vent with additional bolts - tightening torque”“ , page 244



3.6 Removing and installing defroster vent (side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



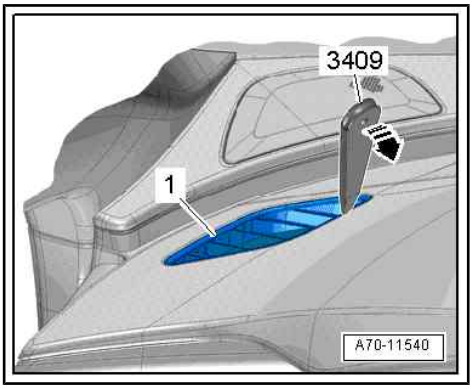
Removing

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , carefully prise defroster vent -1- upwards off dash panel -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

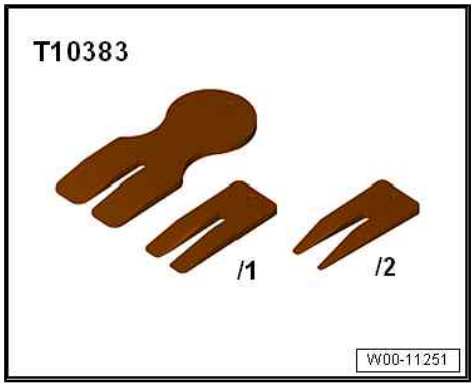
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 241



3.7 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-

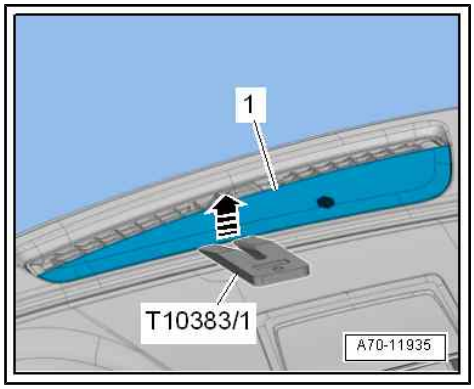


Removing

Caution

Risk of damage to loudspeaker trim.

♦ *Proceed very carefully when removing and installing.*



– Carefully release loudspeaker trim -1- along gap at retaining pins -arrow- using wedge -T10383/1- ; to do so, insert wedge only approx. 2 mm in gap beneath loudspeaker trim.

– If necessary, push a long screwdriver all the way through under loudspeaker trim towards front until front retaining pins disengage.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

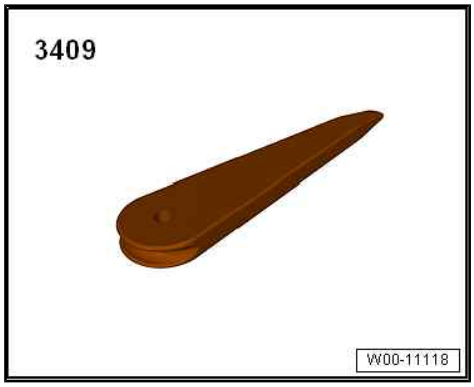
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 241

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.8 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

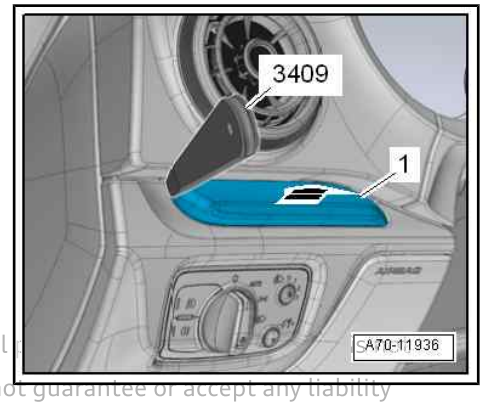
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

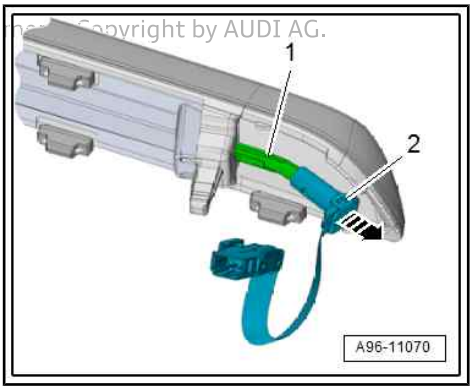
Trim panel (left-side):

– Unclip trim panel -1- -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

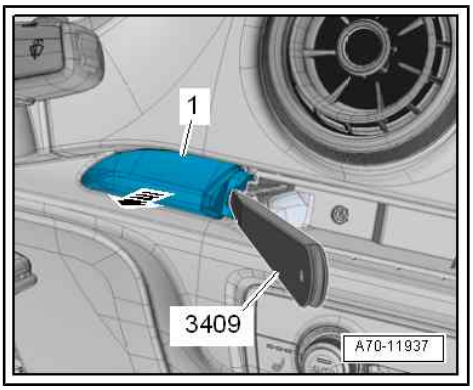
– Equipment version with ambient lighting: detach bulb -2- from light strip -1- -arrow-.



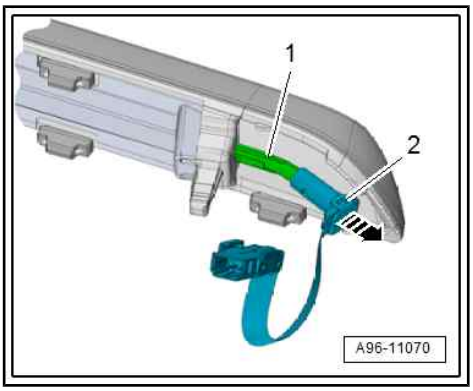
Trim panel (centre):

– Remove controls in dash panel ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel .

– Unclip trim panel -1- -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .



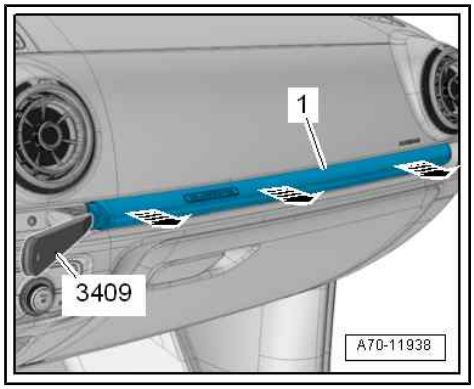
– Equipment version with ambient lighting: detach bulb -2- from light strip -1- -arrow-.



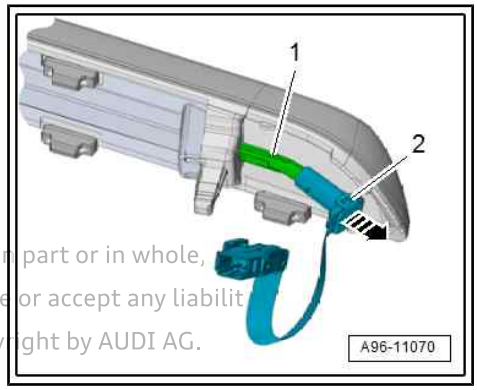
Trim panel (right-side):

– Remove controls in dash panel ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel .

– Unclip trim panel -1- -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .



– Equipment version with ambient lighting: detach bulb -2- from light strip -1- -arrow-.



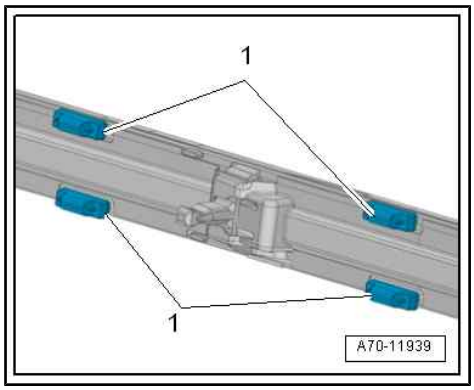
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Check whether all rubber buffers -1- are correctly inserted in specified positions in trim panel.

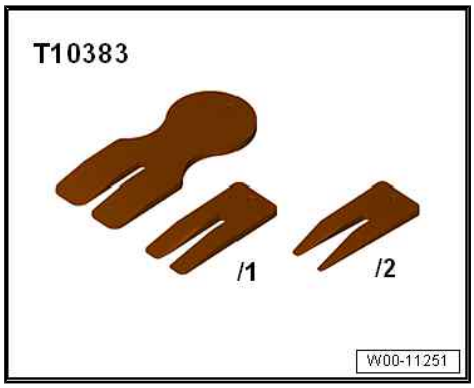
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 241



3.9 Removing and installing cover for MMI screen

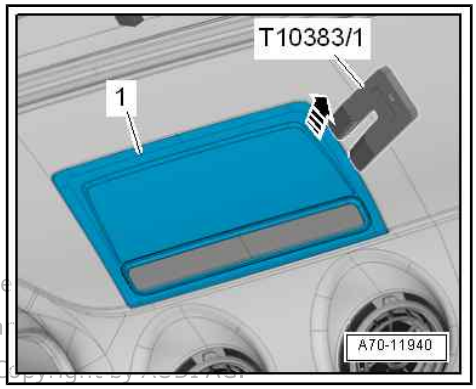
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

– Carefully disengage cover -1- along gap -arrow- using wedge -T10383/1- ; to do so, insert wedge only approx. 2 mm in gap beneath cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 241

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

3.10 Removing and installing dash panel

Removing

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Move front seats as far towards rear as possible and tilt backrests to 45°.

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 289 .

– Remove airbag unit (driver side) ⇒ page 129 .

– Remove steering wheel ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel .

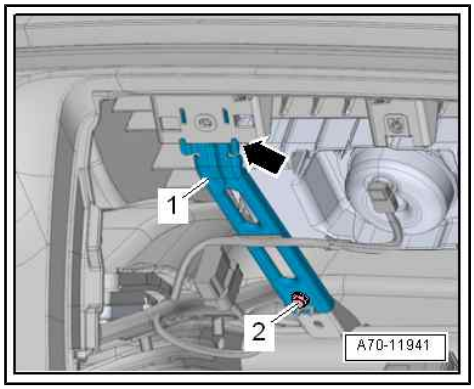
– Remove steering column switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column switch module .

– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 244 .

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 22 .

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 27 .

– Unclip electrical wiring at support for dash panel.
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Disengage support -1- at dash panel -arrow- and detach.
– Repeat procedure on opposite side.



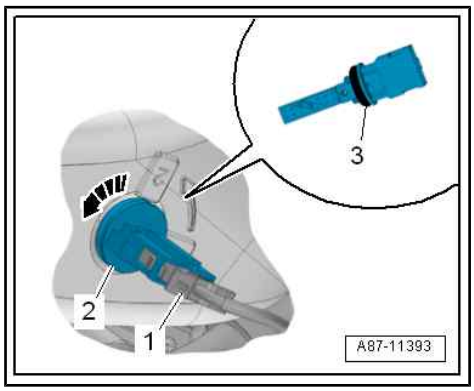
– Remove centre console ⇒ page 46 .
– Remove controls in dash panel ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel .
– Remove heater control unit - J65- / Climatronic control unit - J255- / air conditioning system control unit - J301- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Overview of fitting locations - operating and display unit .
– Remove dash panel vent (centre) ⇒ page 244 .
– If fitted: Remove -E380- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Radio; Overview of fitting locations - radio , or remove -J685- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .
– Equipment version with loudspeaker: Remove loudspeaker from dash panel ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
– Equipment version with Climatronic: Remove sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Further control components .

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Reproduction or disclosure to third parties of this document or any part thereof, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

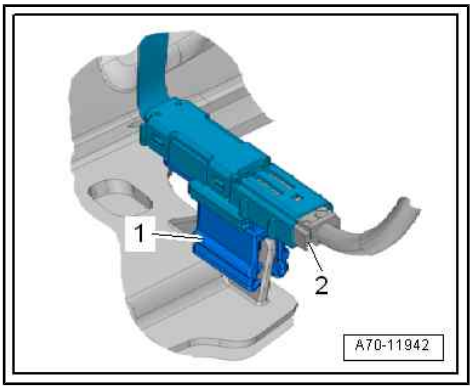
– Unplug electrical connector for airbag (front passenger side) ⇒ page 142 .
– Remove dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert .
– Equipment version with Climatronic: Unplug electrical connector -1- for vent temperature sender -G150- / -G151- -item 2- on both sides.



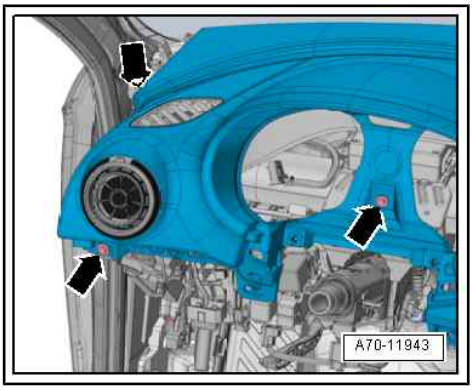
Note

Disregard -item 3-.

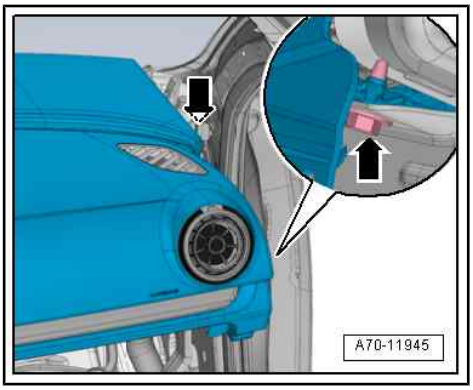
– Equipment version with ambient lighting: Unfasten clip -1- for electrical connector and unplug connector -2- for ambient lighting bulb at trim panel for dash panel.



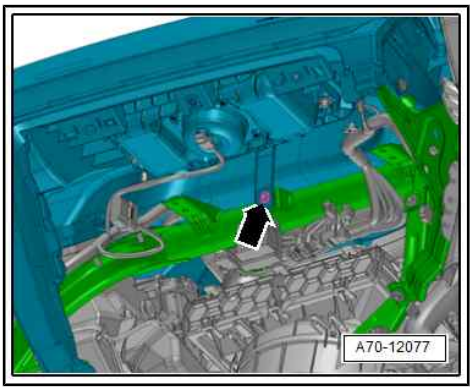
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- for dash panel at dash panel cross member (driver side).



– Unscrew bolts -arrows- for dash panel at dash panel cross member (passenger side).

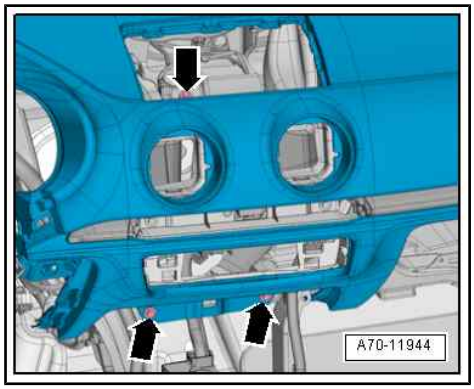


– Unscrew bolt -arrow- for dash panel at dash panel cross member (passenger side).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- for dash panel at dash panel cross member (centre).



Note

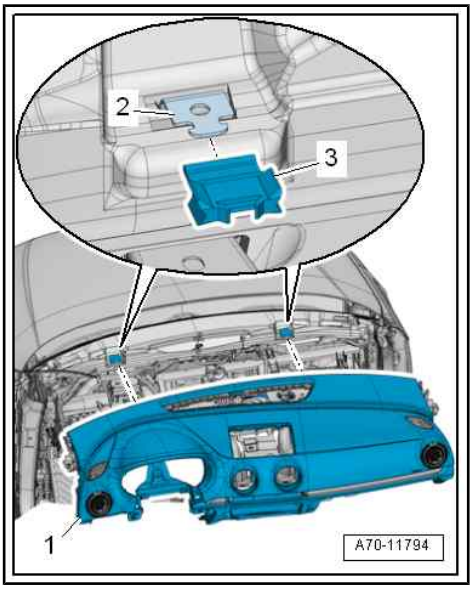
A second mechanic is required for detaching the dash panel.

– Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring harnesses at dash panel clear.
– Carefully detach dash panel from dash panel cross member towards rear.
– Take dash panel out of passenger compartment and set it down on a soft surface.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



WARNING

For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

– Place dash panel in position and route electrical connectors for display unit for front information display and operating unit control unit - J685- , sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- and loudspeaker through openings in dash panel.

– Check whether a rubber buffer -3- has been fitted on each of the dash panel mountings -2- at the lower windscreen frame.

– When inserting dash panel -1-, make sure mountings for dash panel engage in box-shaped sections on underside of dash panel.

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 241

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Dash panel cross member

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member”, page 257

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing crash bar”, page 258

⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing dash panel cross member”, page 260

4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member

1 - Steering column

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

3 - Bolt

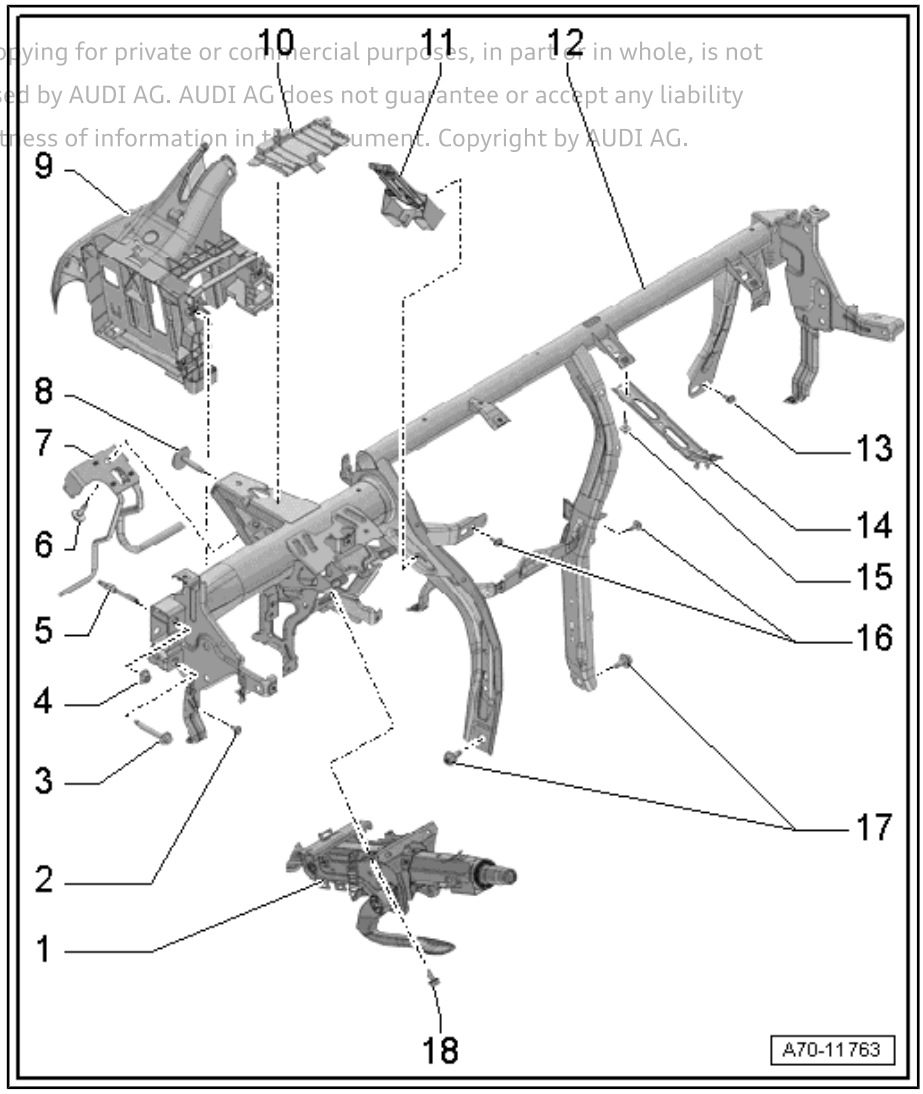
- ❑ Driver side only
- ❑ 20 Nm

> **Caution**
> *Risk of malfunctions if earth connection is not OK.*
> *Threads and contact surface must be free of paint, coating and corrosion; bolted connection provides earth connection for knee airbag*

4 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 20 Nm

> **Caution**
> *Risk of malfunctions if earth connection is not OK.*
> *Contact surface must be free of paint, coating and corrosion; bolted connection provides earth connection for knee airbag*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 - Threaded pin

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm

7 - Crash bar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 258

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm

9 - Bracket

- ❑ For onboard supply control unit
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

10 - Bracket

- ❑ For control unit
- ❑ Depending on equipment version

11 - Bracket

- ❑ For entry and start authorisation control unit - J518-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation

12 - Cross member

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 260

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

tected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
nitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 - Support

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing glove box”, page 27

15 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

16 - Bolts

- ❑ 4 Nm

17 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

18 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Exploded view - steering column

4.2 Removing and installing crash bar

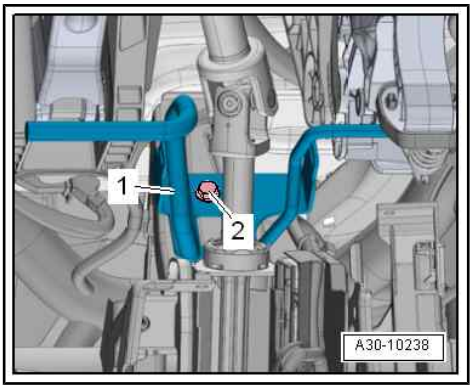
Removing

– Remove knee airbag with igniter ⇒ page 169 .

– Remove footwell vent (driver side) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .

– Remove data bus diagnostic interface - J533- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Control units; Overview of fitting locations - control units .

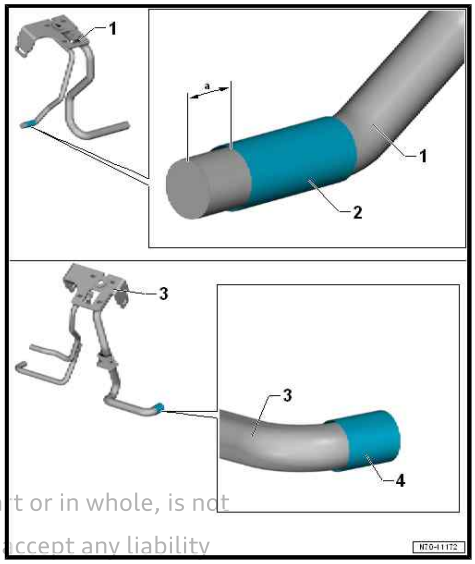
– Unscrew bolt -2-, disengage crash bar -1- and guide it out.



Installing

Note

- *When renewing the crash bar on vehicles manufactured up to 11/2012, a felt pad ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue must be bonded onto the replacement crash bar.*
- *Reason: short distance to footwell vent.*



– Left-hand drive vehicles with manual gearbox only: Bond felt pad -2- onto crash bar -1- with distance -a- = 7.5 mm to edge of crash bar.

– All right-hand drive vehicles: Bond felt pad -4- onto crash bar -3- so it is flush with edge of crash bar.

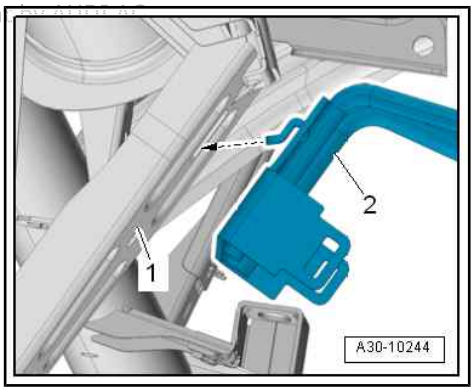
Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Engage crash bar -2- at cross member -1- -arrow- and bolt on.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member”, page 257



4.3 Removing and installing dash panel cross member

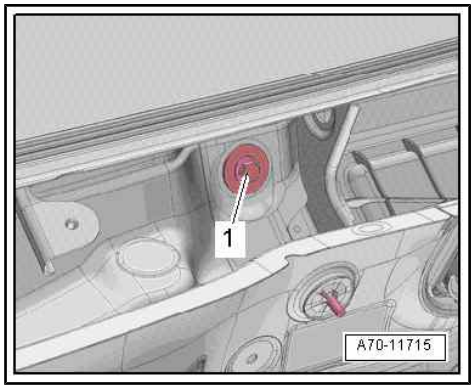
Removing

– Remove wiper motor ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Exploded view - windscreen wiper system .

– Remove bolt -1- securing crash bar and cross member to plenum chamber partition panel.

– Remove dash panel ⇒ page 251 .

– Remove crash bar ⇒ page 258 .

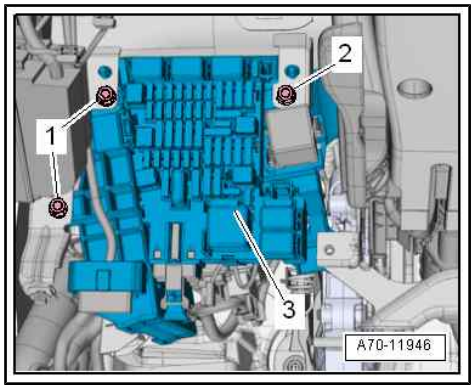


– Remove bolts -1, 2-.

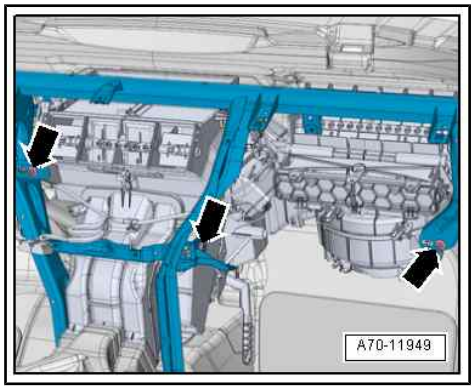
– Disengage bracket -3- for control units and relay and fuse holder from dash panel cross member.

– Remove entry and start authorisation control unit - J518- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Removing and installing entry and start authorisation control unit - J518- .

– Unclip wires at dash panel cross member and move clear.



– Remove bolts -arrows- for air conditioning unit.



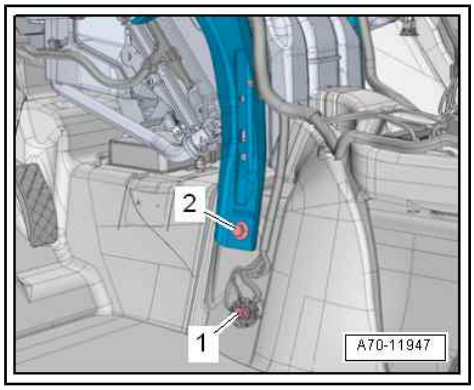
– Press floor covering to side in vicinity of bolted connection, unscrew nut -1- and move earth wires clear.

Note

Mark height and lateral position at dash panel cross member for re-installation.

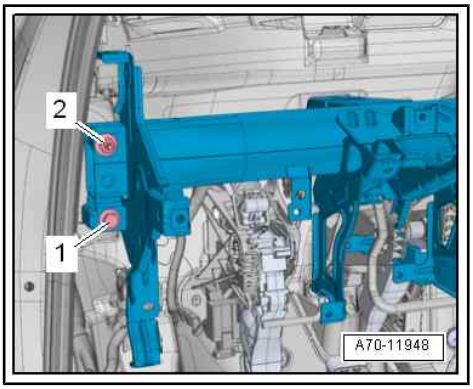
– Remove bolt -2- (left and right) for support for dash panel cross member.

– Unbolt steering column from dash panel cross member and set it down on floor of vehicle ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolt -1- for dash panel cross member.
– Remove nut -2- for dash panel cross member at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).
– Unclip and disengage wires at dash panel cross member and move them clear.



Note

A second mechanic is required to detach dash panel cross member.

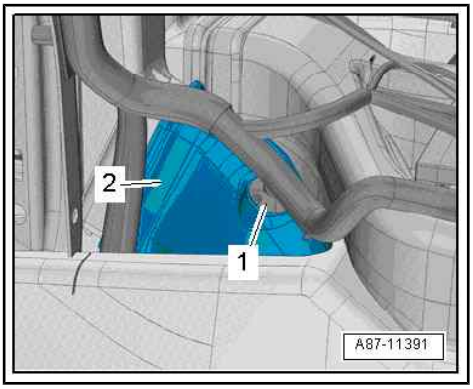
– Carefully swivel top of dash panel cross member to rear and take it out of vehicle interior.

Installing

– Carefully insert dash panel cross member in body.
– Align dash panel cross member with A-pillar in accordance with marks for cross member (made during removal).
– Tighten nuts and bolts for dash panel cross member at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

– Install steering column ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column .
– Before pressing it onto footwell vent -2-, check that cable clip -1- is not damaged.



Note

A loose cable clip or damaged seal can cause air-flow noise.

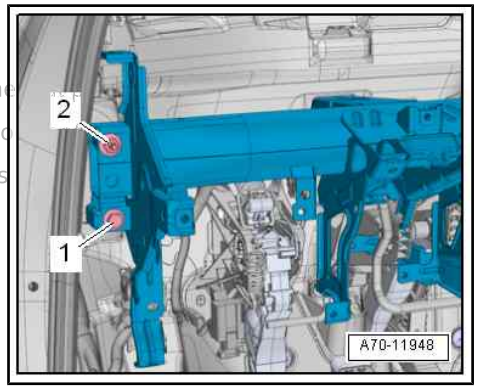
Checking installation position of dash panel cross member

– Insert dash panel to check if it fits correctly.
– Bolt dash panel (left and right) to dash panel cross member.
– Close doors.
– Check whether gap between dash panel and door is the same on left and right.
– Check whether height of dash panel coincides with recesses in door trim.
– If setting is incorrect, note down the lateral and/or vertical deviation.
– Unscrew bolts on dash panel cross member.
– Adjust dash panel cross member in accordance with notes on deviations.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this

– Tighten bolt -1- and nut -2- for dash panel cross member at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member”, page 257

5 Passenger compartment trim panels

⇒ “5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels”, page 263

⇒ “5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim”, page 267

⇒ “5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim”, page 270

⇒ “5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim”, page 274

⇒ “5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim”, page 277

⇒ “5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim”, page 280

⇒ “5.7 Exploded view - side trim”, page 282

⇒ “5.8 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering”, page 283

⇒ “5.9 Exploded view - rear shelf”, page 284

⇒ “5.10 Removing and installing sill panel trim”, page 285

⇒ “5.11 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 289

⇒ “5.12 Removing and installing B-pillar trim”, page 295

⇒ “5.13 Removing and installing C-pillar trim”, page 301

⇒ “5.14 Removing and installing D-pillar trim”, page 305

⇒ “5.15 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim”, page 308

⇒ “5.16 Removing and installing side trim”, page 309

⇒ “5.17 Removing and installing foot rest”, page 311

⇒ “5.18 Removing and installing floor covering”, page 312

⇒ “5.19 Removing and installing rear shelf”, page 313

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels

⇒ “5.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, A3”, page 263

⇒ “5.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, A3 Sportback”, page 265

⇒ “5.1.3 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, Saloon”, page 266

5.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, A3

1 - Rear shelf

- ❑ Engaged in mountings in luggage compartment side trim panels

2 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 277

3 - Side trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 282

4 - B-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 274

5 - Sill panel trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 267

6 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 270

7 - Trim cover for A-pillar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.11 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 289

8 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 270

9 - Foot rest

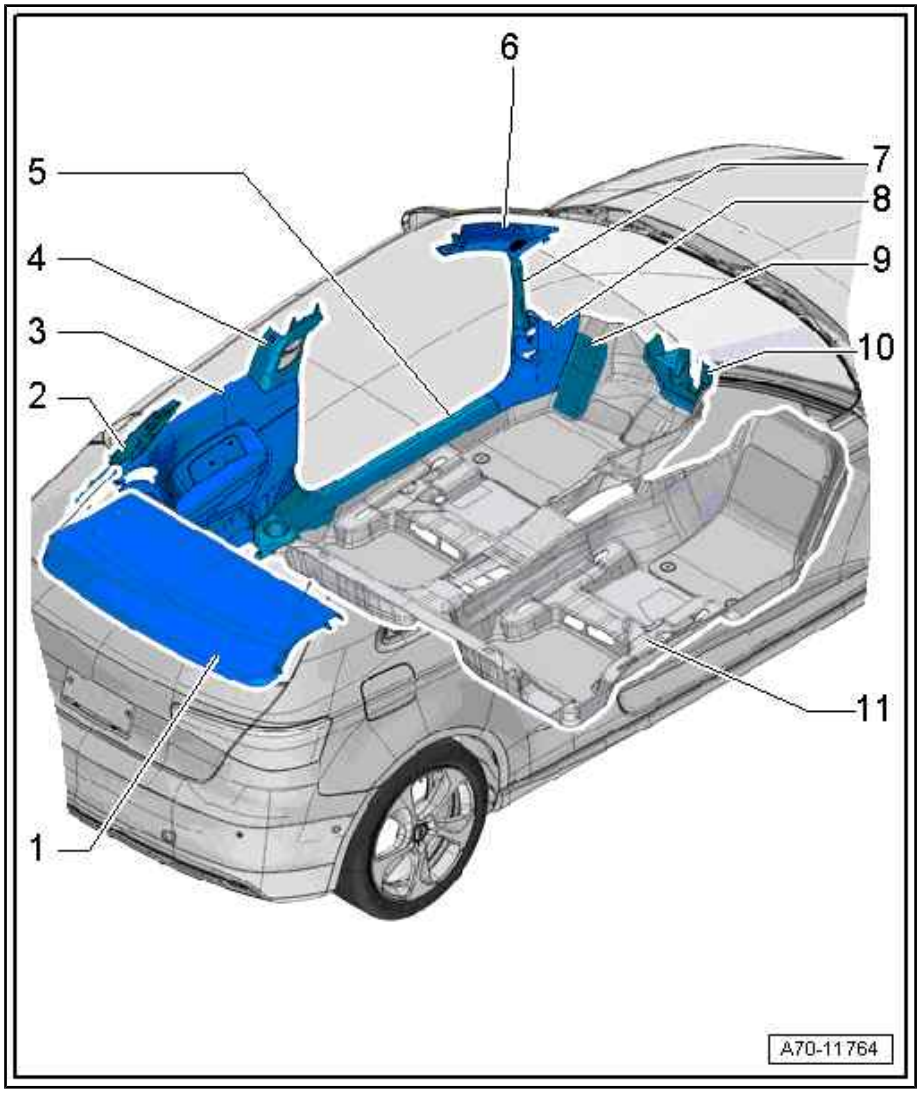
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 283

10 - Steering column cover

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 283

11 - Floor covering

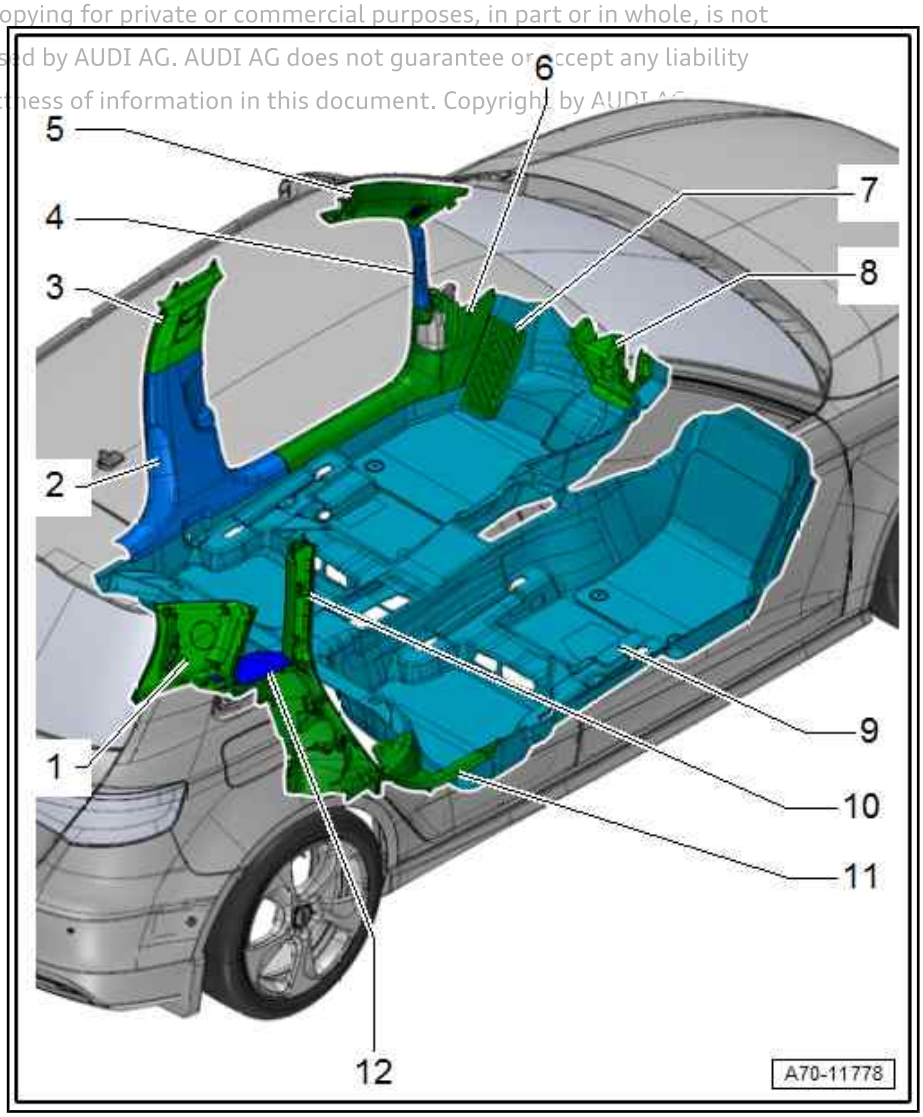
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 283



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, A3 Sportback

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - D-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 280

2 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 274

3 - B-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 274

4 - Trim cover for A-pillar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.11 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 289

5 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 270

6 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 270

7 - Foot rest

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 283

8 - Steering column cover

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 283

9 - Floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 283

10 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 277

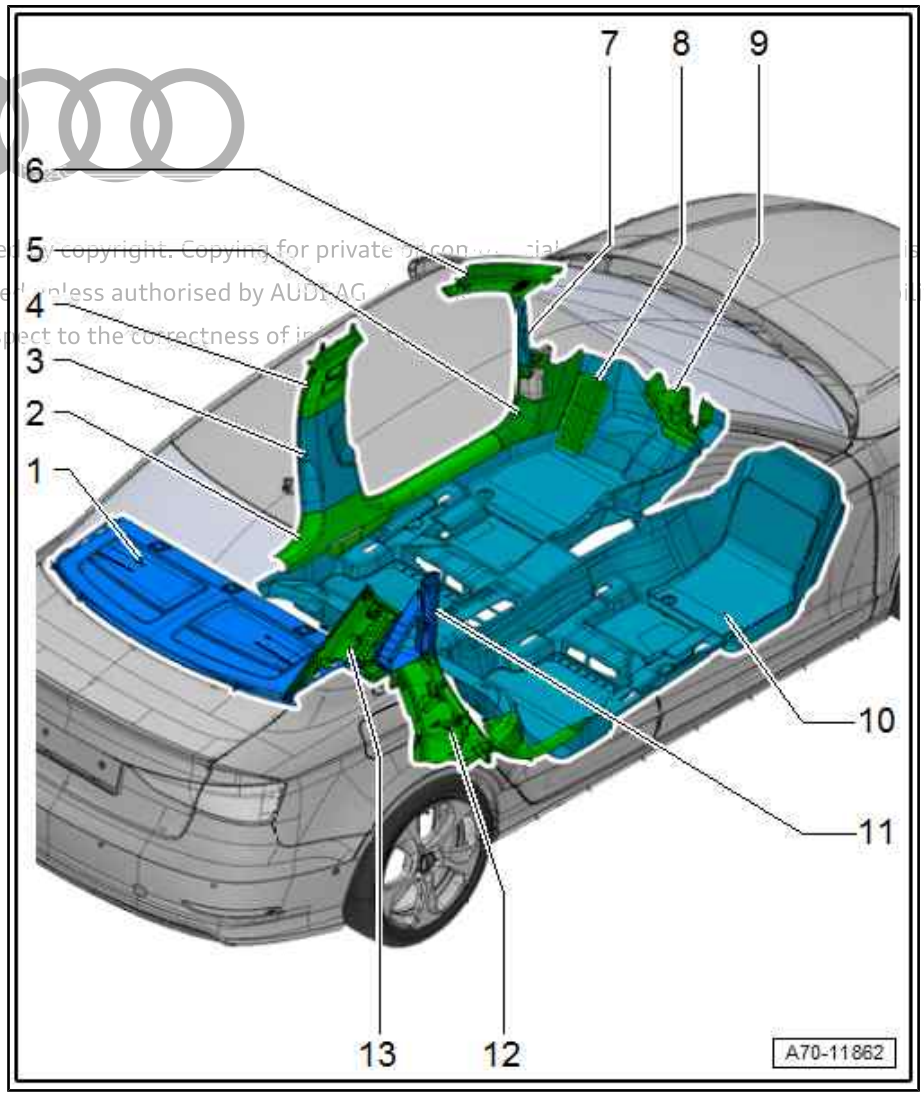
11 - Sill panel trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 267

12 - Cover

- ❑ For belt guide
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 277

5.1.3 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, Saloon



1 - Rear shelf
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 284

2 - Sill panel trim (front)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 267

3 - B-pillar trim (bottom)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 274

4 - B-pillar trim (top)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 274

5 - A-pillar trim (bottom)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 270

6 - A-pillar trim (top)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 270

7 - Trim cover for A-pillar
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.11 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 289

8 - Foot rest
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 283

9 - Steering column cover
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 283

10 - Floor covering
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 283

11 - C-pillar trim
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 277

12 - Sill panel trim (rear)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 267

13 - D-pillar trim
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 280

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Liability with respect to the correctness of information

5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim

⇒ “5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim, A3”, page 267

⇒ “5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim (front), A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon”, page 268

⇒ “5.2.3 Exploded view - sill panel trim (rear), A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon”, page 269

5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim, A3

1 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

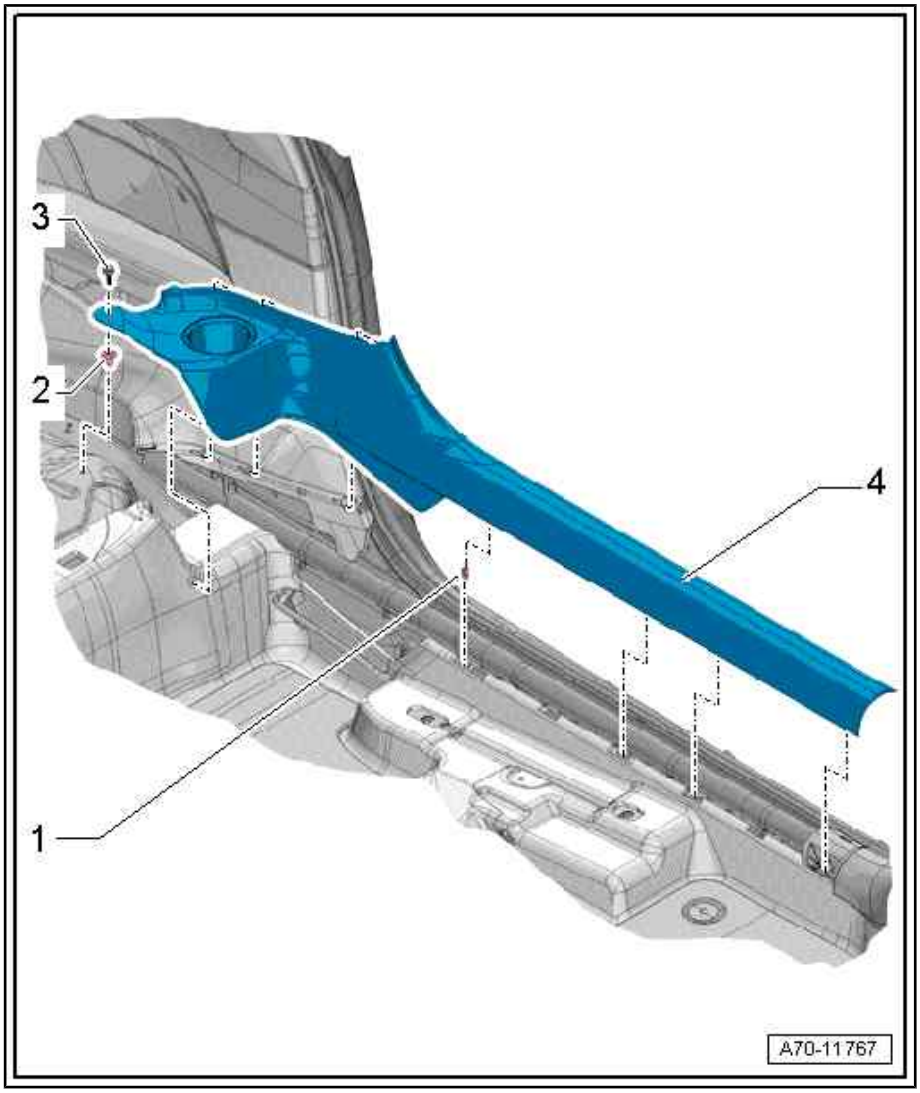
2 - Grommet

- ❑ Insert in body

3 - Fastener

4 - Sill panel trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 285
- ❑ Engage sill panel trim in side trim
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim (front), A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon

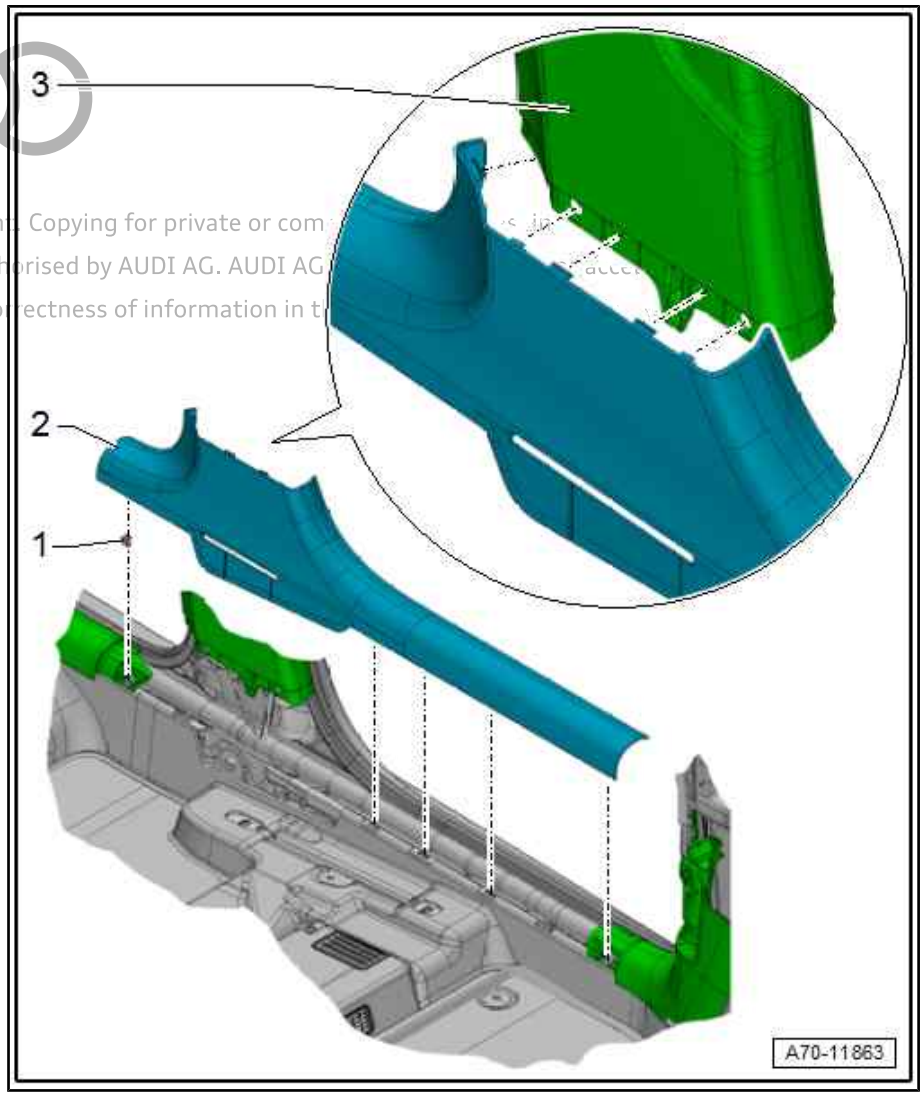
1 - Clip

- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Sill panel trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 286
- ❑ Engage sill panel trim in B-pillar trim (bottom)
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal

3 - B-pillar trim (bottom)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com ... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG ... with respect to the correctness of information in t...

5.2.3 Exploded view - sill panel trim (rear), A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon

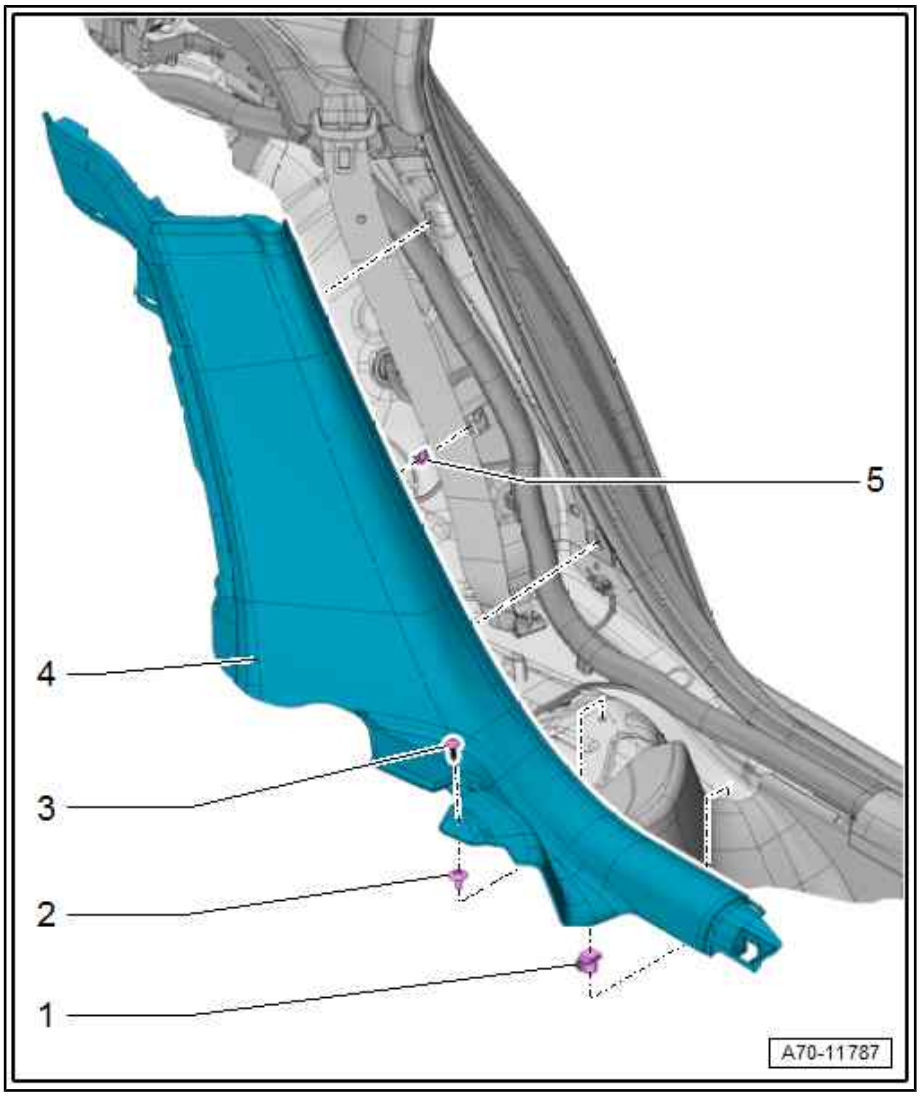
1 - Clip
- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim

2 - Grommet
- ❑ Insert in body

3 - Fastener

4 - Sill panel trim
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 285
- ❑ Insert sill panel trim in belt guide and C-pillar trim
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal

5 - Clip
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim

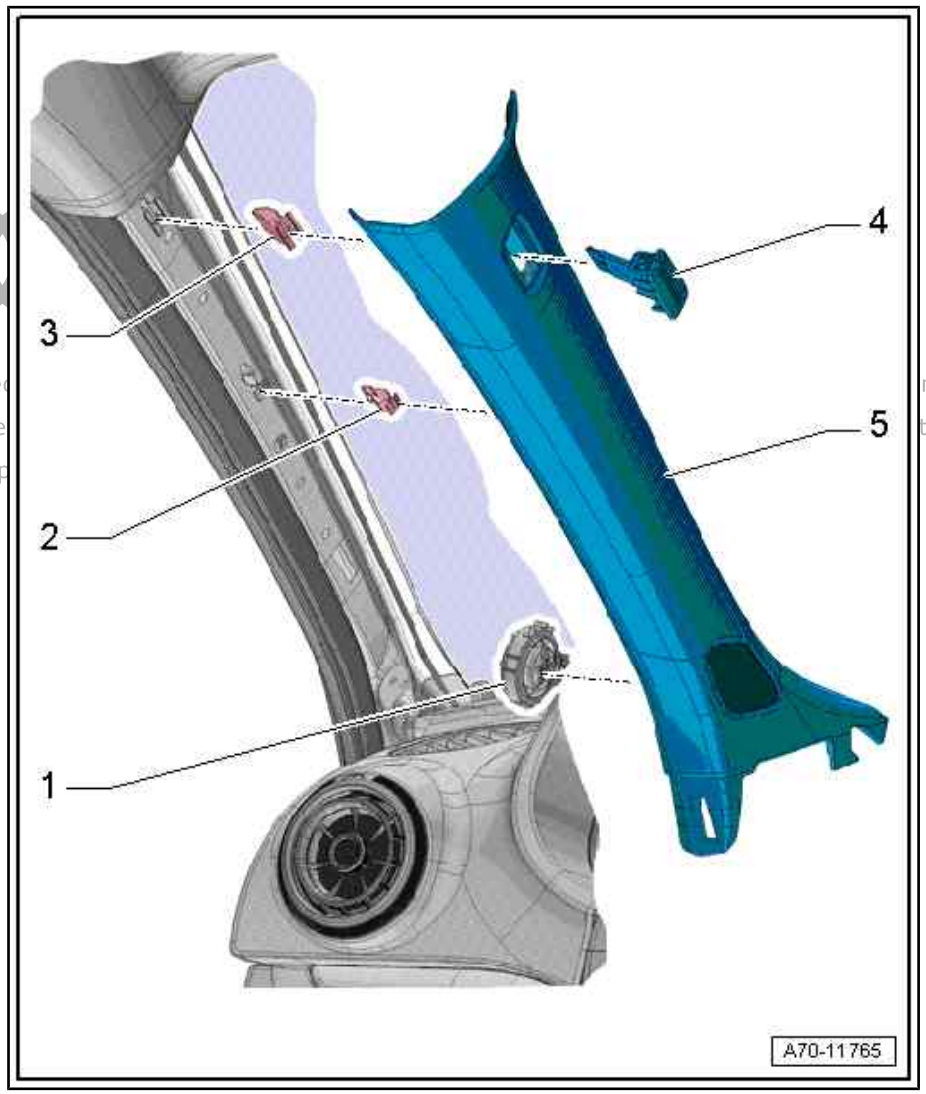
⇒ “5.3.1 Exploded view - A-pillar trim (top), A3/A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron”, page 270

⇒ “5.3.2 Exploded view - A-pillar trim (top), A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon”, page 271

⇒ “5.3.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim (bottom), A3/A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon”, page 272

⇒ “5.3.4 Exploded view - A-pillar trim (bottom), A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron”, page 273

5.3.1 Exploded view - A-pillar trim (top), A3/A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron



1 - Treble loudspeaker

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

2 - Clip

- ❑ With catch
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-

3 - Fastener

- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation

4 - Expanding cap

- ❑ With “airbag” symbol
- ❑ Unclip carefully

5 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 289
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal

Copyright ... not permitted ... with resp... ty

5.3.2 Exploded view - A-pillar trim (top), A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon

1 - Treble loudspeaker

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

2 - Clip

- ❑ With catch
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-

3 - Bolt

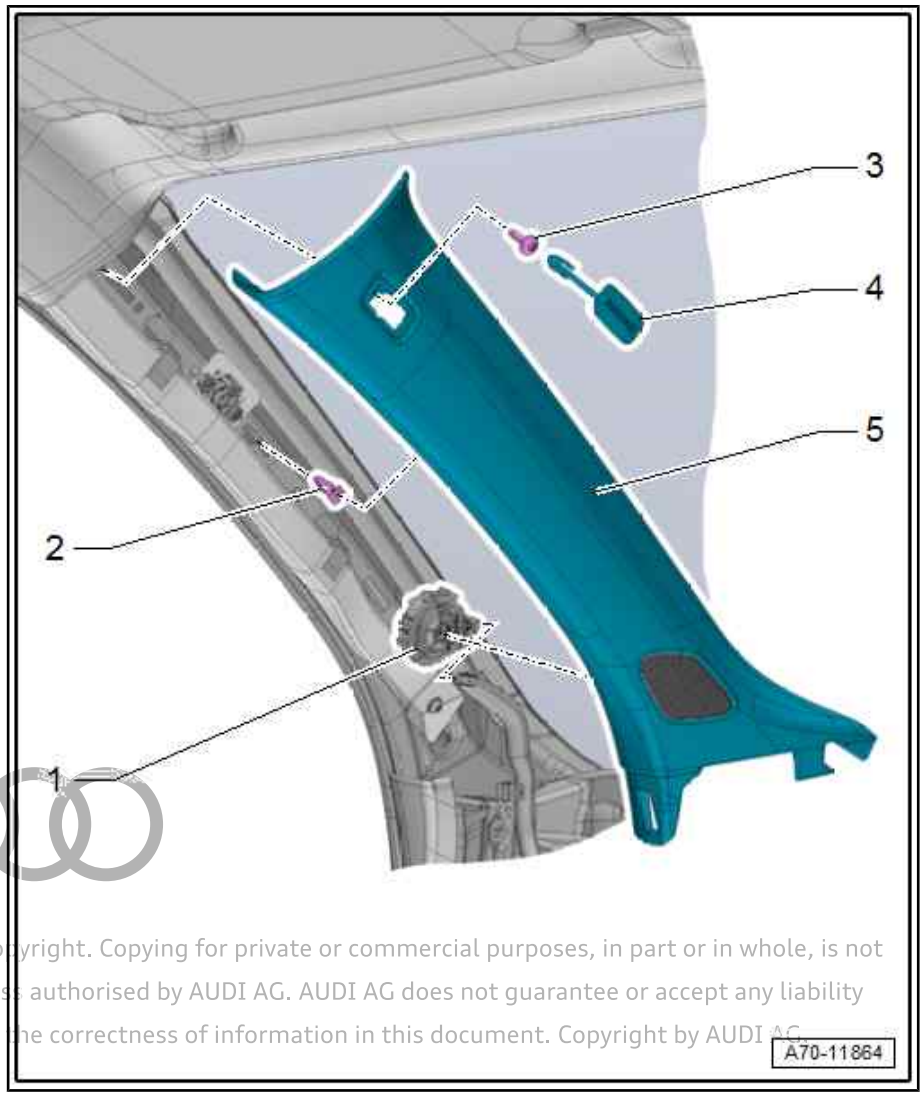
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

4 - Cap

- ❑ With “airbag” symbol
- ❑ Unclip carefully

5 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 291
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim (bottom), A3/A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon

1 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 293
- ❑ Insert in floor covering at front
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal

2 - Trim cover for A-pillar

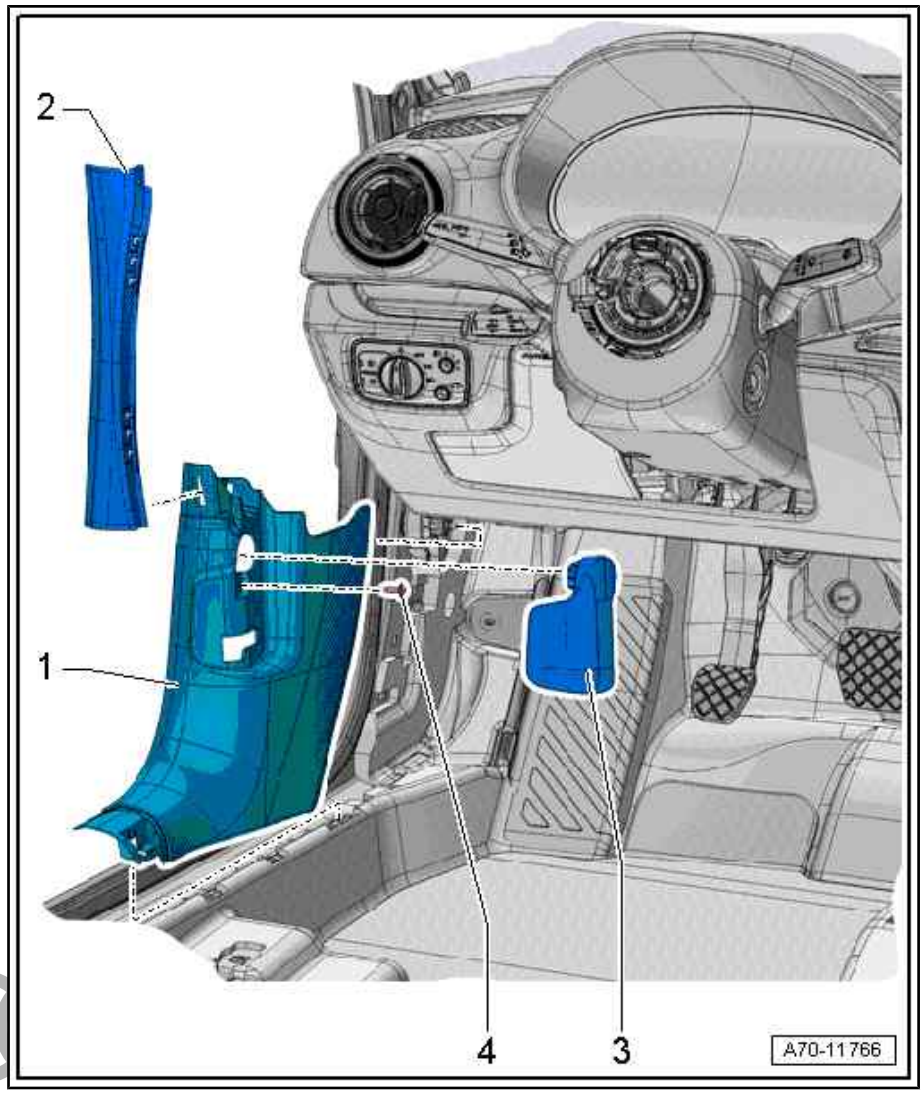
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.11 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 289
- ❑ Clip into A-pillar trim (top) and into A-pillar trim (bottom)
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal

3 - Handle for operating lever

- ❑ For bonnet lock
- ❑ Driver side only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet lock

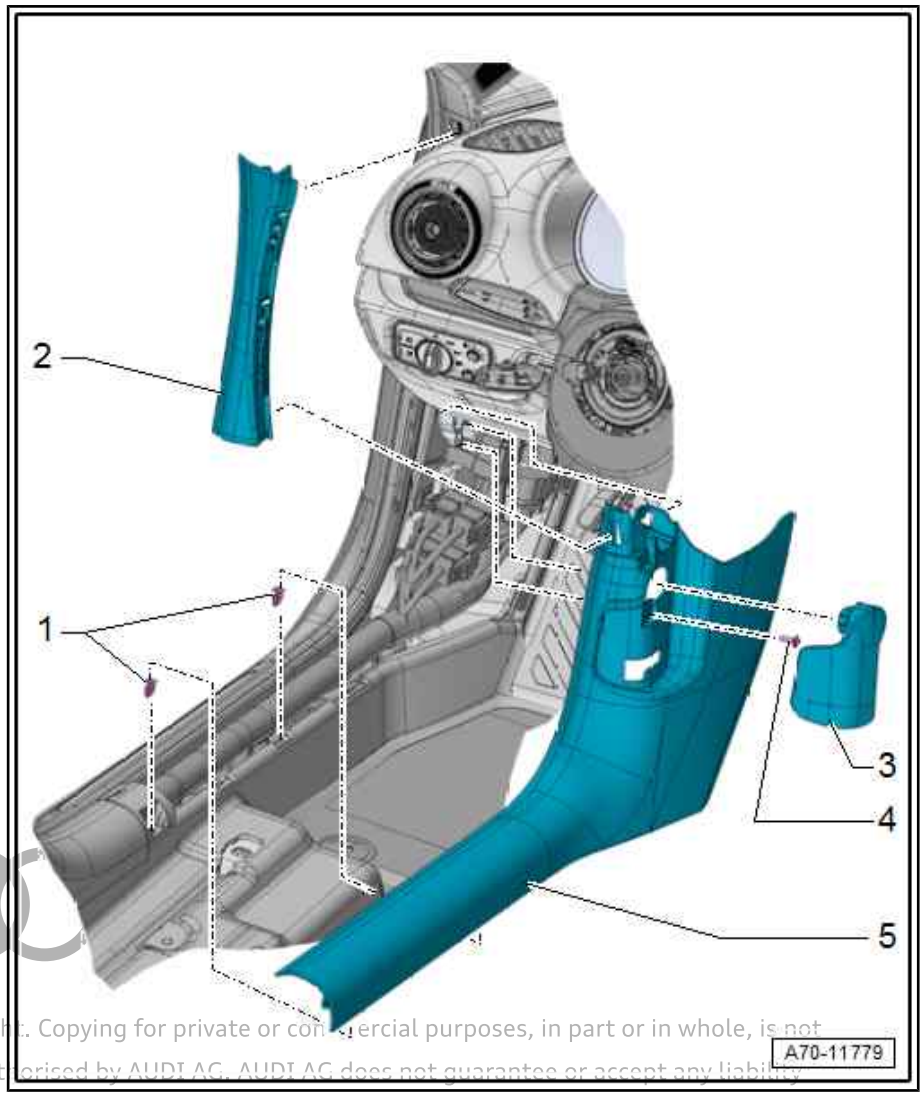
4 - Bolt

- ❑ Driver side only
- ❑ 2.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3.4 Exploded view - A-pillar trim (bottom), A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron



1 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Trim cover for A-pillar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.11 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 289
- ❑ Clip into A-pillar trim (top) and into A-pillar trim (bottom)
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal

3 - Handle for operating lever

- ❑ For bonnet lock
- ❑ Driver side only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet lock

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Driver side only
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

5 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 294
- ❑ Insert in floor covering at front
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim

⇒ “5.4.1 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A3”, page 274

⇒ “5.4.2 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron”, page 275

⇒ “5.4.3 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon”, page 276

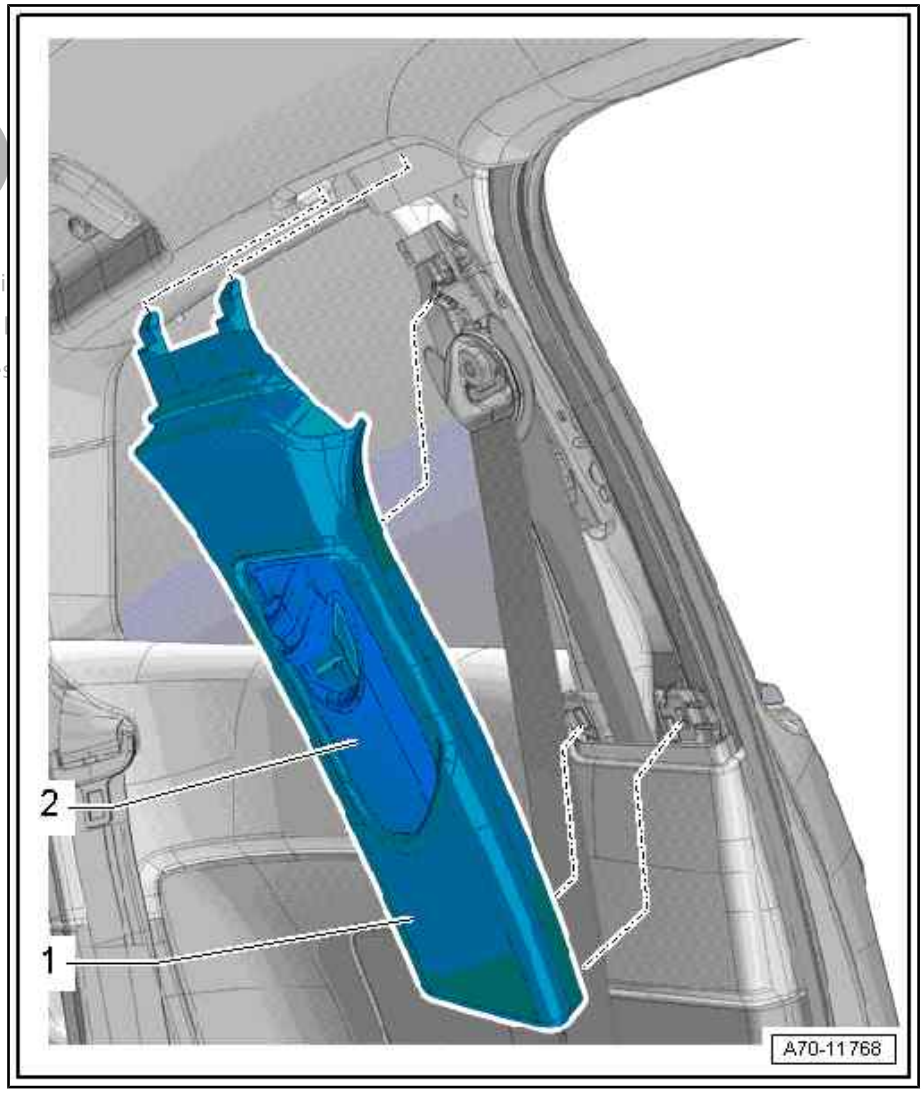
5.4.1 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A3

1 - B-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 295
- ❑ Insert at top in mounting points at roof and clip into belt guide
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seals

2 - Belt height adjuster

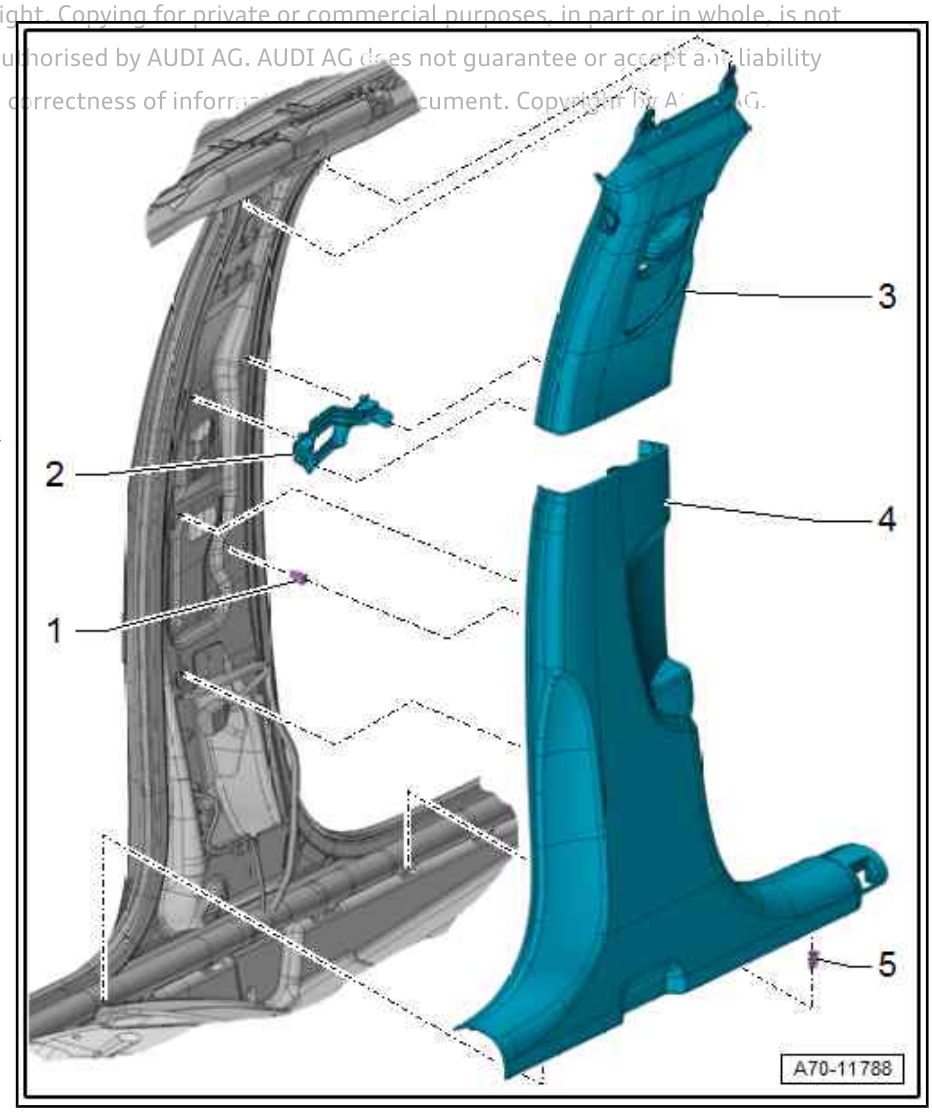
- ❑ Not available as separate part
- ❑ Move to lowest possible position when removing and installing



Protected by copyright. Copyi
permitted unless authorised
with respect to the correctnes

5.4.2 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Bracket for B-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.12.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top) - A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon”, page 297
- ❑ Clip into B-pillar
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3 - B-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 297
- ❑ Insert at top in mounting points at roof and clip into bracket
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seals

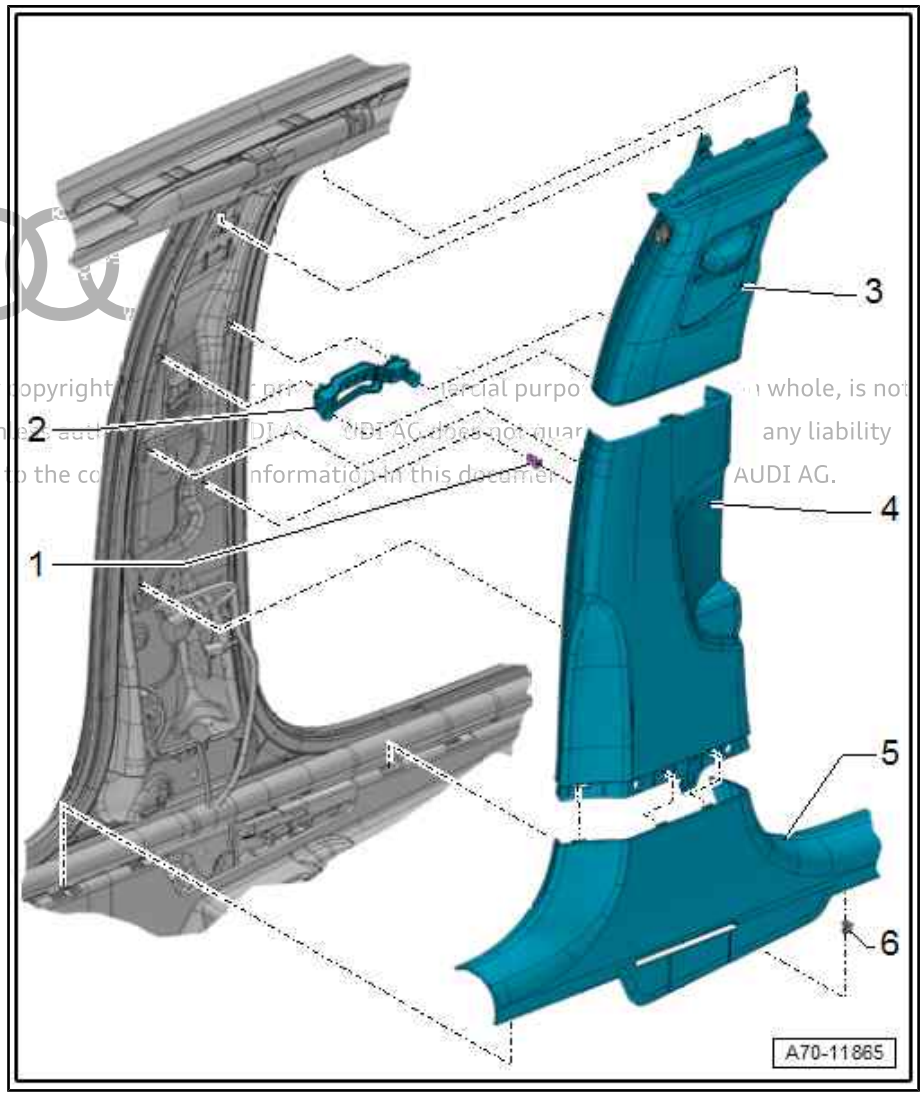
4 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 298
- ❑ Insert at bottom in mounting points on side member and clip into side member
- ❑ Clip into B-pillar
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seals

5 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

5.4.3 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon



1 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Bracket for B-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.12.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top) - A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon”, page 297
- ❑ Clip into B-pillar
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3 - B-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 297
- ❑ Insert at top in mounting points at roof and clip into bracket
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seals

4 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 300
- ❑ Insert at bottom in mounting points on side member and clip into side member
- ❑ Clip into B-pillar
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seals

5 - Sill panel trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 286
- ❑ Engage sill panel trim in B-pillar trim (bottom)
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal

6 - Clip

- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

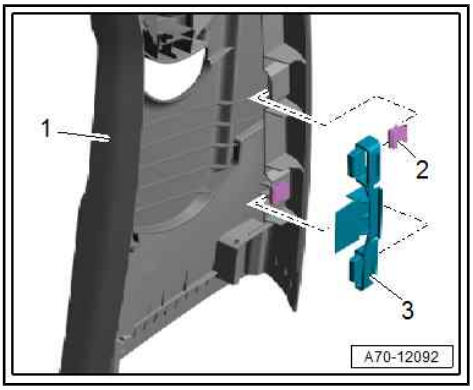
Deformation element at B-pillar trim (top) - country-specific version

- ♦ Fitting location: on left and right of B-pillar trim (top)

1 - B-pillar trim (top)

2 - Clip - 2x

3 - Deformation element



5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim

⇒ "5.5.1 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, A3", page 277

⇒ "5.5.2 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, A3 Sportback", page 278

⇒ "5.5.3 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, Saloon", page 279

5.5.1 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, A3

1 - Fastener

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

2 - Bracket

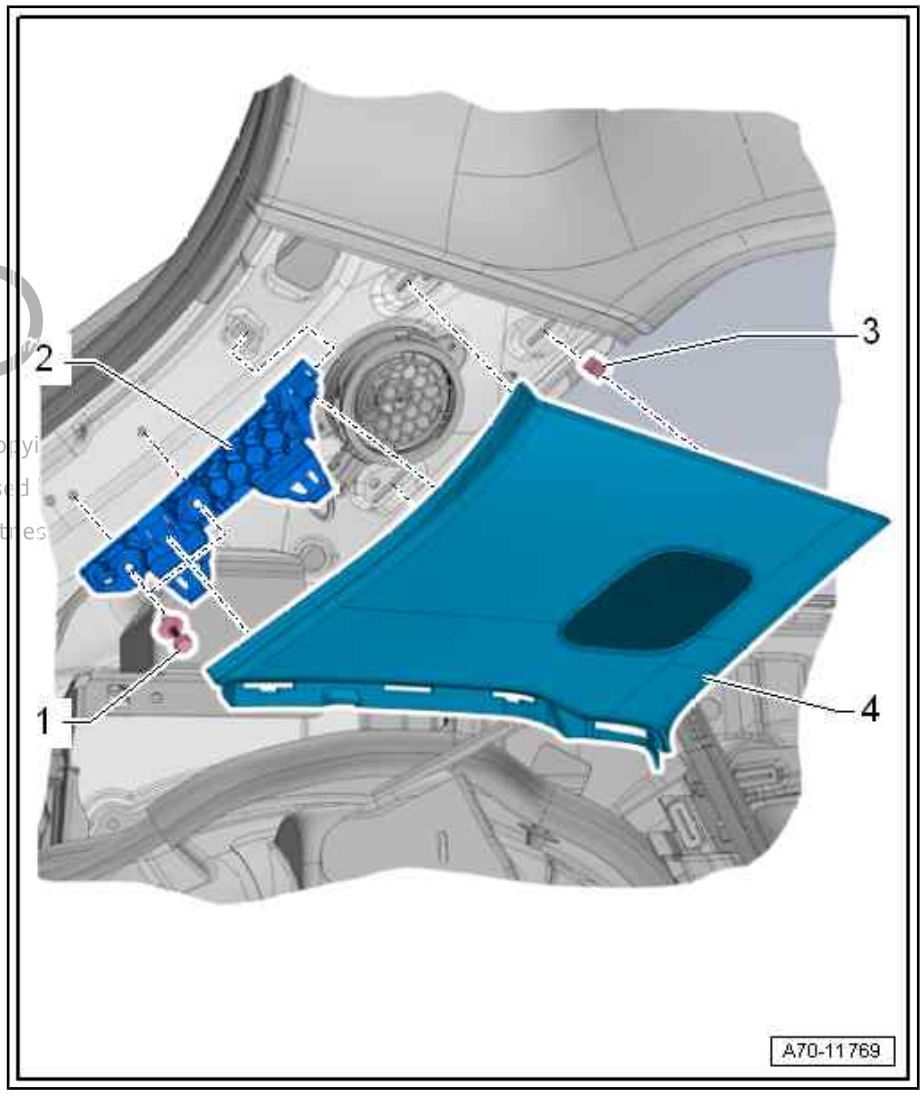
- ❑ For C-pillar trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ "5.13 Removing and installing C-pillar trim", page 301

3 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 301
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.5.2 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, A3 Sportback

1 - Intermediate cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 304
- ❑ Clip into C/D-pillar trim

2 - Clip

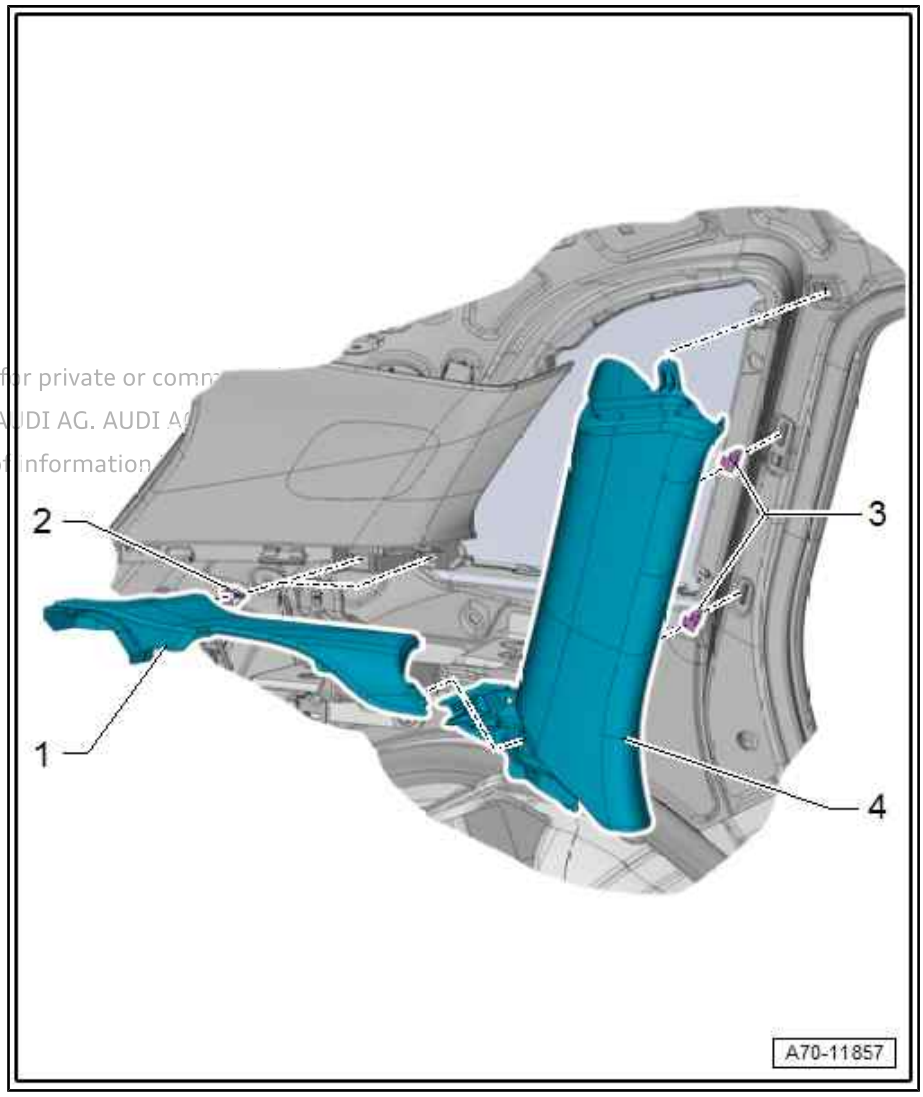
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in intermediate cover
- ❑ Remove any clips left in D-pillar trim and insert in cover for installation
- ❑ Renew clip if damaged or deformed

3 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 302
- ❑ Insert at top in mounting point at roof and clip into C-pillar
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of information

5.5.3 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, Saloon

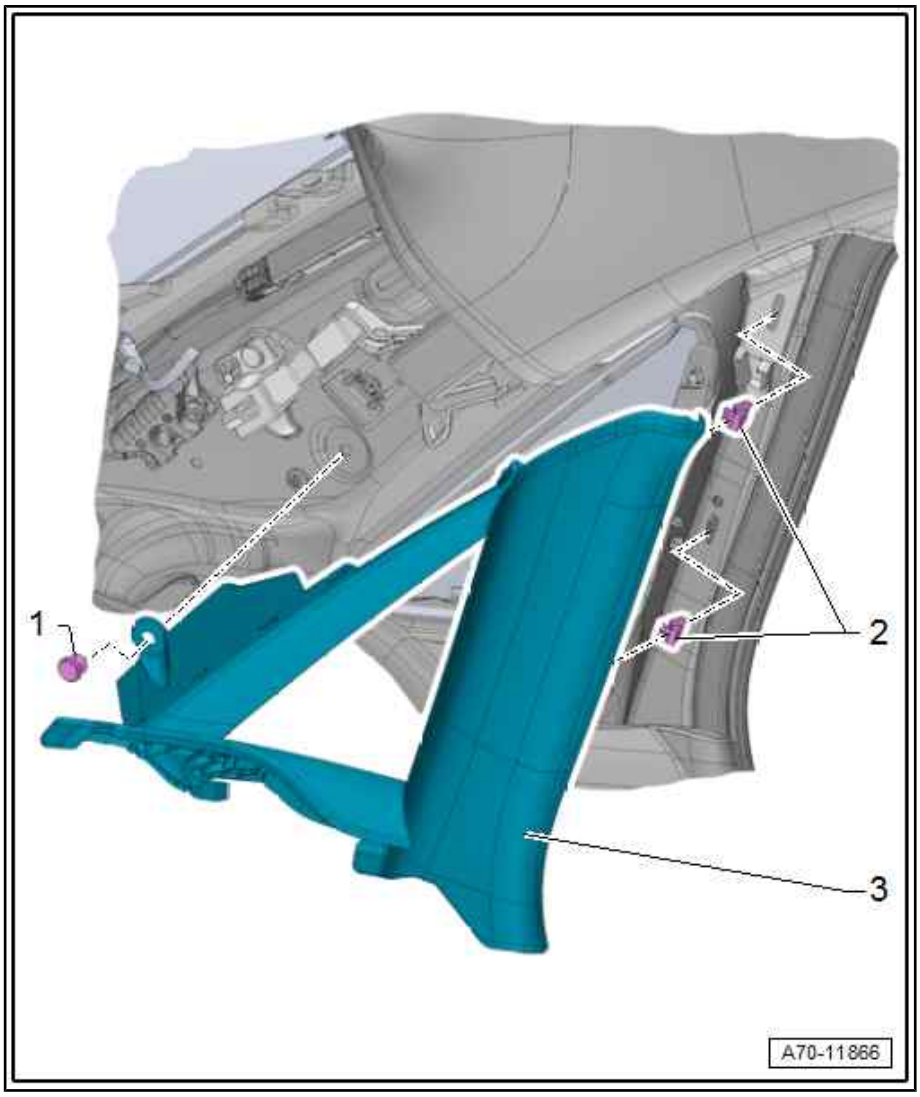
1 - Fastener

2 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 304
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim

⇒ “5.6.1 Exploded view - D-pillar trim, A3 Sportback”, page 280

⇒ “5.6.2 Exploded view - D-pillar trim, Saloon”, page 281

5.6.1 Exploded view - D-pillar trim, A3 Sportback

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Fastener

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

2 - Bracket

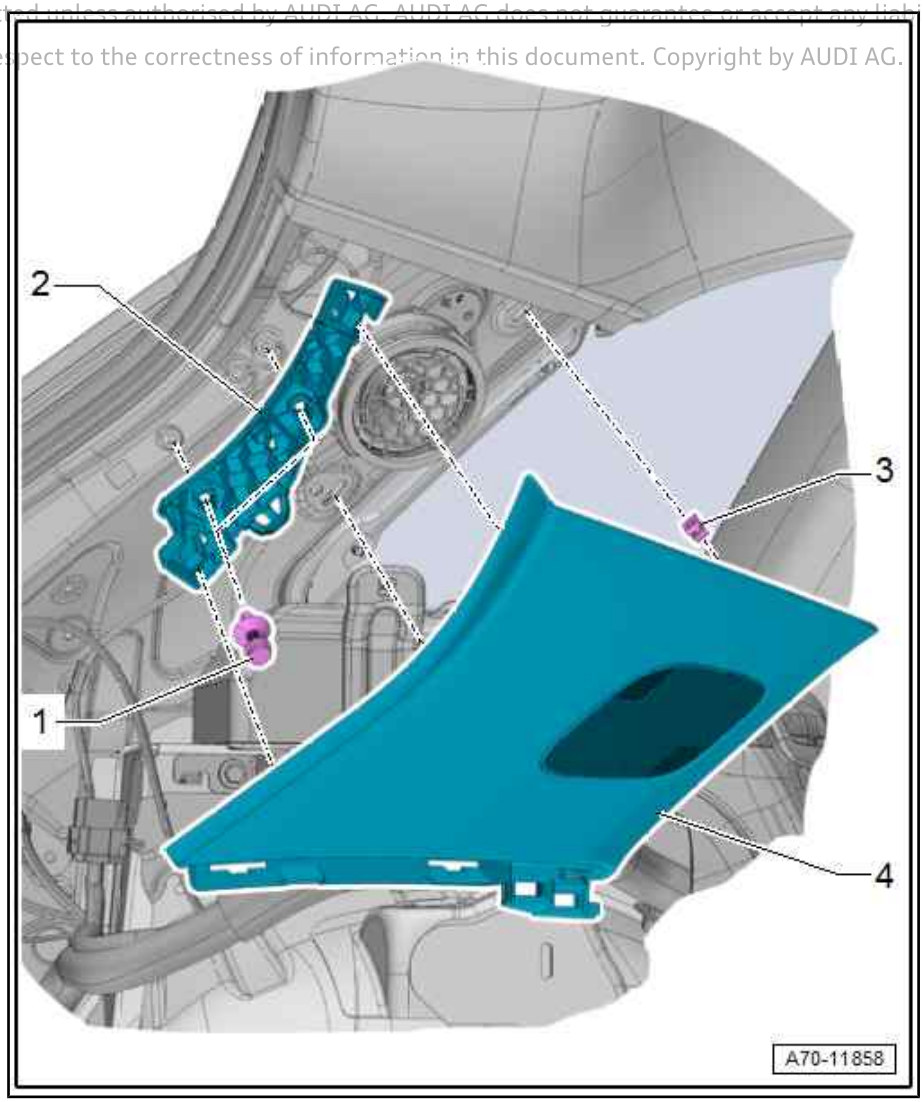
- ❑ For D-pillar trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.14 Removing and installing D-pillar trim”, page 305

3 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - D-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 305
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal



5.6.2 Exploded view - D-pillar trim, Saloon

1 - D-pillar trim

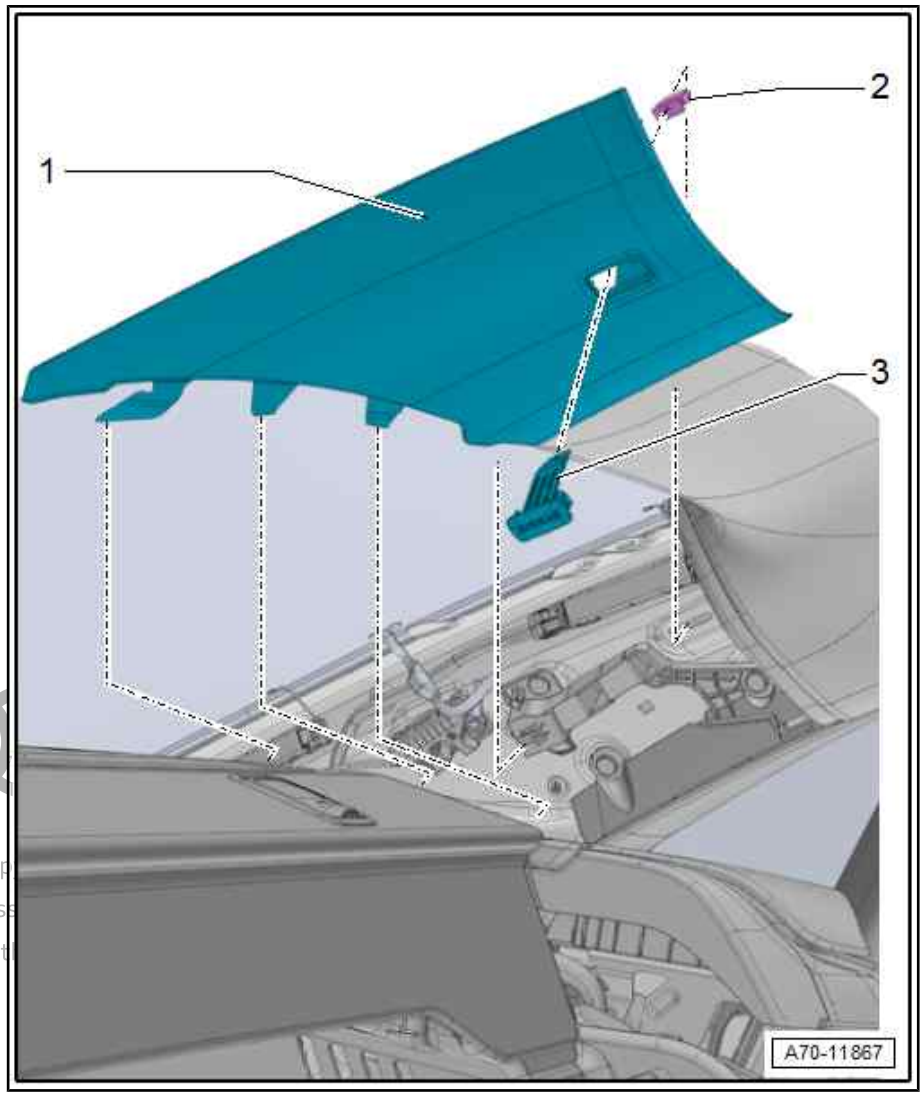
- ❑ Different versions ⇒ Parts catalogue
- ❑ Up to 26.6.2017: with expanding cap
- ❑ From 27.7.2017 onwards: without expanding cap
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 307
- ❑ Hook into rear shelf and press on until it engages audibly

2 - Fastener

- ❑ Only on version with expanding cap
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

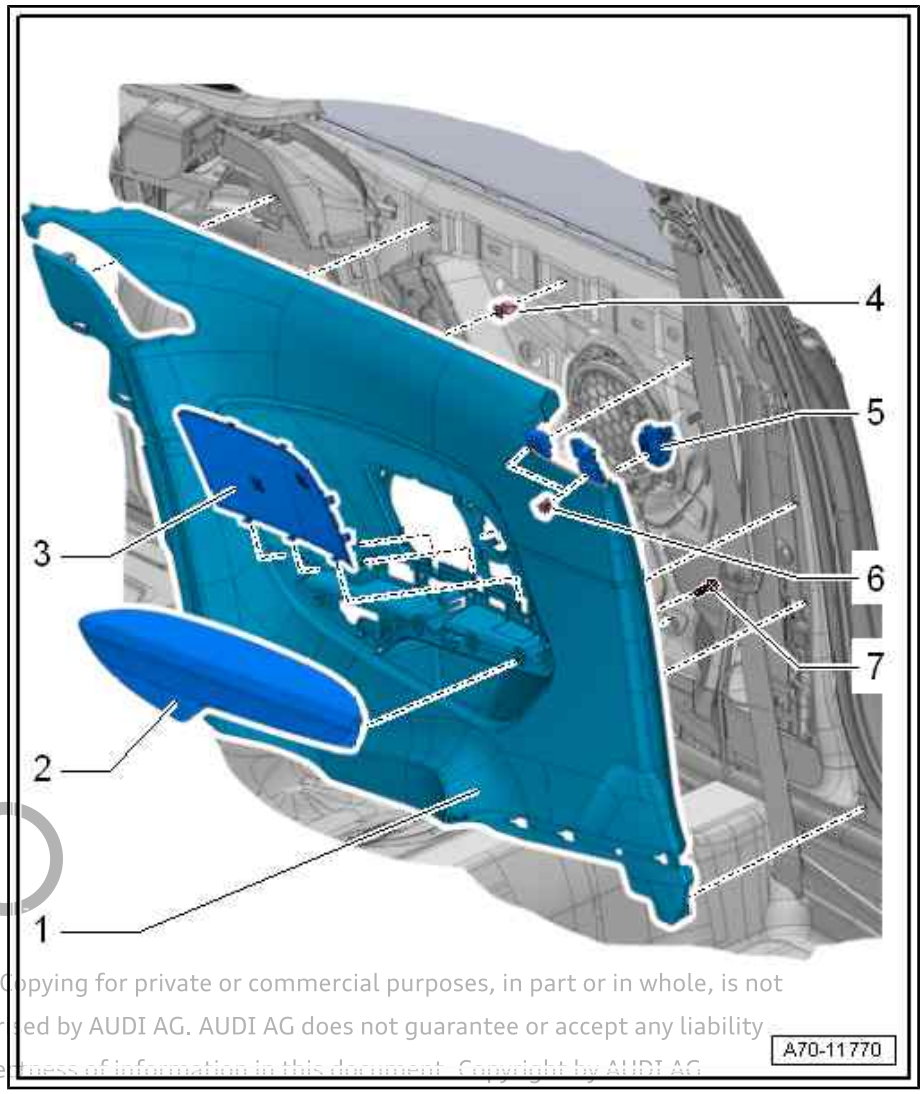
3 - Expanding cap

- ❑ Only on version with expanding cap
- ❑ With “airbag” symbol
- ❑ Unclip carefully



Protected by cop
permitted unless
with respect to t

5.7 Exploded view - side trim



1 - Side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 309
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

2 - Armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 310

3 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308
- ❑ Hook into side trim and press on until it engages audibly

4 - Clip

- ❑ 12x
- ❑ Insert into side trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ❑ Renew clip if damaged or deformed

5 - Treble loudspeaker

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system
- ❑ Clip into side trim

6 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert into side trim
- ❑ Renew clip if damaged or deformed

7 - Bolt

- ❑ For armrest
- ❑ 12x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.8 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering

1 - Foot rest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 311
- ❑ Must engage completely in bracket

2 - Nut

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2 Nm

3 - Bracket

- ❑ For foot rest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.17 Removing and installing foot rest”, page 311

4 - Steering column cover

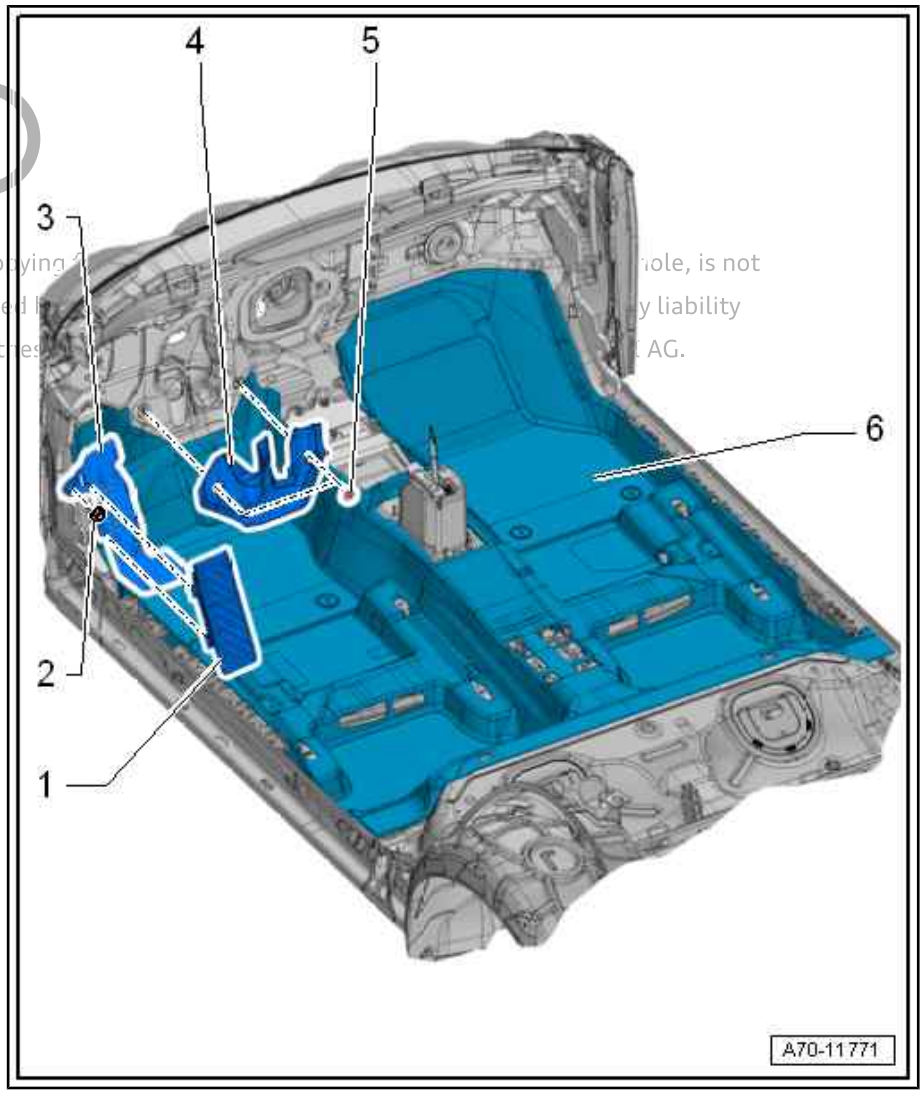
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 312

5 - Nut/stud

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Nut: 2 Nm
- ❑ Stud: Press in as far as stop

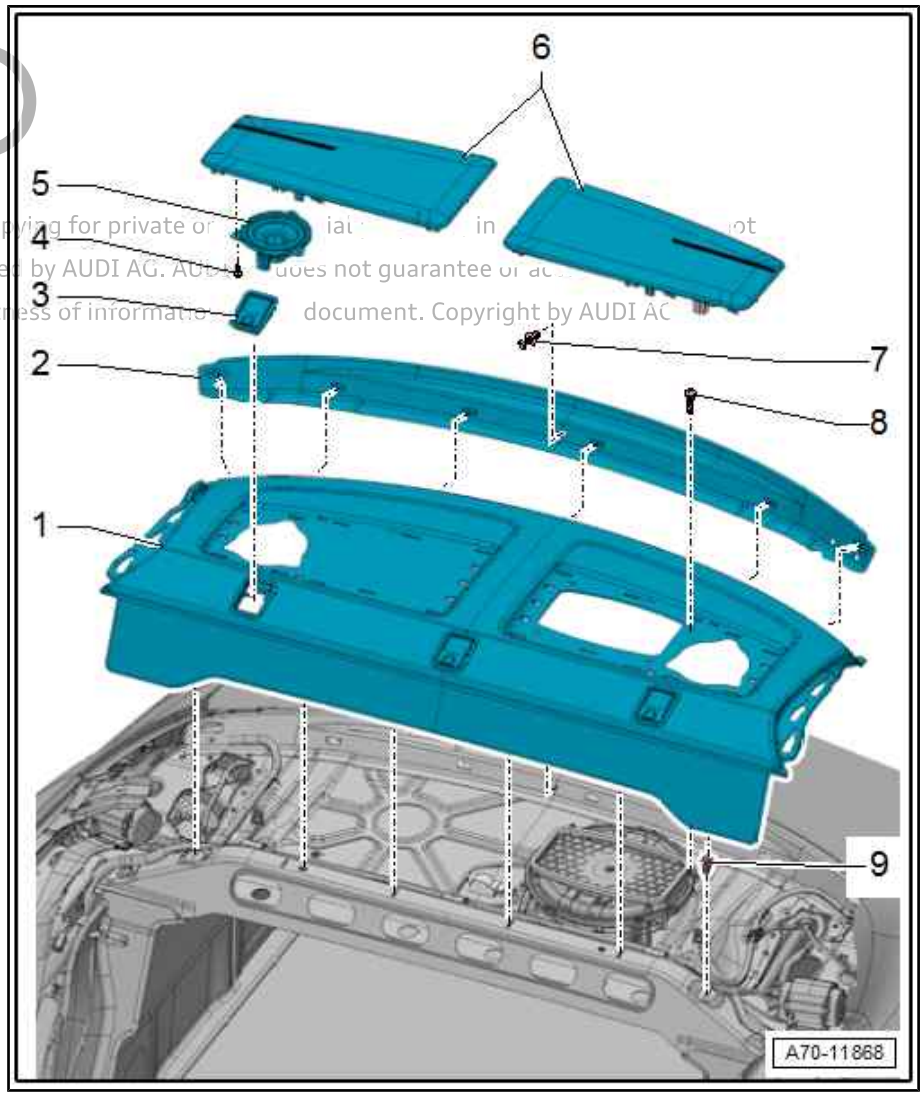
6 - Floor covering

- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 312



Protected by copyright. Copying ... ...ole, is not permitted unless authorised ... ...y liability ... ... to the correct ... ... AG.

5.9 Exploded view - rear shelf



1 - Rear shelf
- ❑ Engaged in rear window frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 313
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

2 - Trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.19 Removing and installing rear shelf”, page 313

3 - Cap
- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 111
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

5 - Loudspeaker
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

6 - Loudspeaker trim
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.19 Removing and installing rear shelf”, page 313

7 - Fastener
- ❑ 3x

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2 Nm

9 - Clip
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Insert in rear shelf
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in rear shelf for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

5.10 Removing and installing sill panel trim

⇒ “5.10.1 Removing and installing sill panel trim - A3”, page 285

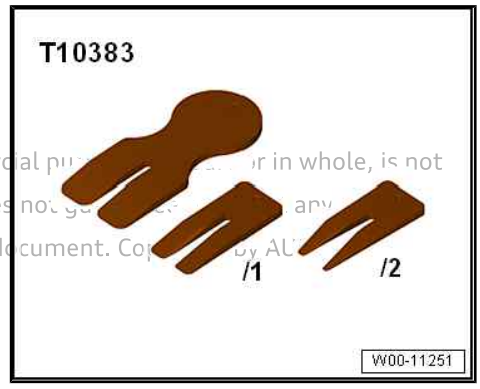
⇒ “5.10.2 Removing and installing sill panel trim (front) - A3 e-tron/ A3 Saloon”, page 286

⇒ “5.10.3 Removing and installing sill panel trim (rear) - A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon”, page 287

5.10.1 Removing and installing sill panel trim - A3

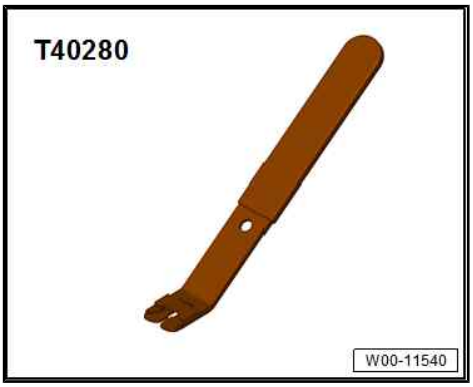
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removal tool - T40280-

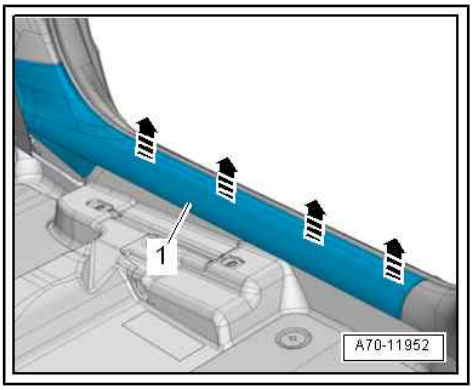


Removing

– Remove seat bench/individual seats ⇒ page 464 .

– Move clear sill panel trim in vicinity of door seal.

– Starting at front, use wedge -T10383- to unclip sill panel trim -1- from side member -arrows-.

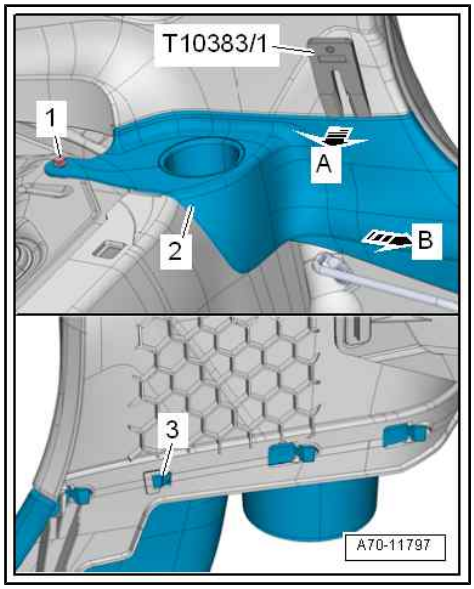


– Remove fastener -1-.
– Release retaining tab -3- on sill panel trim from side trim -arrow A- using wedge -T10383/1- .
– At the same time pull sill panel trim -2- off side trim towards front -arrow B-.
– Detach sill panel trim.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

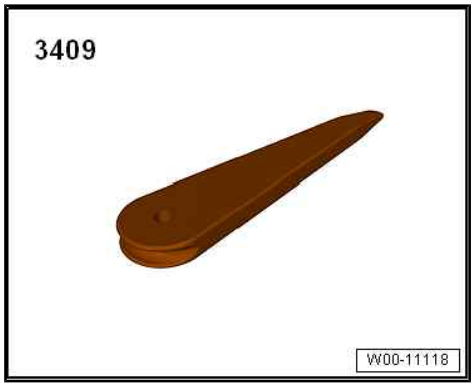
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim, A3", page 267



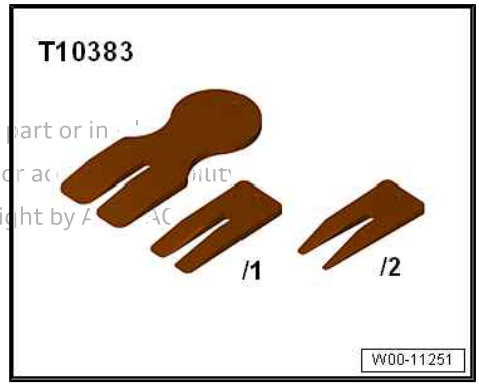
5.10.2 Removing and installing sill panel trim (front) - A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

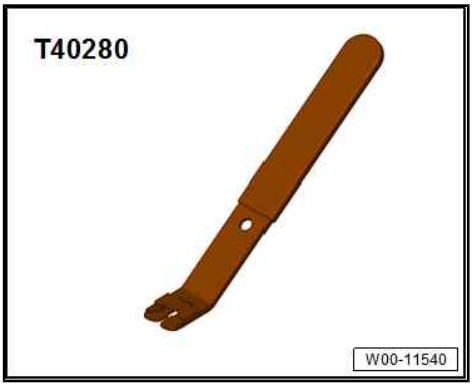


♦ Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by A

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

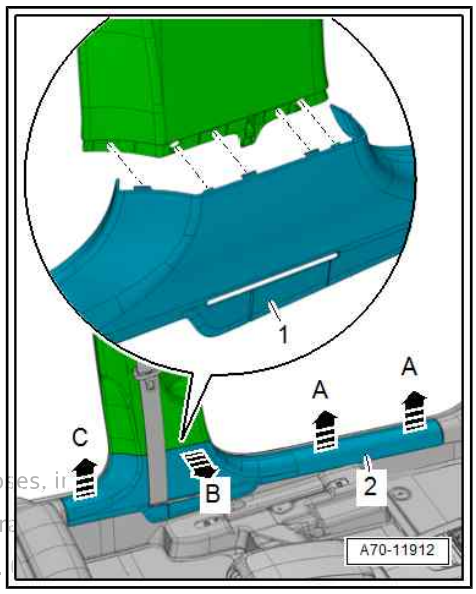
– Move clear sill panel trim in vicinity of door seal.

– Starting at front, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip sill panel trim -2- from side member -arrows A-.

– Use wedge -T10383/1- to release retaining tab of sill panel trim from B-pillar trim -arrow B-.

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , unclip sill panel trim from side member at rear -arrow C-.

– Open tab -1- on sill panel trim, thread out belt and detach sill panel trim.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

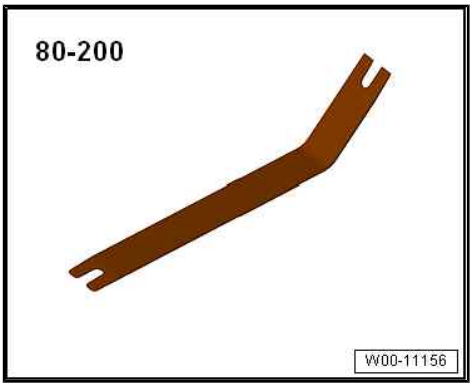
⇒ “5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim (front), A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon”, page 268

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

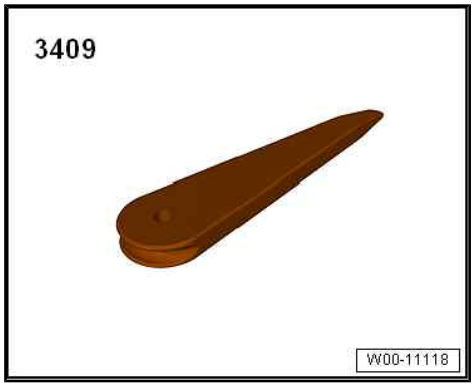
5.10.3 Removing and installing sill panel trim (rear) - A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

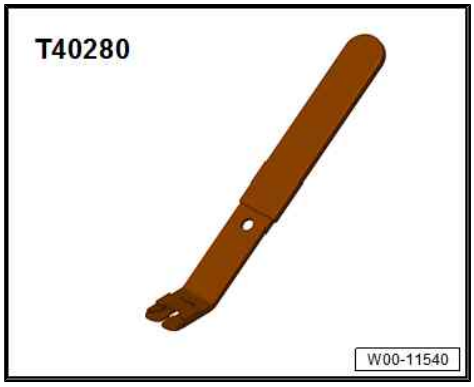
♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



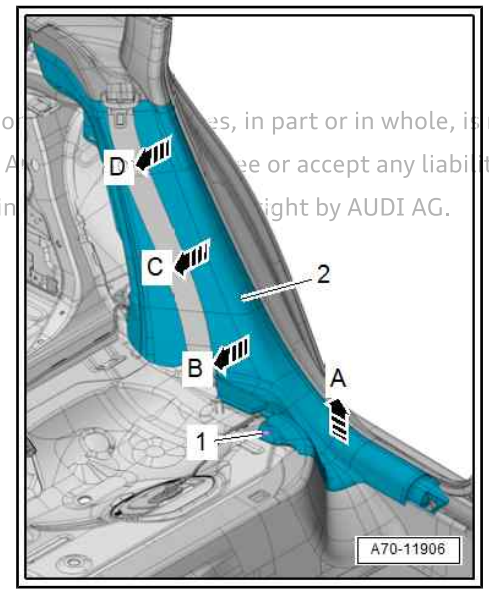
♦ Removal tool - T40280-



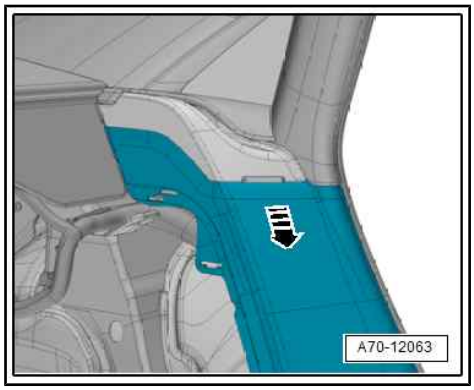
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co... es, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A... e or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in... ight by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove seat bench/individual seats ⇒ page 464 .
– Equipment version with side padding: Remove side padding ⇒ page 468 .
– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 336 .
– A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron: Unclip B-pillar trim (bottom) at rear from sill panel trim ⇒ page 298 .
– A3 e-tron/Saloon: Unclip sill panel trim (front) at rear from sill panel trim (rear) ⇒ page 286 .
– Remove fastener -1-.
– Move clear sill panel trim in vicinity of door seal.
– Starting at front, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip sill panel trim -2- from side member -arrow A-.
– Fold down rear seat backrest.
– Use removal lever - 80-200- to unclip sill panel trim at side panel -arrows B, C, D-.



– Pull sill panel trim downwards -arrow- out of C-pillar trim, belt guide and rear shelf.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "5.2.3 Exploded view - sill panel trim (rear), A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon", page 269

5.11 Removing and installing A-pillar trim

⇒ “5.11.1 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top) - A3/A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron”, page 289

⇒ “5.11.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top) - A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon”, page 291

⇒ “5.11.3 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom) - A3/A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon”, page 293

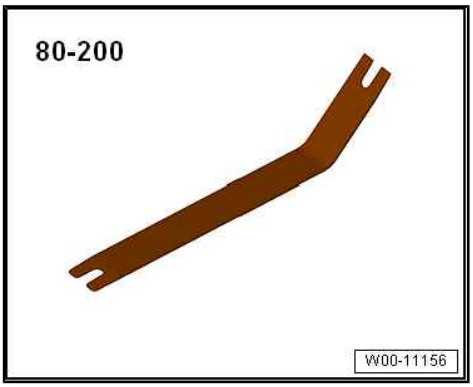
⇒ “5.11.4 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom) - A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron”, page 294

5.11.1 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top) - A3/A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron

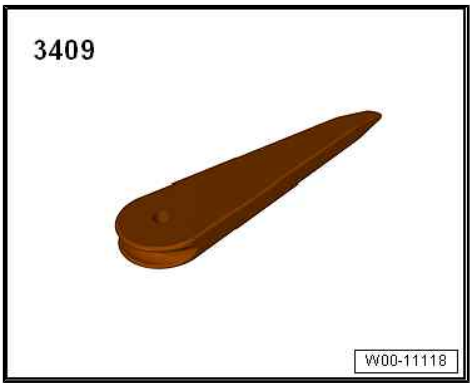
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

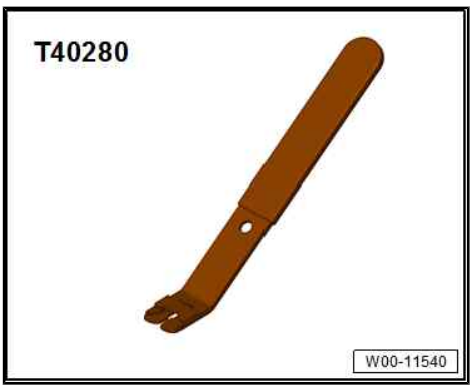
- Removal lever - 80-200-



- Removal wedge - 3409-



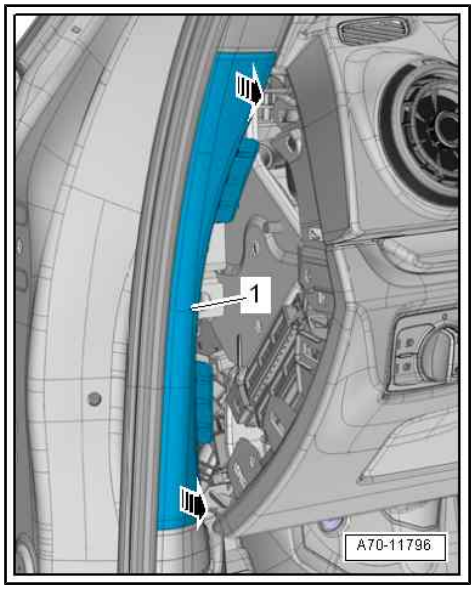
- Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

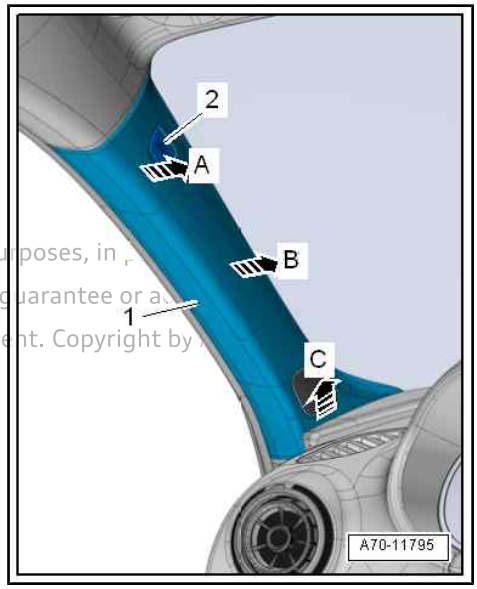
– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 244 .

– Unclip trim cover -1- at A-pillar using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and detach.



WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .



– Use a screwdriver to prise out expanding cap -2- with “airbag” symbol.

– Starting at top, carefully unfasten A-pillar trim -1- as far as first detent -arrows A and B- using removal lever - 80-200-.

– To release clip with catch, pull trim upwards out of dash panel -arrow C-; this causes clip to slide out of mounting point in body.

– Carefully pull A-pillar trim upwards out of dash panel, unplug electrical connector for treble loudspeaker and detach trim.

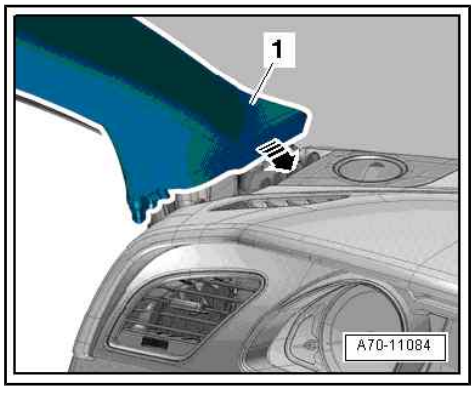
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or assume liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting A-pillar trim (top).*

– Insert A-pillar trim (top) -1- in mounting at dash panel -arrow-.



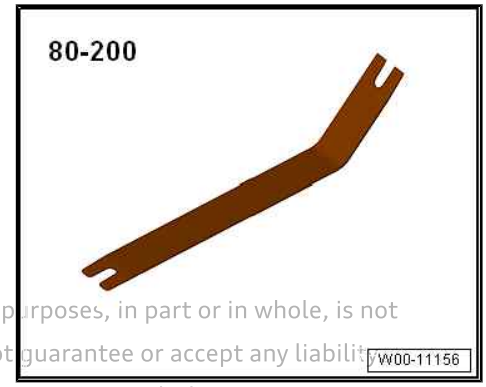
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.3.1 Exploded view - A-pillar trim (top), A3/A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron”, page 270

5.11.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top) - A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon

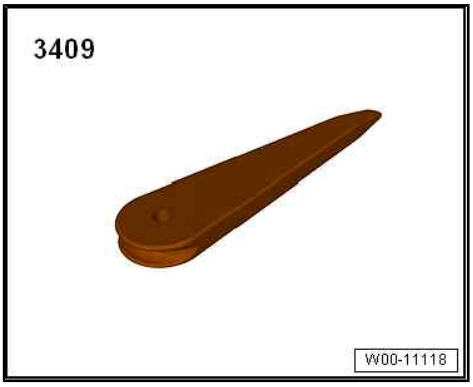
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-

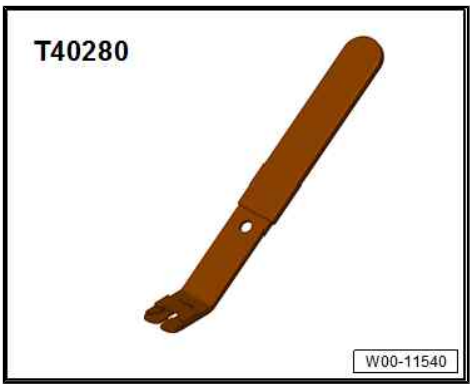


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removal wedge - 3409-



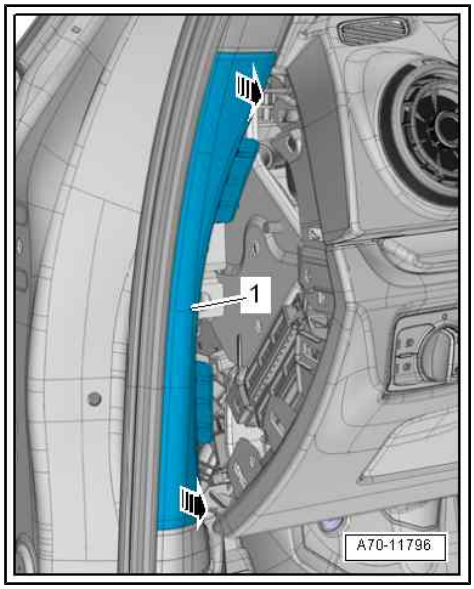
- Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

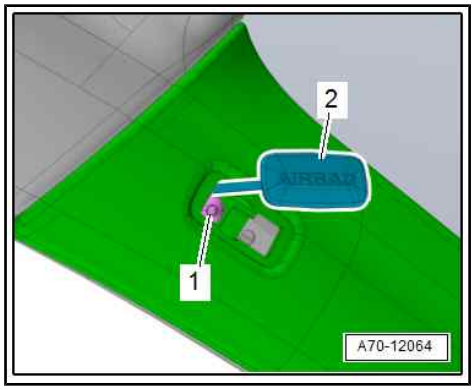
– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 244 .

– Unclip trim cover -1- at A-pillar using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and detach.



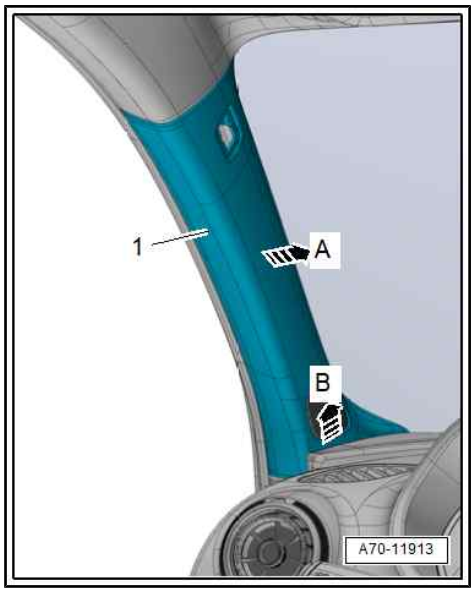
– Use removal wedge - 3409- to prise out cap -2- with “airbag” symbol.

– Remove bolt -1-.



WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .



– Starting at top, carefully unfasten A-pillar trim -1- as far as first detent -arrow A- using removal lever - 80-200- .

– To release clip with catch, pull trim upwards out of dash panel -arrow B-; this causes clip to slide out of mounting point in body.

– Carefully pull A-pillar trim upwards out of dash panel, unplug electrical connector for treble loudspeaker and detach trim.

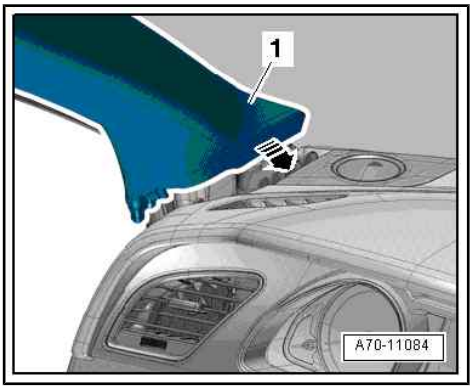
Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting A-pillar trim (top).***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Insert A-pillar trim (top) -1- in mounting at dash panel -arrow-.



The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.3.2 Exploded view - A-pillar trim (top), A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon”, page 271

5.11.3 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom) - A3/A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-

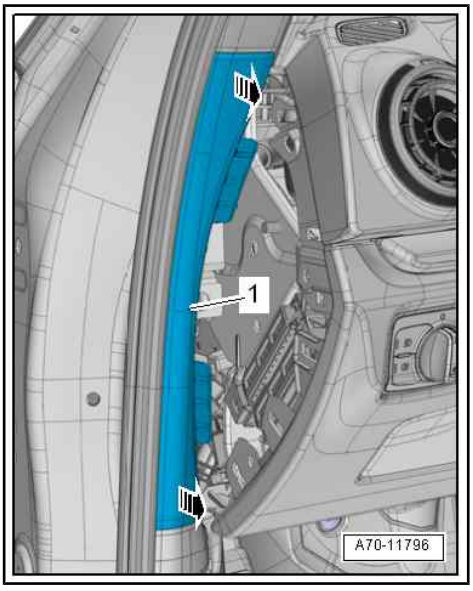
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



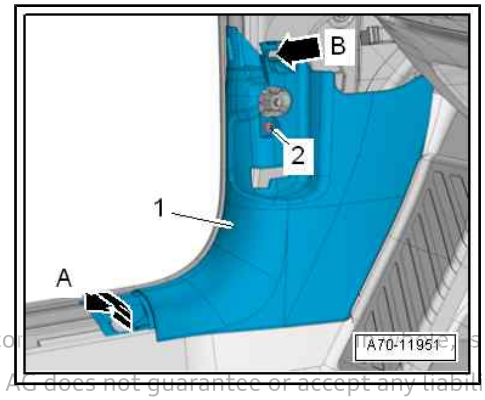
Removing

– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 244 .

– Unclip trim cover -1- at A-pillar using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and detach.



– Unclip sill panel trim at front from A-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 285 .



Driver side:

– Remove handle of operating lever for bonnet lock ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet .

– Unscrew bolt -2- for A-pillar trim (bottom).

Both sides of vehicle (continued):

– Disengage A-pillar trim -1- from side member at bottom and pull towards rear -arrow A-.

– Disengage A-pillar trim at pin -arrow B- on A-pillar and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

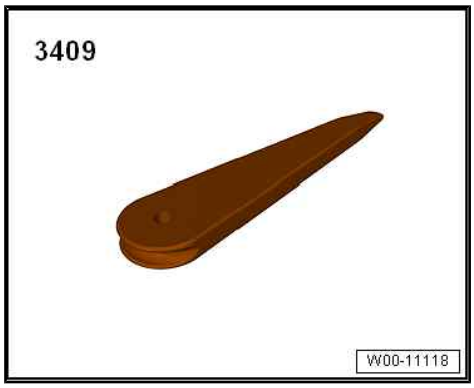
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "5.3.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim (bottom), A3/A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon", page 272

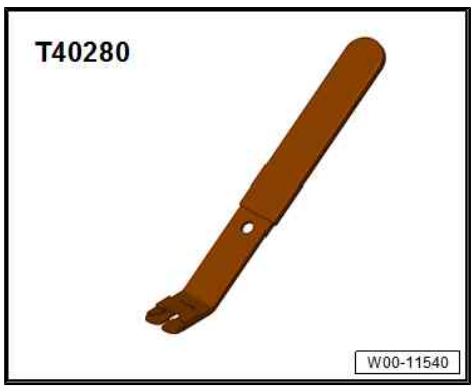
5.11.4 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom) - A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-

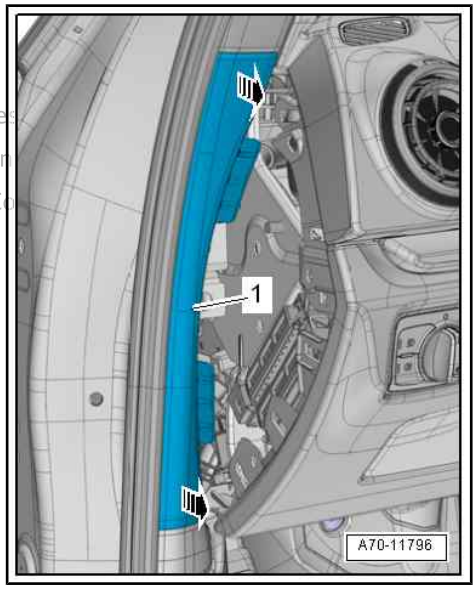


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

Removing

– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 244 .

– Unclip trim cover -1- at A-pillar using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and detach.



Driver side:

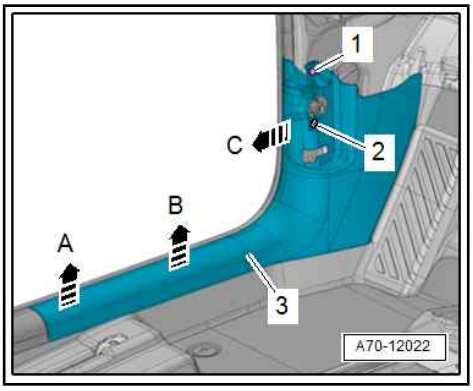
– Remove handle of operating lever for bonnet lock ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet .

– Unscrew bolt -2- for A-pillar trim (bottom).

Both sides of vehicle (continued):

– Starting at rear, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip A-pillar trim -3- from side member -arrows A, B- and pull off towards rear -arrow C-.

– Disengage A-pillar trim at pin -1- on A-pillar and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.3.4 Exploded view - A-pillar trim (bottom), A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron”, page 273

5.12 Removing and installing B-pillar trim

⇒ “5.12.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim - A3”, page 295

⇒ “5.12.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top) - A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon”, page 297

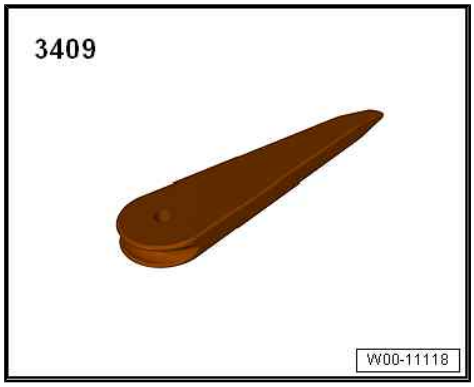
⇒ “5.12.3 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom) - A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron”, page 298

⇒ “5.12.4 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom) - A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon”, page 300

5.12.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim - A3

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-

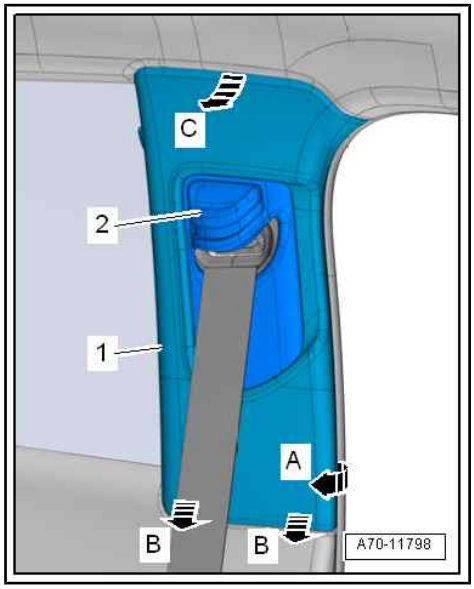


Removing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

– Move belt height adjuster -2- to lowest possible position.
– Apply removal wedge - 3409- at front edge of B-pillar trim -1- and, starting at bottom, disengage B-pillar trim from door seal -arrow A-.
– Apply removal wedge - 3409- at bottom edge of B-pillar trim and unclip B-pillar trim from side trim -arrows B-.
– Detach B-pillar trim from B-pillar.
– Pull B-pillar trim out of mounting on body -arrow C-; to do so, swivel trim inwards and at the same time pull it off downwards.



Note

When renewing B-pillar trim (top), remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 102 .

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting B-pillar trim.*

– Thread in belt with latch plate through slide for belt height adjuster.

Note

Make sure belt height adjuster is in bottom position.

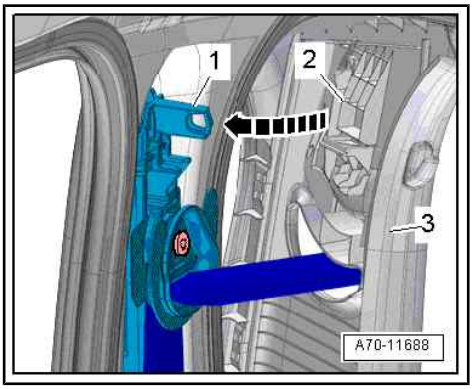
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– First insert B-pillar trim -3- upwards into mounting at roof.

• Mounting -2- of sliding element of B-pillar trim must engage in retainer -1- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

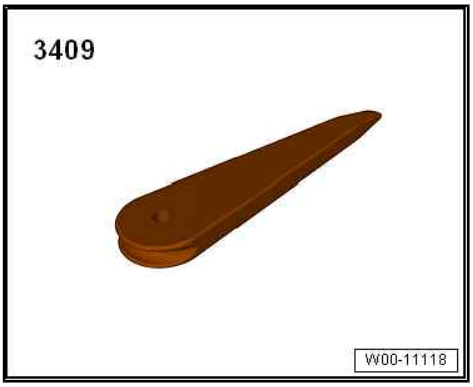
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.4.1 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A3”, page 274



5.12.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top) - A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

WARNING

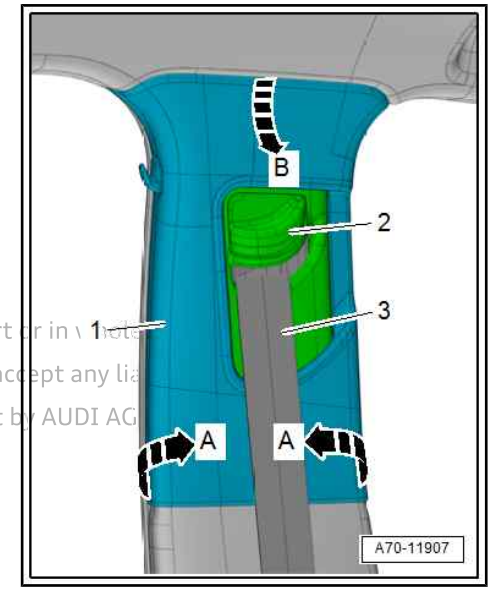
Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 *.*

– Move belt height adjuster -2- to lowest possible position.

– Apply removal wedge - 3409- at bottom edge of B-pillar trim (top) -1- and unclip trim from B-pillar -arrows A-.

– Pull B-pillar trim (top) out of mounting on body -arrow B-; to do so, swivel trim inwards and at the same time pull it off downwards.

– Detach B-pillar trim (top) with belt -3- inserted.

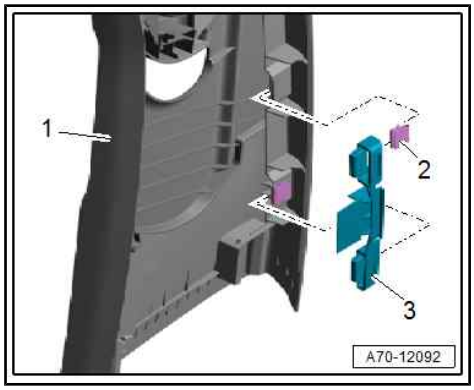


Note

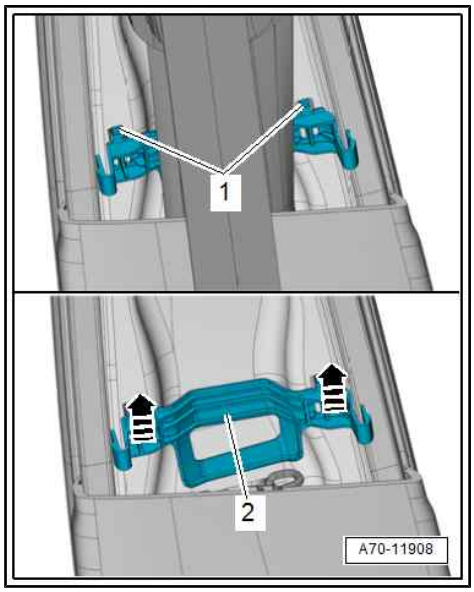
When renewing B-pillar trim (top), remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 102 *.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Country-specific version: Unclip deformation element -3- with clips -2- from B-pillar trim -1-.



– Release fasteners -1-, push bracket -2- for B-pillar trim upwards out of mountings -arrows- and remove.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting B-pillar trim.*

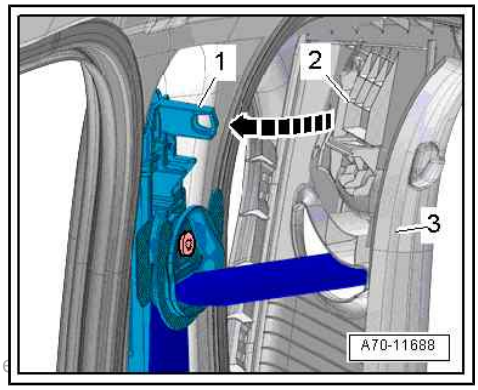
– Thread in belt with latch plate through slide for belt height adjuster.

Note

Make sure belt height adjuster is in bottom position.

– First insert B-pillar trim -3- upwards into mounting at roof.

• Mounting -2- of sliding element of B-pillar trim must engage in retainer -1- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.



The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

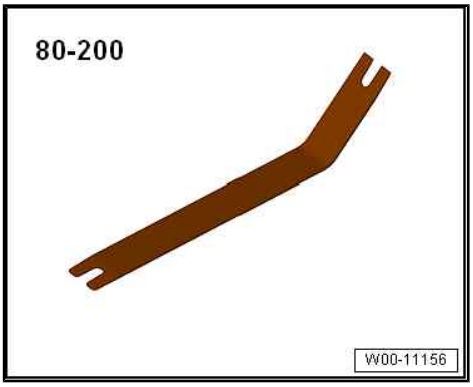
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim", page 274

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

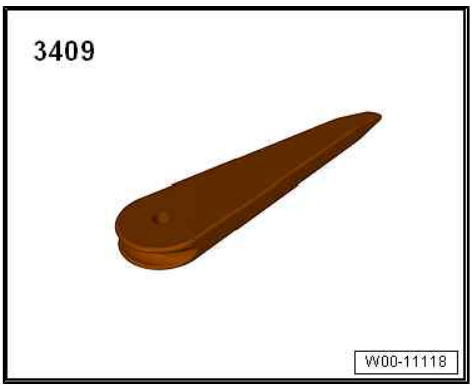
5.12.3 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom) - A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron

Special tools and workshop equipment required

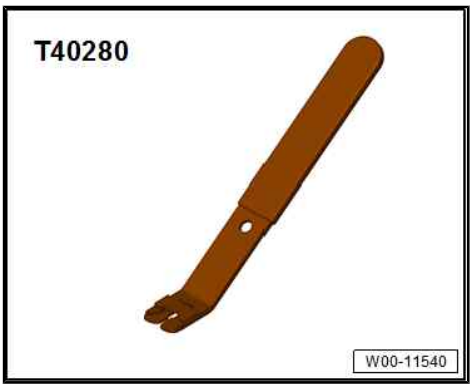
- Removal lever - 80-200-



- Removal wedge - 3409-

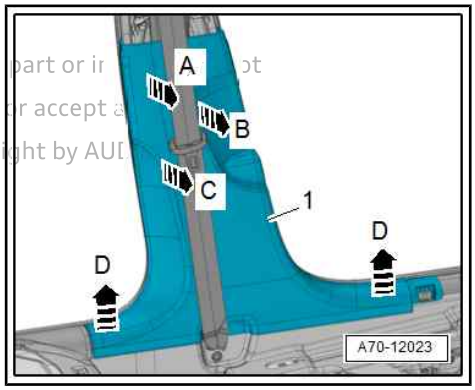


- Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 297 .
– Move B-pillar trim (top) to side with belt inserted.
– Unclip rear area of A-pillar trim (bottom) from B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 294 .
– Starting at top, use removal lever - 80-200- to unclip B-pillar trim (bottom) -1- from B-pillar -arrows A, B, C-.
– Use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip B-pillar trim (bottom) from side member -arrows D- and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in ot
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

Installing

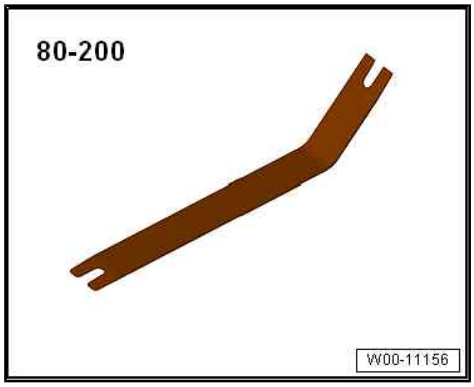
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "5.4.2 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A3 Sportback models except A3 e-tron", page 275

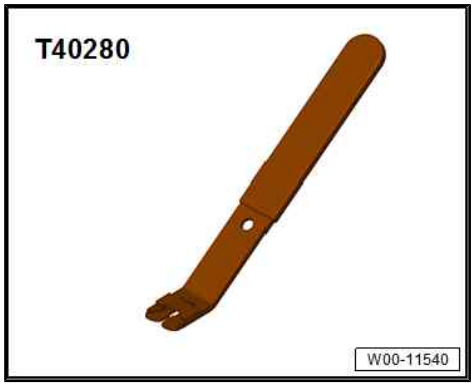
5.12.4 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom) - A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-

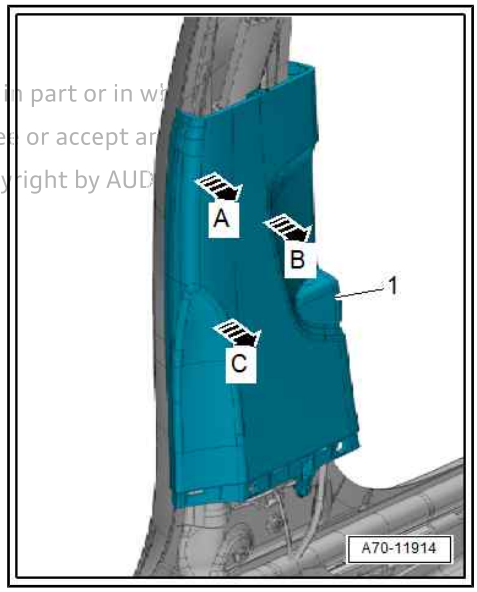


- Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Remove sill panel trim (front) ⇒ page 286 .
– Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 297 .
– Move B-pillar trim (top) to side with belt inserted.
– Starting at top, use removal lever - 80-200- to unclip B-pillar trim (bottom) -1- from B-pillar -arrows A, B, C-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in wh
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept an
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

Installing

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "5.4.3 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A3 e-tron/A3 Saloon", page 276

5.13 Removing and installing C-pillar trim

⇒ “5.13.1 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - A3”, page 301

⇒ “5.13.2 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - A3 Sportback”, page 302

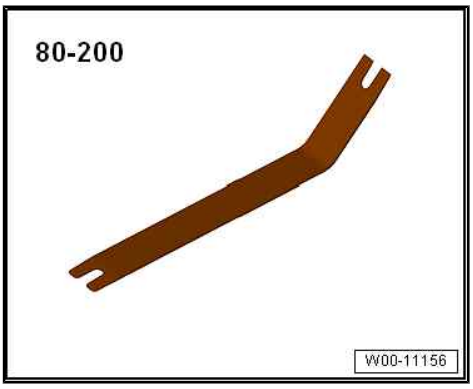
⇒ “5.13.3 Removing and installing intermediate cover - A3 Sportback”, page 304

⇒ “5.13.4 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - Saloon”, page 304

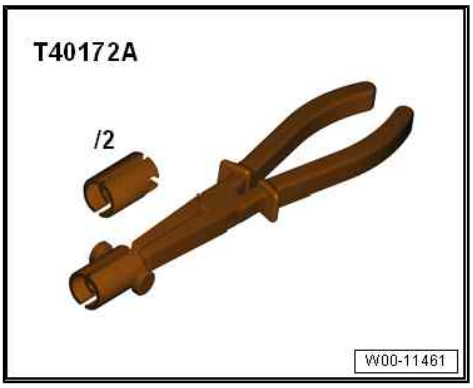
5.13.1 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - A3

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



- Pliers - T40172 A- with -T40172/2-



- Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

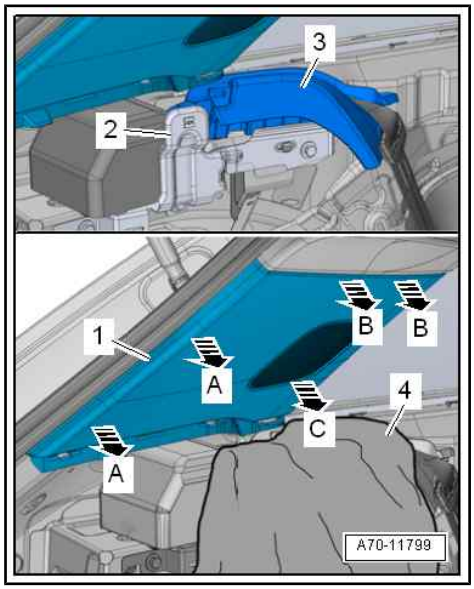
Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

– Remove seat bench/individual seats ⇒ page 464 .
– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 466 .
– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 336 .
– Remove side trim ⇒ page 309 .

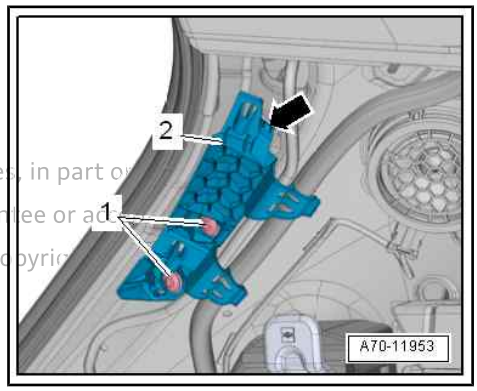
Caution

Risk of damage to C-pillar trim.

- *Cover retainer -2- and belt guide -3- with a clean cloth -4-.*



– Unclip C-pillar trim -1- from bracket on C-pillar -arrows A- using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Unclip C-pillar trim (top and bottom) from mountings on body -arrows B and C- using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Detach C-pillar trim.



– Remove fasteners -1- using pliers - T40172 A- and - T40172/2- .
– Disengage retainer -2- from body -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyri

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting C-pillar trim.*

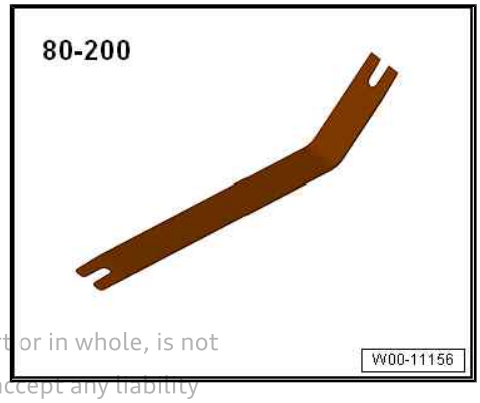
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.5.1 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, A3", page 277

5.13.2 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - A3 Sportback

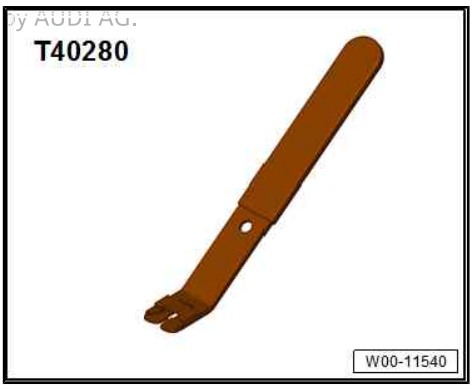
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removal tool - T40280-

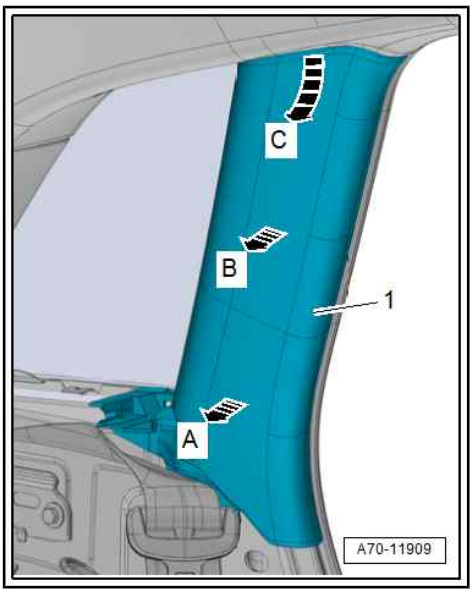


Removing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

– Remove outer belt guide (rear) ⇒ page 99 .
– Unclip C-pillar trim -1- from C-pillar using removal lever -80-200- -arrows A, B-.
– Pull C-pillar trim (top) out of mounting on body -arrow C-; to do so, swivel trim inwards and at the same time pull it off downwards.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting C-pillar trim.*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.5.2 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, A3 Sportback”, page 278

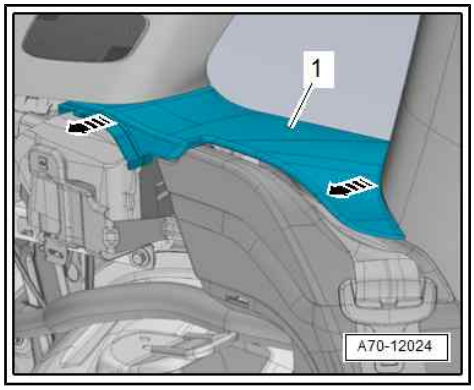
5.13.3 Removing and installing intermediate cover - A3 Sportback

Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 336 .

– Detach cover -1- from C-pillar trim and C-pillar trim -arrows-.

– Disengage cover from belt guide and detach.



Installing

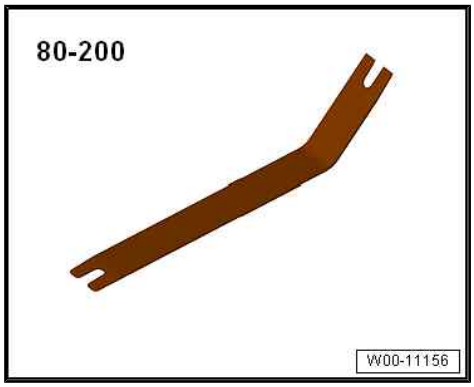
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.5.2 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, A3 Sportback”, page 278

5.13.4 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-

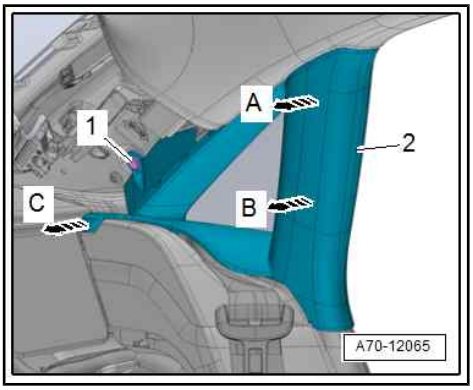


♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in wh[illegible] not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any [illegible]bility with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ page 307 .
– Remove fastener -1-.
– Unclip C-pillar trim -2- from C-pillar using removal lever -80-200- -arrows A, B-.
– Unclip C-pillar trim from belt guide -arrow C-.
– Swivel C-pillar trim inwards and at the same time pull it upwards out of belt guide.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.5.3 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, Saloon”, page 279

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.14 Removing and installing D-pillar trim

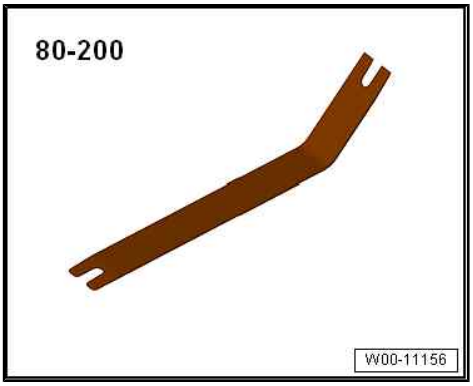
⇒ “5.14.1 Removing and installing D-pillar trim - A3 Sportback”, page 305

⇒ “5.14.2 Removing and installing D-pillar trim - Saloon”, page 307

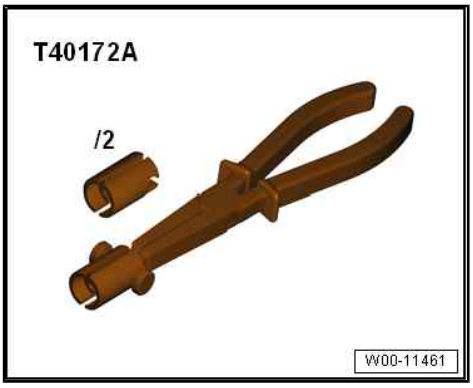
5.14.1 Removing and installing D-pillar trim - A3 Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

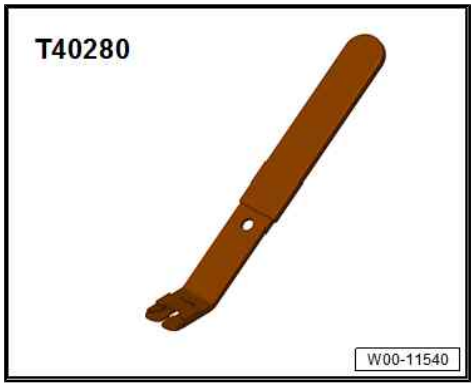
♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Pliers - T40172 A- with -T40172/2-



- Removal tool - T40280-



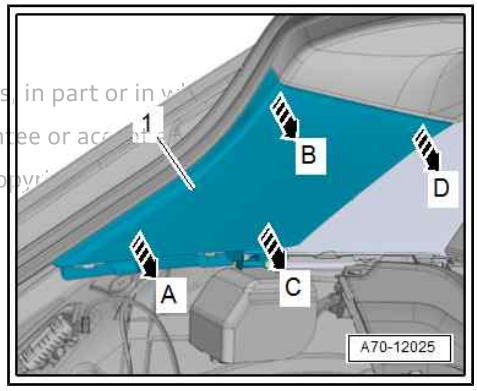
Removing

WARNING

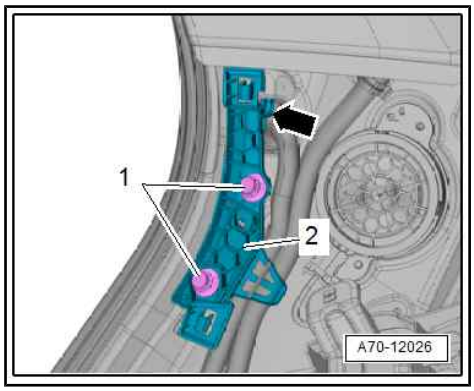
Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 336 .
– Remove intermediate cover ⇒ page 304 .
– Unclip D-pillar trim -1- from bracket on D-pillar -arrows A, B- using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Unclip D-pillar trim from mountings on body -arrows C and D- using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Pull D-pillar trim downwards out of moulded headliner and remove.

Printed by a licensed user. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Remove fasteners -1- using pliers - T40172 A- and - T40172/2- .
– Disengage retainer -2- from body -arrow- and detach.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting D-pillar trim.*

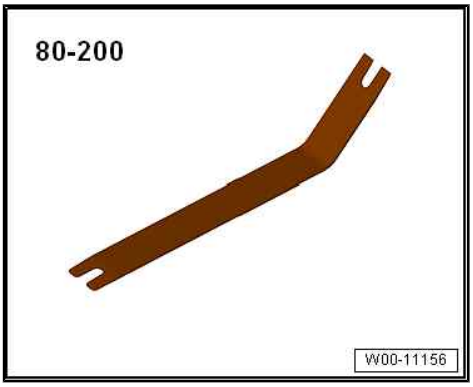
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "5.6.1 Exploded view - D-pillar trim, A3 Sportback", page 280

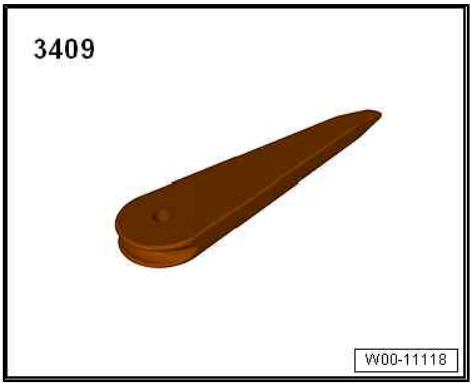
5.14.2 Removing and installing D-pillar trim - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

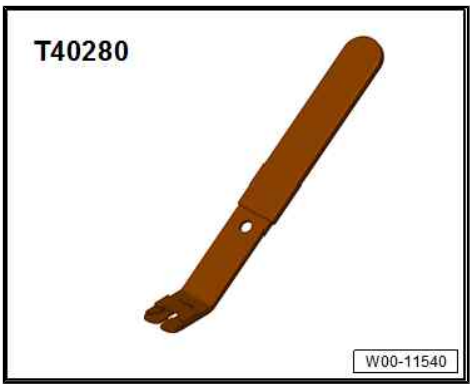
- Removal lever - 80-200-



- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

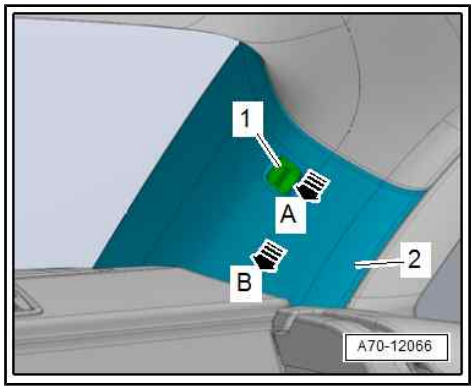
WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Version with expanding cap (up to 26.6.2017) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue : Pry out expanding cap -1- with “Airbag” symbol using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Unclip D-pillar trim -2- from D-pillar using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows A, B-.
– Swivel D-pillar trim inwards and pull upwards out of rear shelf.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting D-pillar trim.*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.6.2 Exploded view - D-pillar trim, Saloon”, page 281

5.15 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

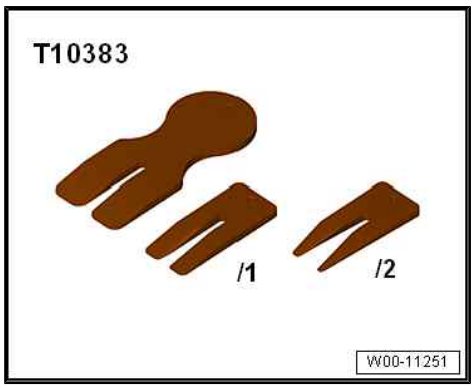
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

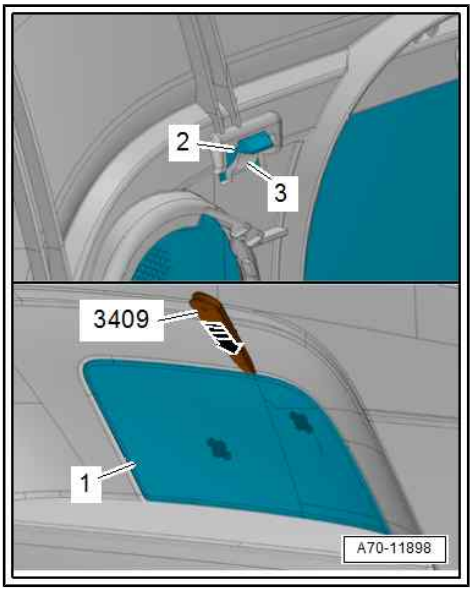


- Wedges - T10383-

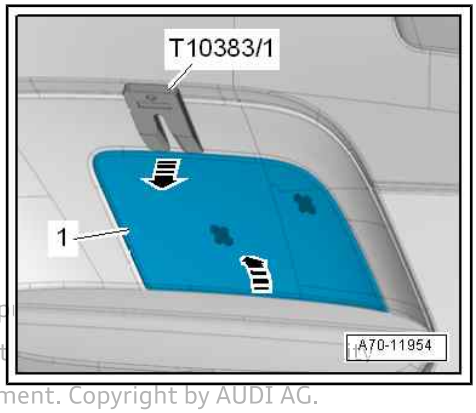


Removing

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , press retaining hook -2- of loudspeaker trim -1- forcibly downwards (-arrow-) against collar -3- so that retaining lug is released from side trim.



– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully prise remaining retaining hooks of loudspeaker trim -1- off side trim along gap and lift out -arrows-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.7 Exploded view - side trim”, page 282

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.16 Removing and installing side trim

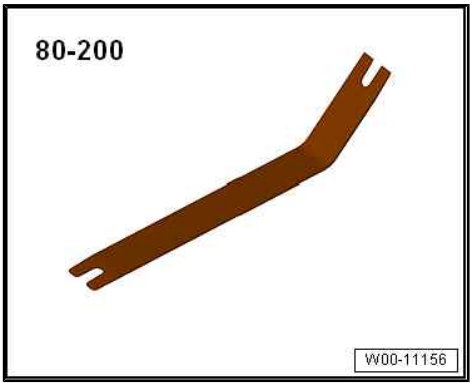
⇒ “5.16.1 Removing and installing side trim”, page 309

⇒ “5.16.2 Removing and installing armrest”, page 310

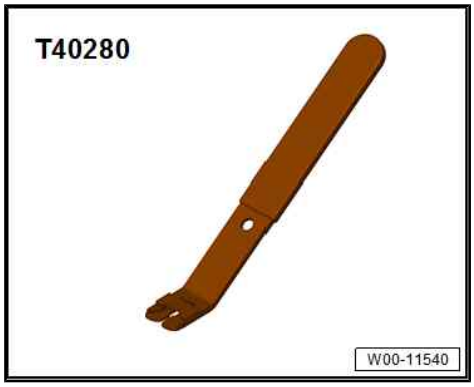
5.16.1 Removing and installing side trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-

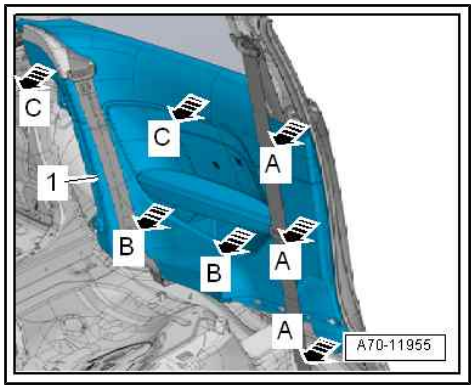


- Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Remove seat bench/individual seats ⇒ page 464 .
– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 466 .
– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 336 .
– Remove B-pillar trim ⇒ page 295 .
– Remove sill panel trim ⇒ page 285 .
– Starting at front, unclip side trim from B-pillar in vicinity of door seal -arrows A- using removal wedge - 80-200- .
– Reach into storage pocket in side trim with both hands.
– Pull side trim firmly and abruptly inwards with both hands; this disengages clips -arrows B-.
– Unfasten clips at top of side trim -arrows C-.
– Disengage side trim -1- at belt guide and at pivot pin for rear seat backrest.
– Equipment version with treble loudspeaker: Unplug electrical connector and detach side trim.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fold lip of door seal over side trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.7 Exploded view - side trim", page 282

5.16.2 Removing and installing armrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Drill
- Drill bits (∅ 3.0 mm and ∅ 6.5 mm)
- Safety goggles

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ page 309 .

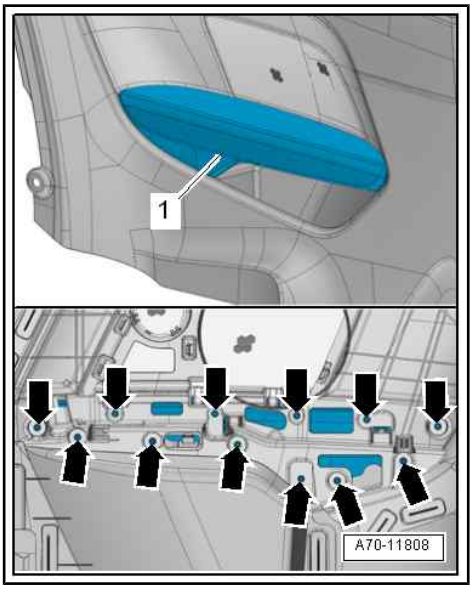
– Remove insulating mat.

– Using ∅ 6.5 mm drill bit, drill armrest attachment points -arrows- off side trim until armrest just starts to become detached from side trim.

Caution

Take care not to damage side trim when drilling.

– Carefully release armrest -1- at each attachment point and detach armrest from side trim.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

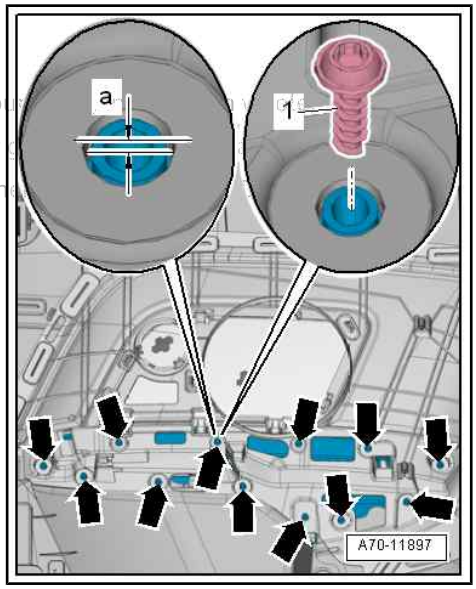
– Shorten plastic pegs (marked with -arrows-) on new armrest to dimension -a- = 0.2 mm beneath bolt-on surface for attachments.

• Dimension -a- = 0.2 mm

– When using an armrest that has already been welded once before, drill out bolt holes to ∅ 3.0 mm.

– Insert armrest in side trim and secure plastic pegs with bolts -1-.

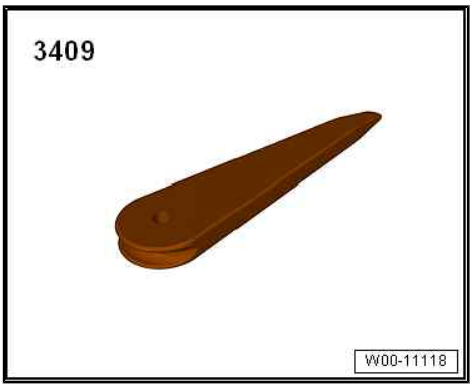
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.7 Exploded view - side trim", page 282



5.17 Removing and installing foot rest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

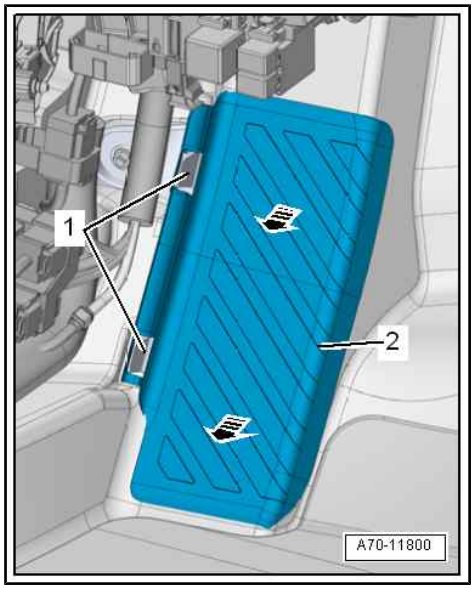
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

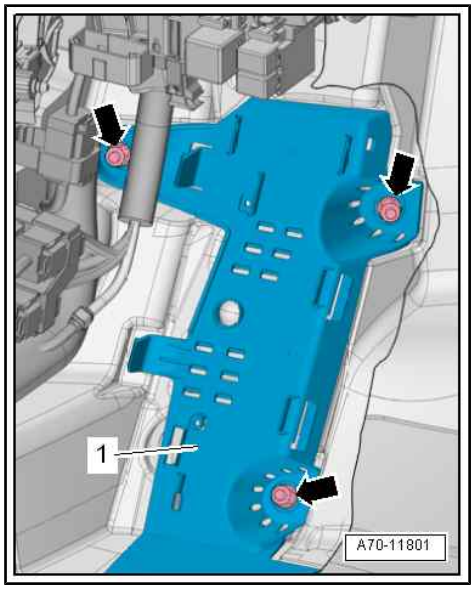
– Remove A-pillar trim (bottom, driver side) ⇒ page 289 .

– Release fasteners -1-, unclip foot rest -2- with removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and detach it to right side towards pedals.



– Press floor covering to side in vicinity of attachment points and unscrew nuts -arrows-.

– Lift retainer -1- off studs and pull retainer out from underneath floor covering.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.8 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering”, page 283

5.18 Removing and installing floor covering

⇒ “5.18.1 Removing and installing steering column cover”, page 312

⇒ “5.18.2 Removing and installing floor covering”, page 313

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

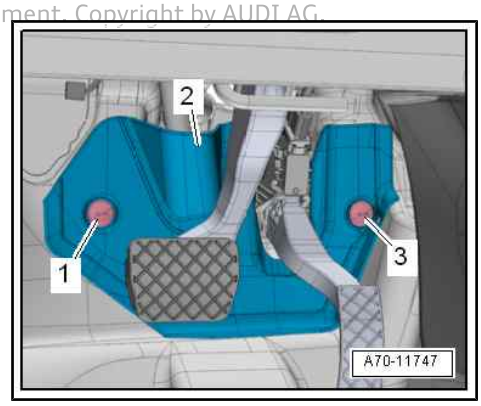
5.18.1 Removing and installing steering column cover

Removing

– Remove fasteners -1 and 3- with a screwdriver.

– Version with nuts: Remove nuts -1, 3-.

– Disengage and detach steering column cover -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

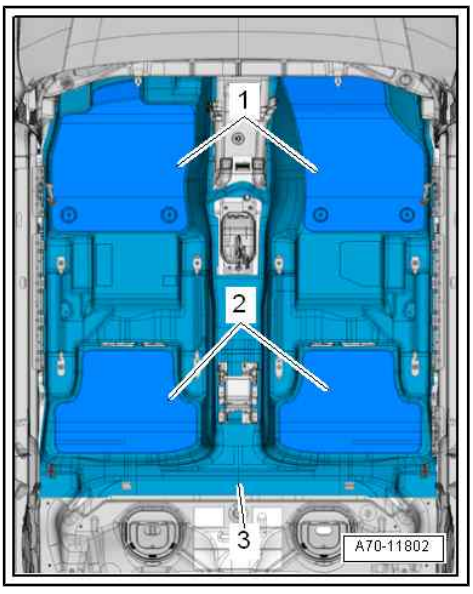
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.8 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering”, page 283

5.18.2 Removing and installing floor covering

Removing

- Remove front seats ⇒ page 392 .
- Remove seat bench/individual seats ⇒ page 464 .
- Remove sill panel trim panels ⇒ page 285 .
- Remove A-pillar trim panels (bottom) ⇒ page 289 .
- A3 Sportback: Remove B-pillar trim panels (bottom) ⇒ page 298 .
- A3/A3 Sportback: Remove belt end fittings (front) ⇒ page 102 .
- Remove centre console ⇒ page 46 .
- Remove foot rest ⇒ page 311 .
- Remove steering column cover ⇒ page 312 .
- Remove mounting bracket for centre console and lower selector mechanism ⇒ page 50 .
- Remove air duct (rear) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .
- Equipment version with digital sound package: Remove digital sound package control unit - J525- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
- Equipment version with adaptive suspension: Remove electronically controlled damping control unit - J250- , ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 43 ; Electronic damping control; Exploded view - electronic damping control .
- Remove floor mats -1 and 2-.
- Lift floor covering -3- at rear and pull towards rear.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

Make sure that floor covering does not tear at openings.

- Fold up floor covering and take it out through door opening.

Installing

- Fold up floor covering and place it in vehicle.
- Slide floor covering forwards and align until hole patterns coincide.

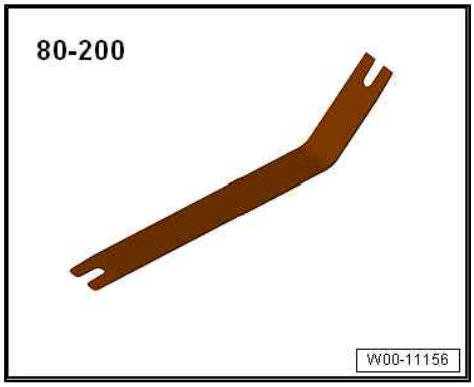
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "5.8 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering", page 283

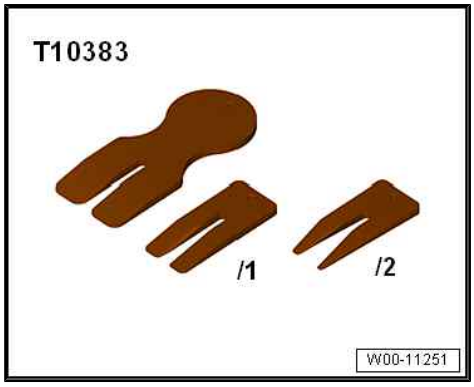
5.19 Removing and installing rear shelf

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



- Wedges - T10383-



- Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer... es, in part or in ..., is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep... ...iability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright b... AG.

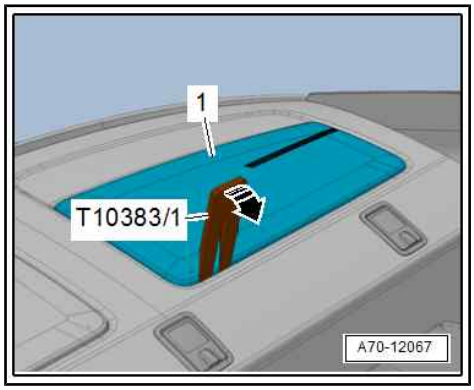
Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

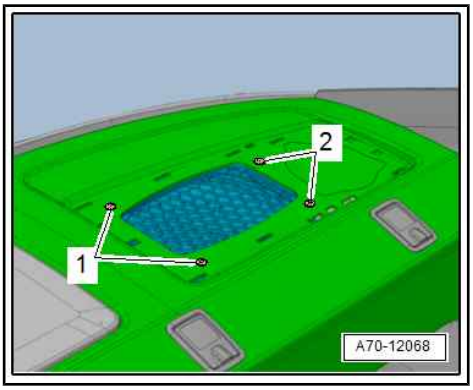
– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ page 307 .

– Equipment version with subwoofer: Unclip loudspeaker trim -1- -arrow- using wedge - T10383/1- .

– Equipment version with loudspeaker: Unplug electrical connector and pull out loudspeaker trim towards front.

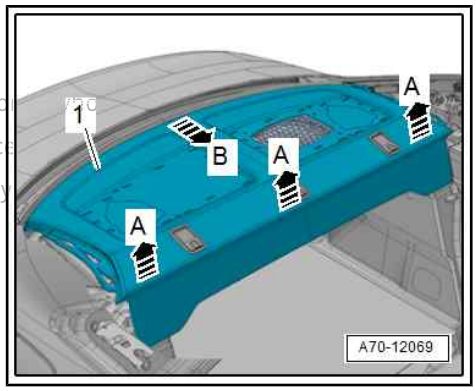


– Equipment version with subwoofer: Unscrew bolts -1, 2-.



– Unclip rear shelf -1- at front using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows A-.

– Pull rear shelf forwards -arrow B- and take out.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.9 Exploded view - rear shelf”, page 284

6 Luggage compartment trim panels

⇒ “6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels”, page 316

⇒ “6.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim (top)”, page 319

⇒ “6.3 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)”, page 320

⇒ “6.4 Exploded view - lock carrier trim”, page 323

⇒ “6.5 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim”, page 324

⇒ “6.6 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 327

⇒ “6.7 Removing and installing tail light cover”, page 329

⇒ “6.8 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)”, page 329

⇒ “6.9 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)”, page 333

⇒ “6.10 Removing and installing lock carrier trim”, page 334

⇒ “6.11 Removing and installing bag hook”, page 335

⇒ “6.12 Removing and installing fastening ring”, page 336

⇒ “6.13 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim”, page 336

⇒ “6.14 Removing and installing grip for luggage compartment floor (rear)”, page 340

⇒ “6.15 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well”, page 342

6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “6.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, A3/A3 Sportback”, page 316

⇒ “6.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, Saloon”, page 318

6.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, A3/ A3 Sportback

1 - Lock carrier trim

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 323

2 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 327

3 - Luggage compartment side trim

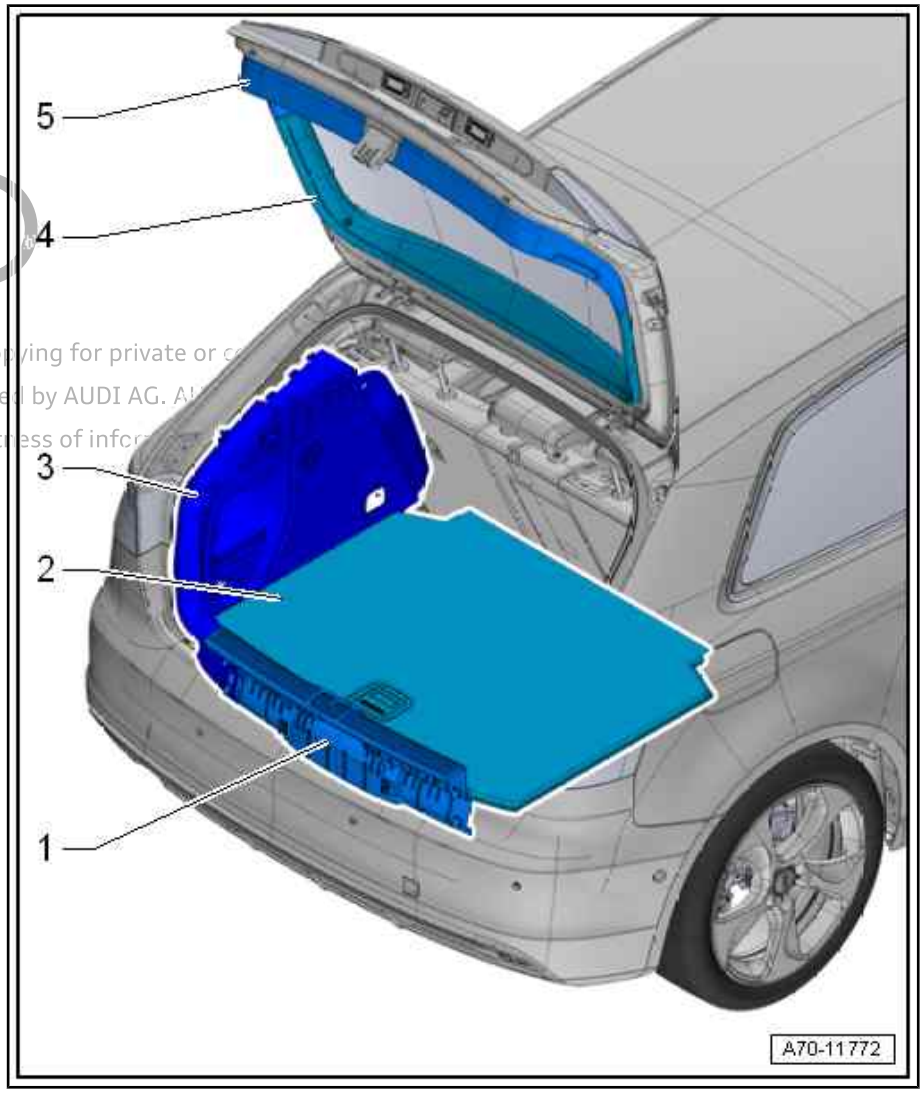
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 324

4 - Rear lid trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 319

5 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 320



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c
commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. A
AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of infor

6.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, Saloon

1 - Lock carrier trim

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 323

2 - Luggage compartment side trim

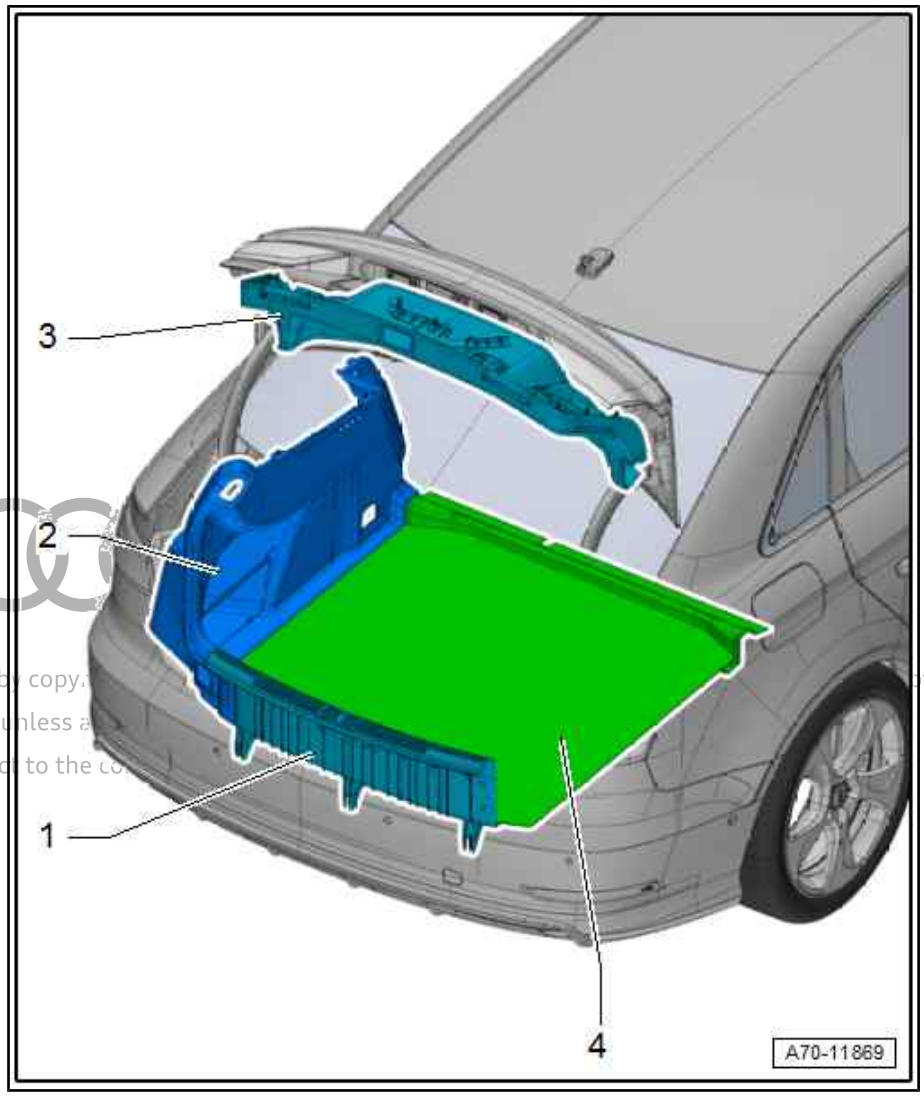
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 324

3 - Rear lid trim

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 320

4 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 327



Protected by copy
permitted unless a
with respect to the co

6.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim (top)

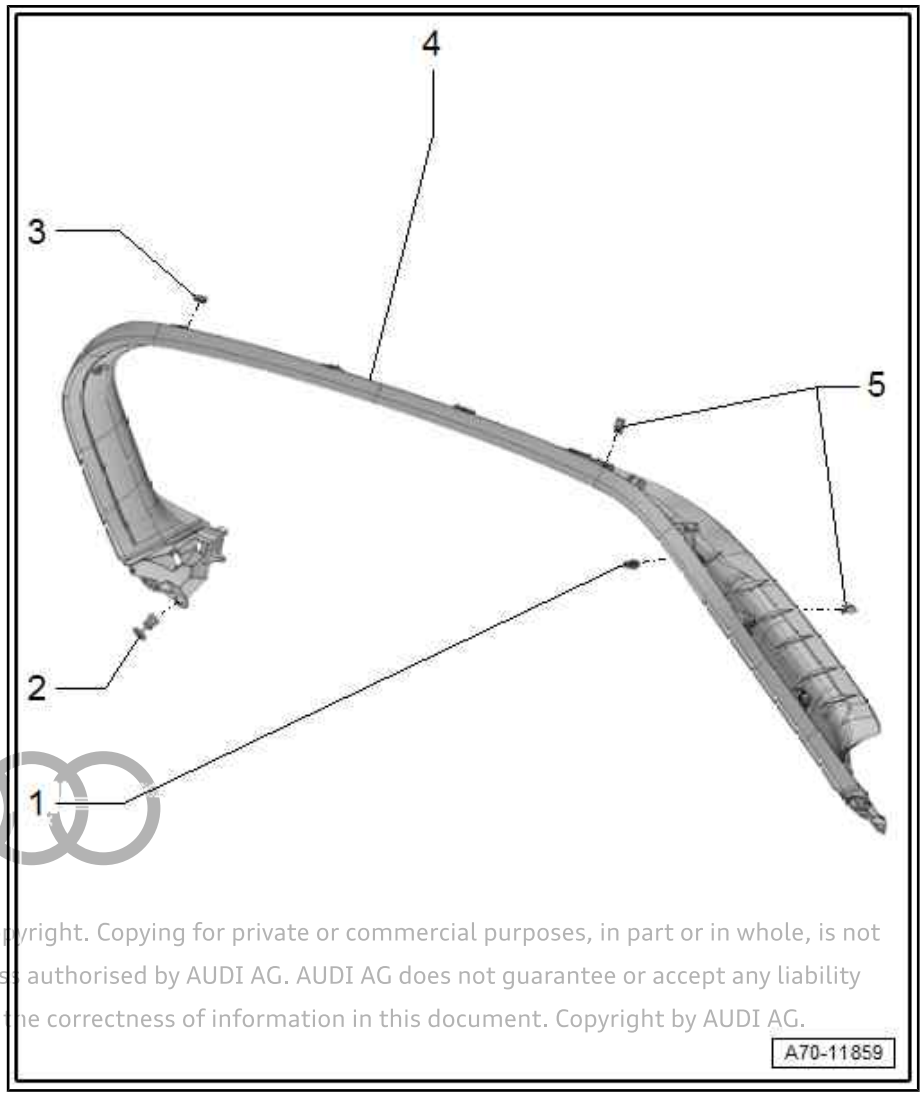
1 - Pin
- ❑ For retaining strap for rear shelf
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim

2 - Fastener
- ❑ 2x

3 - Rubber buffer
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Insert in trim

4 - Rear lid trim (top)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Clip
- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



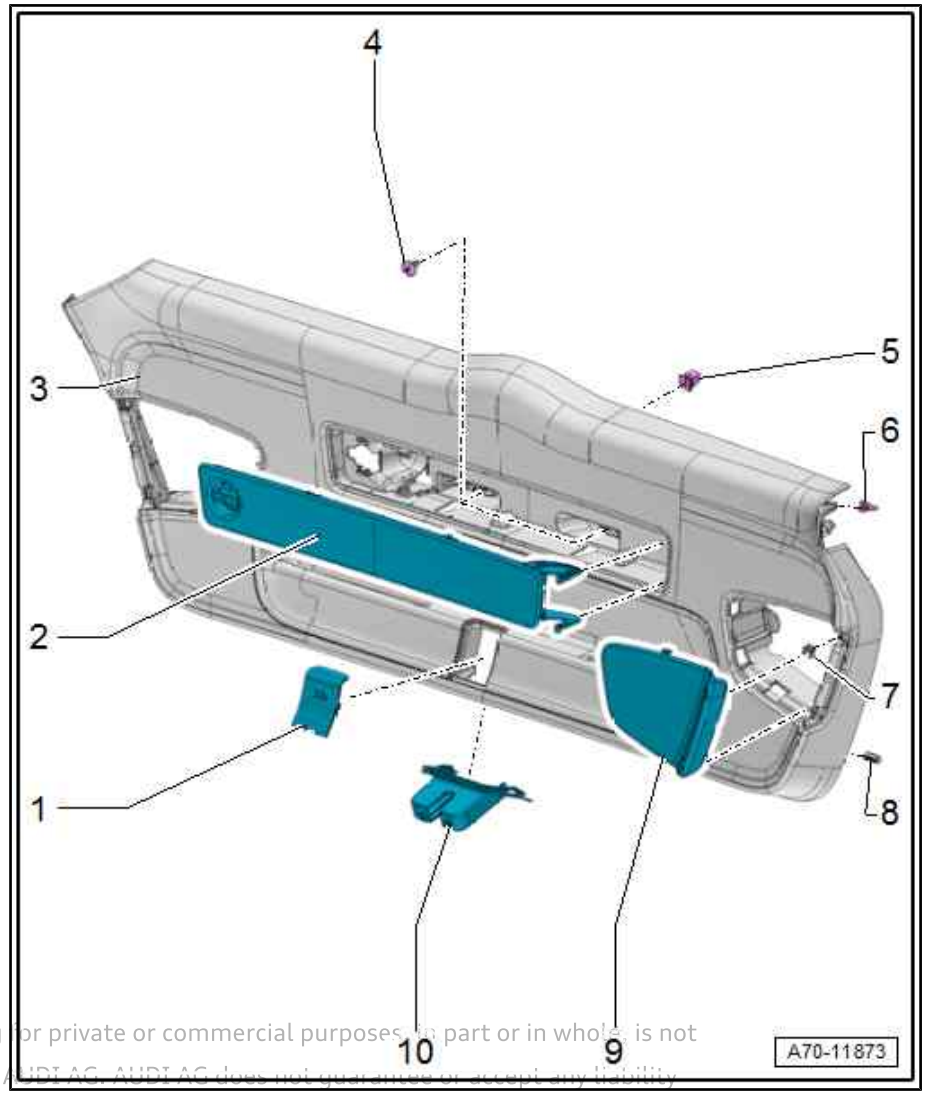
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.3 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)

⇒ “6.3.1 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom), A3/A3 Sportback”, page 320

⇒ “6.3.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Saloon”, page 321

6.3.1 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom), A3/A3 Sportback



1 - Cover

- ❑ For manual release mechanism
- ❑ Use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim

2 - Cover

- ❑ For warning triangle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.8.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A3/A3 Sportback”, page 329
- ❑ Engage in rear lid trim

3 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 329
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Expanding nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Clip into rear lid

6 - Clip

- ❑ 10x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

7 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

8 - Rubber buffer

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Insert in trim

9 - Cover

- ❑ For tail light
- ❑ 2x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

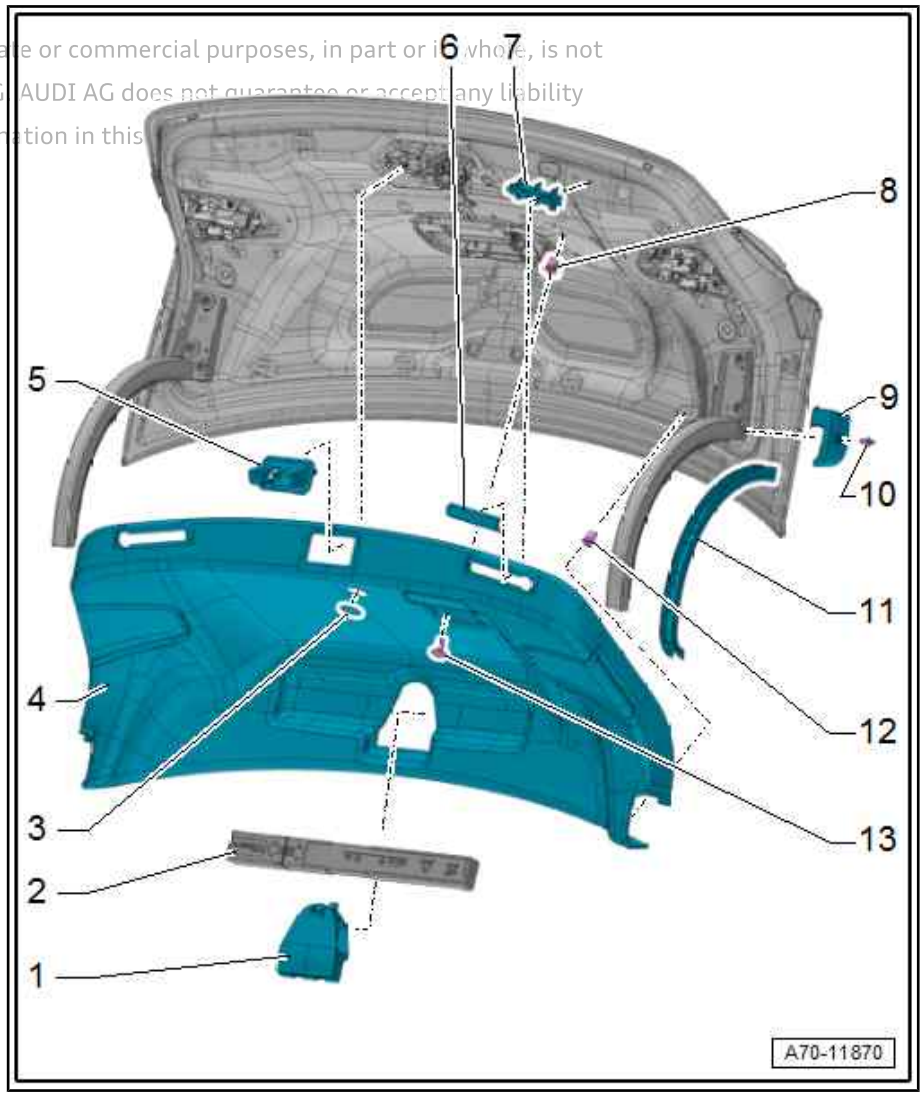
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 329
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim

10 - Trim for rear lid lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.8.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A3/A3 Sportback”, page 329
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6.3.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Saloon

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this



1 - Bracket

- ❑ For warning triangle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.8.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim - Saloon”, page 331
- ❑ Engage in rear lid and press on until it engages audibly

2 - Warning triangle

3 - Cover

- ❑ For manual release mechanism
- ❑ Country-specific version: manual release mechanism ⇒ page 322
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim

4 - Rear lid trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 331
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Trim for rear lid lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.8.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim - Saloon”, page 331
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - Stop strip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.8.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim - Saloon”, page 331
- ❑ Clip into bracket

7 - Bracket

- ❑ For stop strip
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Clip into rear lid

8 - Expanding nut

- ❑ Clip into rear lid

9 - Trim cover

- ❑ 2x

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.8.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim - Saloon”, page 331

10 - Fastener

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert fastener and press in locking pin until it is flush

11 - Cover

- ❑ For cable guide
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Clip into rear lid hinge

12 - Clip

- ❑ 10x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 - Bolt

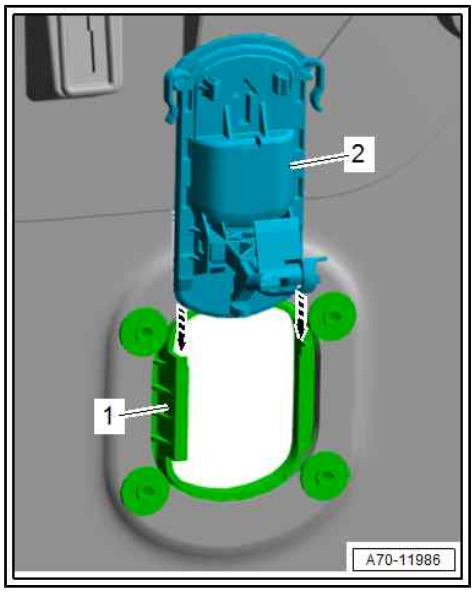
- ❑ 2 Nm

Manual release mechanism - country-specific version

♦ Fitting location: in rear lid trim

1 - Mounting for manual release mechanism

2 - Manual release actuator



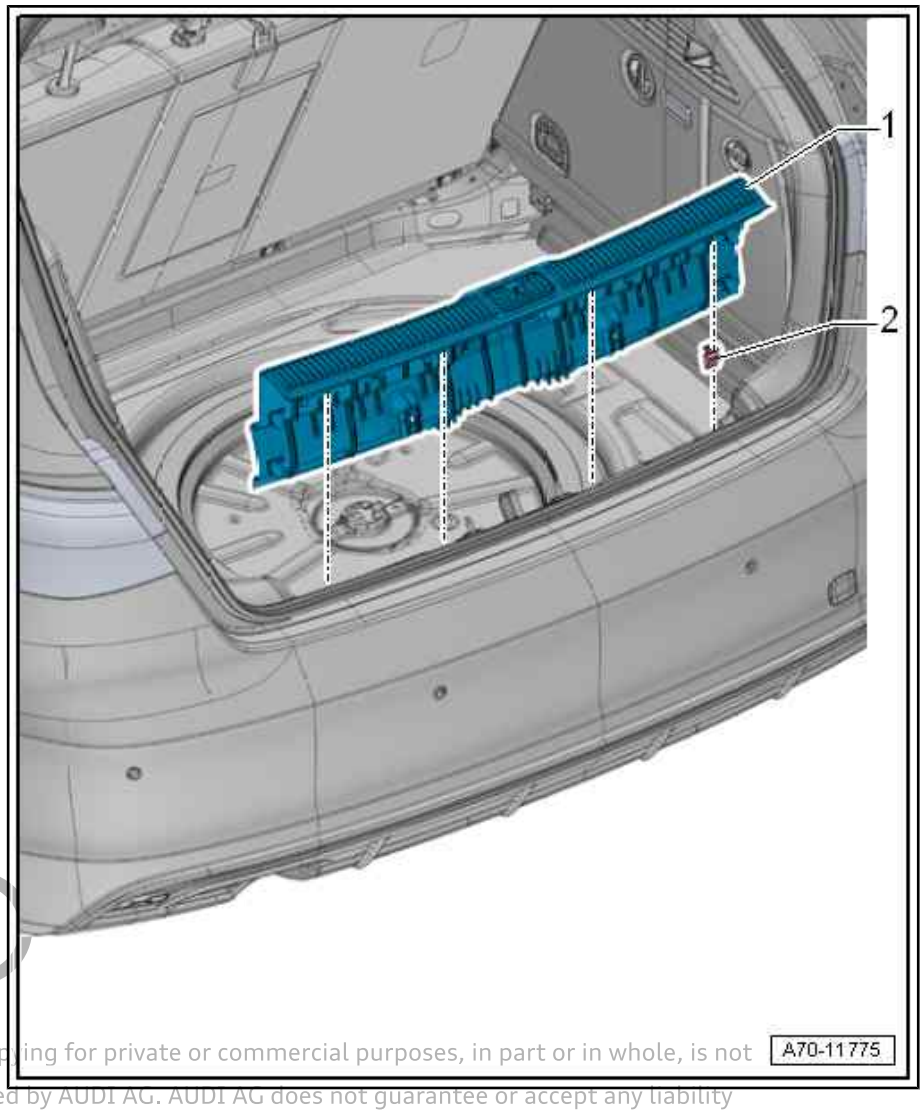
6.4 Exploded view - lock carrier trim

1 - Lock carrier trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 334
- ❑ Must engage in pins and luggage compartment side trim
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

2 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using -T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



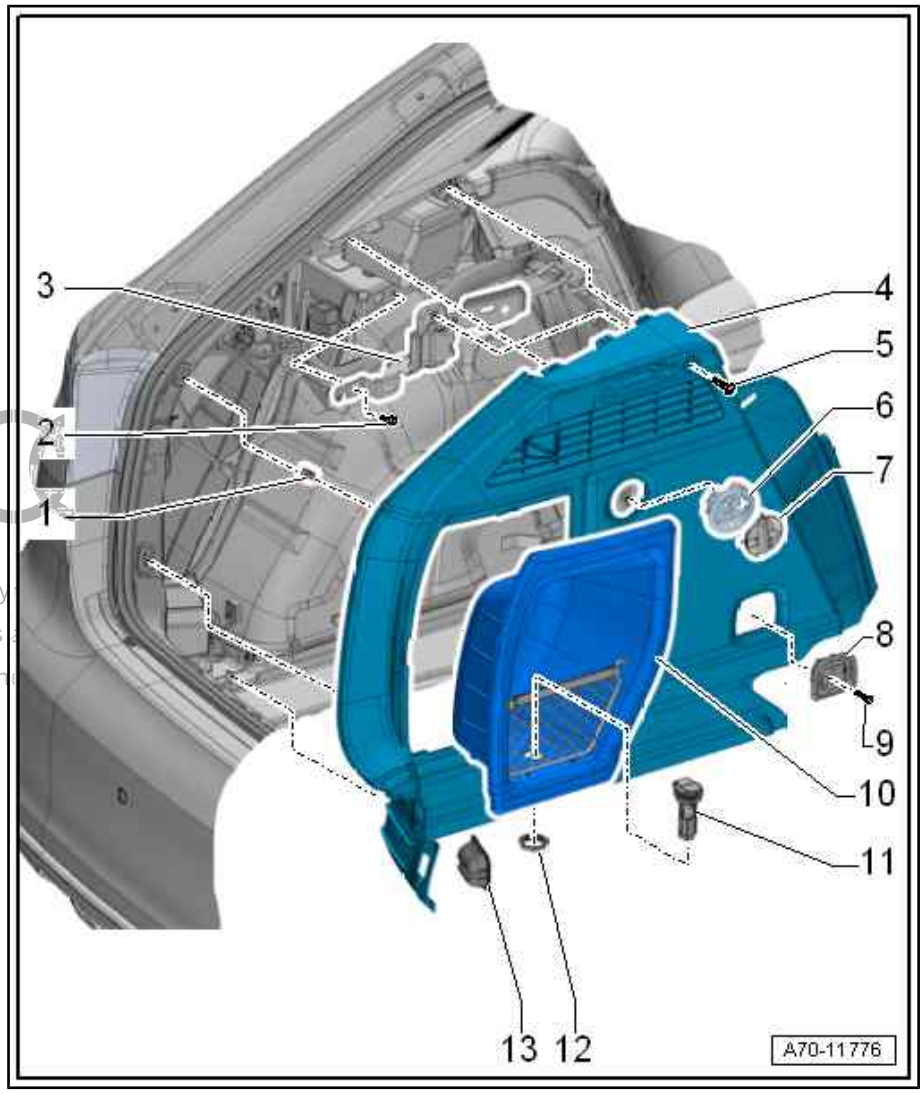
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.5 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim

⇒ "6.5.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, A3/A3 Sportback", page 324

⇒ "6.5.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Saloon", page 326

6.5.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, A3/A3 Sportback



1 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque and tightening sequence ⇒ page 325

3 - Bracket

- ❑ For luggage compartment side trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 338

4 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 336
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Mounting

- ❑ For bag hook
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 335
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

7 - Bag hook

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 335
- ❑ Insert in mounting and turn clockwise as far as stop

8 - Fastening ring

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 336

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

10 - Cover

- ❑ For luggage compartment side trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 - 12 V socket - U5-

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Cigarette lighter, socket; Exploded view - cigarette lighter, 12 V socket

12 - Nut

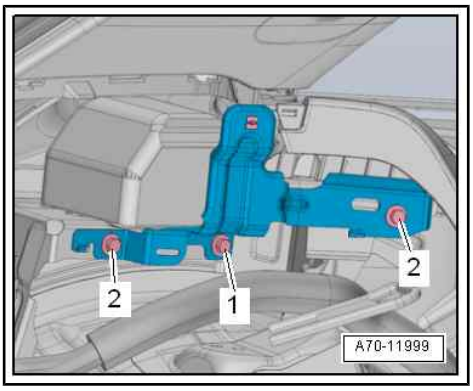
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Cigarette lighter, socket; Exploded view - cigarette lighter, 12 V socket

13 - Cover

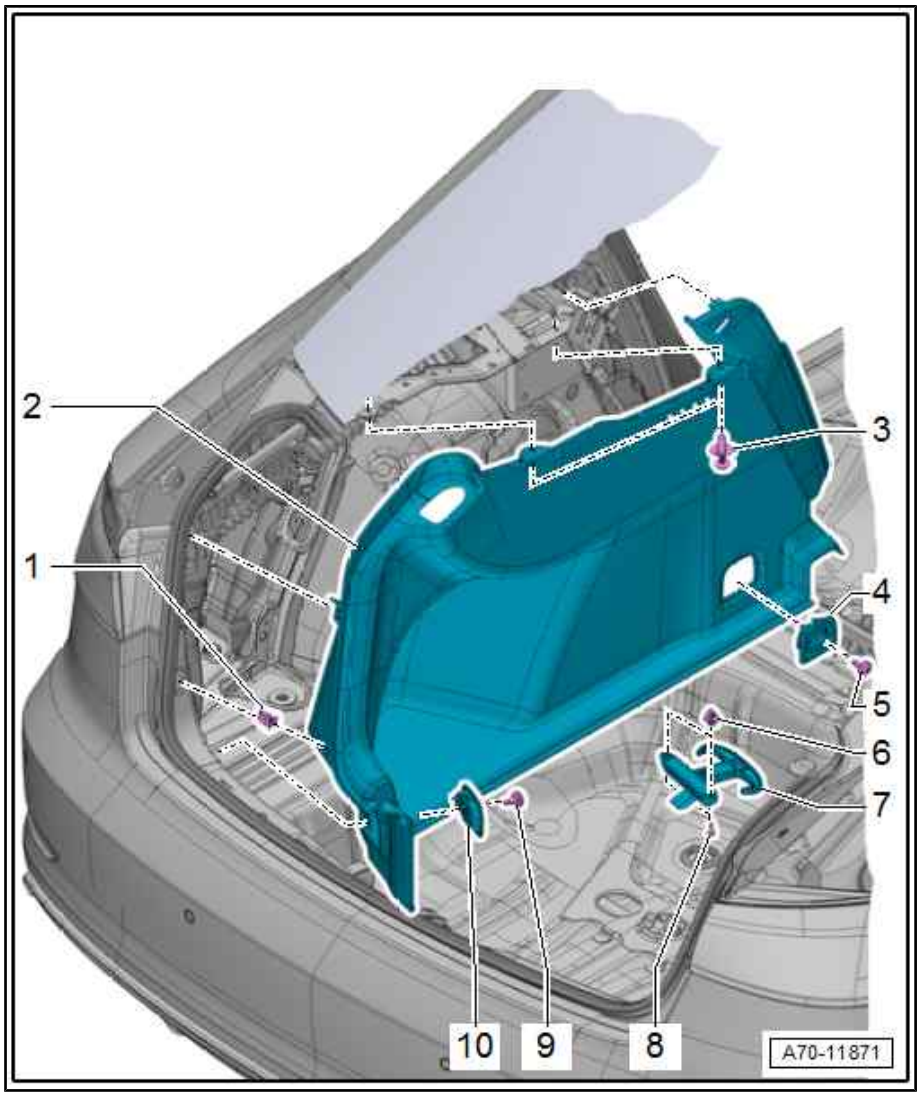
- ❑ For eyelet
- ❑ Use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

Bracket - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts to 10 Nm in sequence -1, 2-.



6.5.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Saloon



1 - Clip
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Luggage compartment side trim
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 338
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

3 - Fastener
- ❑ 2x

4 - Fastening ring
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 336

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Metal clip
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Clip into body

7 - Bag hook
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 335

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

10 - Fastening ring
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 336

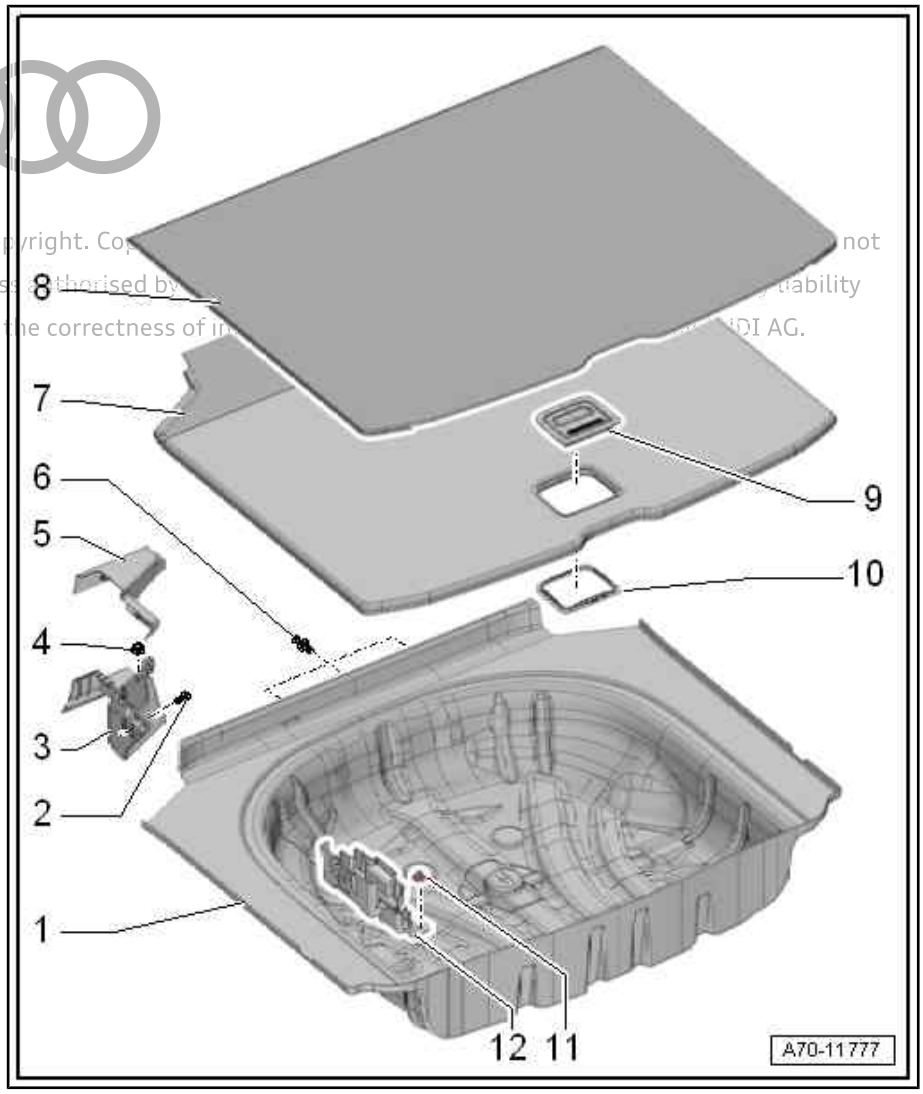
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.6 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor

⇒ "6.6.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, A3/A3 Sportback", page 327

⇒ "6.6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Saloon", page 328

6.6.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, A3/A3 Sportback



1 - Lining
- ❑ For spare wheel well
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4 Nm

3 - Support (bottom)
- ❑ For luggage compartment floor
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

4 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4 Nm

5 - Support (top)
- ❑ For luggage compartment floor
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

6 - Spreader rivet
- ❑ 3x

7 - Luggage compartment floor
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

8 - Luggage compartment floor covering
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

9 - Grip
- ❑ For luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340

10 - Retaining frame
- ❑ For grip for luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Can only be pressed onto grip for luggage compartment floor in one position
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

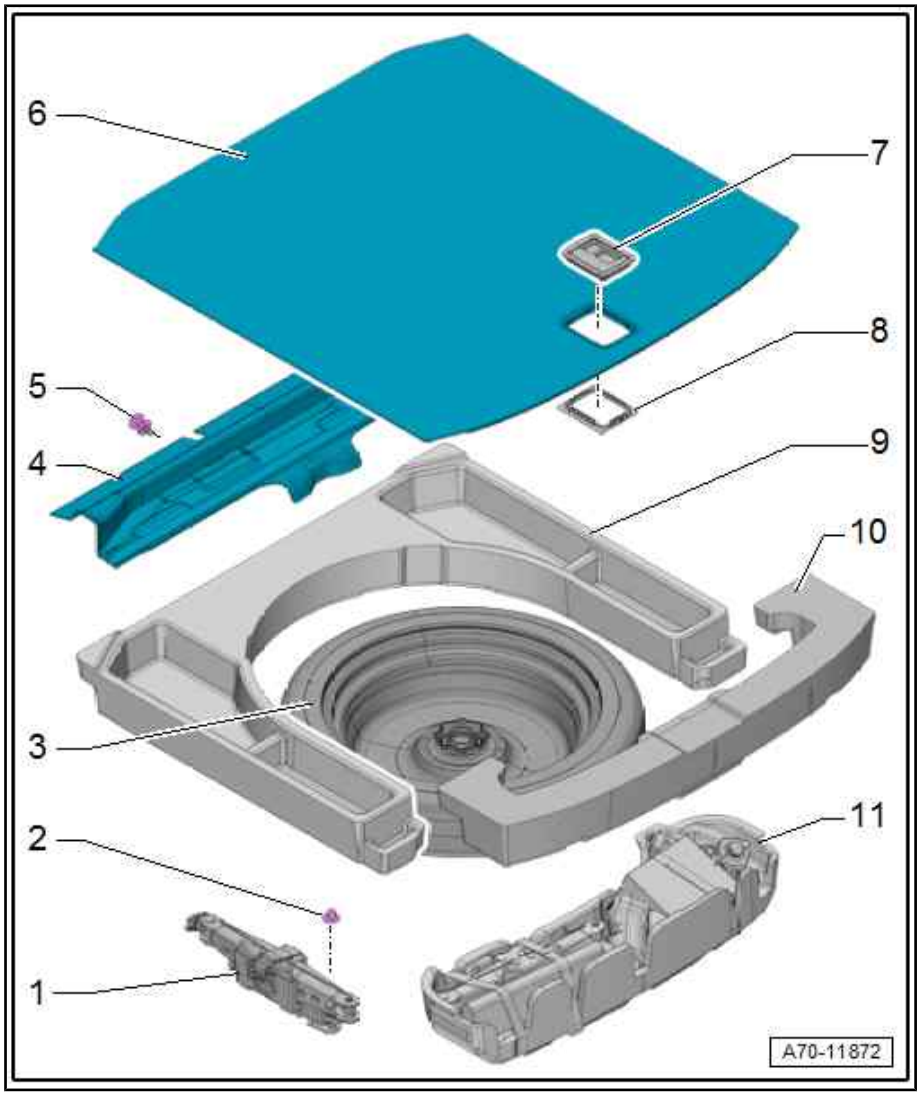
11 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

12 - Vehicle jack

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

6.6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Saloon



1 - Vehicle jack

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

2 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

3 - Spare wheel

4 - Lining

5 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ 4x

6 - Luggage compartment floor

7 - Grip

- ❑ For luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340

8 - Retaining frame

- ❑ For grip for luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Can only be pressed onto grip for luggage compartment floor in one position
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

9 - Support (front)

- ❑ For luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

10 - Support (rear)

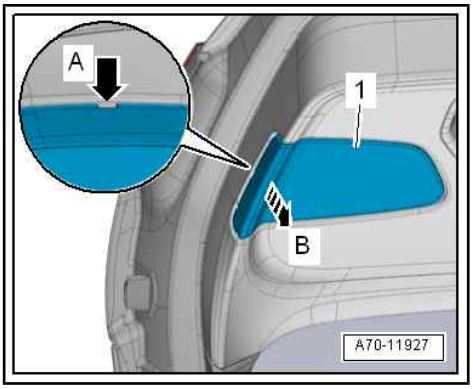
- ❑ For luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

11 - Tool box

- ❑ Depending on version

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.7 Removing and installing tail light cover



Removing

– Apply narrow screwdriver to opening -arrow A- and press off cover -1- in direction of -arrow B-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “6.3.1 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom), A3/A3 Sportback”, page 320

6.8 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)

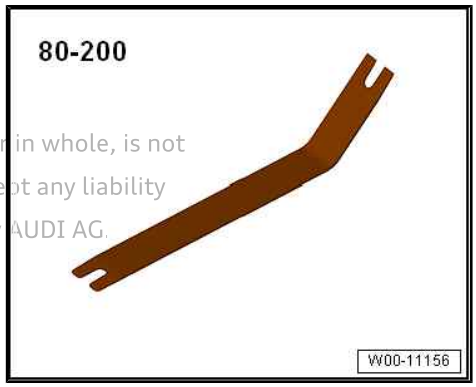
⇒ “6.8.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A3/A3 Sportback”, page 329

⇒ “6.8.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim - Saloon”, page 331

6.8.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A3/A3 Sportback

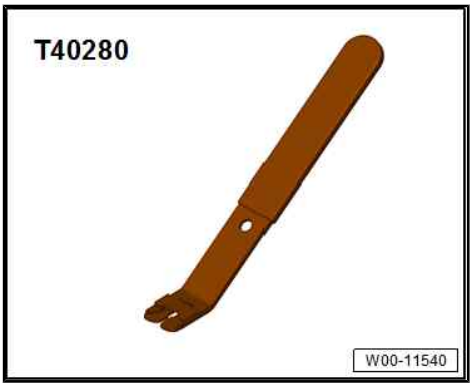
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



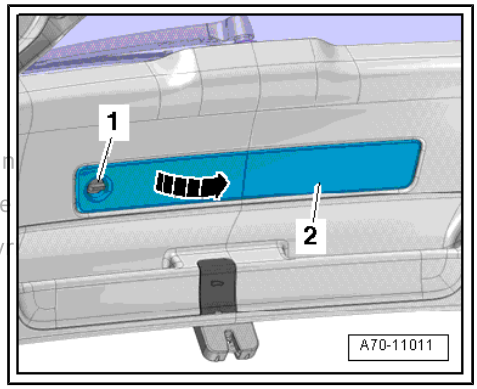
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

Removing

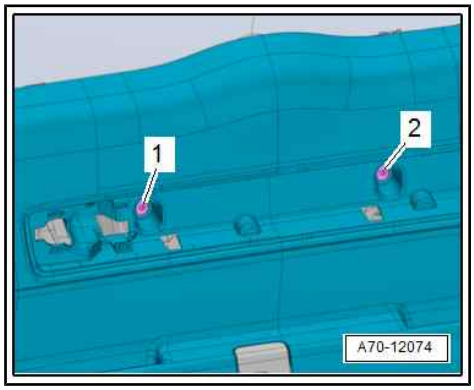
– Turn quick-release fastener -1- 90° anti-clockwise and swivel cover -2- for warning triangle to side in direction of -arrow-.

– Take out warning triangle.

– Disengage cover at trim (bottom) and detach.



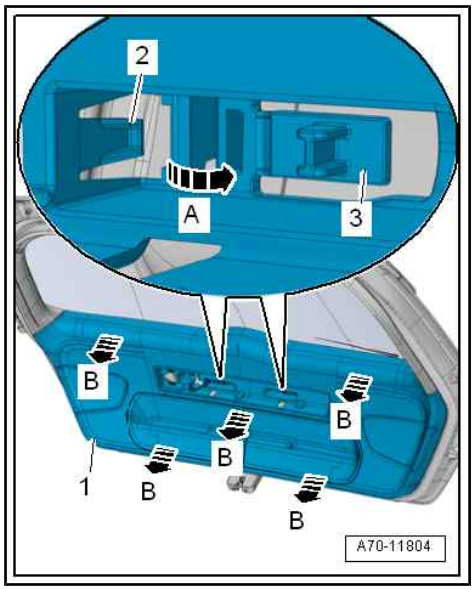
– Remove bolts -1, 2-.



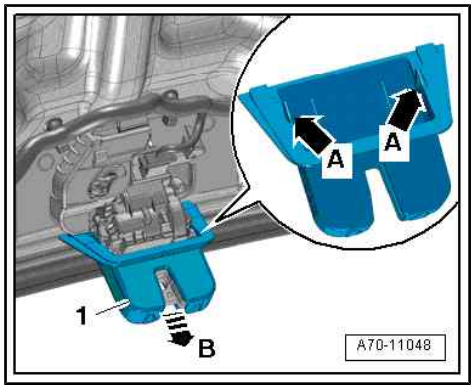
– For trim without bolts, release retaining hook -2- with a screwdriver and open tab -3- in direction of -arrow A-.

– Reach into trim -1- with your hand and pull it firmly and abruptly off rear lid -arrows B-.

– Release remaining clips of trim using removal lever - 80-200- and detach trim.



– If necessary, use a screwdriver to release retaining tabs -arrows A- and detach trim for rear lid lock -1- -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

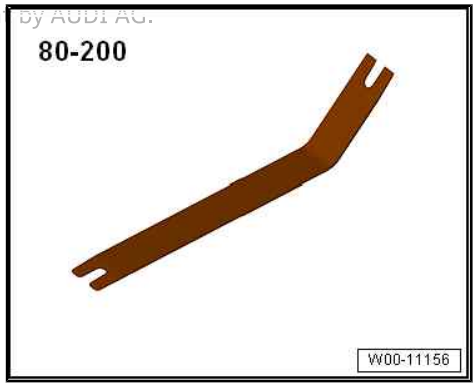
⇒ "6.3.1 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom), A3/A3 Sportback", page 320

6.8.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim - Saloon

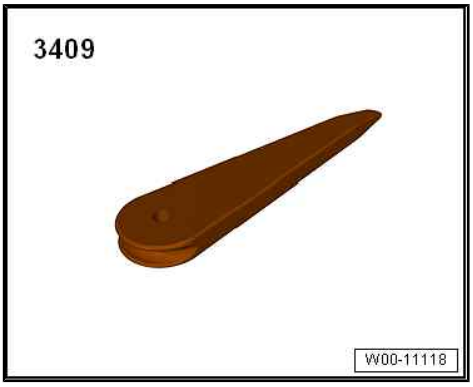
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

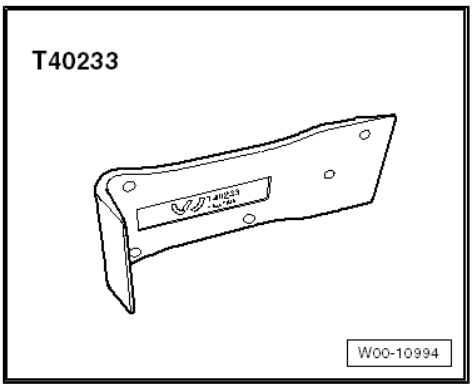
- Removal lever - 80-200-



- Removal wedge - 3409-

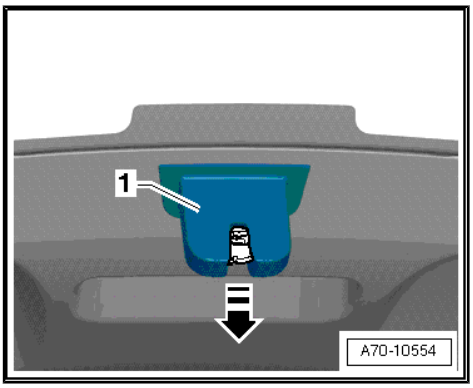


- Removal wedge - T40233-

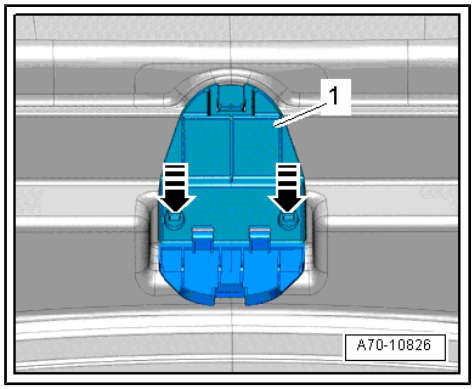


Removing

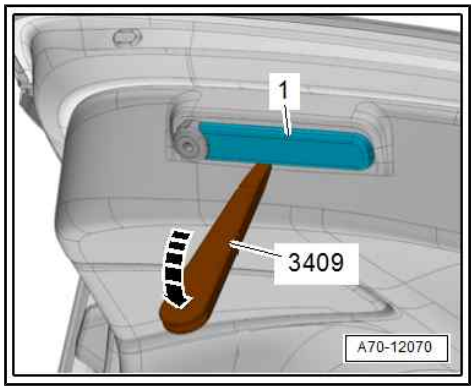
– Unclip trim for rear lid lock -1- in direction of -arrow- using removal wedge - T40233- .



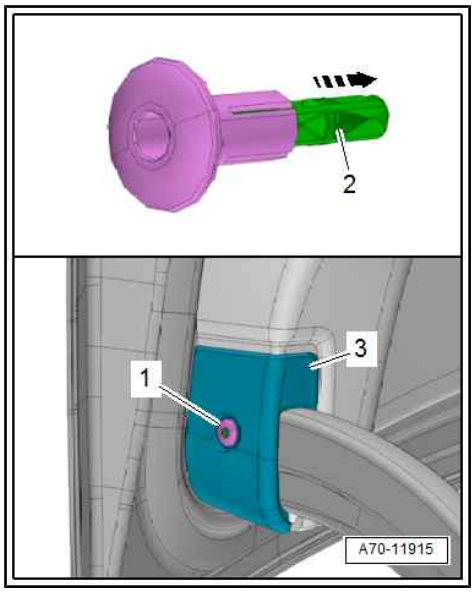
– Press release mechanism and remove warning triangle from bracket.
– Release retaining tabs -arrows- with a screwdriver and detach bracket for warning triangle -1-.



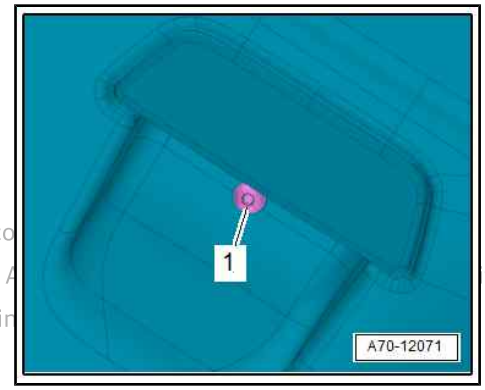
– Unclip stop strip -1- -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Repeat procedure on opposite side.



– To remove fastener -1-, carefully press locking pin -2- into fastener -arrow- until it disengages audibly (do not press through completely, otherwise locking pin will fall into cavity behind trim).
– Remove released fastener together with locking pin.
– Pull trim cover -3- downwards out of rear lid trim and detach.
– Repeat procedure on opposite side.

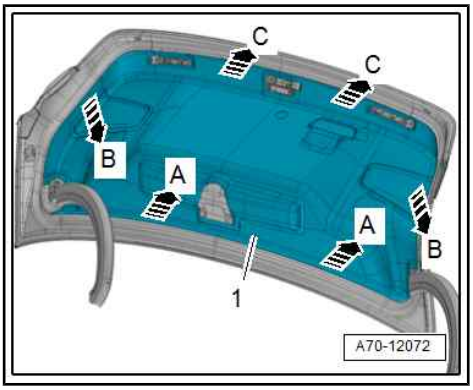


– Remove bolt -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A ty
with respect to the correctness of information in

– Starting at top, unclip rear lid trim -1- from rear lid using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows A-.
– Unclip rear lid trim from rear lid at sides -arrows B-.
– Unclip rear lid trim from rear lid at bottom -arrows C- and remove.

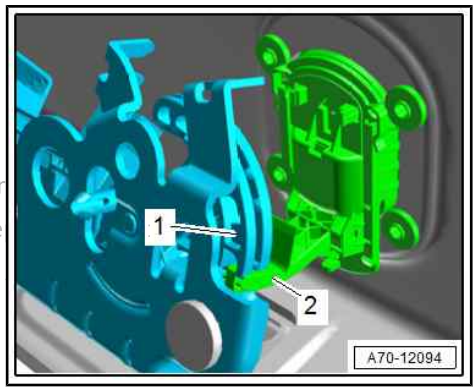


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Country-specific version: When positioning trim, slide manual release lever -2- underneath actuator -1- for rear lid lock.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “6.3.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Saloon”, page 321

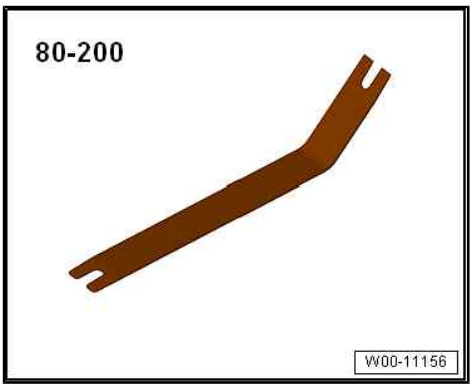


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acce
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

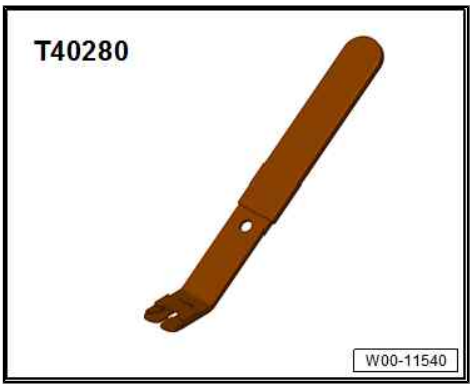
6.9 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



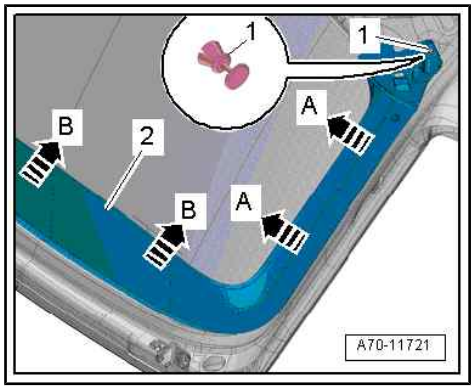
Removing

– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ page 329 .

– Remove fastener -1-.

– First unclip trim -2- from rear lid from the side using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows A-.

– Then unclip trim (top) from rear lid using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows B- and detach.



Installing

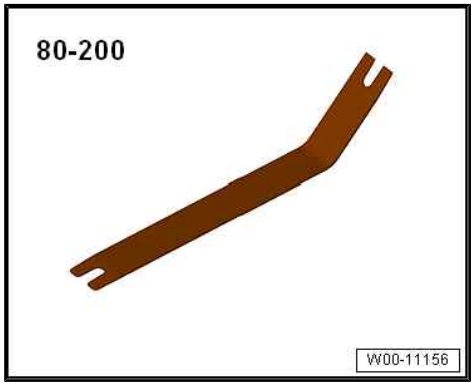
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "6.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim (top)", page 319

6.10 Removing and installing lock carrier trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



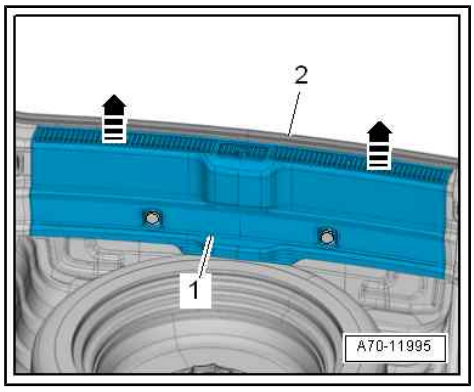
Removing

– Remove luggage compartment floor covering.

– If fitted, take out support for luggage compartment floor.

– Pull off rear lid seal -2- in area of rear cross panel trim.

– Working vertically upwards, unclip lock carrier trim -1- in direction of -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "6.4 Exploded view - lock carrier trim", page 323

6.11 Removing and installing bag hook

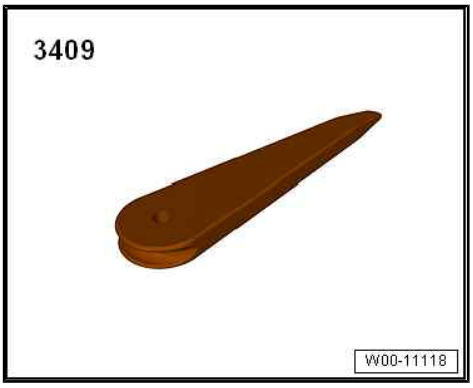
⇒ “6.11.1 Removing and installing bag hook (side)”, page 335

⇒ “6.11.2 Removing and installing bag hook (top)”, page 335

6.11.1 Removing and installing bag hook (side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-

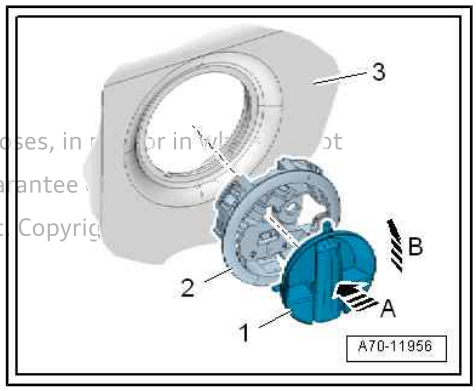


Removing

– Press bag hook -1- into mounting for bag hook -arrow A-.

– Turn bag hook anti-clockwise as far as it will go -arrow B- and detach.

– Prise mounting -2- for bag hook off luggage compartment side trim -3- using removal wedge - 3409- or screwdriver.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

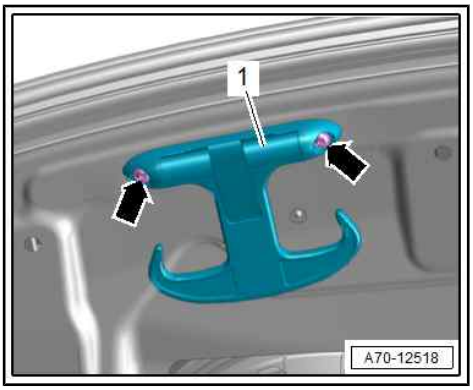
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “6.5.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, A3/ A3 Sportback”, page 324

6.11.2 Removing and installing bag hook (top)

Removing

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach bag hook -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

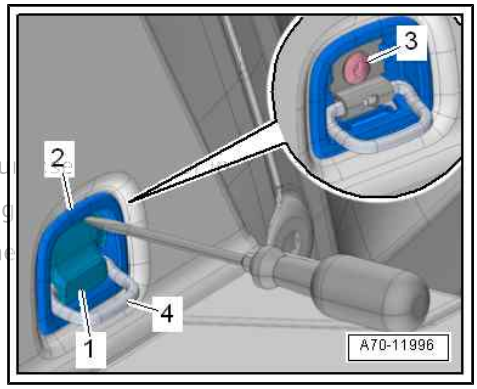
⇒ “6.5.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Saloon”, page 326

6.12 Removing and installing fastening ring

Removing

– Fold down clip -4- and unclip cover -1- with a screwdriver.

– Unscrew bolt -3- and detach complete fastening ring -2-.



Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “6.5 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim”, page 324

6.13 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

⇒ “6.13.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - A3/A3 Sportback”, page 336

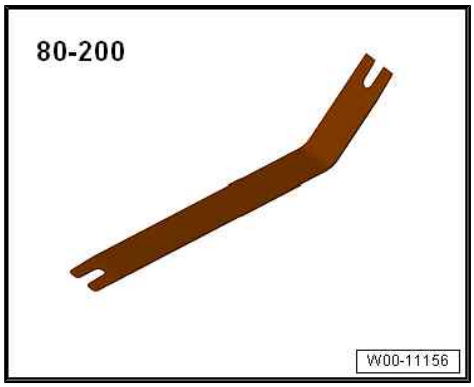
⇒ “6.13.2 Removing and installing bracket for luggage compartment side trim - A3/A3 Sportback”, page 338

⇒ “6.13.3 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - Saloon”, page 338

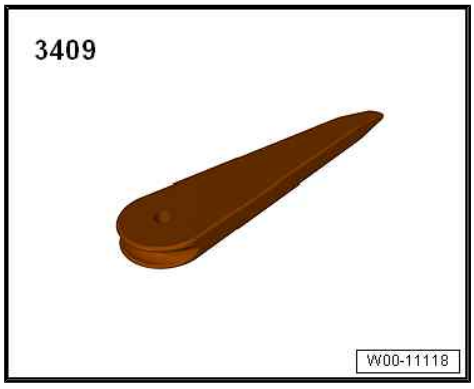
6.13.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - A3/A3 Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

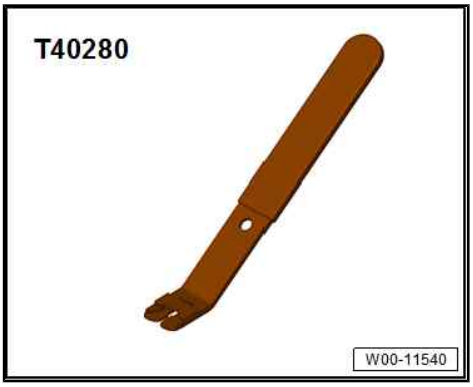
♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Remove rear shelf.

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Remove luggage compartment floor.

– Equipment version with subwoofer, A3 e-tron/A3 g-tron: Remove subwoofer ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

– Remove tool box with tools.

– Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ page 334 .

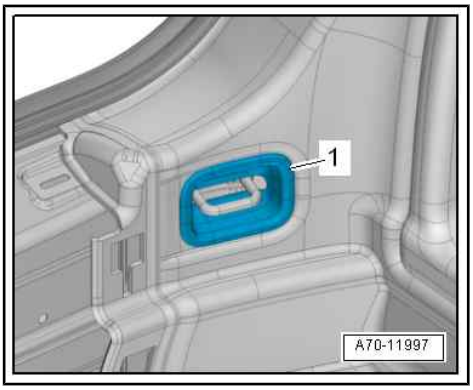
– Remove support for luggage compartment floor ⇒ page 342 .

– Remove fastening ring ⇒ page 336 .

– Equipment version with side padding, A3 Sportback: Remove side padding ⇒ page 468 .

– Remove cover for luggage compartment side trim.

– Unclip cover -1- for eyelet using removal wedge - 3409- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

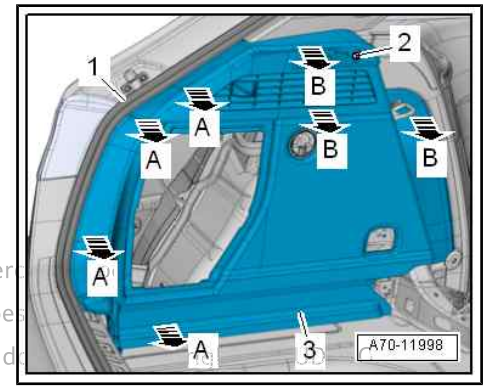
– Remove bolt -2-.

– Pull off rear lid seal -1- in area of luggage compartment side trim.

– Lever luggage compartment side trim -3- off body at rear -arrows A- using removal lever - 80-200- .

– Vehicles from model year 2017 onwards: Unplug electrical connector for electric hinged tow coupling attachment button.

– If fitted, unplug electrical connector for 12 V socket.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this d

A3:

– Right side: Remove luggage compartment light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in luggage compartment .

– Carefully pull luggage compartment side trim off C-pillar trim at top and off side trim at front -arrows B-.

– Disengage and detach luggage compartment side trim.

A3 Sportback:

– Carefully pull luggage compartment side trim off D-pillar trim at top and off sill panel trim at front -arrows B-.

– Unplug electrical connector for luggage compartment light.

– Disengage and detach luggage compartment side trim.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.5.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, A3/ A3 Sportback”, page 324

6.13.2 Removing and installing bracket for luggage compartment side trim - A3/ A3 Sportback

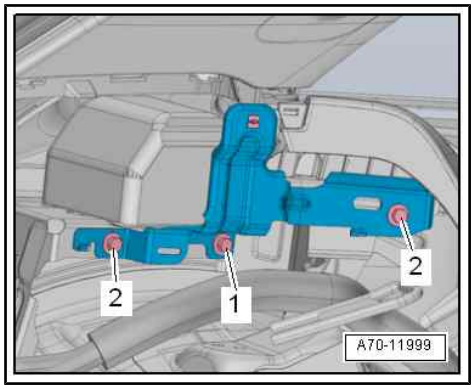
Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 336 .

– A3: Remove side trim ⇒ page 309 .

– A3 Sportback without side padding: Remove sill panel trim ⇒ page 287 .

– Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- and detach bracket.



Installing

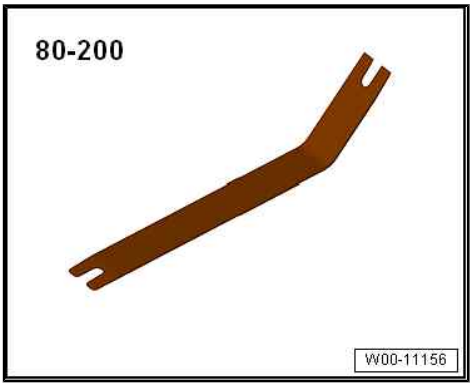
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.5.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, A3/ A3 Sportback”, page 324

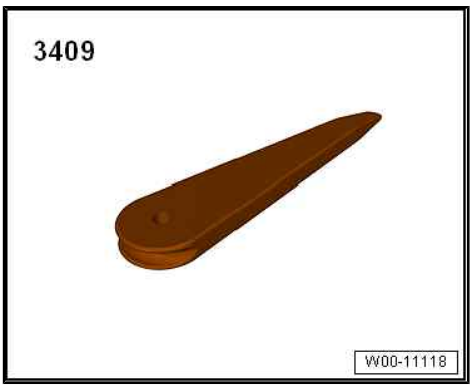
6.13.3 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

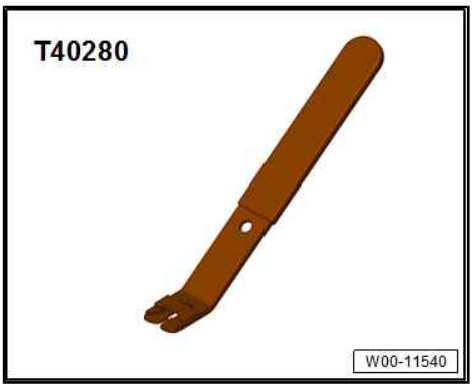
♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-

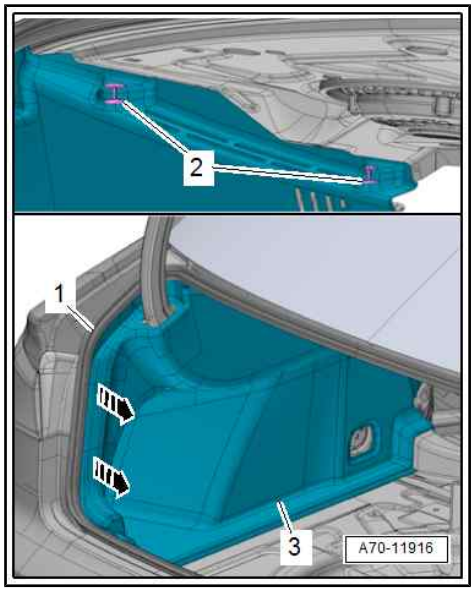


Removing

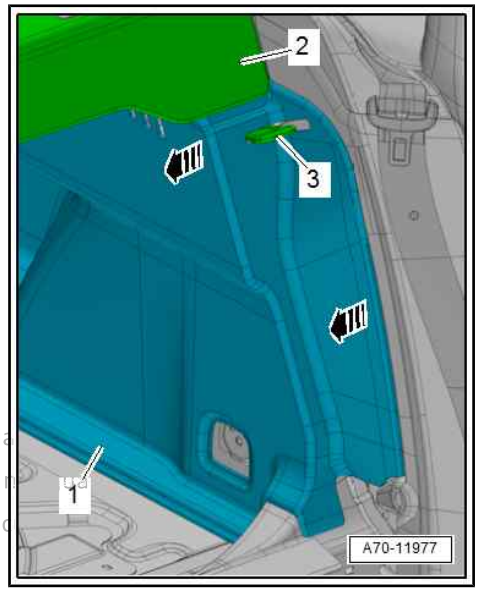
– Fold down rear seat backrest.
– Remove luggage compartment floor.
– Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ page 334 .
– Remove fastening ring ⇒ page 336 .
– Equipment version with side padding: Remove side padding ⇒ page 468 .
– Remove cover for luggage compartment side trim.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove fasteners -2-.
– Pull off rear lid seal -1- in area of luggage compartment side trim.
– Lever luggage compartment side trim -3- off body -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Disengage luggage compartment side trim at rear lid hinge.
– Pull luggage compartment side trim inwards at top.
– Vehicles from model year 2017 onwards: Unplug electrical connector for electric hinged tow coupling attachment button.



– Unclip luggage compartment side trim -1- from sill panel trim at front -arrows-.
– Pull out luggage compartment side trim under rear shelf -2-, disengage at catch -3- for rear seat backrest and detach.
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector for 12 V socket.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

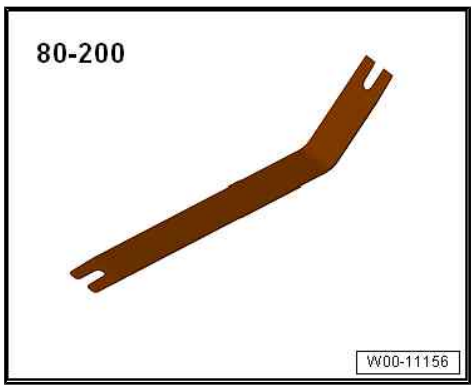
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.5.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Saloon”, page 326

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercia
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n
with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

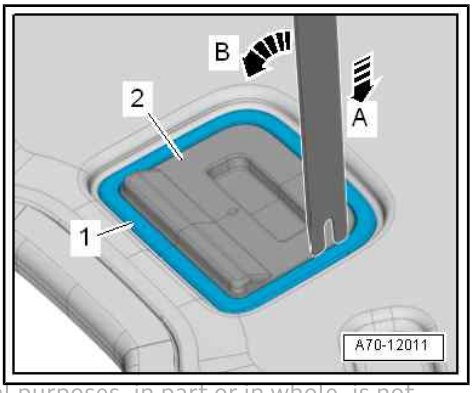
6.14 Removing and installing grip for luggage compartment floor (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

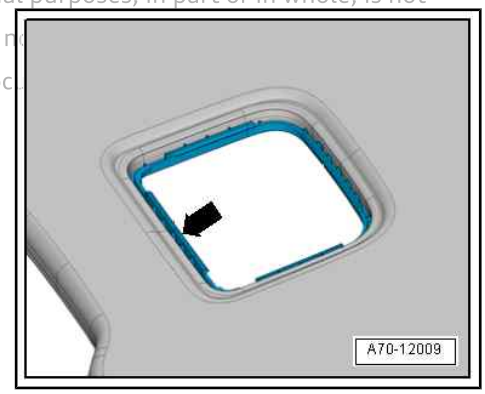


– Remove luggage compartment floor.
– Release retaining frame -1- on underside of luggage compartment floor.
– To do so, apply removal lever - 80-200- -arrow A- and release retaining frame -arrow B-.
– Disengage retaining frame and detach grip -2- for luggage compartment floor.

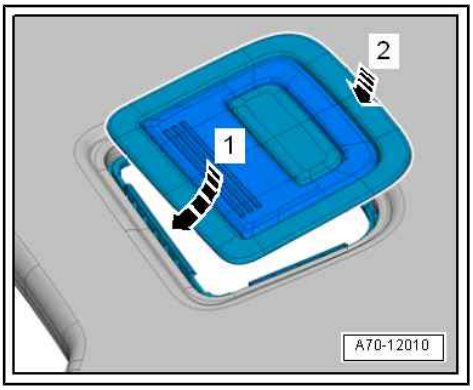
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no
with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



– Insert retaining frame -arrow- into opening in luggage compartment floor from underneath and hold it in position.



– Slide grip for luggage compartment floor into retaining frame towards rear of vehicle -arrow 1- and engage downwards -arrow 2-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “6.6 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 327

6.15 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well

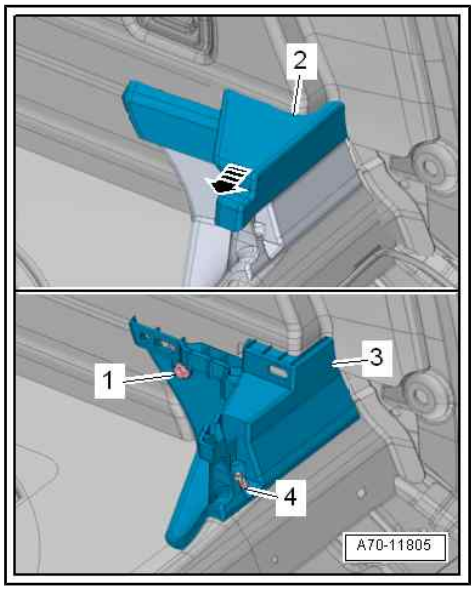
⇒ “6.15.1 Removing and installing support for luggage compartment floor”, page 342

⇒ “6.15.2 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well”, page 342

6.15.1 Removing and installing support for luggage compartment floor

Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrests.
– Remove luggage compartment floor.
– Remove tool box with tools.
– Pull support (top) -2- inwards -arrow-, and unclip and detach it.
– Remove bolt -1- and nut -4-.
– Disengage and detach support (bottom) -3-.



Installing

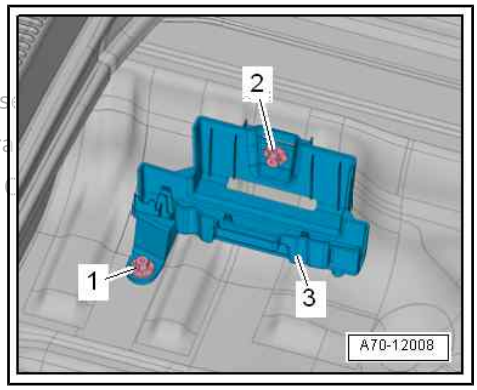
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.6.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, A3/ A3 Sportback”, page 327

6.15.2 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well

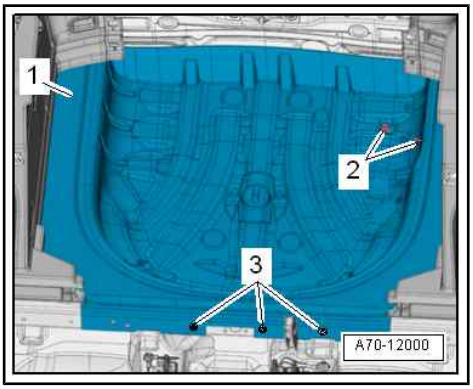
Removing

– Remove rear seat backrests ⇒ page 466 .
– Remove luggage compartment floor.
– Remove tool box with tools.
– Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ page 334 .
– Remove support for luggage compartment floor ⇒ page 342 .
– Equipment version with subwoofer: Remove subwoofer ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
– Equipment version with spare wheel: Take out spare wheel.
– Equipment version with jack: Take out jack, unscrew nuts -1 and 2- and remove mounting -3- for jack.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Remove spreader rivets -3-.
– If fitted, remove nuts -2-.
– Pull lining -1- for spare wheel well out from underneath luggage compartment side trim panels from the side and lift out.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “6.6.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, A3/ A3 Sportback”, page 327

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 Roof trim panels

⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner”, page 344

⇒ “7.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner”, page 346

⇒ “7.3 Lowering moulded headliner for removal of roof aerial”, page 356

⇒ “7.4 Attaching roof reinforcement to body”, page 358

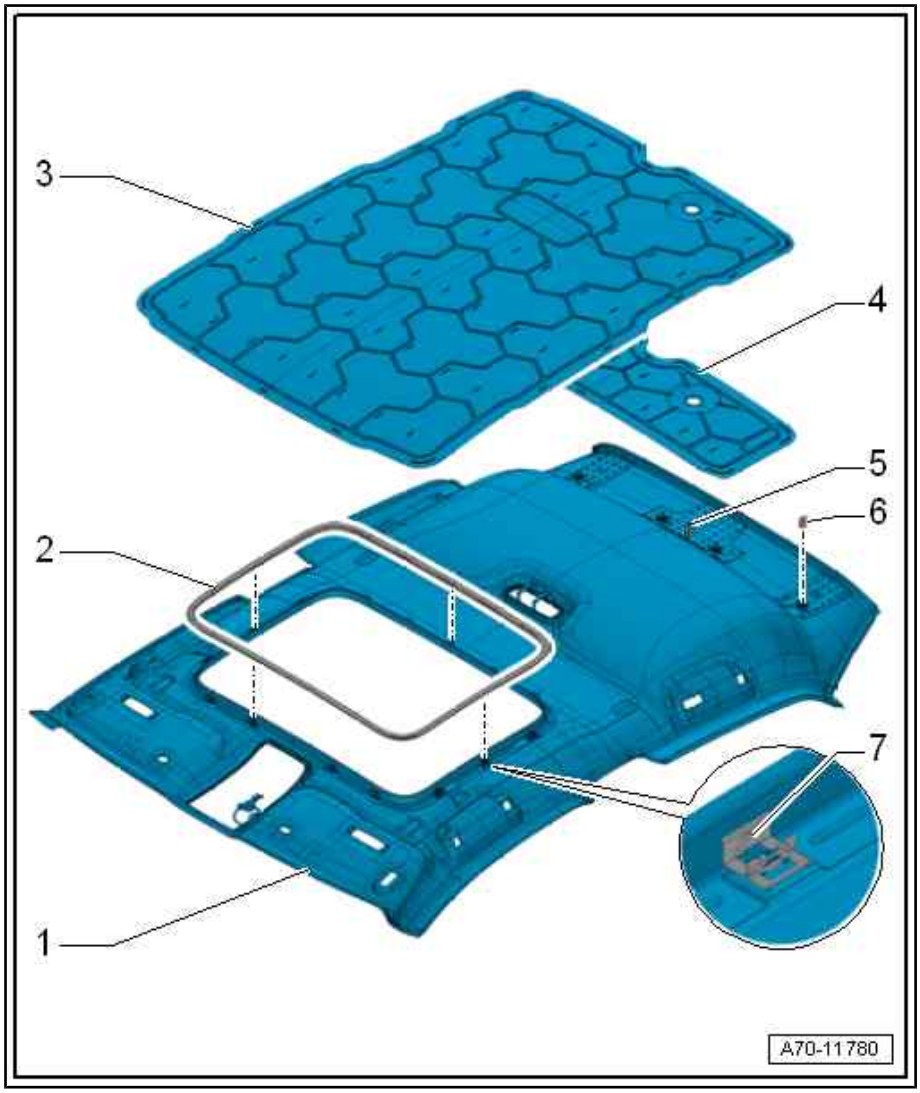
Copyright by AUDI AG. Distribution for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner

⇒ “7.1.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner, A3”, page 344

⇒ “7.1.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner, A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon”, page 345

7.1.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner, A3



1 - Moulded headliner

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

◆ Without sliding sunroof

◆ With sliding sunroof

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 346
- ❑ Lowering for removal of roof aerial ⇒ page 356

> **Caution**
>
> *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
>
> *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

2 - Trim frame

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof only

3 - Roof reinforcement

- ❑ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching to body ⇒ page 358

4 - Roof reinforcement

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching to body ⇒ page 359

5 - Centring mounting

6 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

7 - Clip

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ 15x
- ❑ Releasing ⇒ page 348
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Remove any clips left in trim frame and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

7.1.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner, A3 Sportback/A3 Saloon

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

The illustration shows the moulded headliner with deformation elements (country-specific version, Saloon) as an example.

1 - Moulded headliner

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

- ♦ Without sliding sunroof
- ♦ With sliding sunroof
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 346
  - ❑ Sportback only: Lowering moulded headliner for removal of roof aerial ⇒ page 356

Caution

The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.

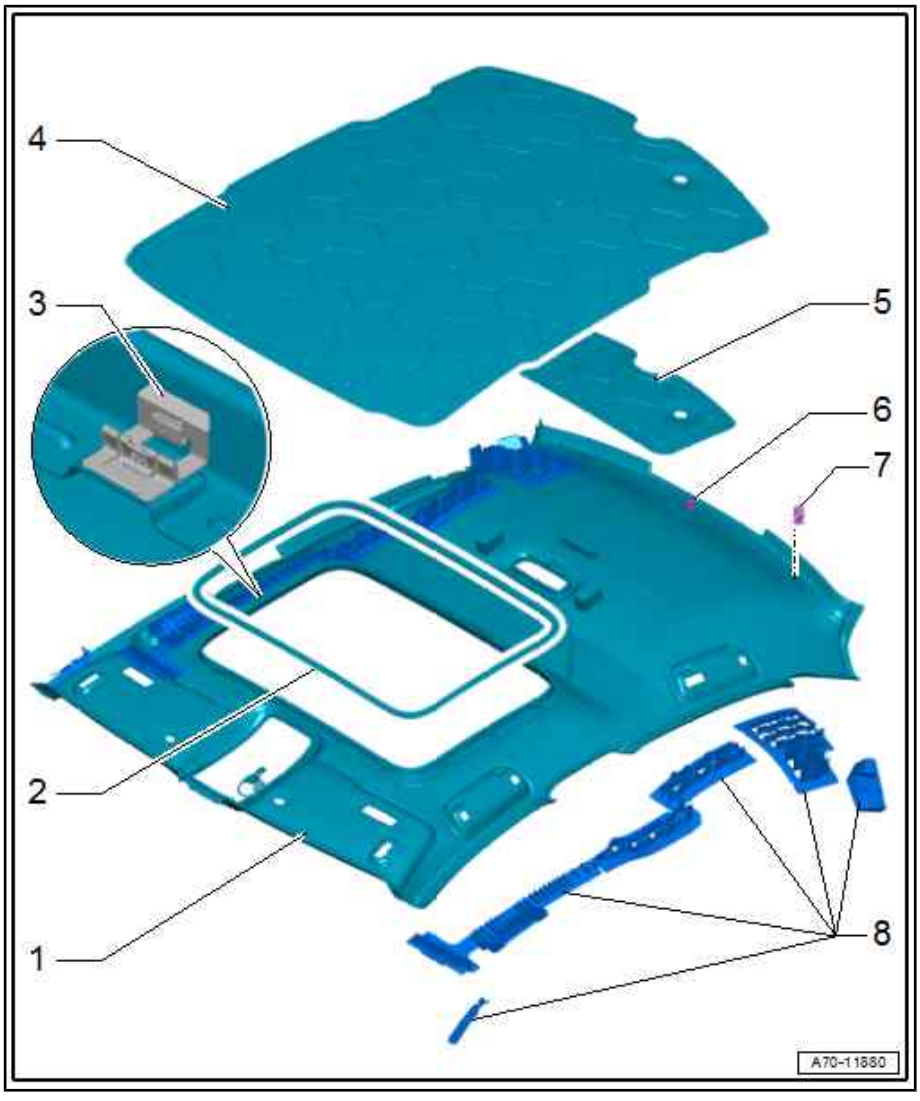
Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.

2 - Trim frame

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof only

3 - Clip

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ 15x
- ❑ Releasing ⇒ page 348
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Remove any clips left in trim frame and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



4 - Roof reinforcement

- ❑ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching to body ⇒ page 358

5 - Roof reinforcement

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching to body ⇒ page 359

6 - Centring mounting

7 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

8 - Deformation elements

- ❑ Country-specific version, not available as separate part

7.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner

⇒ "7.2.1 Removing and installing moulded headliner - A3", page 346

⇒ "7.2.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner - A3 Sportback", page 349

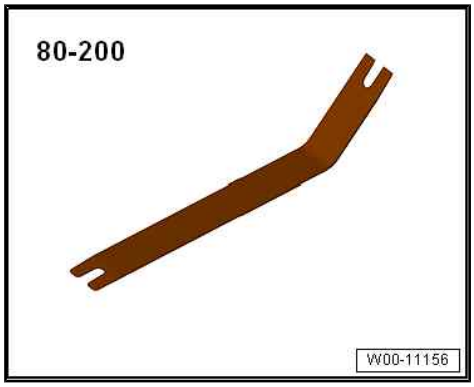
⇒ "7.2.3 Removing and installing moulded headliner - Saloon", page 353

7.2.1 Removing and installing moulded headliner - A3

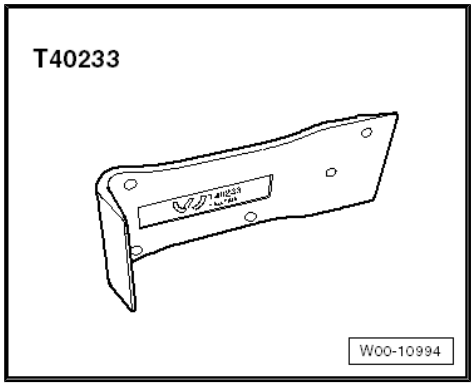
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

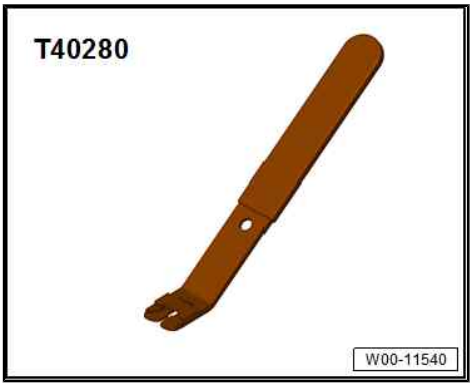
- ♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



- ♦ Removal wedge - T40233-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

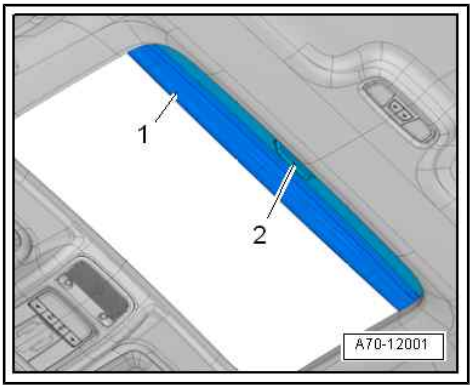
WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

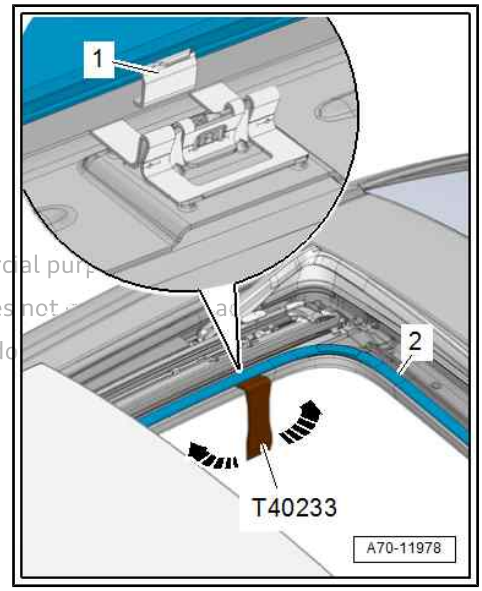
– Fully open sunroof -1-.

– Open sun blind -2- approx. $^{2}/_{3}$.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.
– Insert removal wedge - T40233- between trim frame -2- for sunroof opening and moulded headliner.
– Release trim frame from retainers -1- one after the other using removal wedge - T40233- as shown -arrows-.



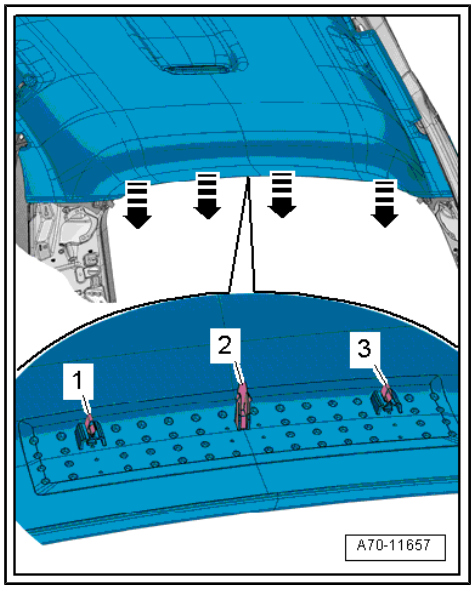
All vehicles (continued):

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Remove front passenger seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Remove centre console ⇒ page 46 .
– Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 289 .
– Remove B-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 295 .
– Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 301 .
– Remove roof module (front) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in roof trim .
– Equipment version with front camera: Remove cover for front camera ⇒ page 57 .
– Remove light for make-up mirror ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .
– Remove sun visors ⇒ page 33 .
– Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 33 .
– Remove grab handles ⇒ page 34 .
– Move steering wheel forwards and upwards as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
– Move driver seat as far forwards and down as possible and tilt backrest as far back as possible.

Caution

- *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

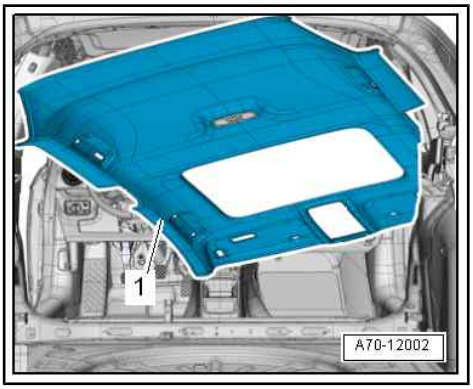


– Unclip moulded headliner (rear) from clips -1 and 3- on body -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Unclip moulded headliner from body at rear at centring pin -2-.

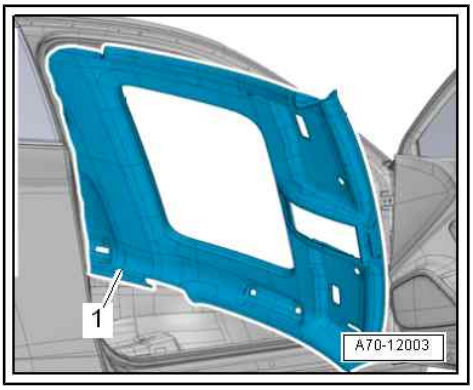
Note

Take out moulded headliner through passenger door.

– Lower moulded headliner -1- at front and turn it towards opening for passenger door (tilt left side downwards).



– Take out moulded headliner -1- through passenger door, as shown.



Installing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

– Align moulded headliner centrally and press centring pin at rear of moulded headliner into mounting point in body until it engages audibly.

– Install centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 33 .

– Press clips at rear of moulded headliner into mounting points in body until they engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

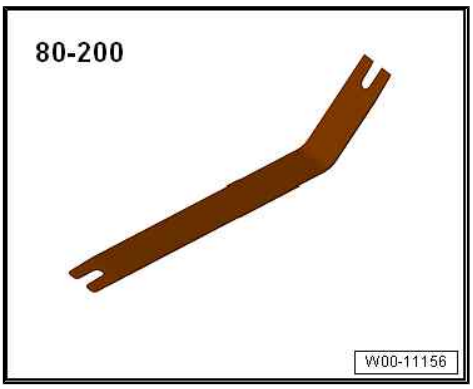
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner", page 344

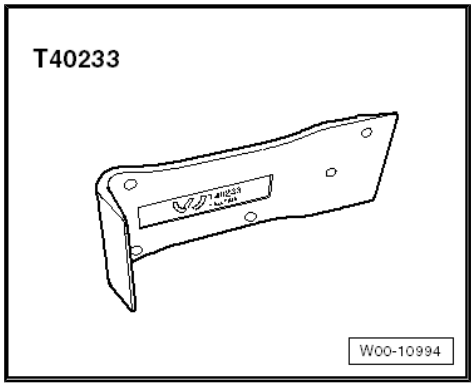
7.2.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner - A3 Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



- Removal wedge - T40233-



- Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in wh ot permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gua antee or accept a bility with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by .G.

Removing

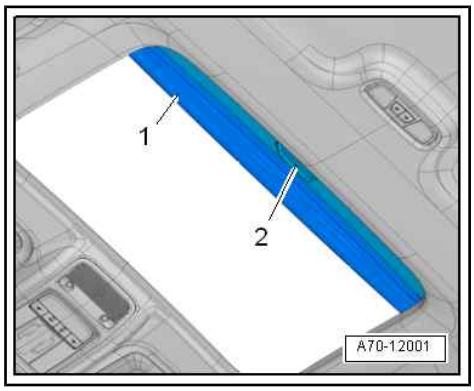
WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ***⇒ page 4*** ***.***

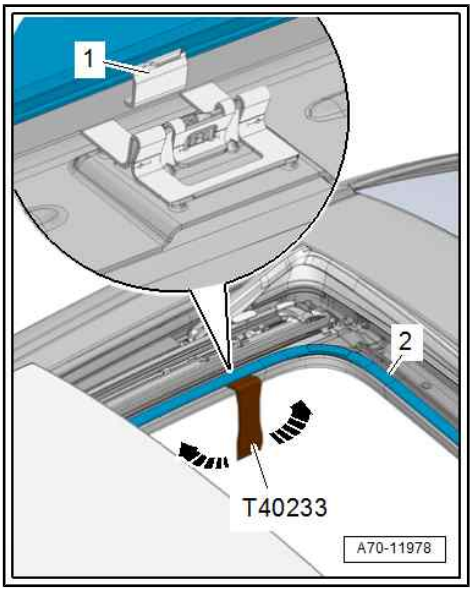
Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

– Fully open sunroof -1-.

– Open sun blind -2- approx. $^{2}/_{3}$.



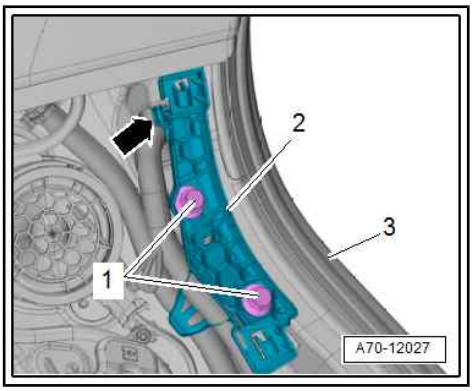
– Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.
– Insert removal wedge - T40233- between trim frame -2- for sunroof opening and moulded headliner.
– Release trim frame from retainers -1- one after the other using removal lever - 80-200- as shown -arrows-.



All vehicles (continued):

– Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 289 .
– Remove B-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 297 .
– Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 302 .
– Remove D-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 305 .
– Remove roof module (front) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in roof trim .
– Equipment version with front camera: Remove cover for front camera ⇒ page 57 .
– Remove light for make-up mirror ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .
– Remove sun visors ⇒ page 33 .
– Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 33 .
– Remove grab handles ⇒ page 34 .
– Remove head restraints ⇒ page 430 .
– Move front seats as far forwards and down as possible and tilt backrests as far forwards as possible.
– Remove 1/3 section (left-side) of rear seat backrest ⇒ page 466 .

– Using pliers - T40172 A- and -T40172/2- , remove fasteners -1- for retainer for D-pillar trim (right-side).
– Disengage retainer -2- for D-pillar trim from body -arrow- and detach.
– Remove rear lid seal -3-.



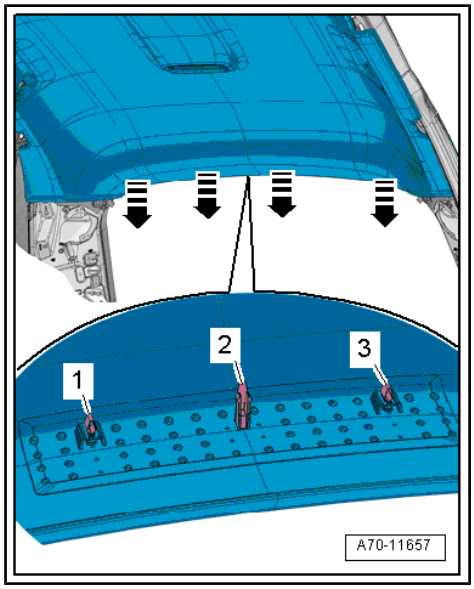
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

- *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

– Unclip moulded headliner (rear) from clips -1 and 3- on body -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .

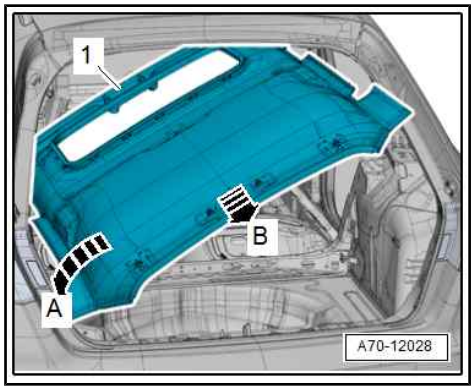
– Unclip moulded headliner from body at rear at centring pin -2-.



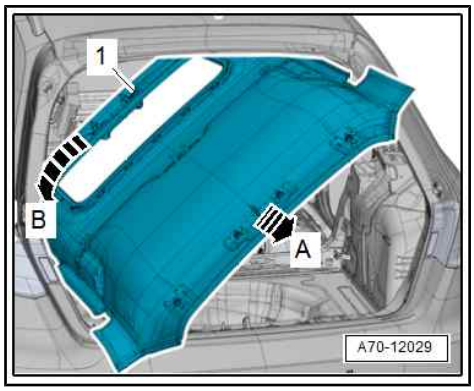
Note

- *A second mechanic is required to unfasten the last connections and take out the moulded headliner.*
- *Take out moulded headliner through rear lid opening.*

– Lower moulded headliner -1- on left side of vehicle -arrow A- and at the same time carefully pull out towards rear -arrow B-.



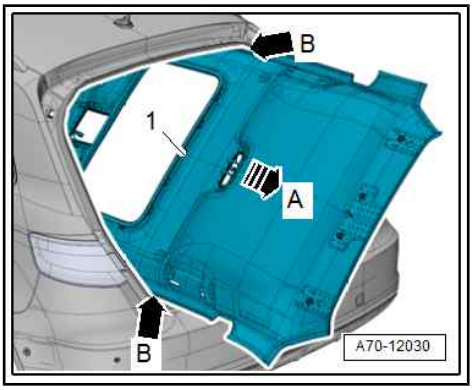
– Carefully pull moulded headliner -1- out through rear lid opening -arrow A-; to do so tip left side downwards -arrow B-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Take out moulded headliner -1- through rear lid opening, as shown in illustration -arrow A-.

– To do so, carefully guide edges -arrows B- of moulded headliner out through rear lid opening.



Installing

> **WARNING**
>
> *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

– Align moulded headliner centrally and press centring pin at rear of moulded headliner into mounting point in body until it engages audibly.

– Install centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 33 .

– Press clips at rear of moulded headliner into mounting points in body until they engage audibly.

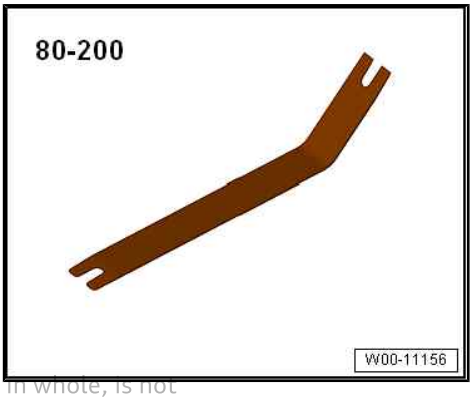
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner", page 344

7.2.3 Removing and installing moulded headliner - Saloon

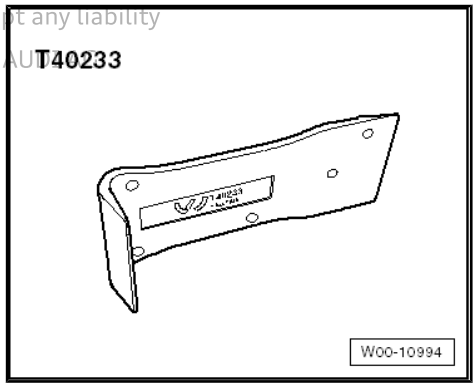
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-

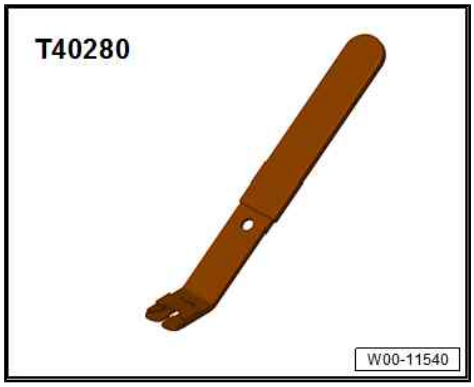


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal wedge - T40233-



- Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

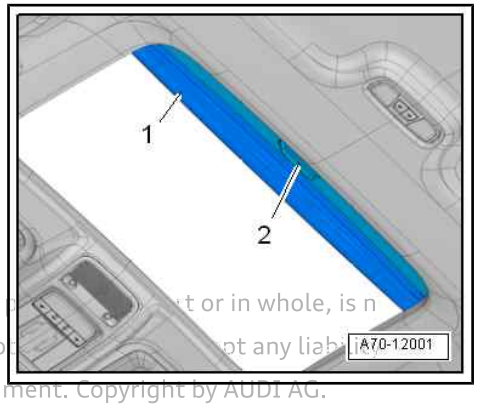
WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

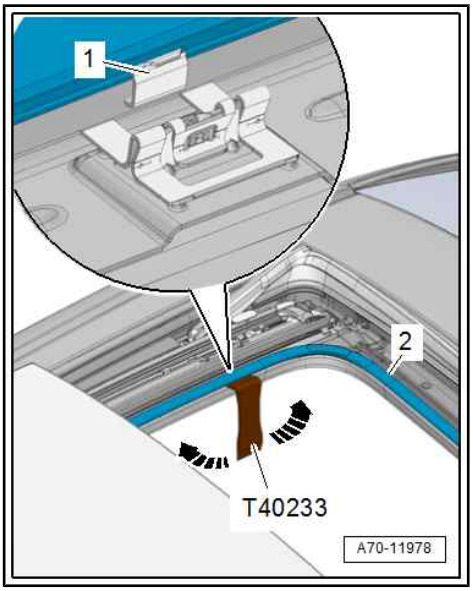
– Fully open sunroof -1-.

– Open sun blind -2- approx. $^{2}/_{3}$.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.
– Insert removal wedge - T40233- between trim frame -2- for sunroof opening and moulded headliner.
– Release trim frame from retainers -1- one after the other using removal wedge - T40233- as shown -arrows-.



All vehicles (continued):

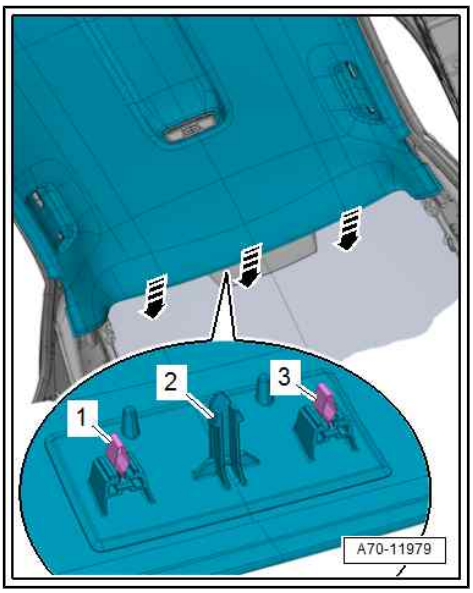
– Remove passenger side door ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 57 ; Door; Removing and installing door .
– Remove front passenger seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 291 .
– Remove B-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 297 .
– Remove D-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 307 .
– Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 304 .
– Remove centre console ⇒ page 46 .
– Remove roof module (front) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in roof trim .
– Equipment version with front camera: Remove cover for front camera ⇒ page 57 .
– Remove light for make-up mirror ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .
– Remove sun visors ⇒ page 33 .
– Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 33 .
– Remove grab handles ⇒ page 34 .
– Move steering wheel forwards and upwards as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move driver seat as far forwards and down as possible and tilt backrest as far back as possible.

Caution

- ***The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.***
- ***Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.***

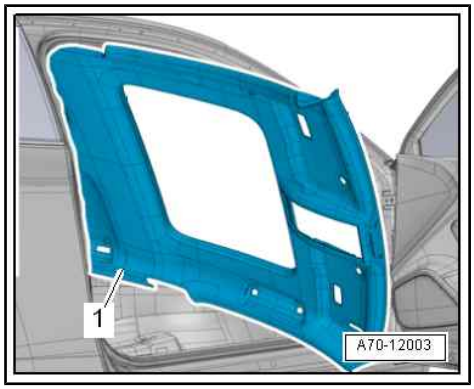


– Unclip moulded headliner (rear) from clips -1 and 3- on body -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Unclip moulded headliner from body at rear at centring pin -2-.

Note

Take out moulded headliner through passenger door.

– Open rear door (left-side).
– Lower moulded headliner -1- at front and turn it towards opening for front passenger door (tilt left side downwards).
– Take out moulded headliner through front passenger door, as shown.



Installing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

– Align moulded headliner centrally and press centring pin at rear of moulded headliner into mounting point in body until it engages audibly.
– Install centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 33 .
– Press clips at rear of moulded headliner into mounting points in body until they engage audibly.

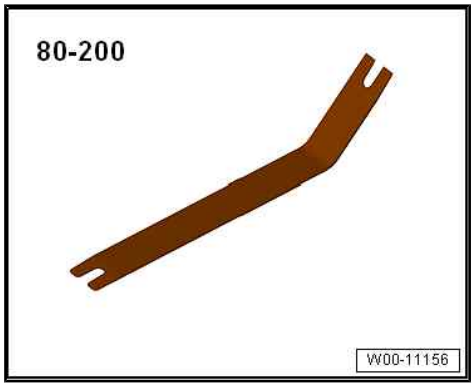
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner", page 344

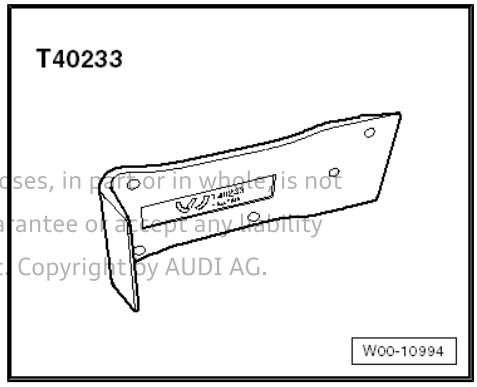
7.3 Lowering moulded headliner for removal of roof aerial

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-

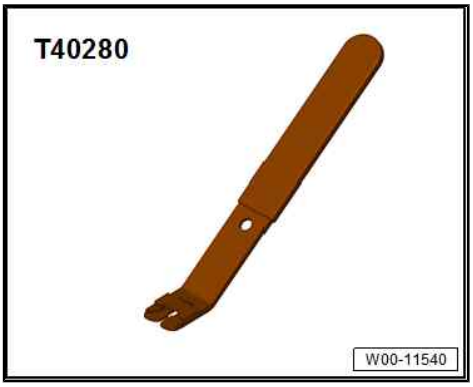


♦ Removal wedge - T40233-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

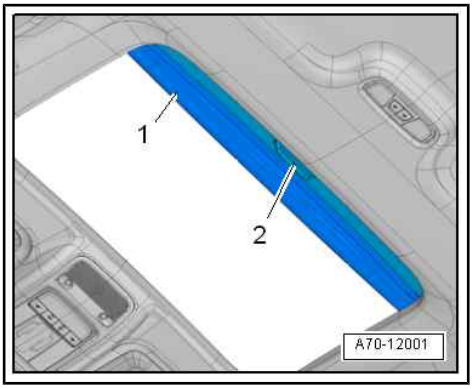
WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .

Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

– Fully open sunroof -1-.

– Open sun blind -2- approx. $^{2}/_{3}$.

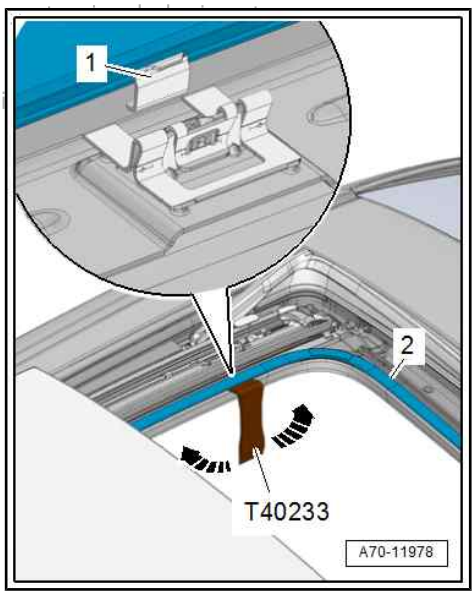


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyri

– Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.

– Insert removal wedge - T40233- between trim frame -2- for sunroof opening and moulded headliner.

– Release trim frame from retainers -1- one after the other using removal lever - 80-200- as shown -arrows-.



All vehicles (continued):

– Remove B-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 295 .

– Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 301 .

– A3 Sportback: Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ page 305 .

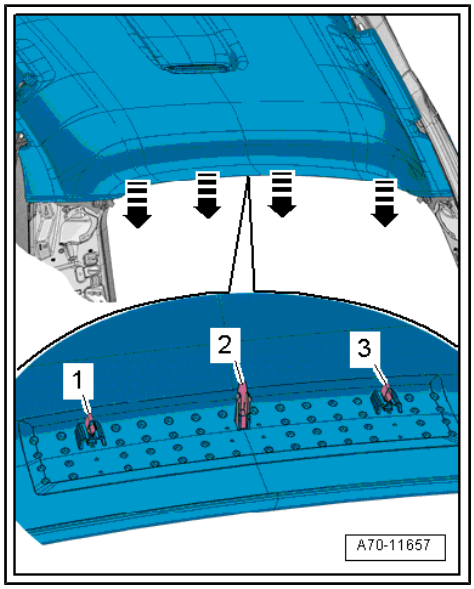
– Remove grab handles ⇒ page 34 .

– Move front seats as far forwards and down as possible and tilt backrests as far forwards as possible.

– Move moulded headliner clear in vicinity of rear lid seal.

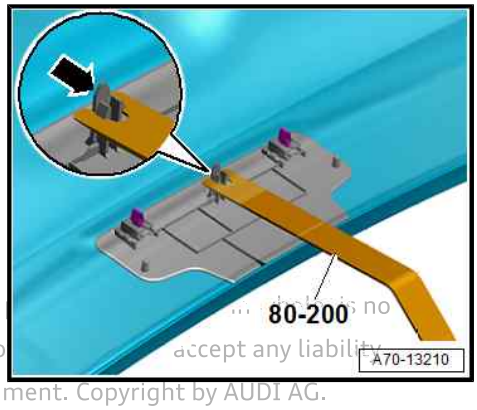
Caution

- *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*



– Unclip moulded headliner (rear) from clips -1 and 3- on body -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .

– Unclip moulded headliner from body at rear at centring pin -2-.



– To do so, carefully insert removal lever - 80-200- between moulded headliner and body.

– Release centring mounting -arrow- at rear centre using removal lever - 80-200- and lower moulded headliner.

– Remove GPS aerial ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Aerial systems; Removing and installing GPS aerial .

Assembling

– Align moulded headliner centrally and press centring pins and clips at rear of moulded headliner into mounting point in body until they engage audibly.

– Fold over lip of rear lid seal and inner door seal.

Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

– First clip moulded headliner onto sunroof frame at sides, and then at front and rear.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner”, page 344

7.4 Attaching roof reinforcement to body

⇒ “7.4.1 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - without sliding sunroof”, page 358

⇒ “7.4.2 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - with sliding sunroof”, page 359

7.4.1 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - without sliding sunroof

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

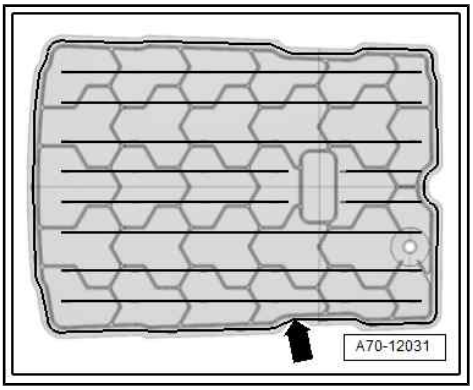
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 346 .

– Apply adhesive beads -arrow- to roof reinforcement as shown in illustration.

- Thickness of adhesive beads: approx. 8 mm
- Apply adhesive beads according to markings on roof reinforcement.



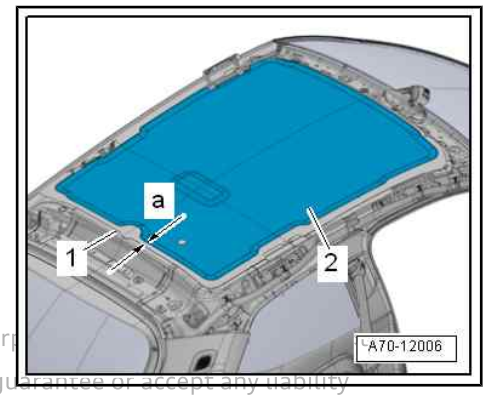
Note

The illustration shows the roof reinforcement for the A3 as an example.

A3:

– Position roof reinforcement -2- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- from cross strut -1-.

- Dimension -a- = 15 mm

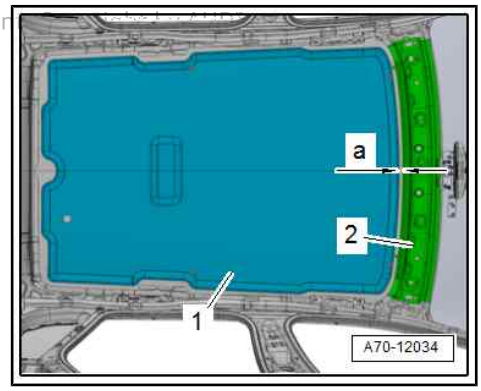


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
to the correctness of information in this documen

A3 Sportback/Saloon:

– Position roof reinforcement -1- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- from cross strut -2-.

- Dimension -a-, A3 Sportback = 110 mm.
- Dimension -a-, Saloon = 16 mm.



Note

The illustration shows the roof reinforcement for the A3 Sportback as an example.

All vehicles (continued):

– Press roof reinforcement onto surface of roof.

– Wipe off any surplus adhesive.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner", page 344

7.4.2 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - with sliding sunroof

Special tools and workshop equipment required

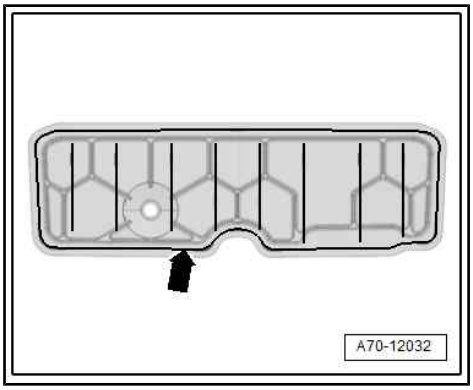
♦ Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Procedure

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 346 .

– Apply adhesive beads -arrow- to roof reinforcement as shown in illustration.

- Thickness of adhesive beads: approx. 8 mm
- Apply adhesive beads according to markings on roof reinforcement.



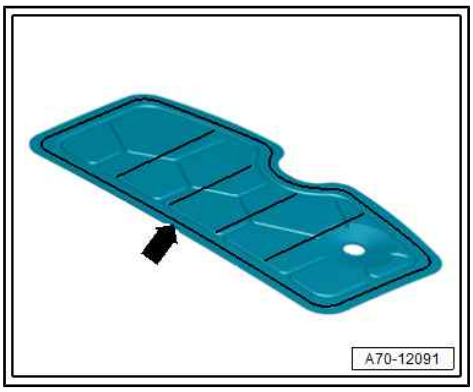
Note

The illustration shows the roof reinforcement for the A3 as an example.

Country-specific version:

– Apply adhesive beads -arrow- to roof reinforcement as shown in illustration.

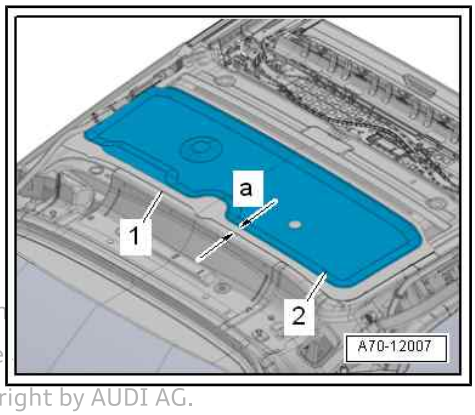
- Thickness of adhesive beads: approx. 8 mm
- Apply adhesive beads according to markings on roof reinforcement.



A3:

– Position roof reinforcement -2- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- from cross strut -1-.

- Dimension -a- = 15 mm

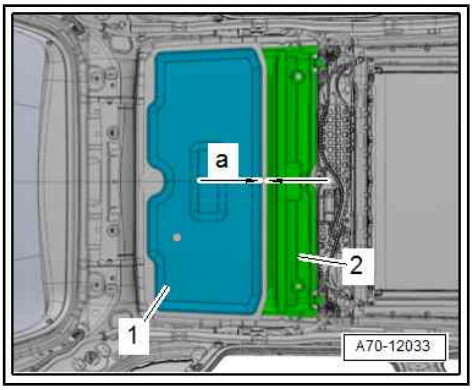


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

A3 Sportback/Saloon:

– Position roof reinforcement -1- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- from cross strut -2-.

• Dimension -a- = 15 mm



Note

The illustration shows the roof reinforcement for the A3 Sportback as an example.

All vehicles (continued):

– Press roof reinforcement onto surface of roof.

– Wipe off any surplus adhesive.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner”, page 344

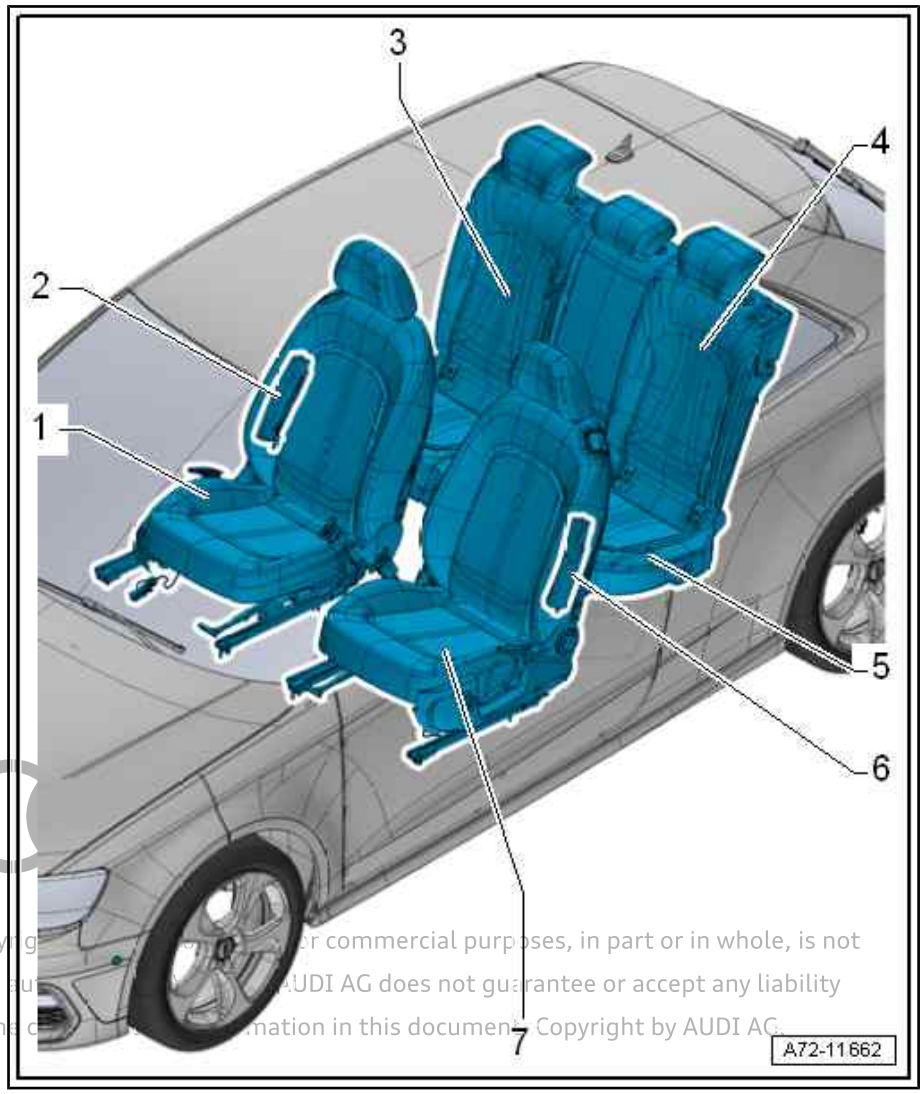
Data Medium Audi Service for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

72 – Seat frames

1 Overview - seat versions

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions”, page 362

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions



1 - Front passenger seat

Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat

- ❑ Equipment versions:
  - ♦ Fabric
  - ♦ Leather
  - ♦ Seat/backrest heating
  - ♦ Lumbar support
  - ♦ Storage compartment
  - ♦ Child seat anchor
  - ♦ Footwell light
  - ♦ Seat rake adjuster, sports seat/super sports seat
  - ♦ Seat depth adjuster, sports seat/super sports seat
  - ♦ A3: with backrest release mechanism/Easy Entry system
  - ♦ With manual/electric adjustment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 367

2 - Side airbag

- ❑ With side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 149

3 - 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side)

Standard seat/sports seat

- ❑ Equipment versions:
  - ♦ Fabric
  - ♦ Leather
  - ♦ With/without load-through hatch
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 460

4 - 1/3 section of rear seat backrest (left-side)

Standard seat/sports seat

- ❑ Equipment versions:
  - ♦ Fabric
  - ♦ Leather

Protected by copyright. Copying for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 460

5 - Seat bench

Standard seat/sports seat

❑ Equipment versions:

- ♦ Fabric
- ♦ Leather
- ♦ With/without centre storage compartment

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 458

6 - Side airbag

❑ With side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 149

7 - Driver seat

Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat

❑ Equipment versions:

- ♦ Fabric
- ♦ Leather
- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Lumbar support
- ♦ Storage compartment
- ♦ Footwell light
- ♦ Seat rake adjuster, sports seat/super sports seat
- ♦ Seat depth adjuster, sports seat/super sports seat
- ♦ A3: with backrest release mechanism/Easy Entry system
- ♦ With manual/electric adjustment

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 367

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Front seats

⇒ “2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components”, page 364

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - front seat”, page 367

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest”, page 372

⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system”, page 376

⇒ “2.5 Exploded view - head restraint”, page 379

⇒ “2.6 Exploded view - seat pan”, page 382

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing front seat”, page 392

⇒ “2.8 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter”, page 396

⇒ “2.9 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand”, page 399

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit”, page 399

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing front seat backrest”, page 404

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 ”, page 409

⇒ “2.13 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism”, page 411

⇒ “2.14 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism”, page 413

⇒ “2.15 Removing and installing slider”, page 429

⇒ “2.16 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 430

⇒ “2.17 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 431

⇒ “2.18 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177 ”, page 432

⇒ “2.19 Removing and installing massage function button E670 / E671 ”, page 433

⇒ “2.20 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 433

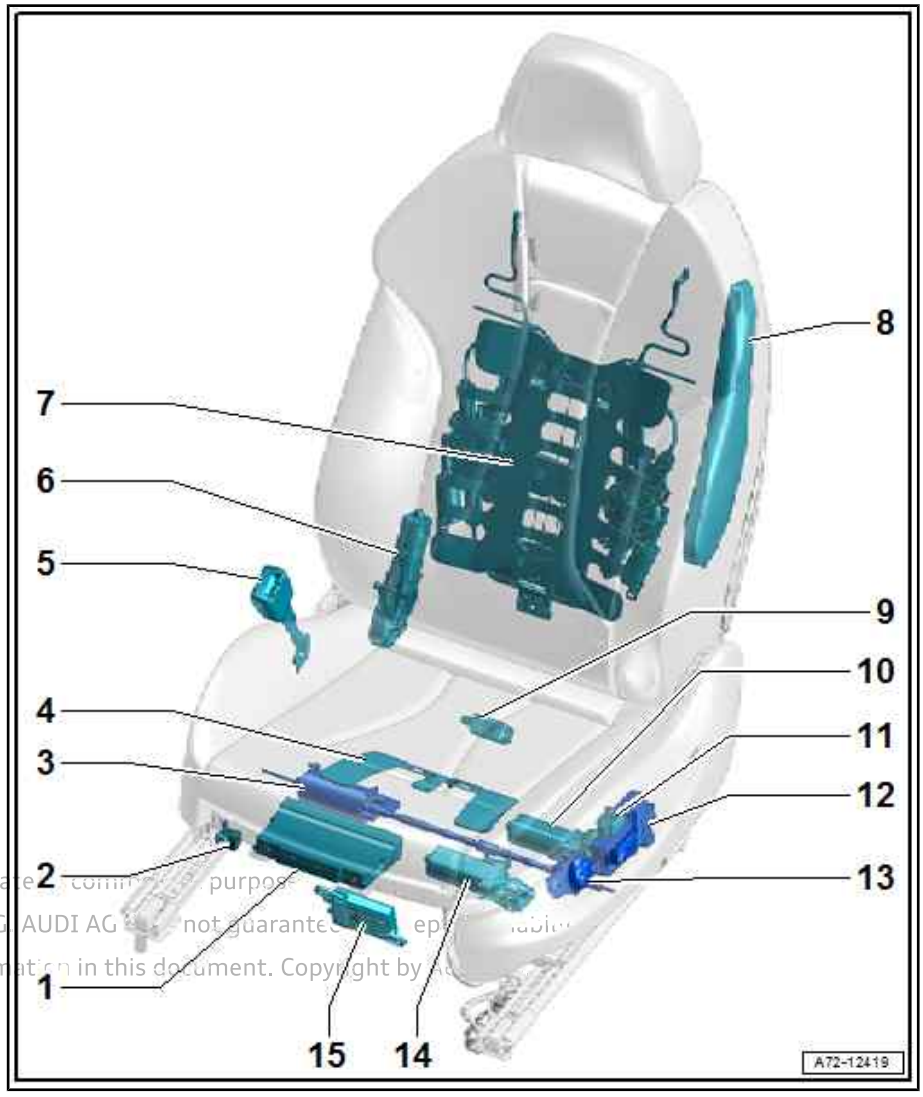
⇒ “2.21 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit”, page 437

⇒ “2.22 Dismantling and assembling seat pan”, page 440

⇒ “2.23 Removing and installing control unit for seat functions”, page 456

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components



1 - Control unit for seat functions

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

♦ Driver seat adjustment control unit - J810-

♦ Front passenger seat adjustment control unit - J720-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 456

2 - Seat position sensor

- ❑ NAR vehicles

♦ Driver side seat position sensor - G553-

♦ Front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 189

3 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

♦ Driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-

♦ Front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-

- ❑ Motor and lower seat pan frame are pre-set at factory; if defective, renew lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 454

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 - Seat occupied sensor, front passenger side - G128-

- ❑ Equipment version (passenger side only)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 192
- ❑ Press clips on until they engage audibly

5 - Belt switch

♦ Driver side belt switch - E24-

♦ Front passenger side belt switch - E25-

- ❑ Integrated in belt buckle; cannot be renewed separately if defective
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing belt buckle (front)”, page 106

6 - Backrest adjustment motor

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

♦ Driver seat backrest adjustment motor - V45-

♦ Front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor - V46-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 375

7 - Lumbar support

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

♦ Driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125-

♦ Driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-

- Front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126-
- Front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 374

8 - Side airbag (front)

  - With:
- Side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- Side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 149

9 - Footwell light (rear)

  - Depending on vehicle equipment
- Rear left footwell light - W45-
- Rear right footwell light - W46-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear footwell light -W45- / -W46-

10 - Seat height adjustment motor

  - Depending on vehicle equipment
- Driver seat height adjustment motor - V245-
- Front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 387

11 - Massage function button

  - Depending on vehicle equipment
- Driver seat massage function button - E670-
- Front passenger seat massage function button - E671-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ page 433

12 - Seat adjustment operating unit

  - Depending on vehicle equipment
- Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-
- Front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 384

13 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

  - Depending on vehicle equipment
- Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-
- Front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 384

14 - Seat rake adjustment motor

  - Depending on vehicle equipment
- Driver seat rake adjustment motor - V243-
- Front passenger seat rake adjustment motor - V244-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 389

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

15 - Seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

  - NAR vehicles
  - Passenger side only
  - Clipped into storage compartment

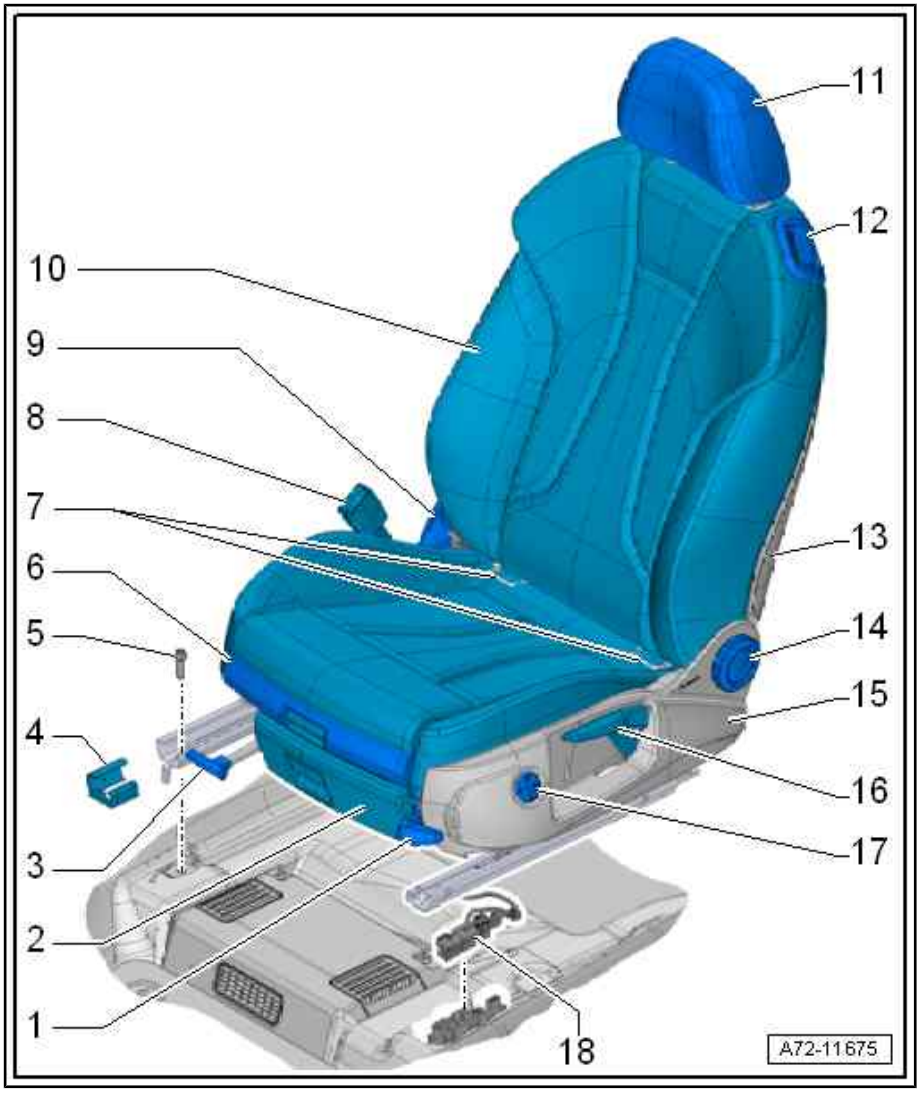
2.2 Exploded view - front seat

⇒ "2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment", page 367

⇒ "2.2.2 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment", page 369

⇒ "2.2.3 Exploded view - front super sports seat with manual adjustment", page 370

2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment



1 - Seat rake adjuster

- ❑ For sports seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 388

2 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 385

3 - Seat longitudinal adjustment handle

- ❑ Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 449
- ❑ Press onto operating rod as far as stop

4 - Cover

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 442
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail carefully until it engages audibly

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 40 Nm

6 - Seat depth adjuster

- ❑ For sports seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 390

7 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ For front passenger seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 108
- ❑ Checks to be performed following an accident ⇒ page 14

8 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 106

9 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 446

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Standard seat/sports seat

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Fabric
- ♦ Leather
- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Lumbar support
- ♦ Footwell light
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 392

11 - Head restraint
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 430

12 - Backrest release mechanism/Easy Entry system
- ❑ A3 only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 376

13 - Backrest cover panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 405

14 - Hand wheel
- ❑ For backrest adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 399

15 - Seat side trim (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 443

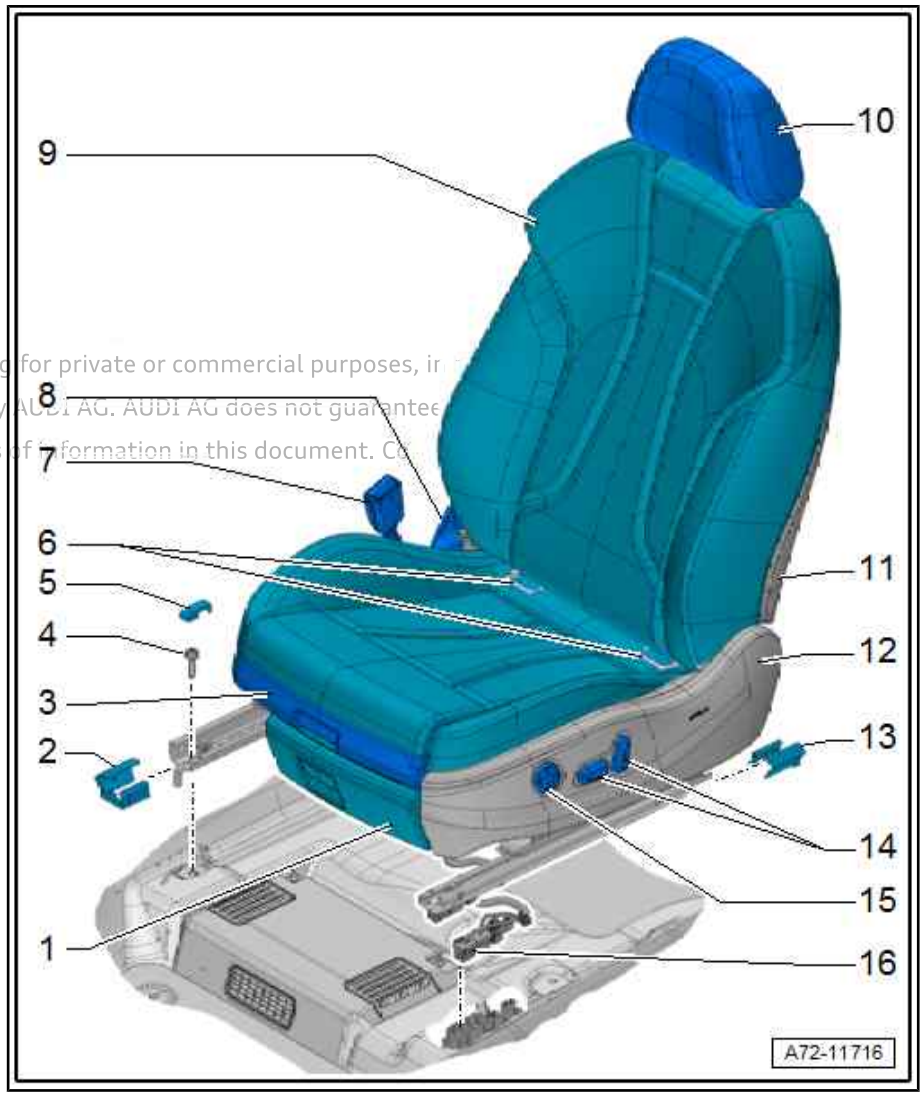
16 - Seat height adjustment unit
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 386

17 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 432

18 - Electrical connector
- ❑ Route wiring with protective sleeve
- ❑ Removing individual wire ⇒ page 440

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2.2 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment



1 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 385

2 - Cover (front)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 442
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail carefully until it engages audibly

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

3 - Seat depth adjuster

- ❑ For sports seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 390

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 40 Nm

5 - Spindle cover

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Slide onto spindle carefully until it engages audibly

6 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ For front passenger seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 108
- ❑ Checks to be performed following an accident ⇒ page 14

7 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 106

8 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 446

9 - Standard seat/sports seat

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Fabric
- ♦ Leather
- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Footwell light
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 392

10 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 430

11 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 405

12 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 444

13 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 442
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail carefully until it engages audibly

14 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 384

15 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 432

16 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Route wiring with protective sleeve
- ❑ Removing individual wire ⇒ page 440

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2.3 Exploded view - front super sports seat with manual adjustment

1 - Seat rake adjuster

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 388

2 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 385

3 - Seat longitudinal adjustment handle

- ❑ Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 449
- ❑ Press onto operating rod as far as stop

4 - Cover (front)

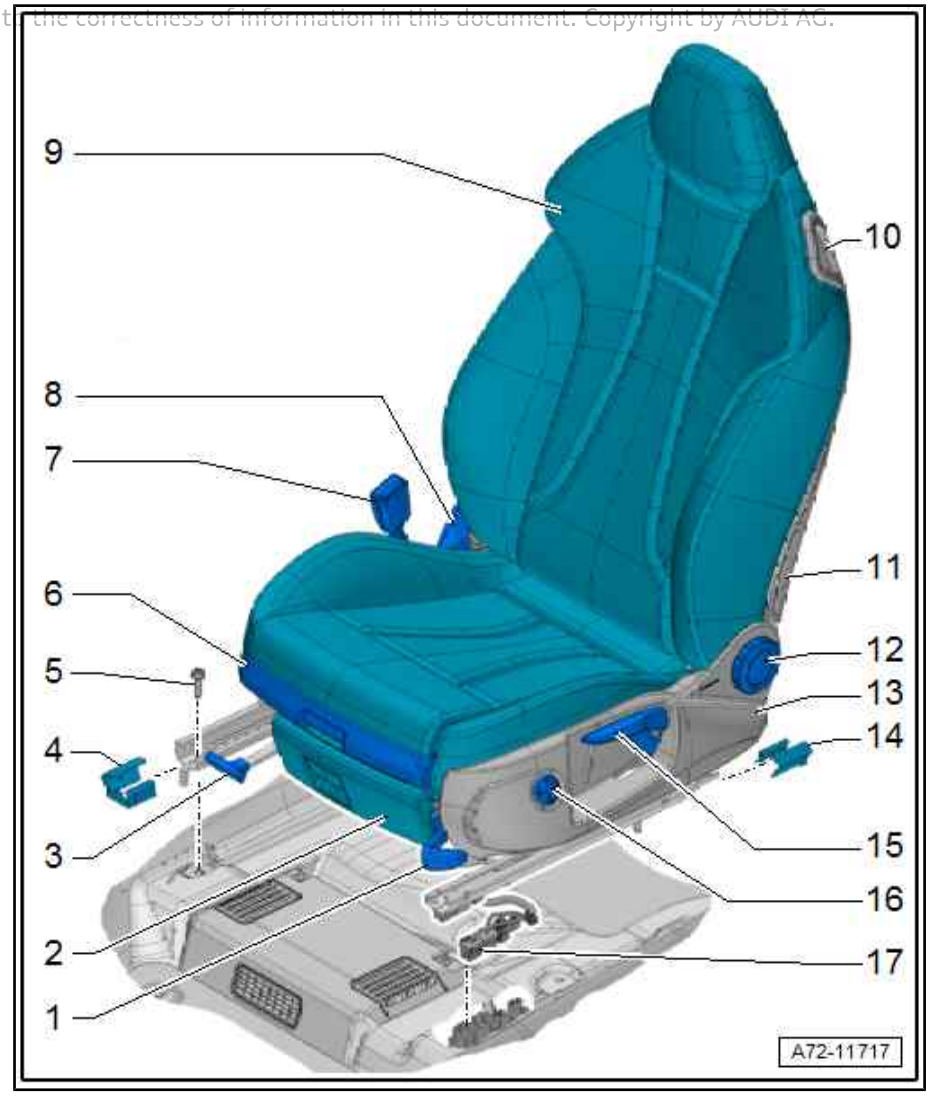
- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 442
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail carefully until it engages audibly

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 40 Nm

6 - Seat depth adjuster

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 390



7 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 106

8 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 446

9 - Super sports seat

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Footwell light
- ♦ Child seat anchor (only on front passenger seat)
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 392

10 - Backrest release mechanism/Easy Entry system

- ❑ A3 only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 376

11 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 406

12 - Hand wheel

- ❑ For backrest adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 399

13 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 443

14 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 442
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail carefully until it engages audibly

15 - Seat height adjustment unit

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 386

16 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 432

17 - Electrical connector

- ❑ With corrugated tube for modular wire routing
- ❑ Removing individual wire ⇒ page 440

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest

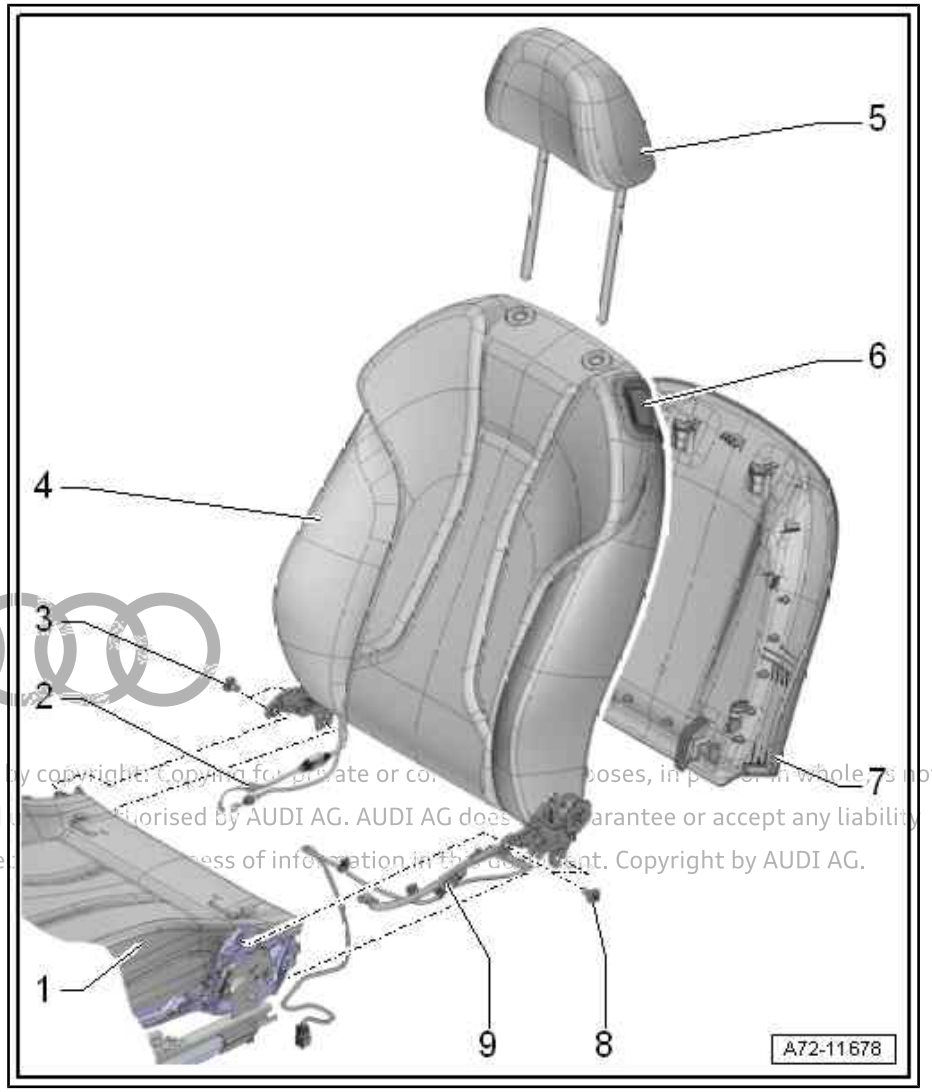
⇒ “2.3.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat”, page 372

⇒ “2.3.2 Exploded view - front seat backrest, super sports seat”, page 373

⇒ “2.3.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support”, page 374

⇒ “2.3.4 Exploded view - front backrest adjustment motor”, page 375

2.3.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat



1 - Seat pan

2 - Bowden cable for Easy Entry system

- ❑ Three-door version only: seat with manual adjustment
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 424 , ⇒ page 426

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 33 Nm

4 - Front seat backrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 404

5 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 430

6 - Backrest release mechanism

- ❑ A3 only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 413

7 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Equipment version with luggage net; luggage net cannot be separated from backrest cover panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 405
- ❑ Hook in at outer backrest frame (bottom) and press on until it engages audibly

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap

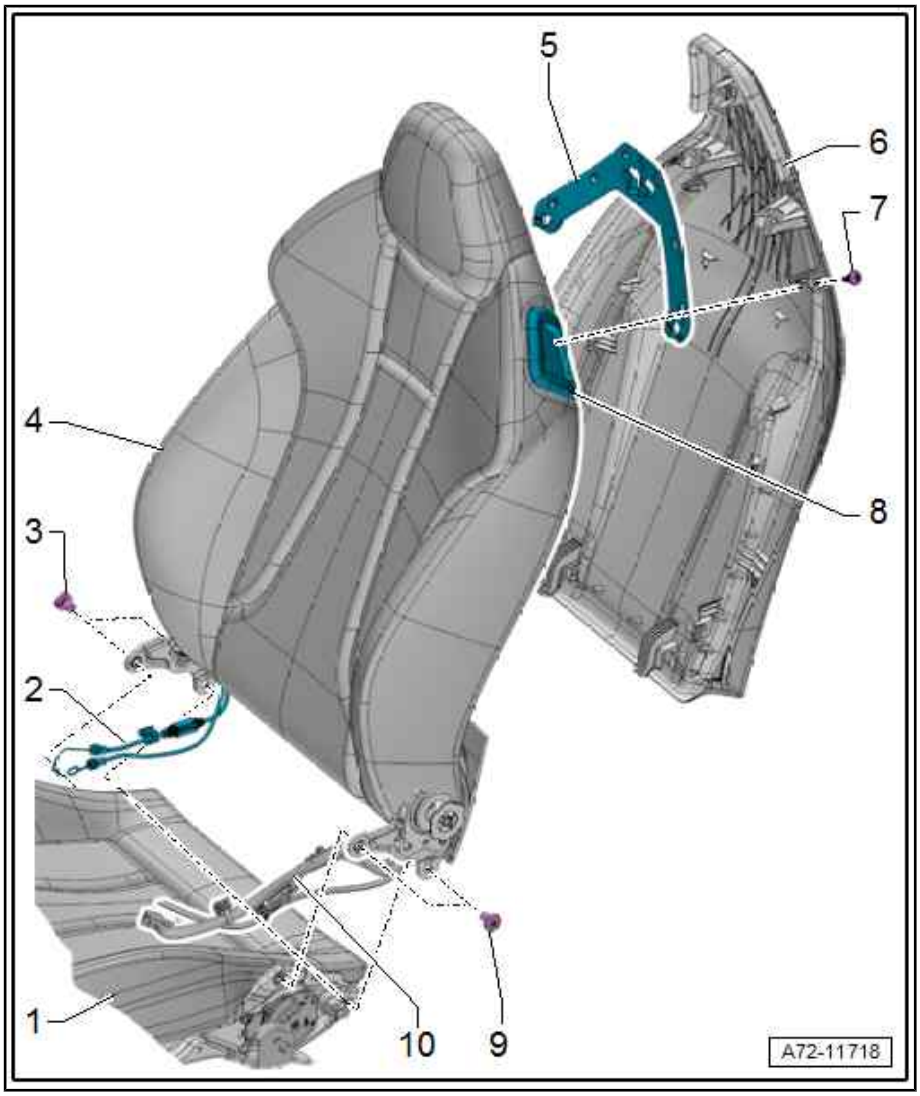
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co... poses, in p... in whole is not permitted ...ised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does ... arantee or accept any liability ...spe... ...ess of info...ation in ... ...nt. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ 33 Nm

9 - Electrical wiring harness

- ❑ From side airbag to connector point
- ❑ Depending on equipment version there may also be additional wiring harnesses, e.g. for backrest heating or lumbar support

2.3.2 Exploded view - front seat backrest, super sports seat



1 - Seat pan

2 - Bowden cable for Easy Entry system

- ❑ Three-door version only: seat with manual adjustment
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 424 , ⇒ page 426

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 33 Nm

4 - Front seat backrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 404

5 - Fastening strip

- ❑ For cover and padding

6 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Equipment version with luggage net; luggage net cannot be separated from backrest cover panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 406
- ❑ Hook in at outer backrest frame (bottom) and press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Clipped into head restraint

7 - Bolt

- ❑ With backrest release only
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 4 (page 378)

8 - Backrest release mechanism

- ❑ A3 only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 413

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 33 Nm

10 - Electrical wiring harness

- ❑ From side airbag to connector point
- ❑ Depending on equipment version there may also be additional wiring harnesses, e.g. for backrest heating or lumbar support

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support

1 - Electromechanical lumbar support

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 409

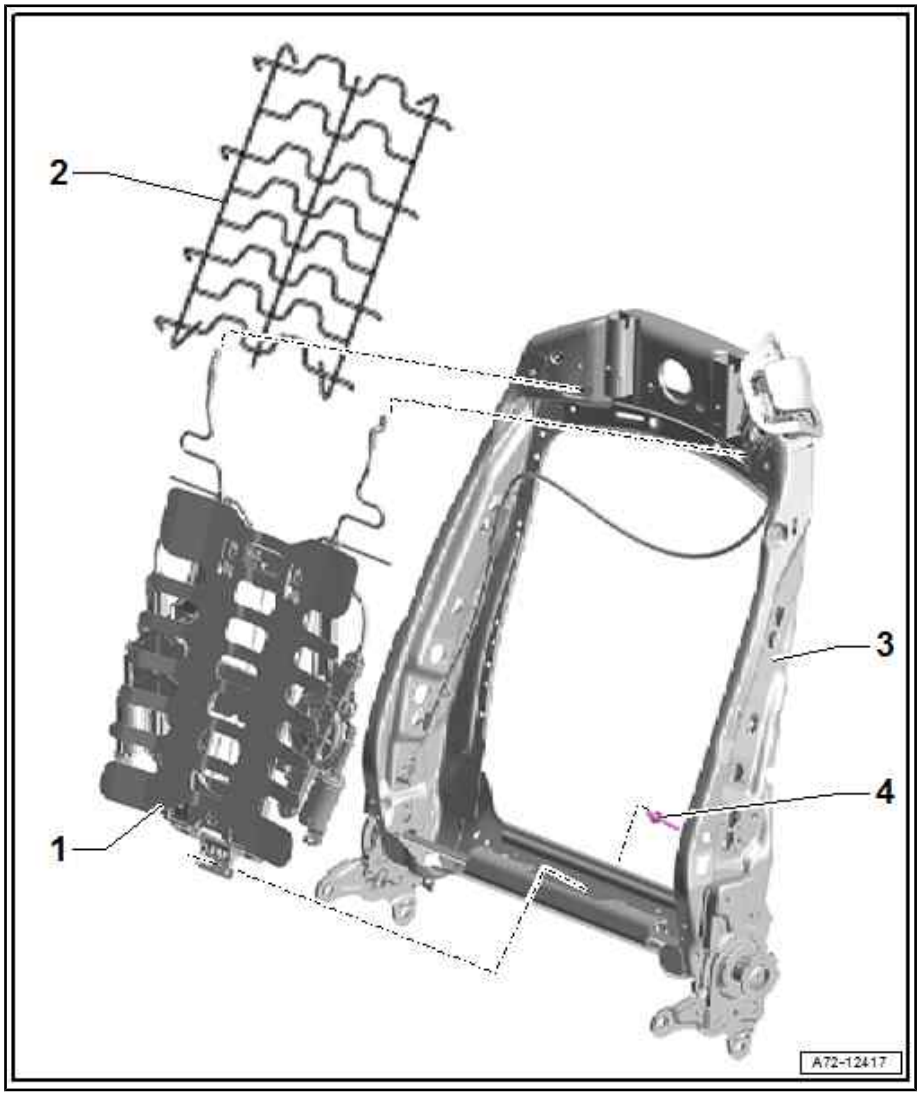
2 - Wire mat

- ❑ For equipment versions with manual backrest adjuster and without lumbar support
- ❑ Engage in outer backrest frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 408

3 - Outer backrest frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 404

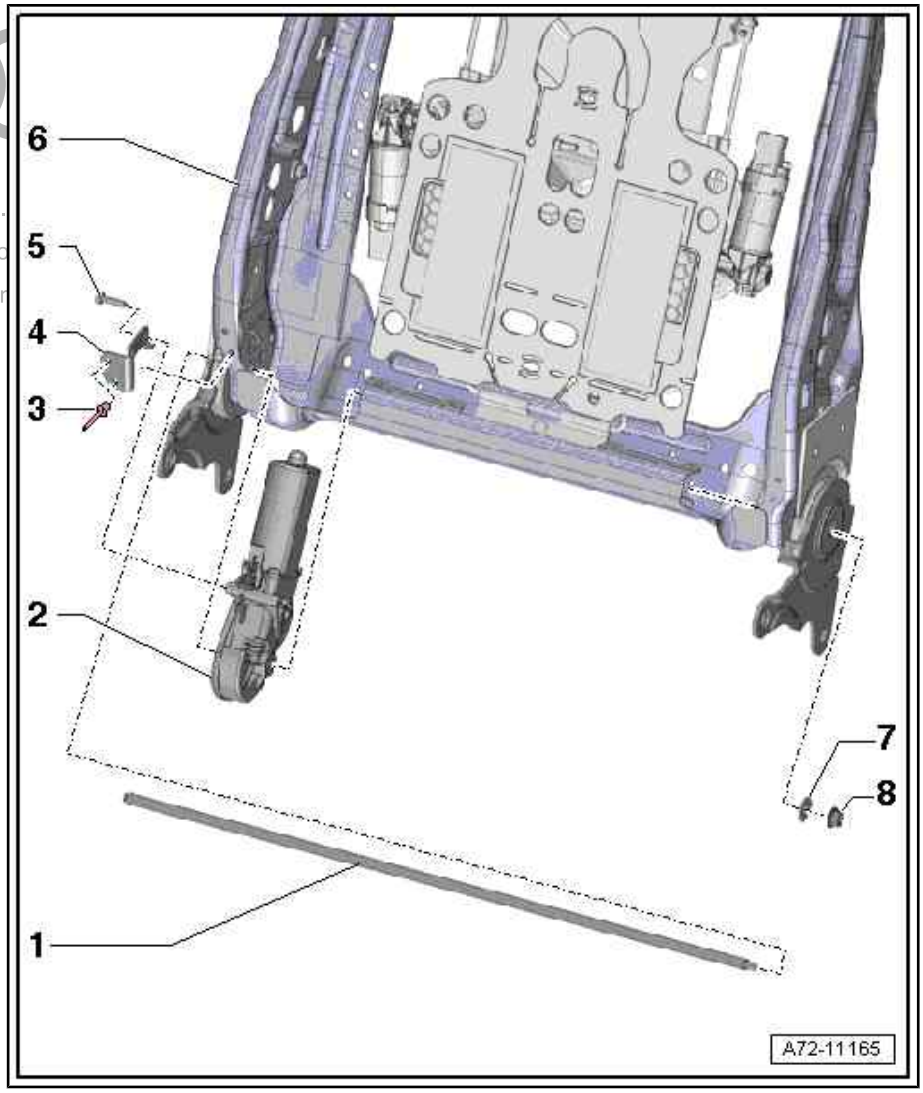
4 - Rivet



2.3.4 Exploded view - front backrest adjustment motor

Note

For greater clarity the padding and cover are not shown in the illustration.



1 - Adjusting shaft

- ❑ Clean threaded section for nut -item 8- using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Before fitting nut, apply locking fluid to threaded section of adjusting shaft; for locking fluid refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Driver seat backrest adjustment motor - V45-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor - V46-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 400

3 - Rivet

- ❑ 2x

4 - Bracket

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

6 - Outer backrest frame

7 - Washer

8 - Nut

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

2.4 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system

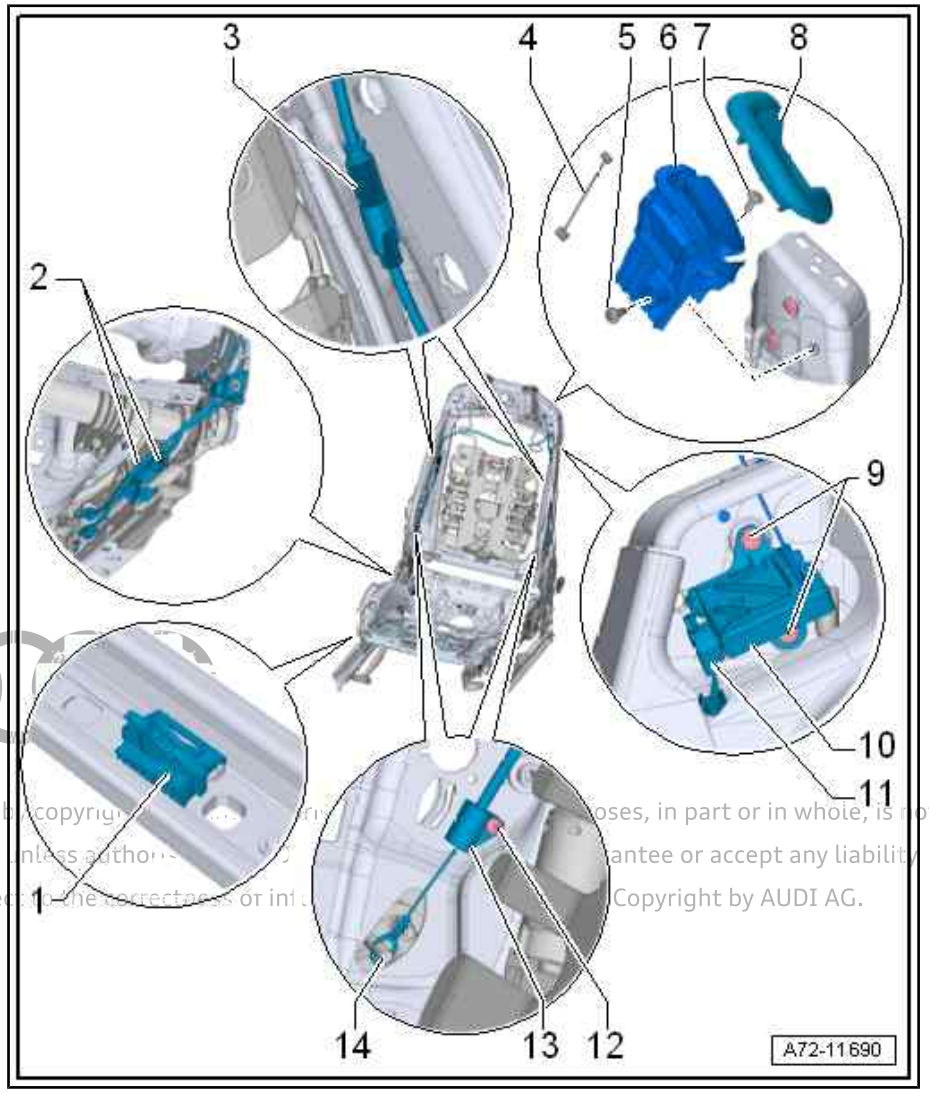
⇒ “2.4.1 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system”, page 376

⇒ “2.4.2 Exploded view - trim and backrest release mechanism, super sports seat”, page 378

2.4.1 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system

Note

The illustration shows the backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system for the standard seat/sports seat as an example.



1 - Slider

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 429

2 - Bowden cable for Easy Entry system

- ❑ From backrest fitting to seat rail release mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 424 , ⇒ page 426
- ❑ Engage eyelet of Bowden cable and pull Bowden cable so eyelet engages audibly
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 428

3 - Bowden cable adjuster

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ For Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism

4 - Bowden connecting cable

- ❑ For backrest release mechanism
- ❑ Between handle and mounting
- ❑ Engaged in handle and mounting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 416

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

6 - Backrest release mechanism

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 413

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

8 - Trim for backrest release mechanism

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 411

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

9 - Rivet

- ❑ 2x

10 - Mounting

- ❑ For backrest release mechanism
- ❑ For Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism
- ❑ Riveted to outer backrest frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 418

11 - Bowden cable end piece

- ❑ Component of Bowden cable
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

12 - Rivet

- ❑ 2x

13 - Bowden cable

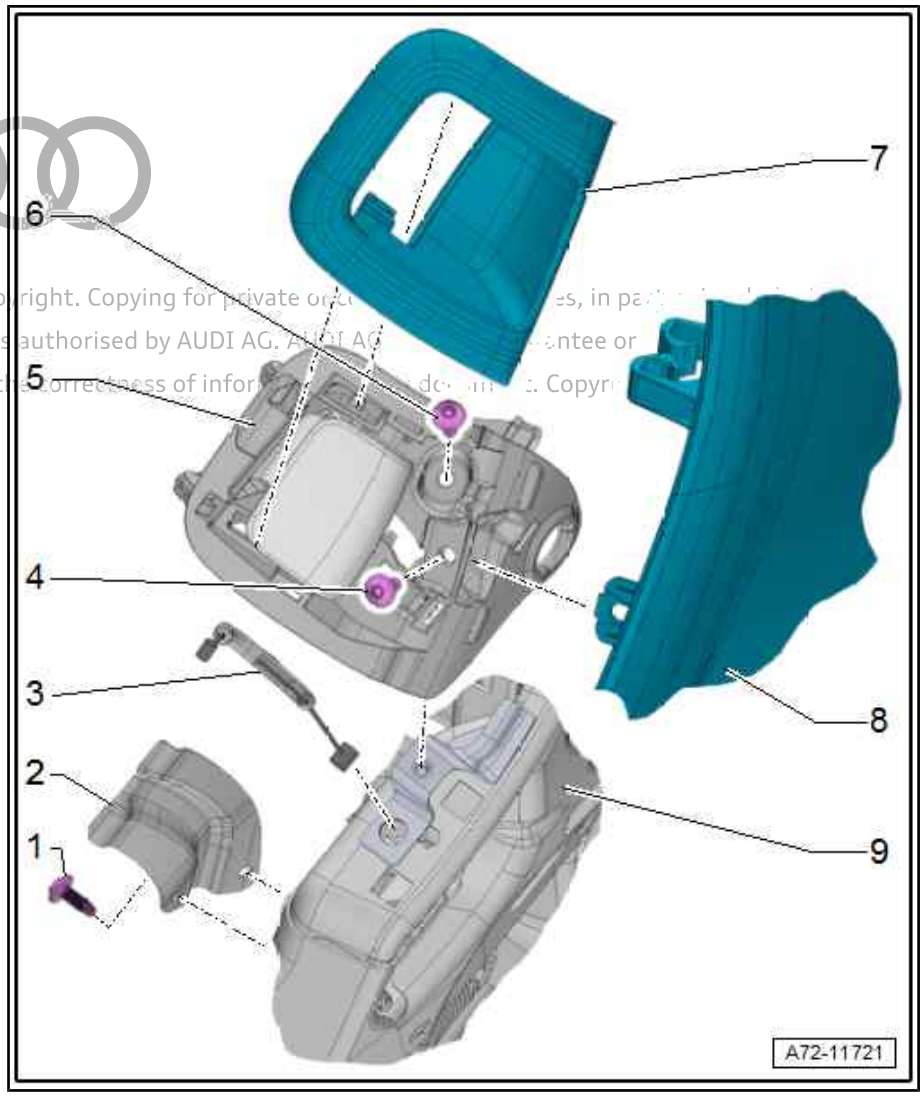
- ❑ For backrest release mechanism
- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 420
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 423

14 - Pin

- ❑ For backrest release mechanism
- ❑ On both sides
- ❑ Part of backrest fitting

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.2 Exploded view - trim and backrest release mechanism, super sports seat



1 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

2 - Bracket for backrest release mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 415

3 - Bowden connecting cable
- ❑ For backrest release mechanism
- ❑ Between handle and mounting
- ❑ Engaged in handle and mounting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.14.2 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism - super sports seat”, page 415

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

5 - Backrest release mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 415

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

7 - Trim for backrest release mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 412
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

8 - Backrest cover panel

9 - Outer backrest frame

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5 Exploded view - head restraint

⇒ “2.5.1 Exploded view - head restraint, standard seat/sports seat”, page 379

⇒ “2.5.2 Exploded view - head restraint, standard seat/sports seat (country-specific version)”, page 380

⇒ “2.5.3 Exploded view - head restraint, super sports seat”, page 381

2.5.1 Exploded view - head restraint, standard seat/sports seat

1 - Head restraint guide (right-side)

- ❑ Without release button
- ❑ Always fitted on right side of backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 431

2 - Cover

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Attached to cover

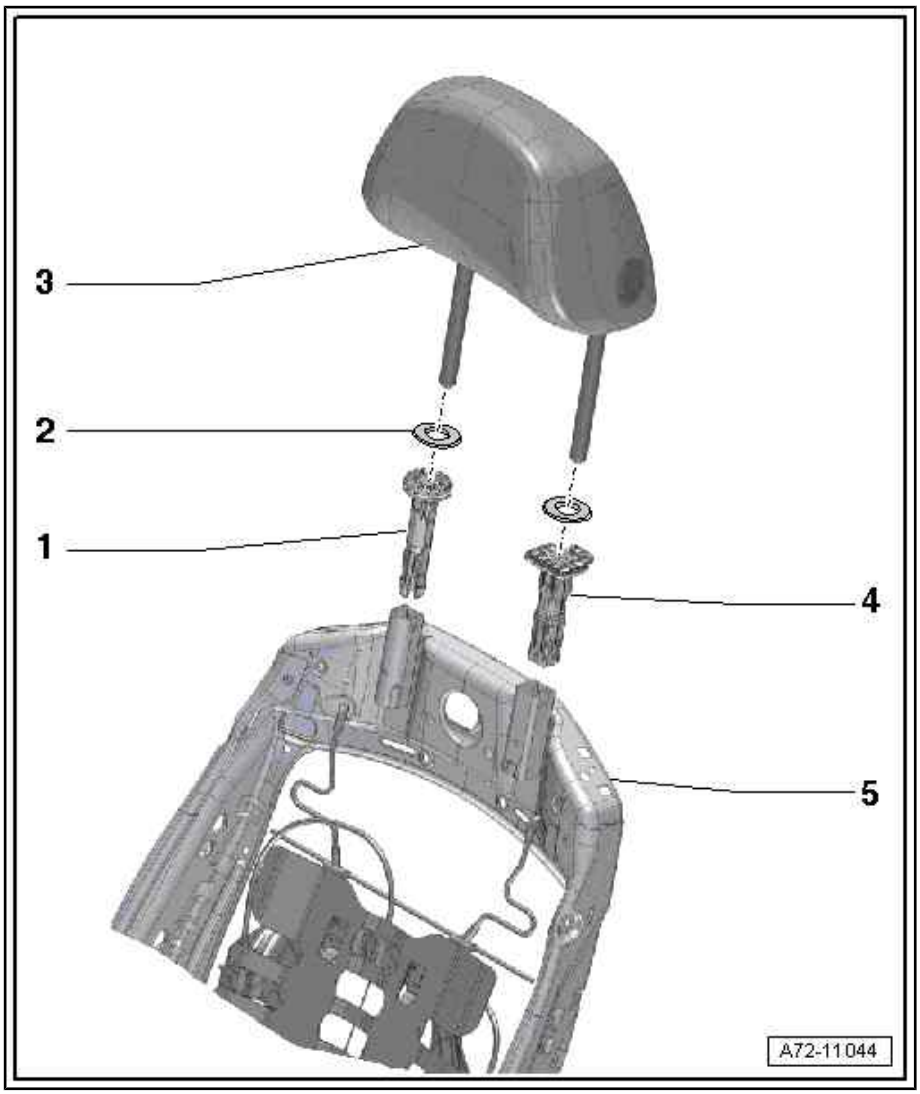
3 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 430
- ❑ Must be properly locked in head restraint guides

4 - Head restraint guide (left-side)

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Always fitted on left side of backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 431

5 - Outer backrest frame



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.2 Exploded view - head restraint, standard seat/sports seat (country-specific version)

1 - Outer backrest frame

2 - Head restraint guide (right-side)

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Can only be installed on one side of backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 431

3 - Head restraint

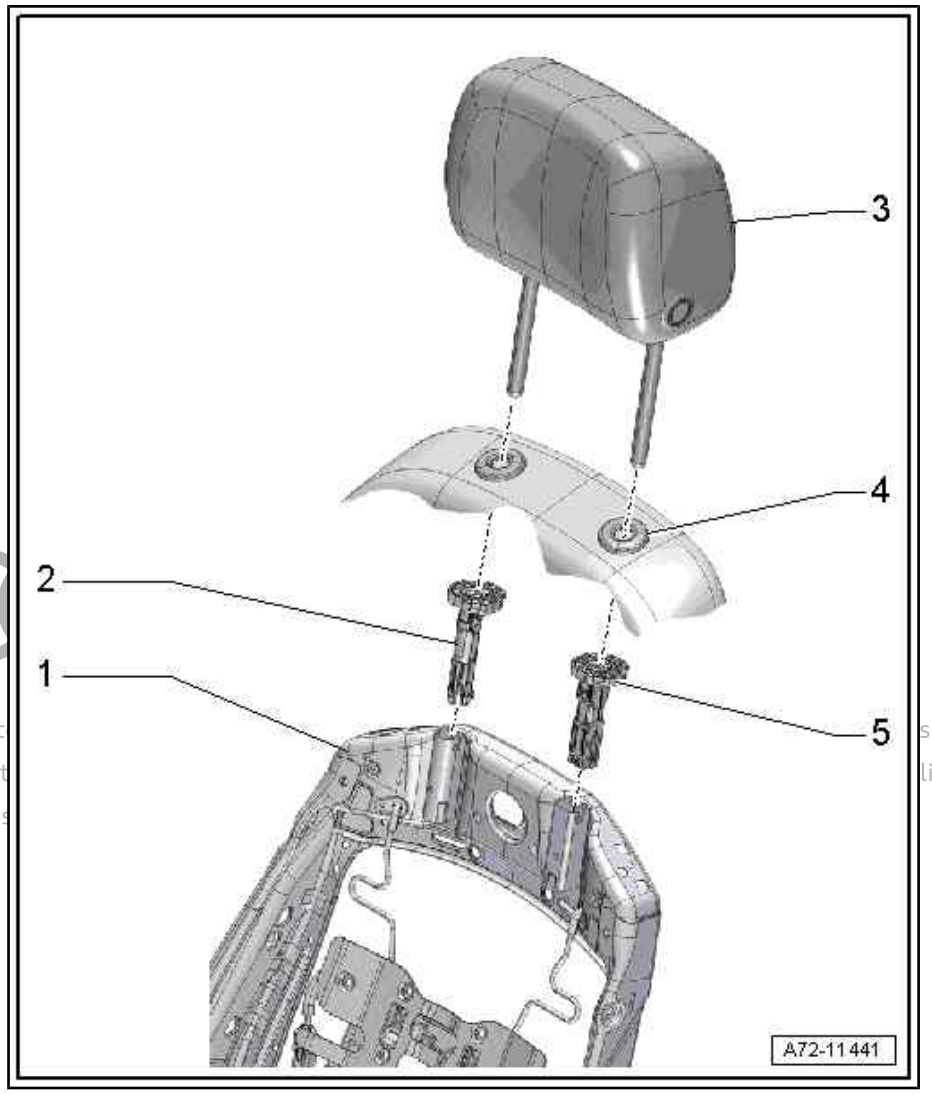
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 430
- ❑ Must be properly locked in head restraint guides

4 - Cover

- ❑ Attached to backrest cover

5 - Head restraint guide (left-side)

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Can only be installed on one side of backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 431



Protect
permitt
with re
s not
lity

2.5.3 Exploded view - head restraint, super sports seat

Note

The head restraint is permanently attached to the padding and can only be removed together with the padding.

1 - Outer backrest frame

2 - Head restraint guide (right-side)

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 431

3 - Head restraint

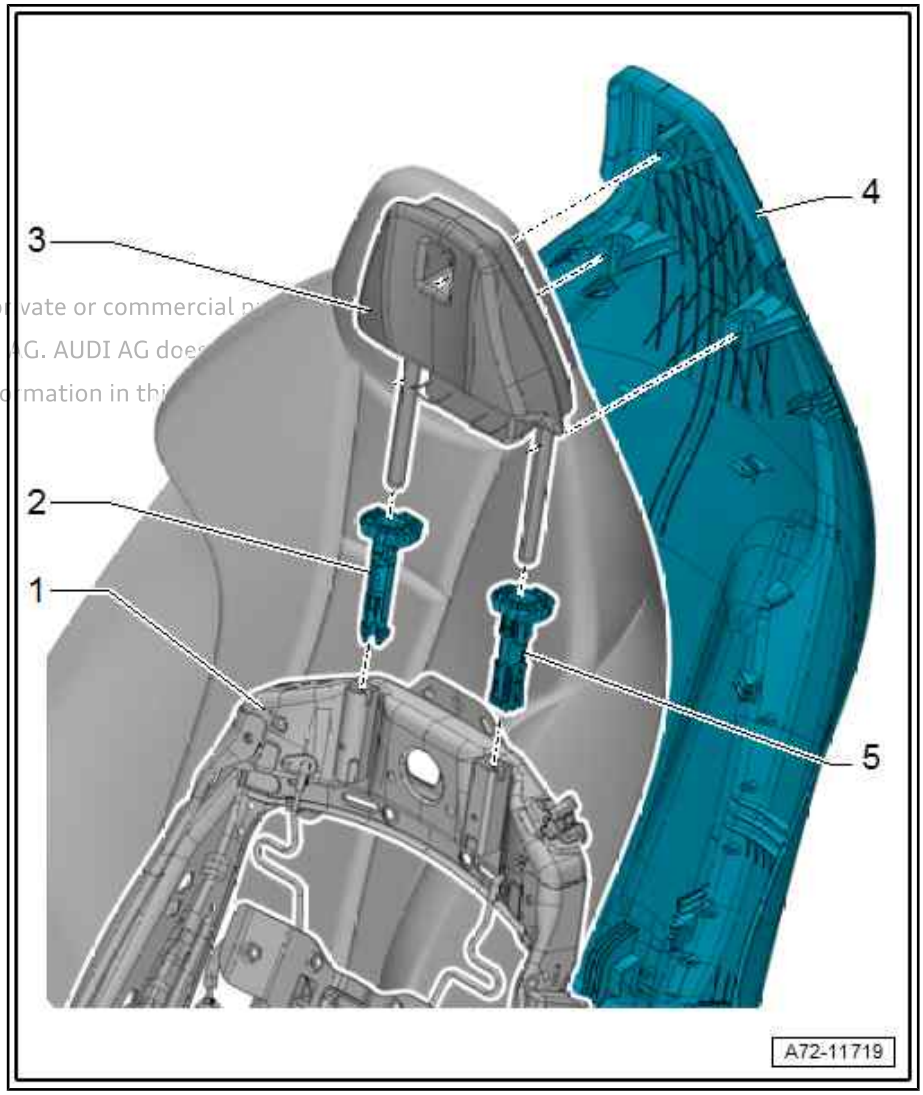
- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding; head restraint cannot be separated from padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ "1.7.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat", page 496
- ❑ Must be properly locked in head restraint guides

4 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 406
- ❑ Hook in at outer backrest frame (bottom) and press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Clipped into head restraint

5 - Head restraint guide (left-side)

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 431



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2.6 Exploded view - seat pan

⇒ “2.6.1 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with manual adjustment”, page 382

⇒ “2.6.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with electric adjustment”, page 384

⇒ “2.6.3 Exploded view - seat pan, storage compartment”, page 385

⇒ “2.6.4 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster”, page 386

⇒ “2.6.5 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjustment motor”, page 387

⇒ “2.6.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster”, page 388

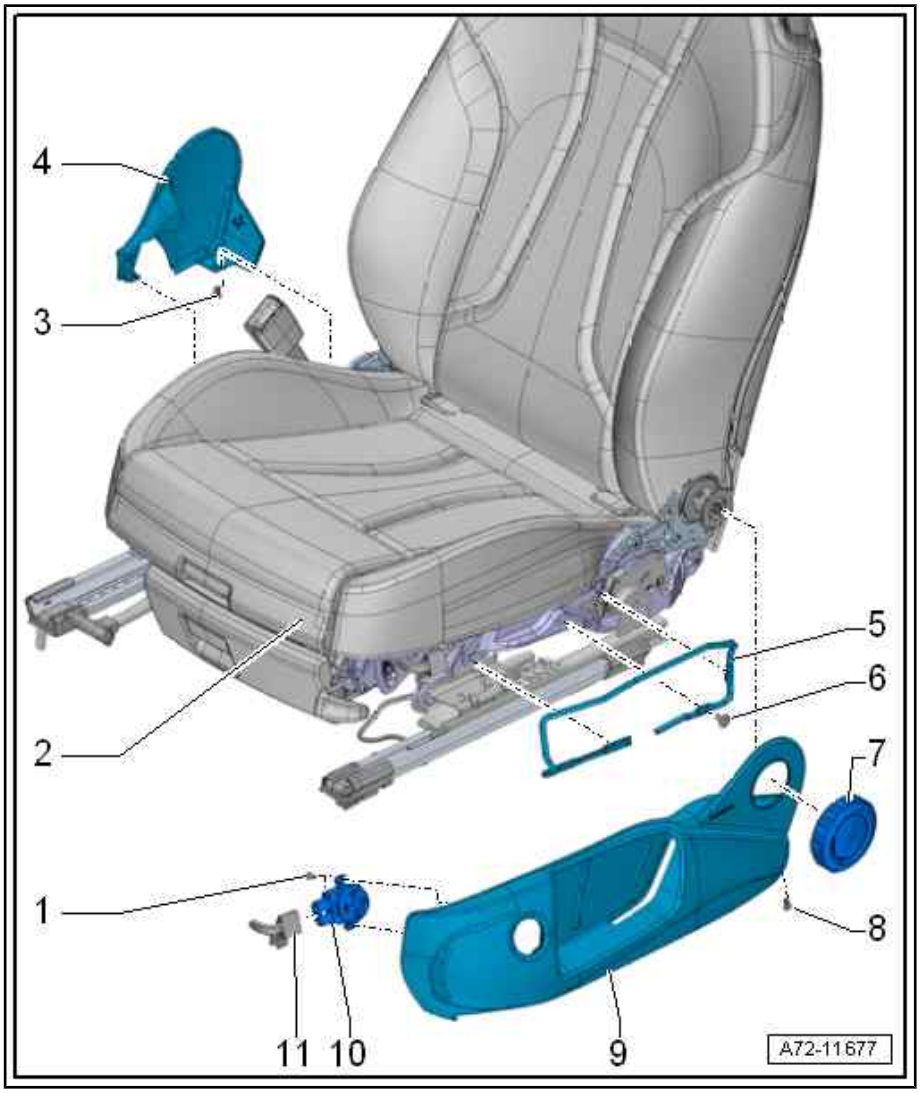
⇒ “2.6.7 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjustment motor”, page 389

⇒ “2.6.8 Exploded view - seat pan, seat depth adjuster”, page 390

⇒ “2.6.9 Exploded view - seat pan, seat pan frame with electric adjustment”, page 391

2.6.1 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with manual adjustment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 0.4 Nm

2 - Front seat

3 - Spreader rivet

4 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 446

5 - Bracket

- ❑ For seat side trim (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.22.3 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat with manual adjustment”, page 443

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

7 - Hand wheel

- ❑ For backrest adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 399
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

8 - Spreader rivet

9 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 443

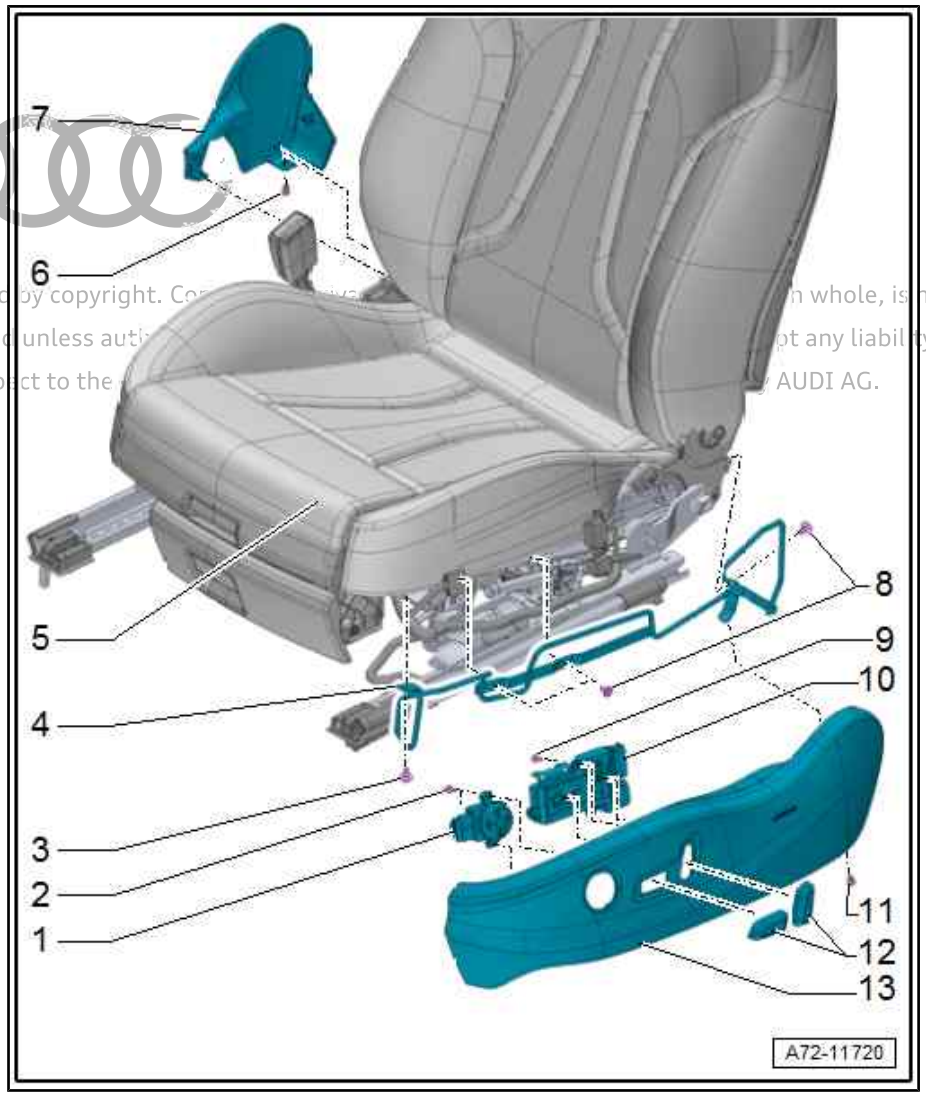
10 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 432

11 - Electrical connector

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with electric adjustment



1 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 432

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 0.4 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 7.5 Nm

4 - Bracket

- ❑ For seat side trim (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.22.4 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat with electric adjustment”, page 444

5 - Front seat

6 - Spreader rivet

7 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 446

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 0.4 Nm

10 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-

- ❑ With:

- ♦ Driver seat backrest adjustment switch - E96-
- ♦ Driver seat rake adjustment switch - E222-
- ♦ Driver seat longitudinal adjustment switch - E363-
- ♦ Driver seat height adjustment switch - E364-
  - ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471- with:
- ♦ Front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment switch - E64-
- ♦ Front passenger seat backrest adjustment switch - E98-
- ♦ Front passenger seat rake adjustment button - E334-
- ♦ Front passenger seat height adjustment switch - E365-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 445

Protected by copyright. Co... whole, is not permitted unless aut... any liability with respect to the ... AUDI AG.

11 - Spreader rivet

12 - Actuator

- ❑ For seat adjustment
- ❑ Clipped on
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ “2.22.5 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit E470 / E471 ”, page 445
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

13 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 444

2.6.3 Exploded view - seat pan, storage compartment

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

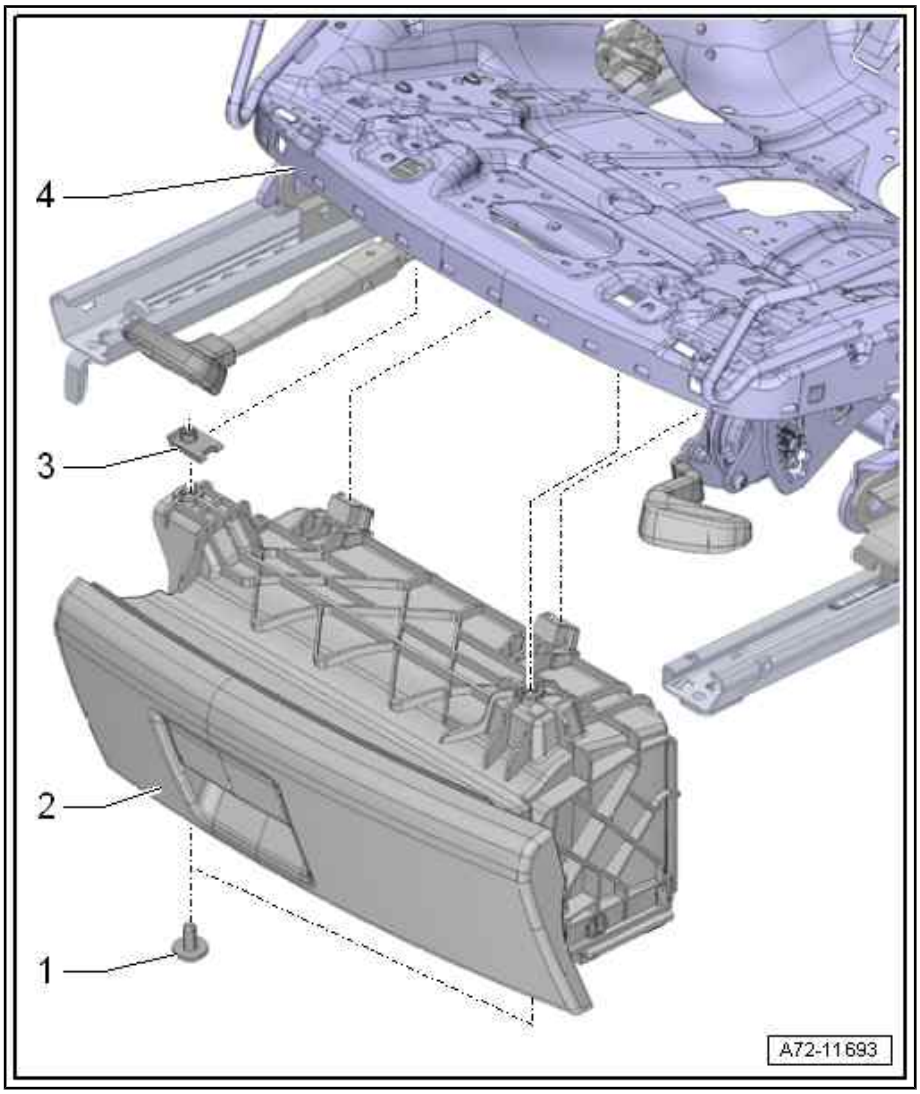
2 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ page 446
- ❑ Cannot be dismantled
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Speed nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Inserted in seat pan
- ❑ Renew speed nuts if damaged or deformed

4 - Seat pan



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6.4 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster

1 - Bolts
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

2 - Seat height adjuster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.20.1 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 433
- ❑ Tab must engage in lug on lever

3 - Bolts
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Note difference to length of bolt -item 6-
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

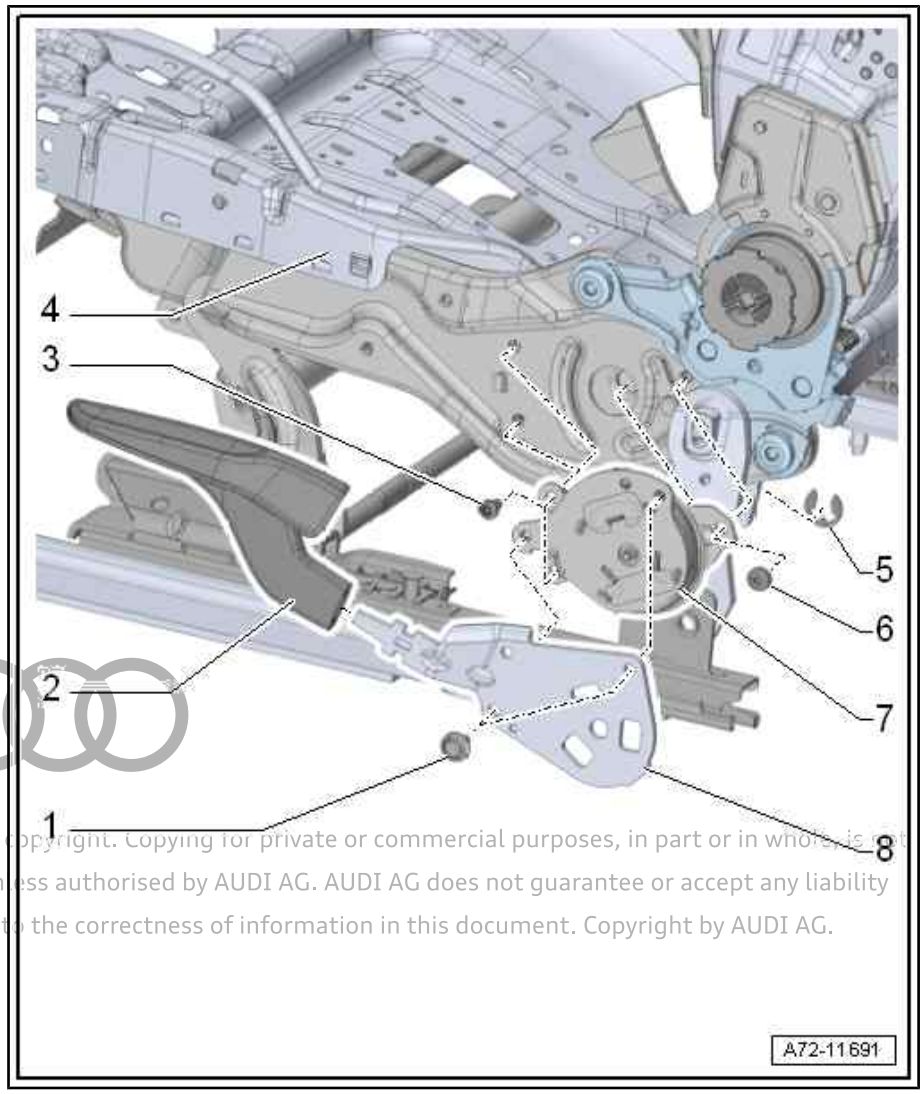
4 - Seat pan

5 - Securing clip
- ❑ Renew after removing

6 - Bolt
- ❑ Note difference to length of bolts -item 3-
- ❑ 10 Nm

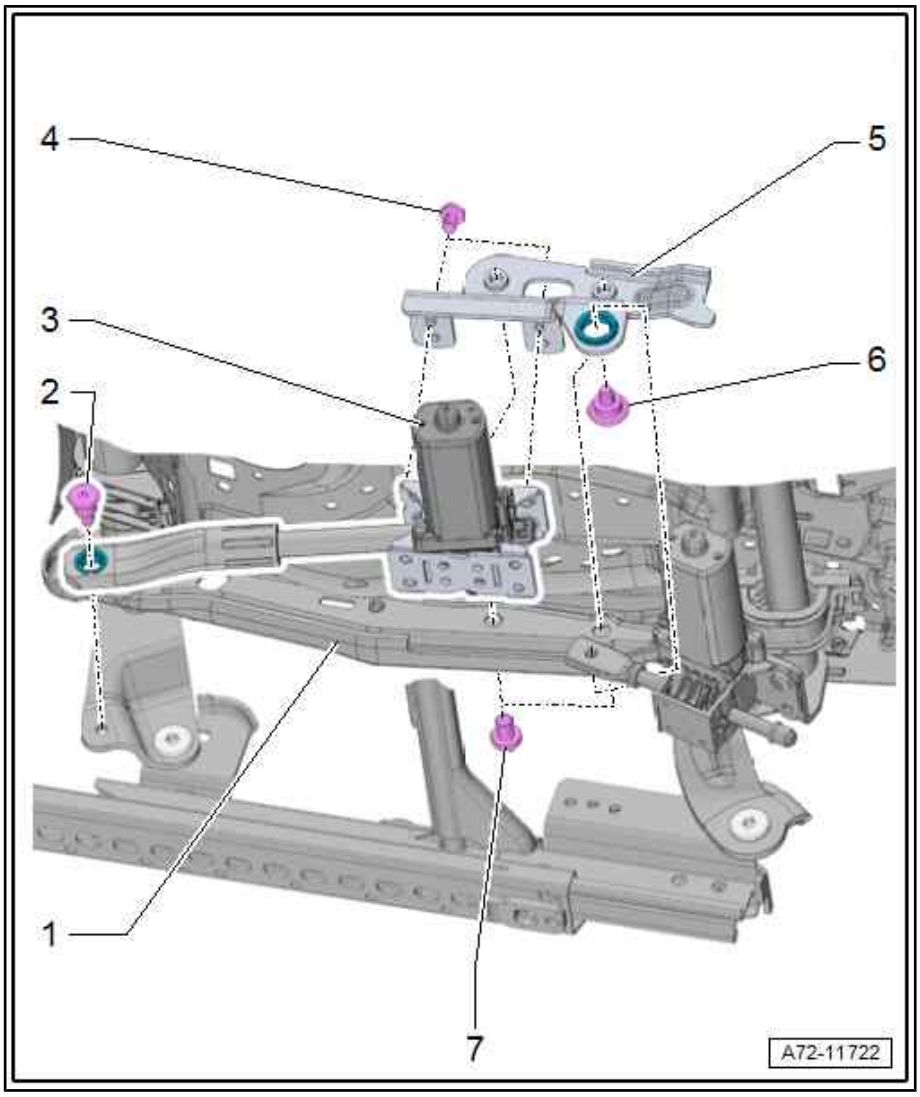
7 - Seat height adjustment unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 433

8 - Lever
- ❑ For seat height adjustment
- ❑ With lug for locking seat height adjuster



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6.5 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjustment motor



1 - Seat pan

2 - Bolt

> **Caution**
> *Bolt with left-hand thread.*

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 18 Nm

3 - Driver seat height adjustment motor - V245-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 435

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 10 Nm

5 - Bracket

- ❑ Bolted to seat pan

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 389

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 28 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster

1 - Seat rake adjustment handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 437

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Seat rake adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 438

4 - Seat pan

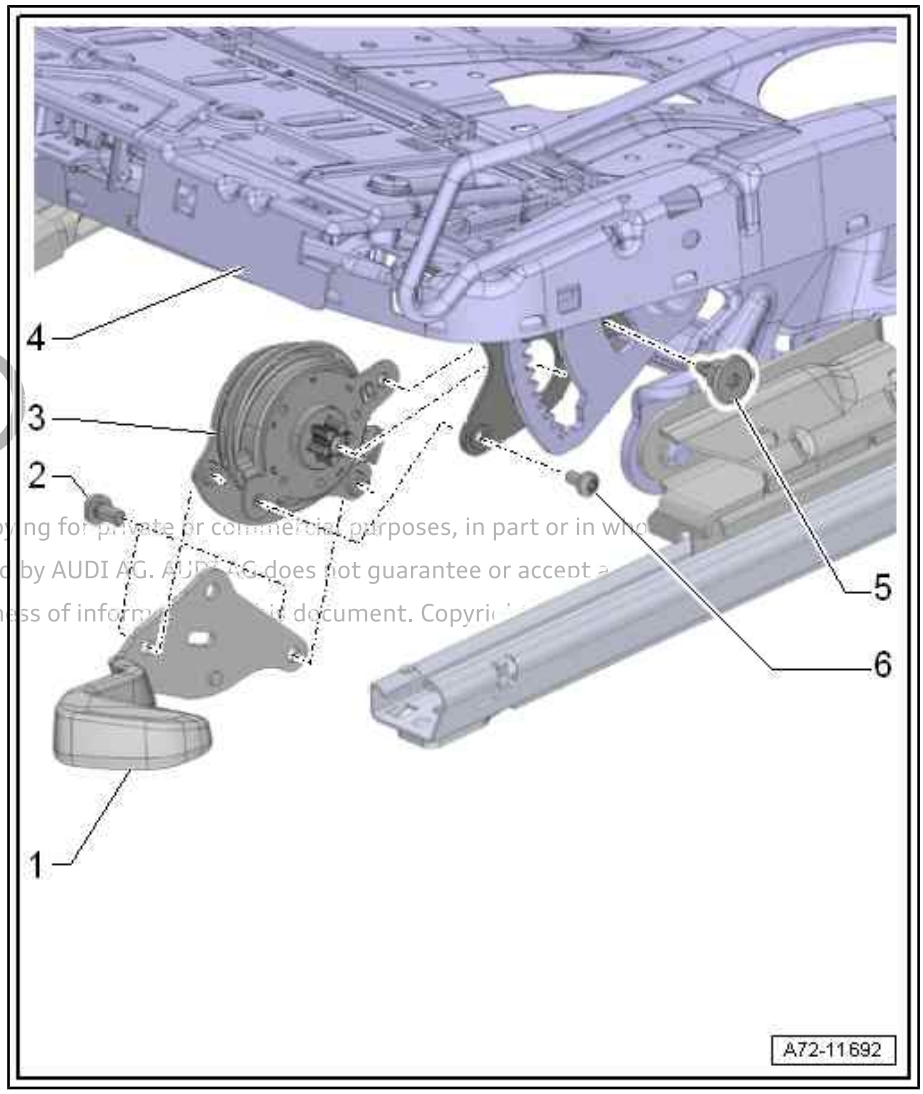
5 - Bolt

> **Caution**
> ***Bolt with left-hand thread.***

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 6 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 6.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6.7 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjustment motor

1 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 20 Nm

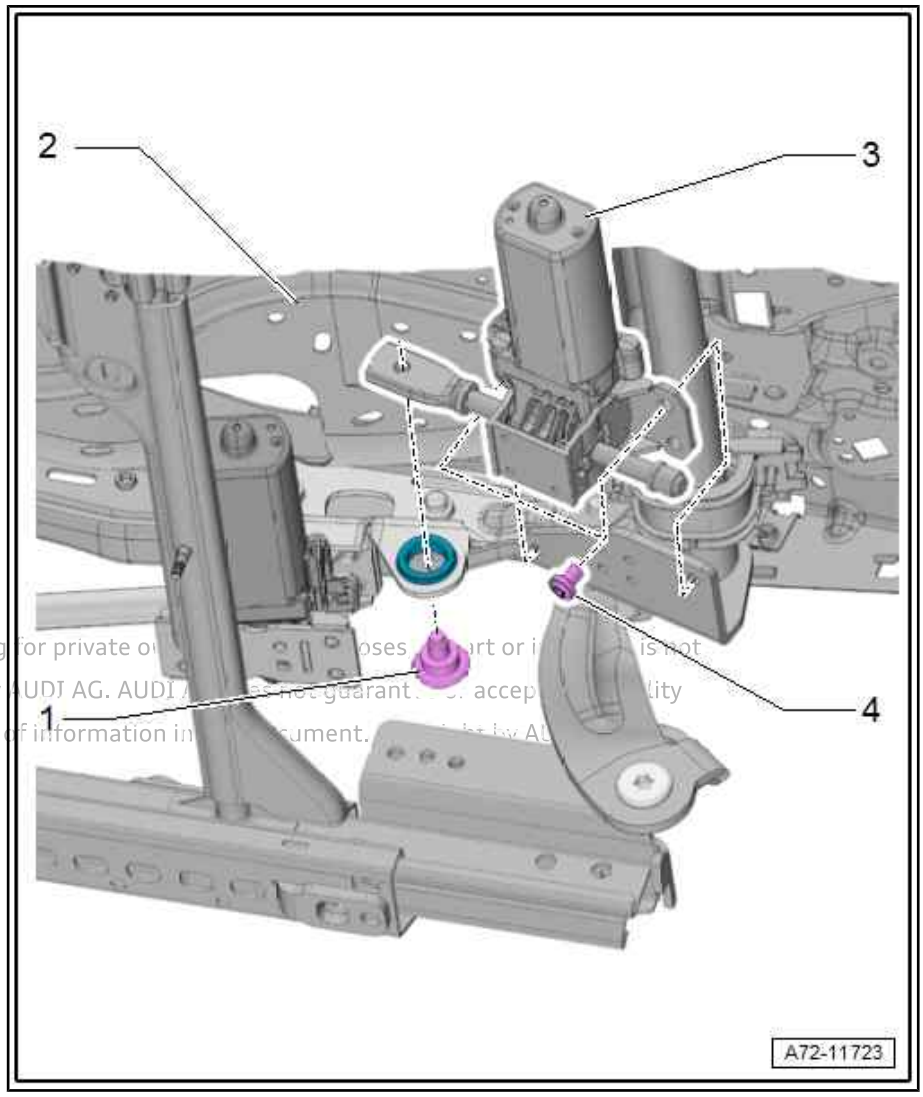
2 - Seat pan

3 - Driver seat rake adjustment motor - V243-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat rake adjustment motor - V244-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 438

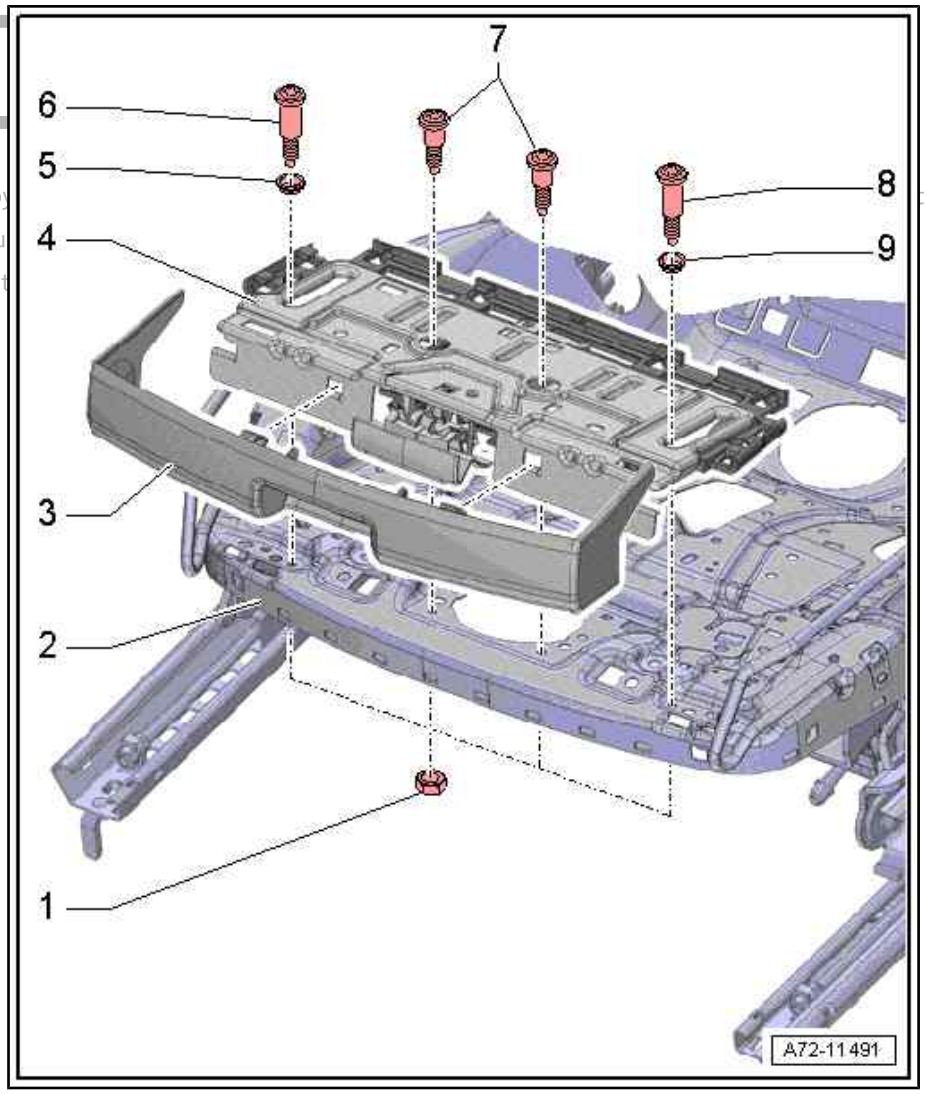
4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 10 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6.8 Exploded view - seat pan, seat depth adjuster



1 - Nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Renew after removing

2 - Sports seat
- ❑ With seat depth adjustment

3 - Trim
- ❑ For seat depth adjuster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.22.8 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster”, page 447
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

4 - Seat depth adjuster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 447

5 - Bush

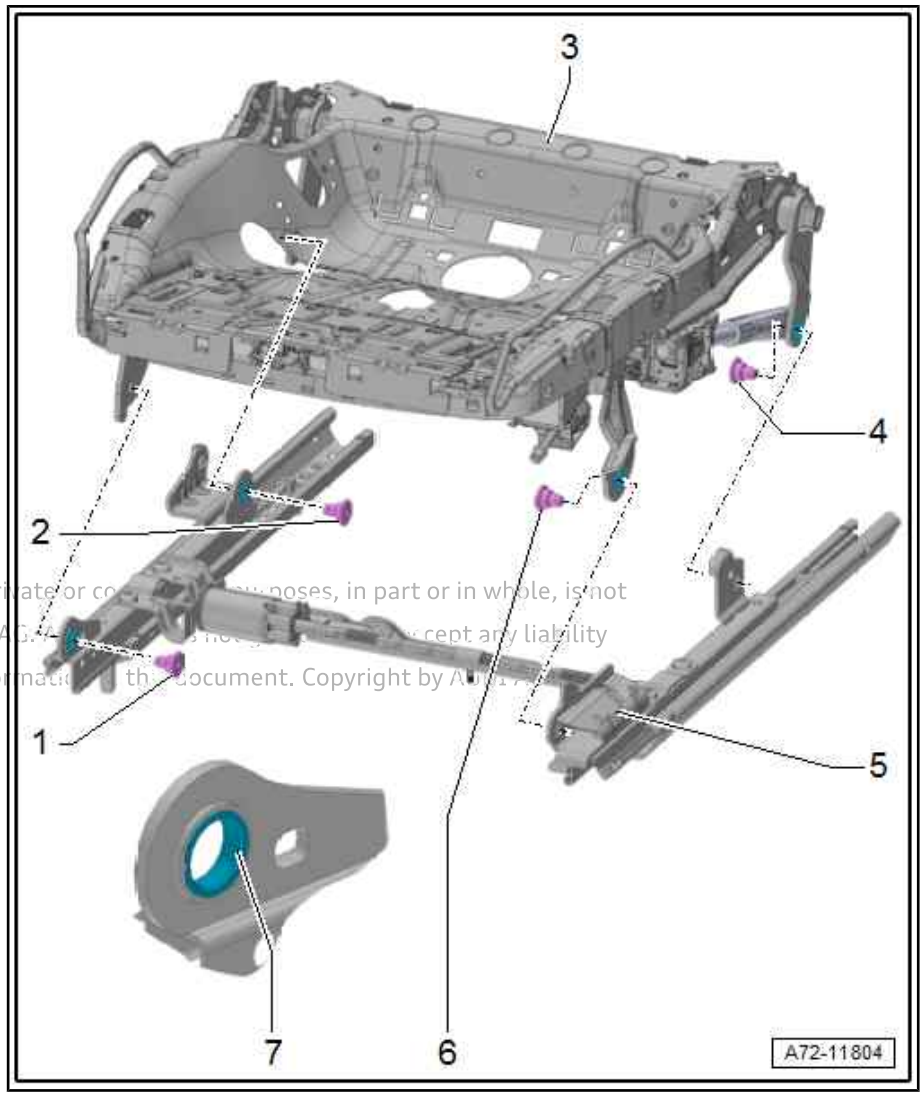
6 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 6 Nm

7 - Bolts
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 6 Nm

8 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 6 Nm

9 - Bush

2.6.9 Exploded view - seat pan, seat pan frame with electric adjustment



1 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 22 Nm

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 22 Nm

3 - Upper seat pan frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 452
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ When renewing, fit electrical and electronic components and wiring removed earlier in new upper frame

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 22 Nm

5 - Lower seat pan frame

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-
- ❑ Cannot be dismantled; motor and lower seat pan frame are pre-set at factory
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 454
- ❑ When renewing, fit belt buckle in new lower frame

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 22 Nm

7 - Bush

- ❑ Inserted in all pivot points
- ❑ Cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops
- ❑ Component must be renewed if bush is damaged

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.7 Removing and installing front seat

⇒ “2.7.1 Removing and installing front seat with manual/electric adjustment”, page 392

⇒ “2.7.2 Removing front seat with electric adjustment if seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective”, page 394

2.7.1 Removing and installing front seat with manual/electric adjustment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Protector - VAS 871 001- (not illustrated)

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Move head restraint to lowest possible position.

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

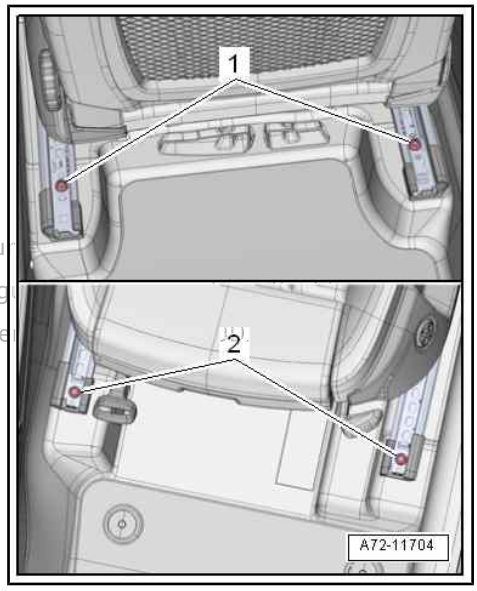
– Remove bolts -1- from rear of seat rail.

– Move front seat as far back and down as it will go.

– Remove bolts -2- from front of seat rail.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Tilt front seat to rear.



Copyright AUDI AG. All rights reserved. Any commercial use permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Note

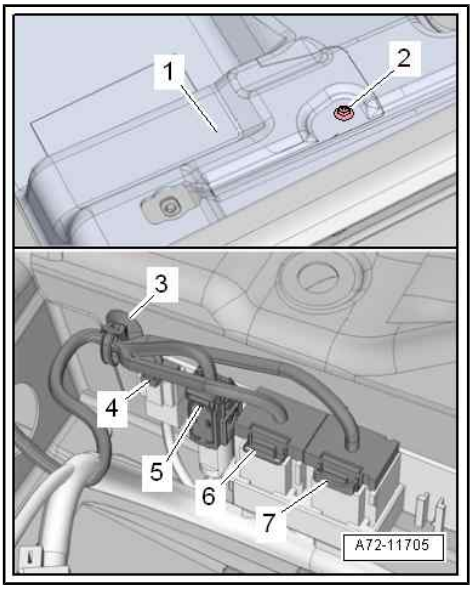
The connector point is located in the vehicle floor at the side member under the front section of the seat.

– Remove fastener -2- and fold open cut-out -1- in floor covering.

– Unclip cable retainer -3-.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Unplug electrical connectors at connector point in floor in sequence indicated (release retaining tabs):

7 - Power supply

6 - Equipment version with seat heating

5 - Side airbag

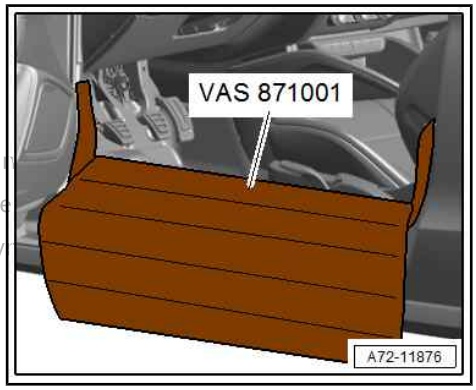
4 - Belt buckle

Note

Pin assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

– Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 396 .

– Before lifting out front seat, attach protector - VAS 871 001- as shown in illustration to protect sill panel trim.



• A second mechanic is required for removing the front seat.

– Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– With the help of a second mechanic, lift front seat into vehicle and position correctly.

• Front seat with manual adjustment: Seat rails of seat longitudinal adjuster must engage so that they are parallel.

– Tighten bolts -2- at front of seat rail.

– Detach airbag adapter - VAS 6282- and plug connector in at connector point in floor ⇒ page 396 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant... with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Cop...

WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.***
- ***Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Fit and tighten bolts -1- at rear of seat rail.

Note

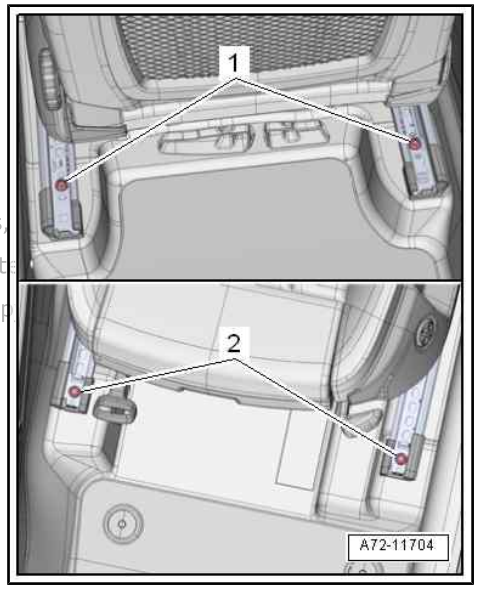
If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view - front seat", page 367

2.7.2 Removing front seat with electric adjustment if seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Protector - VAS 871 001- (not illustrated)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Checking seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31-

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.

Note

To avoid unnecessary repair costs, check the electrical/electronic components and wiring before removing the front seat any further.

– Perform the following checks:

- ♦ Check fuse ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- ♦ Check voltage at connector point and perform Fault Finding if necessary ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- ♦ Check voltage at seat longitudinal adjustment motor ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- ♦ Check voltage at seat adjustment operating unit and perform Fault Finding if necessary ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– If fuse is defective, it must be renewed ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– Repair or renew wire if there is no voltage ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– If operating unit -E470- / -E471- is defective, it must be renewed ⇒ page 445 .

– If control unit -J810- / -J720- is defective, it must be renewed ⇒ page 456 (not always fitted).

– If seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective, lower seat pan frame must be renewed ⇒ page 454 .

Removing if seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- is defective

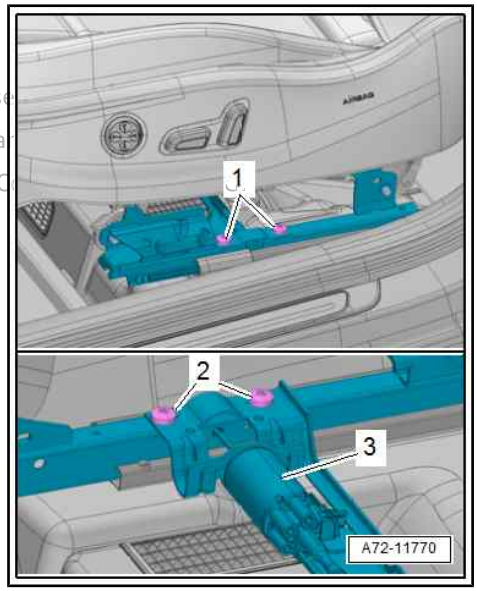
WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Unplug electrical connectors from connector point in floor and plug in airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 396 .

– Depending on equipment version: Remove storage compartment (if necessary) ⇒ page 446 .
– If necessary, unclip control unit for seat functions from bracket ⇒ page 456 .
– Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.
– Unscrew accessible bolts for seat rails at console.
– Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- and remove defective seat longitudinal adjustment motor -3- with bracket.
– Push front seat towards front/rear and unscrew accessible bolts for seat rails at console.

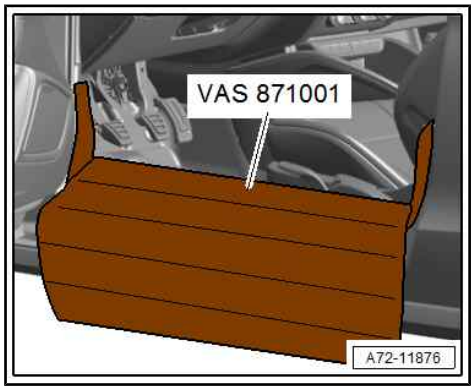


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Before lifting out front seat, attach protector - VAS 871 001- as shown in illustration to protect sill panel trim.

• A second mechanic is required for removing the front seat.

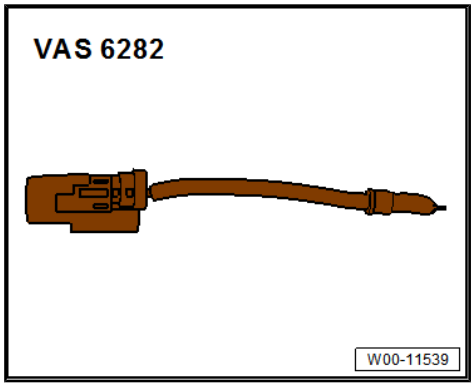
– Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.
– Renew lower seat pan frame with seat longitudinal adjustment motor ⇒ page 454 .



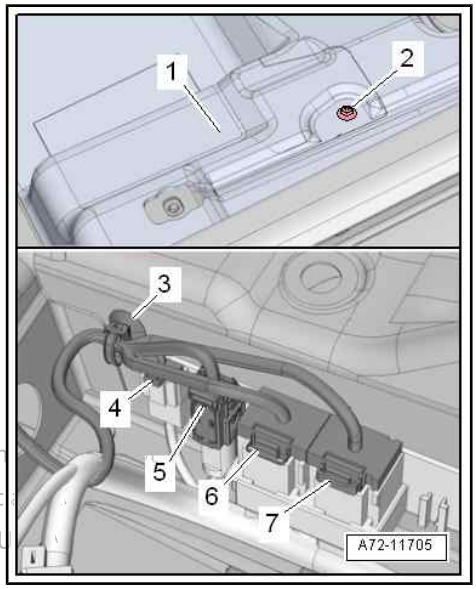
2.8 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Airbag adapter - VAS 6282-



Unplugging airbag connector



– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.
– Remove fastener -2- and fold open cut-out -1- in floor covering.
– Unclip cable retainer -3-.

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

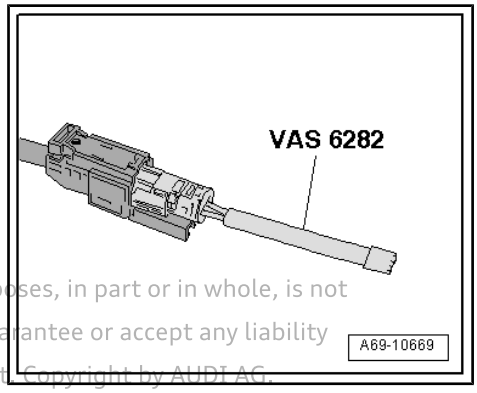
– Release retaining tab and unplug electrical connector -5- for side airbag at connector point.

7 - Power supply

6 - Equipment version with seat heating

4 - Belt buckle

– Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connection for side airbag.



Caution

Leave airbag adapter - VAS 6282- connected to seat until seat has been re-installed.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Make sure airbag adapter engages properly.

Plugging in airbag connector

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Plug in airbag connectors in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

2.9 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand

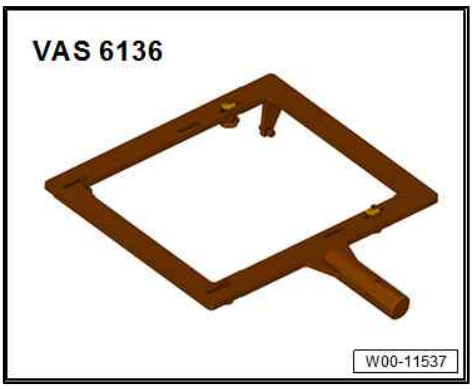
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or ... not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept ... liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI ...



- Seat repair stand - VAS 6136-



Procedure

- Front seat removed from vehicle

– Attach seat repair stand - VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095- .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- .

2.10 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit

⇒ “2.10.1 Removing and installing backrest adjuster knob”, page 399

⇒ “2.10.2 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor V45 / V46 ”, page 400

2.10.1 Removing and installing backrest adjuster knob

Special tools and workshop equipment required

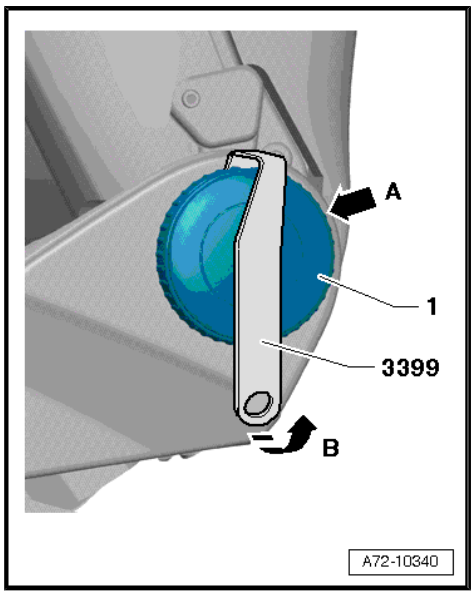
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or assume any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Assembly tool - 3399-



Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
– Turn backrest adjuster knob -1- until detent is visible from rear -arrow A-. Use a torch if necessary.
– Hook assembly tool - 3399- into detent and prise off adjuster knob -arrow B-.
– Turn backrest adjuster knob a further 120 ° and repeat procedure.
– Detach backrest adjuster knob.



Installing

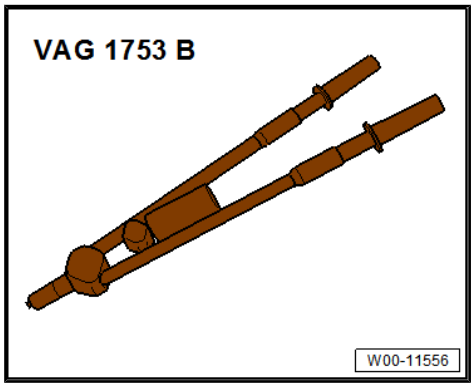
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.1 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with manual adjustment", page 382

2.10.2 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor -V45- / -V46-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



- Drill
- Safety goggles
- Locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

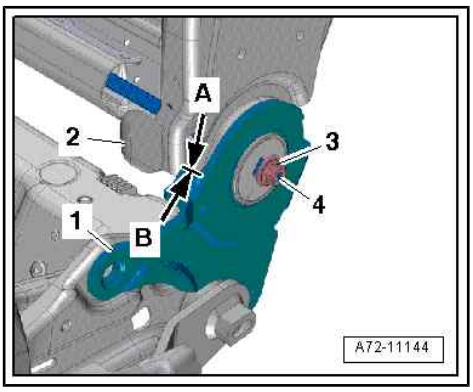
Removing

WARNING

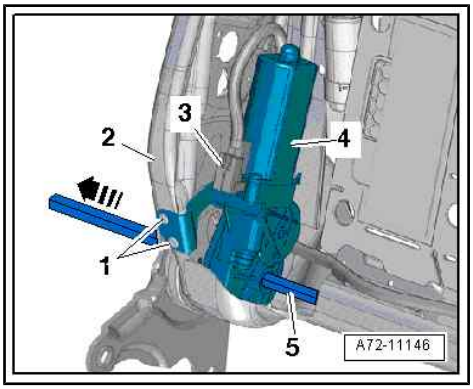
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 446 .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 444 .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 405 .
– Mark angular position of backrest fittings (left and right) on front seat as follows:
– Use a waterproof felt-tip pen to make mark -arrow B- on outer backrest frame -2- directly at front edge -arrow A- of fitting -1-.
– Unscrew nut -3- from adjuster shaft -4-.



– Detach padding from outer backrest frame in area of backrest fitting ⇒ page 494 .
– Pull adjuster shaft -5- out of outer backrest frame -2- -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connector -3- at backrest adjustment motor.



Note

As protection against metal swarf, place plastic sheeting between cover and outer backrest frame.

WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

- *Put on safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivets -1- and detach backrest adjustment motor -4- with bracket.

Installing

WARNING

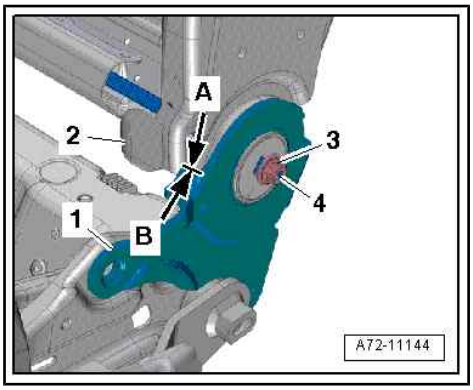
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

Reproduction for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. The author does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Check position of outer backrest frame -2- and fitting -1- on left and right side of backrest.

• The outer backrest frame must be in the position marked before removal (on left and right side) -arrows A and B-.

– If the outer backrest frame is not in the position marked before removal (on left and right side), make adjustments as required.



– Fit backrest adjustment motor -3- with bracket.

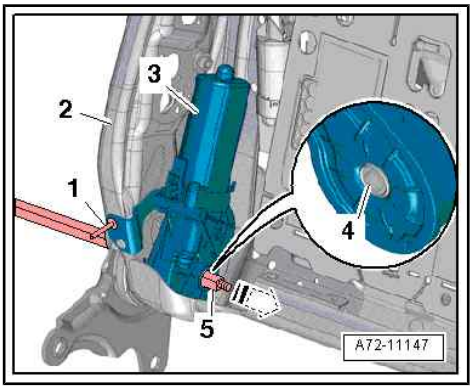
• It must still be possible to move the backrest adjustment motor.

– First slide adjuster shaft through fitting (tunnel side) as far as mounting -4- in backrest adjustment motor.

– Check that profiles of inserted adjuster shaft and mounting in backrest adjustment motor are in line.

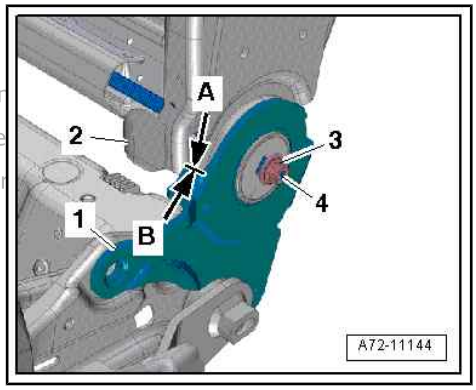
– If this is not the case, apply an external 12 V power supply to backrest adjustment motor -3- and rotate mounting until profiles of shaft and mounting are in line.

– Push adjuster shaft -5- through mounting in backrest adjustment motor as far as stop (sill side) -arrow-.



– Fit new nut -3- on adjuster shaft -4- and tighten.

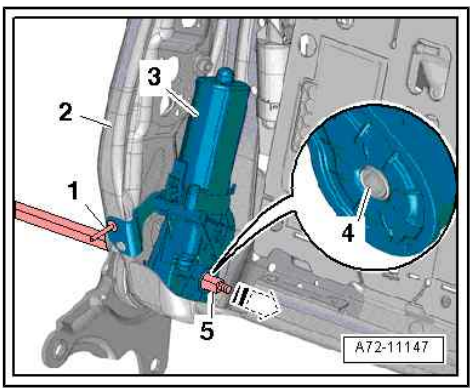
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyr



– Rivet -1- bracket with motor to outer backrest frame -2-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.3.4 Exploded view - front backrest adjustment motor”, page 375



2.11 Removing and installing front seat backrest

⇒ “2.11.1 Removing and installing front seat backrest”, page 404

⇒ “2.11.2 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - standard seat/sports seat”, page 405

⇒ “2.11.3 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - super sports seat”, page 406

⇒ “2.11.4 Removing and installing wire mat”, page 408

2.11.1 Removing and installing front seat backrest

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .

– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 446 .

– Remove seat side trim (sill side):

♦ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ page 443

♦ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 444

– Unplug electrical connectors of wiring harnesses to backrest and move disconnected wiring harnesses clear ⇒ page 440 .

Note

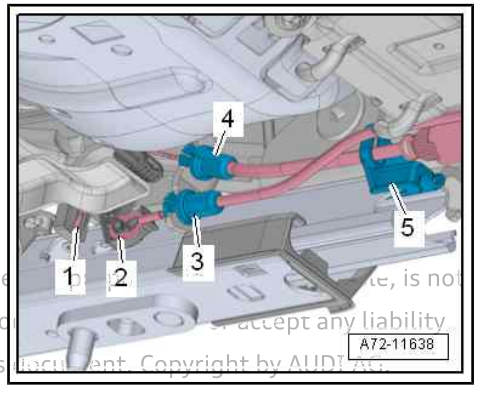
There is a continuous wiring harness between the connector point and the side airbag.

Equipment version with backrest release mechanism/Easy Entry system:

– Disengage support brackets -3 and 4- for Bowden cables for Easy Entry system from bracket on seat pan.

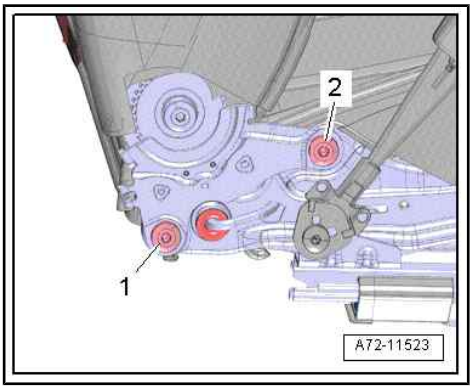
– Disengage Bowden cables -1 and 2- for Easy Entry system from seat rail release mechanism.

– Unclip retainer -5- for Bowden cable from seat rail.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do... accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this ...ent. Copyright by AUDI AG.

All seat versions (continued):



– Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- (left and right) from backrest fitting.
– Detach backrest from seat pan. To do so, carefully pull electrical wiring harness for side airbag and, depending on equipment version, all other wiring harnesses going to backrest out of seat pan.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

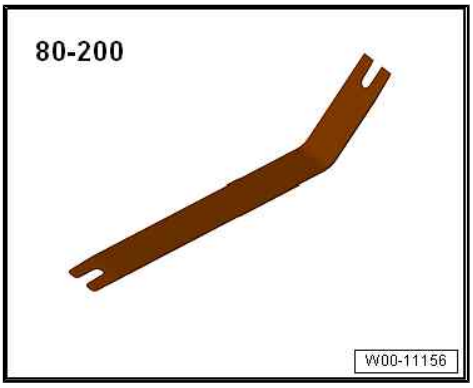
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest", page 372

2.11.2 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - standard seat/sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



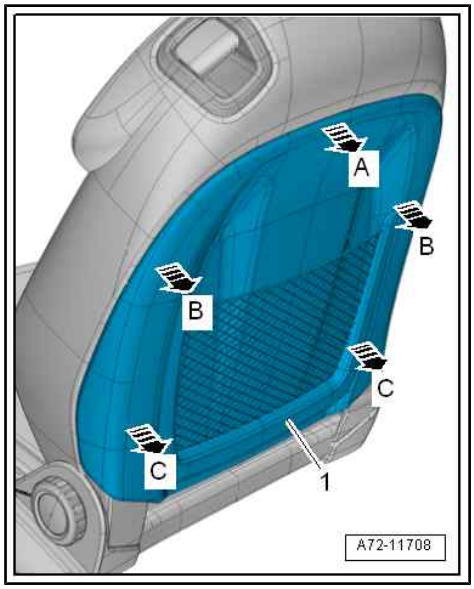
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 430 .

– Starting at top, carefully unclip backrest cover panel -1- from outer backrest frame -arrow A- using removal lever - 80-200- .

– Release retaining tabs at sides -arrows B and C- and lift backrest cover panel off backrest.



Installing

– Insert retaining hooks of backrest cover panel at bottom of outer backrest frame.

– Swivel backrest cover panel up and engage retaining tabs at sides and top.

– Make sure that side retaining tabs engage properly with outer backrest frame and that retaining hooks (bottom) are properly fitted over outer backrest frame.

– Press backrest cover panel firmly onto backrest so that retaining tabs engage audibly.

– Check whether backrest cover panel is properly engaged.

• It should not be possible to pull backrest cover panel off at sides and top.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.3.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat", page 372

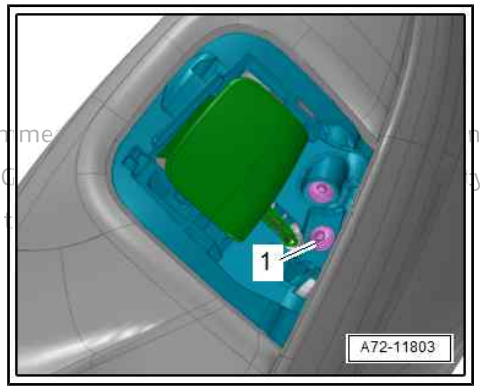
2.11.3 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - super sports seat

Removing

Equipment version with backrest release mechanism/Easy Entry system:

– Remove trim for backrest release mechanism ⇒ page 412 .

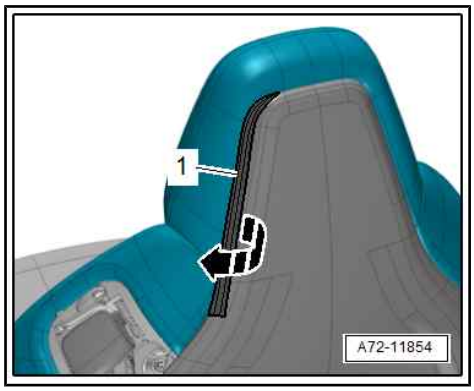
– Remove bolt -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

All seat versions (continued):

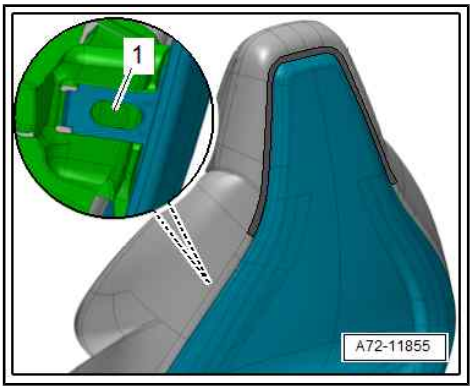
– Prise fastening strip -1- for cover out of backrest cover panel and detach from backrest cover panel in areas around head restraint -arrow-.



Equipment version without backrest release mechanism/Easy Entry system:

– Carefully pull cover with padding towards front as far as possible until retaining tab is accessible.

– Press retaining tab -1- down using a screwdriver and pull backrest cover panel out of bracket.



All seat versions (continued):

– Starting at top, unclip backrest cover panel -1- from head restraint -arrow A-.

– Release retaining tabs at sides -arrows B- and lift backrest cover panel off backrest.

Installing

– Insert retaining hooks of backrest cover panel at bottom of outer backrest frame.

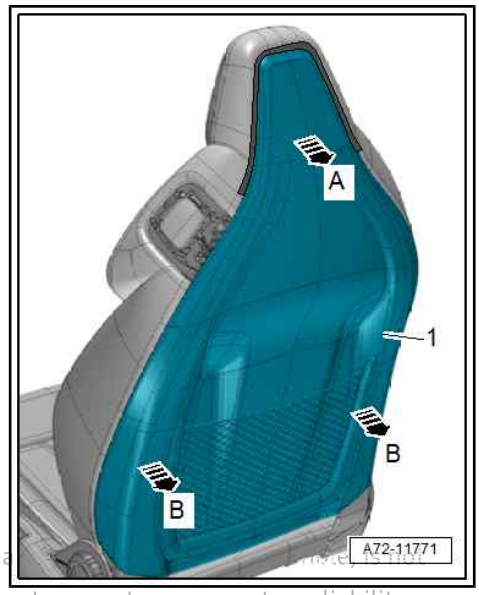
– Swivel backrest cover panel up and engage retaining hooks at sides and top.

– Make sure that side retaining tabs engage properly with outer backrest frame and that retaining hooks (bottom) are properly fitted over outer backrest frame.

– Press backrest cover panel firmly onto backrest so that retaining tabs engage audibly.

– Check whether backrest cover panel is properly engaged.

• It should not be possible to pull backrest cover panel off at sides and top.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

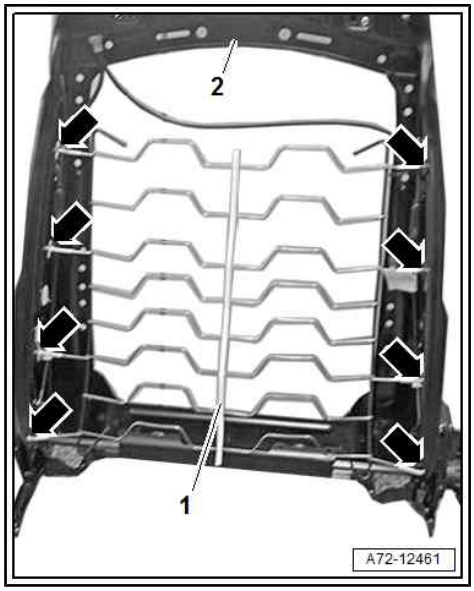
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.3.2 Exploded view - front seat backrest, super sports seat”, page 373

2.11.4 Removing and installing wire mat

Removing



WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 494 .
– If fitted, cut through cable tie(s).
– Unhook wire mat -1- from outer backrest frame -2- at locations indicated in illustration -arrows- and remove.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unauthorized use may result in civil and criminal penalties. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

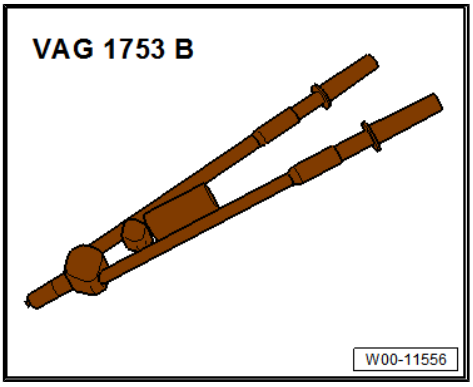
If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.3.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support", page 374

2.12 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor -V125- / -V126- / -V129- / -V130-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



- Drill
- Safety goggles

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

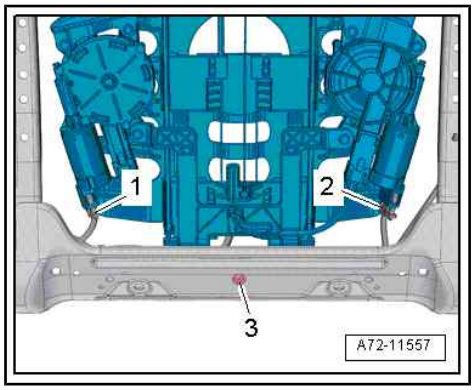
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .

– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 494 .

– Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2- at longitudinal and height adjustment motors of lumbar support.



WARNING

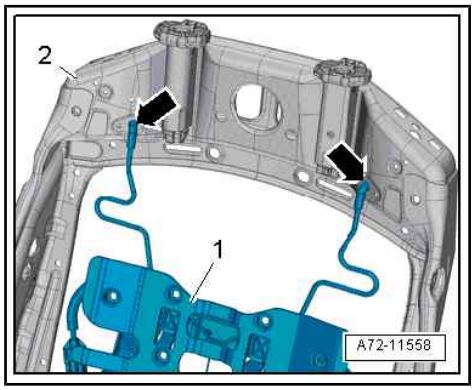
Risk of eye injuries.

- *Put on safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivet -3-.

– Cut through cable tie for Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism.

– Swivel lumbar support -1- forwards at bottom, disengage from top of outer backrest frame -2- -arrows- and detach.



Installing

– Engage lumbar support -1- at top of outer backrest frame -2- -arrows- and swivel to rear at bottom.

– Rivet lumbar support to outer backrest frame.

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.3.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support”, page 374

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.13 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism

⇒ “2.13.1 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism - standard seat/sports seat”, page 411

⇒ “2.13.2 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism - super sports seat”, page 412

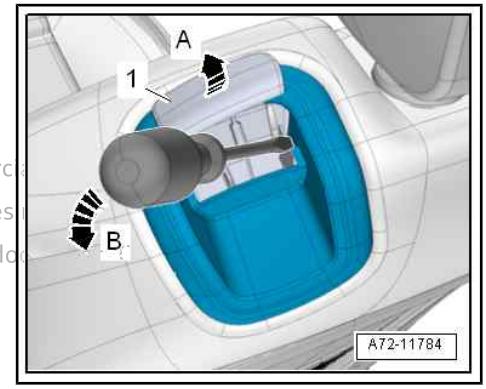
2.13.1 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism - standard seat/sports seat

Removing

– Pull operating lever up -arrow A-.

– Insert flat-bladed screwdriver between trim and operating lever, as shown in illustration.

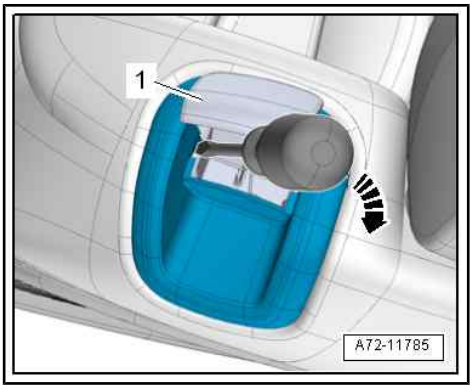
– Release retaining hook (right-side) -arrow B-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

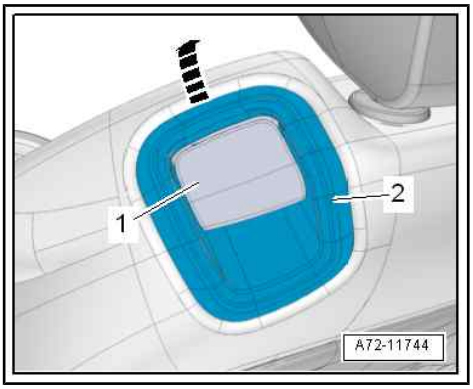
– Keep holding operating lever -1- up and insert flat-bladed screwdriver between trim and operating lever, as shown in illustration.

– Release retaining hook (left-side) -arrow-.



– Move operating lever -1- back to rest position.

– Disengage trim -2- in direction of -arrow- by hand; if necessary, press against opposite side.



Installing

– Pull operating lever slightly up, guide trim over operating lever and engage rear detent in backrest release mechanism.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system”, page 376

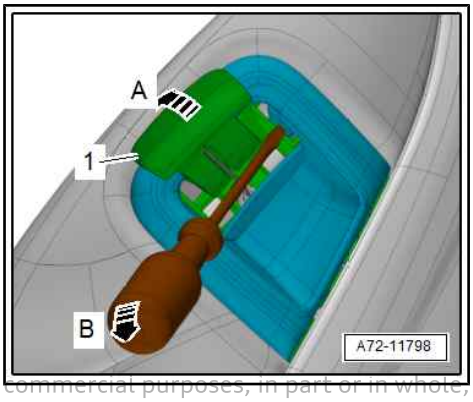
2.13.2 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism - super sports seat

Removing

– Pull operating lever -1- upwards -arrow A-.

– Insert flat-bladed screwdriver between trim and operating lever, as shown in illustration.

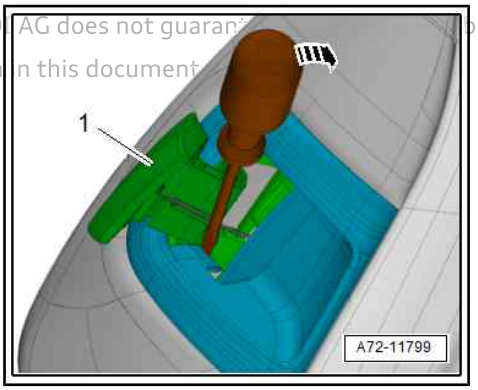
– Release retaining hook (right-side) -arrow B-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

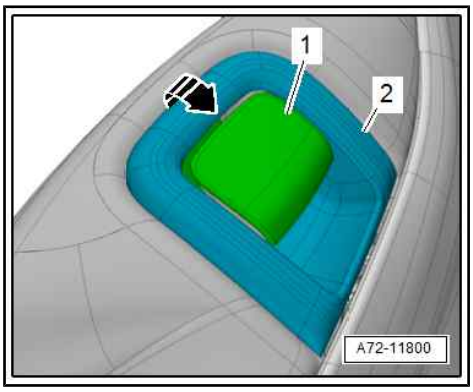
– Keep holding operating lever -1- up and insert flat-bladed screwdriver between trim and operating lever, as shown in illustration.

– Release retaining hook (left-side) -arrow-.



– Move operating lever -1- back to rest position.

– Disengage trim -2- in direction of -arrow- by hand; if necessary, press against opposite side.



Installing

– Pull operating lever slightly up, guide trim over operating lever and engage rear detent in backrest release mechanism.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.4.2 Exploded view - trim and backrest release mechanism, super sports seat”, page 378

2.14 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism

⇒ “2.14.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism - standard seat/sports seat”, page 413

⇒ “2.14.2 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism - super sports seat”, page 415

⇒ “2.14.3 Removing and installing bracket for backrest release mechanism - super sports seat”, page 415

⇒ “2.14.4 Removing and installing Bowden connecting cable - standard seat/sports seat”, page 416

⇒ “2.14.5 Removing and installing mounting for backrest release mechanism”, page 418

⇒ “2.14.6 Removing and installing Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism”, page 420

⇒ “2.14.7 Adjusting Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism”, page 423

⇒ “2.14.8 Removing and installing Bowden cable B for Easy Entry system”, page 424

⇒ “2.14.9 Removing and installing Bowden cable A for Easy Entry system”, page 426

⇒ “2.14.10 Adjusting Bowden cable A for Easy Entry system”, page 428

The reproduction, processing for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.14.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism - standard seat/sports seat

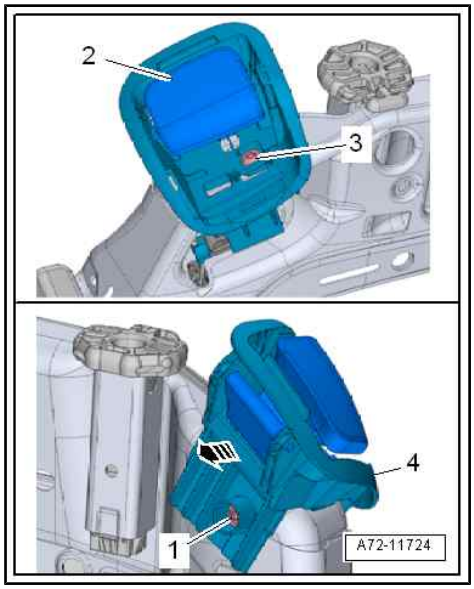
Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Remove trim for backrest release mechanism ⇒ page 411 .
– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 494 .
– Disengage Bowden connecting cable ⇒ page 416 .

– Pull operating lever -2- up, press it forwards as far as stop and unscrew bolt -3-.
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Disengage backrest release mechanism -4- from outer backrest frame in direction of -arrow- and detach.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system”, page 376

2.14.2 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism - super sports seat

Removing

– Remove trim for backrest release mechanism ⇒ page 412 .

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 406 .

– Remove padding from rear seat backrest in area of backrest release mechanism (it is not necessary to remove seat) ⇒ page 496 .

– Swivel mounting -1- for backrest release mechanism upwards as far as stop and hold in this position.

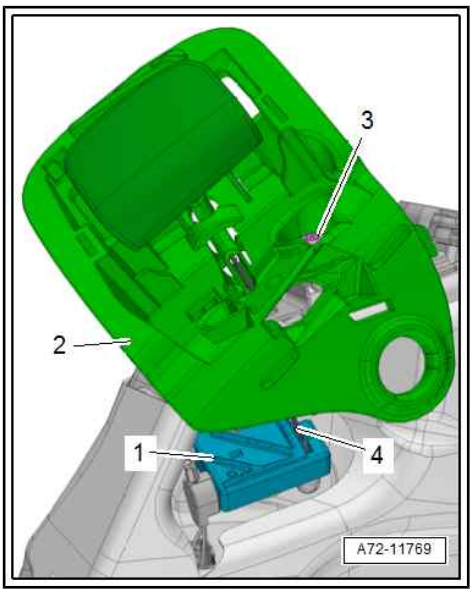
– Disengage Bowden connecting cable -4- from mounting.

– Remove bolt -3-.

– In area of backrest release mechanism, carefully pull backrest cover with padding forwards as far as possible.

– Press backrest release mechanism -2- forwards as far as it will go, and at the same time disengage it at outer backrest frame.

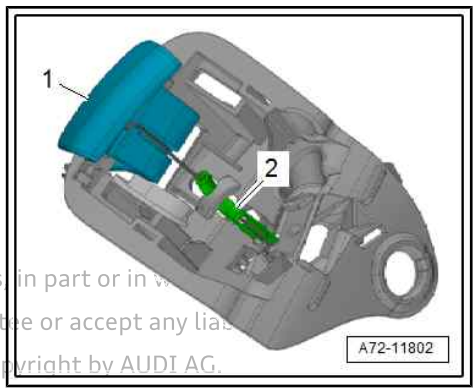
– Swivel backrest release mechanism forwards, release from bracket and detach.



– Swivel operating lever -1- upwards as far as it will go.

– Disengage Bowden connecting cable at operating lever.

– Unclip Bowden connecting cable -2- at backrest release mechanism and remove.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system”, page 376

Copyright by AUDI AG.
Reproduction or copying or processing for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.14.3 Removing and installing bracket for backrest release mechanism - super sports seat

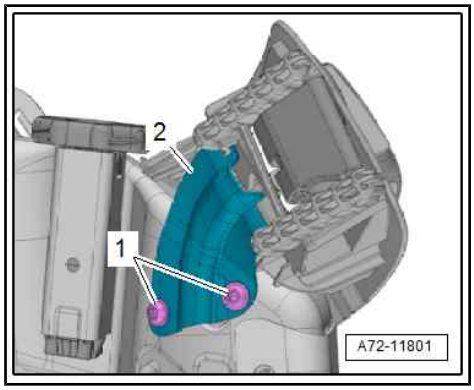
Removing

– Remove trim for backrest release mechanism ⇒ page 412 .

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 406 .

– Remove padding from rear seat backrest in area of backrest release mechanism (it is not necessary to remove seat) ⇒ page 496 .

– Carefully pull backrest cover with padding forwards as far as possible in area of bracket until bolts for bracket are accessible.
– Remove bolts -1-.
– Disengage bracket -2- at backrest release mechanism and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.4 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system", page 376

2.14.4 Removing and installing Bowden connecting cable - standard seat/sports seat

Removing

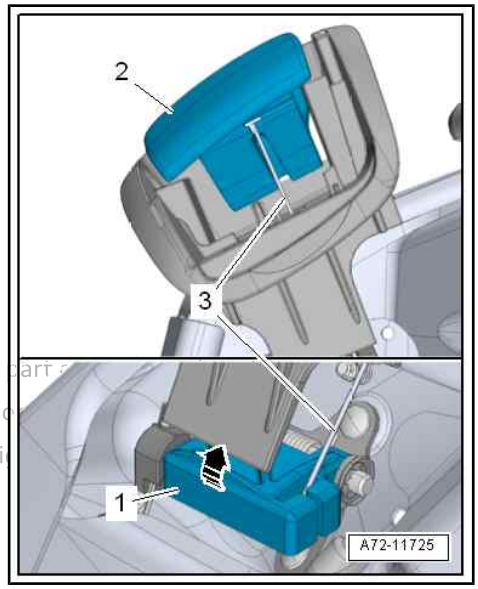
WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Reproduction for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Remove trim for backrest release mechanism ⇒ page 411 .
– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 494 .

– Swivel mounting -1- for backrest release mechanism upwards as far as stop -arrow- and hold in this position.
– Disengage Bowden connecting cable -3- from mounting.
– Swivel operating lever -2- upwards as far as it will go.
– Disengage Bowden connecting cable at operating lever and take out cable.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

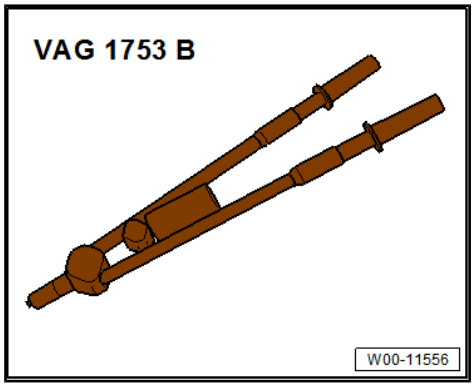
If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.4 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system", page 376

2.14.5 Removing and installing mounting for backrest release mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



- Drill
- Safety goggles

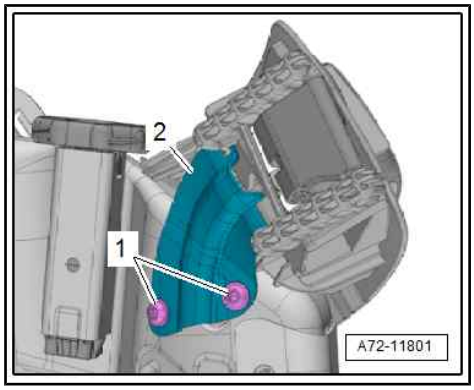
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

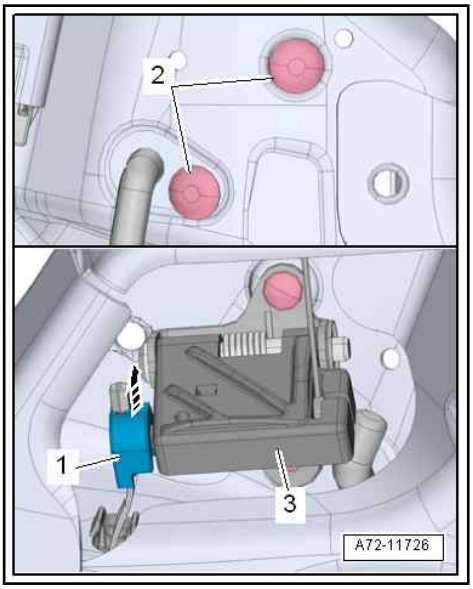
WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Remove trim for backrest release mechanism ⇒ page 411 .
– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 494 .
– Standard seat/sports seat: Remove backrest release mechanism ⇒ page 413 .
– Super sports seat: Remove bolts -1-, disengage bracket -2- at backrest release mechanism and detach.



– Press Bowden cable end piece -1- off mounting for backrest release mechanism in direction of -arrow- using a screwdriver.
– Disengage Bowden connecting cable at mounting.



WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

- *Put on safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivets -2- on outer backrest frame.
– Detach mounting -3- for backrest release mechanism from outer backrest frame.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.4 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system", page 376

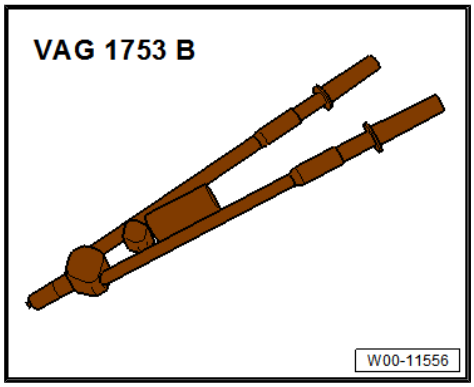
2.14.6 Removing and installing Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism

Note

The Bowden cables (left and right) cannot be renewed separately.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



- Drill
- Safety goggles

Removing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Remove trim for backrest release mechanism ⇒ page 411 .
– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 494 .

Note

It is not necessary to take out the wire mat or lumbar support to remove and install the Bowden cables.

– Use pliers to disengage eyelet -3- from pin -4- for backrest release mechanism (both sides).

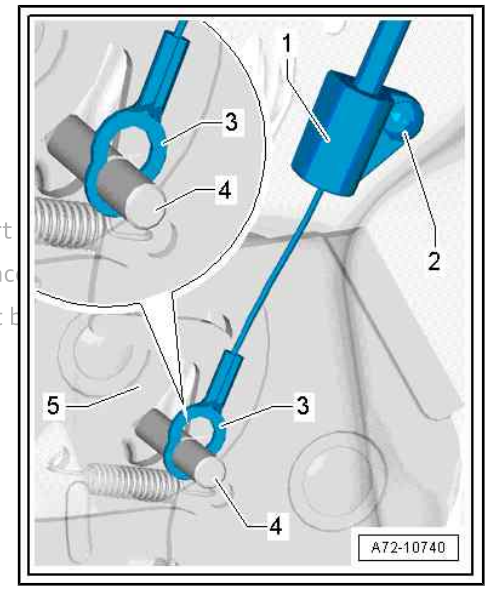
WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

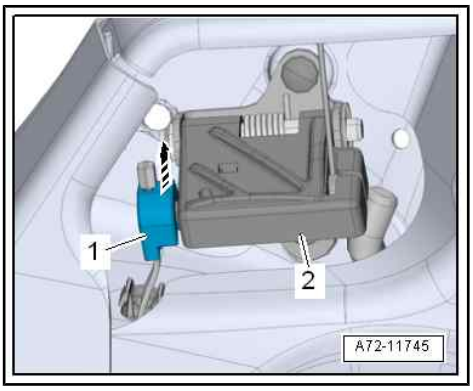
- ***Put on safety goggles.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac with regard to the correctness or information in this document. Copyright b

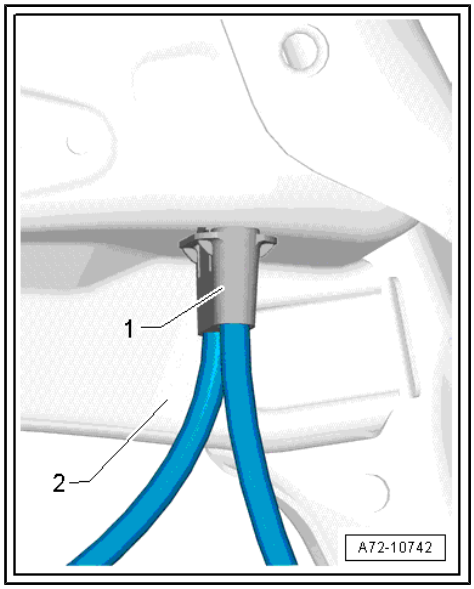
– Drill out rivet -2- on both sides and detach retainer -1- from outer backrest frame -5-.



– Press Bowden cable end piece -1- off mounting -2- for backrest release mechanism in direction of -arrow- using a screwdriver.



– Unclip support bracket -1- from outer backrest frame -2-.
– Thread Bowden cable end piece through opening for support in outer backrest frame.
– Cut through cable ties and take Bowden cables out of outer backrest frame.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.4 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system", page 376

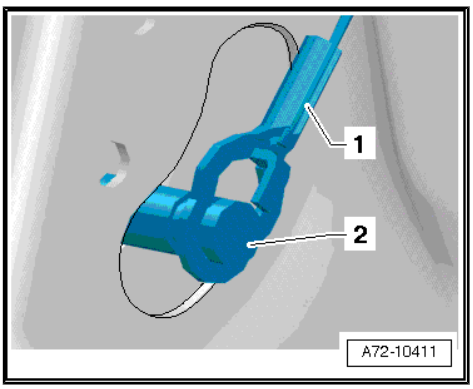
2.14.7 Adjusting Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism

WARNING

Make sure that backrest is in engaged position, as it could otherwise tilt forwards unintentionally.

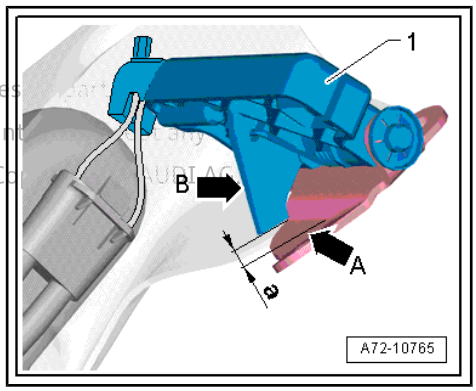
The following conditions must be met for the adjustment:

- Backrest padding must be removed.
- Backrest release mechanism -2- at bottom stop (backrest locked)

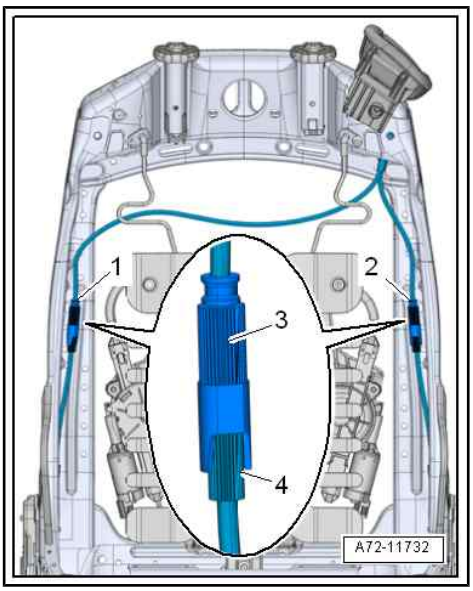


– Swivel mounting -1- for backrest release mechanism upwards until distance between stop surface of outer backrest frame -arrow A- and stop of mounting -arrow B- is -a- = 2 ... 4 mm.
– Lock mounting for backrest release mechanism in this position, for example with an angled metal bar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part
of this file is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co



– Adjust Bowden cables via both adjusters -1 and 2-.
– To adjust, turn upper part -3- and lower part -4- in opposite directions.
– Adjust Bowden cables so that there is neither play nor tension.

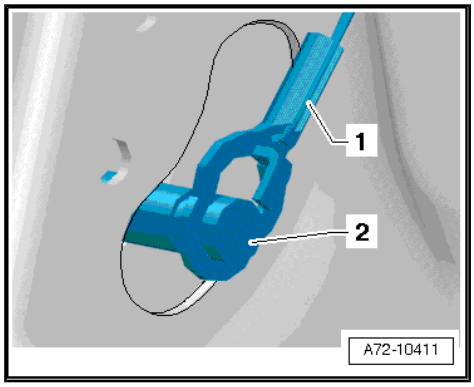


Note

- *Only one side of the locking mechanism is shown in the illustration.*
- *When adjusting the Bowden cables -1-, they must not be under tension at the backrest release mechanism -2-.*

– After adjusting Bowden cables, check locking function of backrest.

– If there is no or only partial release, check the routing of the Bowden cables or repeat the adjustment of the Bowden cables.



2.14.8 Removing and installing Bowden cable B for Easy Entry system

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .

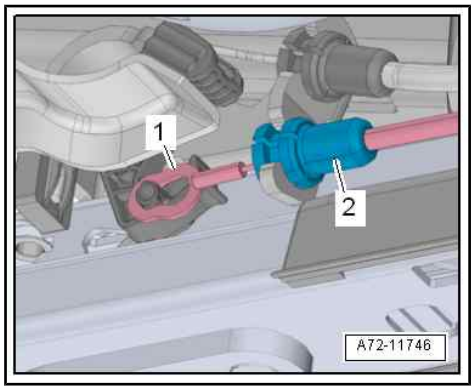
– Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.

– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 446 .

– Turn backrest adjuster knob towards front as far as stop.

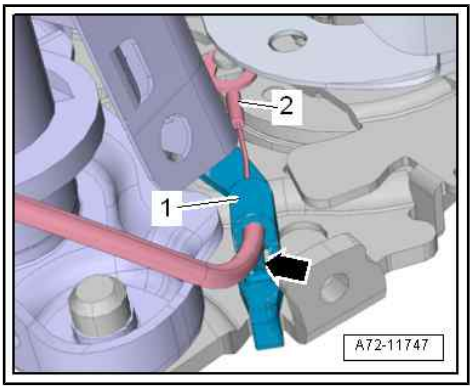
– Disengage support bracket -2- for Bowden cable B for Easy Entry system from bracket on seat pan.

– Disengage eyelet -1- of Bowden cable B for Easy Entry system from pin on seat longitudinal adjuster.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release catch -arrow- and disengage support bracket -1- for Bowden cable B for Easy Entry system from backrest fitting.
– Disengage eyelet -2- of Bowden cable B for Easy Entry system from pin on backrest fitting using a screwdriver and detach.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Caution

Make sure the backrest is in basic position, i.e. the backrest must have been moved as far forwards as possible with the adjuster knob.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.4 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system", page 376

2.14.9 Removing and installing Bowden cable A for Easy Entry system

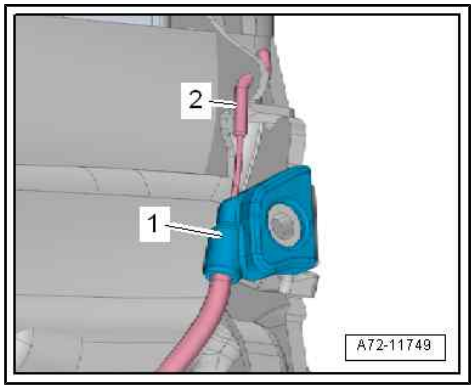
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

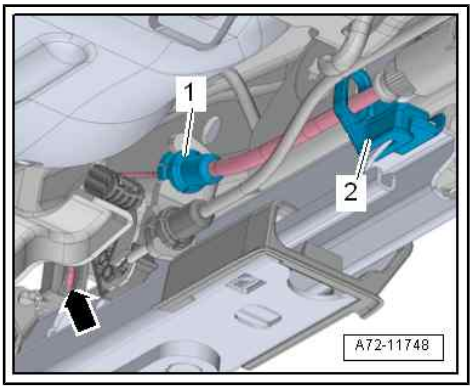
Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 446 .
– Turn backrest adjuster knob towards front as far as stop.
– Unclip support bracket -1- for Bowden cable A from backrest.
– Disengage Bowden cable A -item 2- from lever at backrest fitting.





– Disengage support bracket -1- for Bowden cable A for Easy Entry system from bracket on seat pan.
– Unclip retainer -2- for Bowden cable from seat pan.
– Disengage Bowden cable A from seat longitudinal adjuster -arrow- and detach.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Caution

Make sure the backrest is in basic position, i.e. the backrest must have been moved as far forwards as possible with the adjuster knob.

– Adjust Bowden cable A ⇒ page 428 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.4 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system", page 376

2.14.10 Adjusting Bowden cable A for Easy Entry system

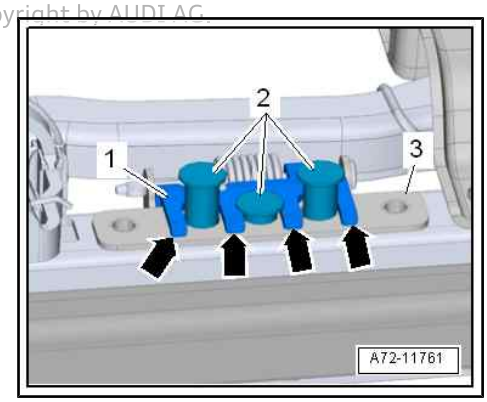
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Feeler gauges - VAS 5301/10-

Conditions for adjustment procedure

- Seat pan and backrest (front) must be fitted with padding and bolted together.
- Backrest adjuster knob must be turned towards front as far as stop.
- Bowden cable B must be engaged at seat longitudinal adjuster and backrest fitting
- Adjust seat rail so that only one locking pin -2- is engaged (it is not important which locking pin is engaged).

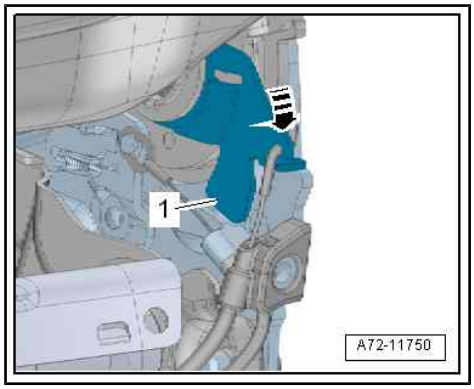


Note

Disregard items -1 and 3-.

Checking and adjusting

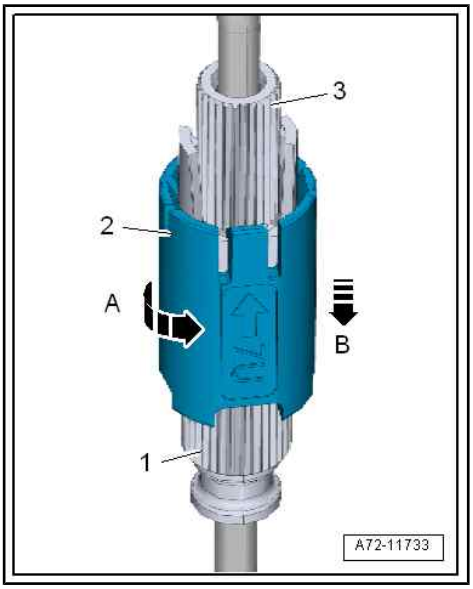
– Press lever -1- at backrest fitting as far as it will go in direction of -arrow-.



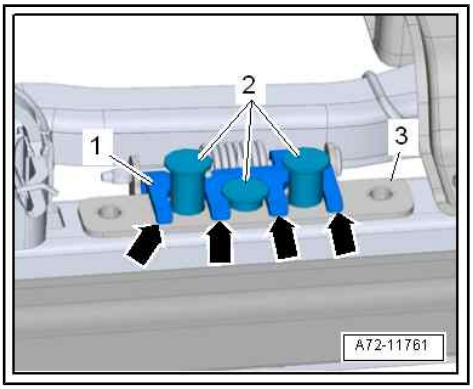
Note

For greater clarity the padding and cover are not shown in the illustration.

– Release Bowden cable adjuster; to do so, hold upper part -1- in position with pliers and turn securing sleeve -2- approx. 45° in direction of -arrow A-.
– To release adjuster, push securing sleeve down as far as stop -arrow B-.
• It must be possible to turn lower part -3-.
– To adjust, turn lower part and upper part in opposite directions.



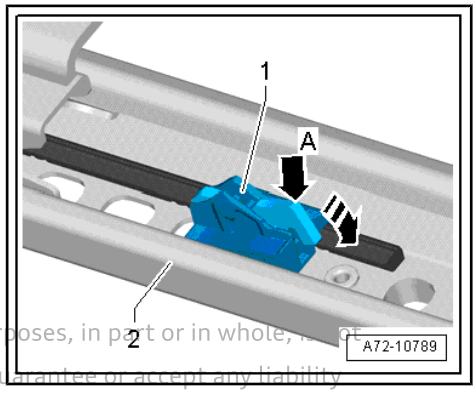
– Adjust Bowden cable so that release plate -1- is just raised from seat rail (tunnel side) -3-.
– Check adjustment with feeler gauge:
• It must be possible to slide 0.1 mm feeler under release plate at all ends -arrows-.
• It must not be possible to slide 0.3 mm feeler through at one end or more.
– After adjusting Bowden cables, check function.
– If there is no or only partial release, check the routing of the Bowden cable or repeat the adjustment procedure for the Bowden cable.
– Lock Bowden cable adjuster again.



2.15 Removing and installing slider

Removing

– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.
– Release backrest, fold it down towards front and at the same time move front seat as far forwards as possible.
– Remove bolt from rear of seat rail (tunnel side) ⇒ page 392 .
– Press rocker -arrow A- of slider in direction of -arrow- and pull slider towards rear.
– Lift slider -1- slightly at rear with a screwdriver and pull it out of seat rail -2- towards rear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

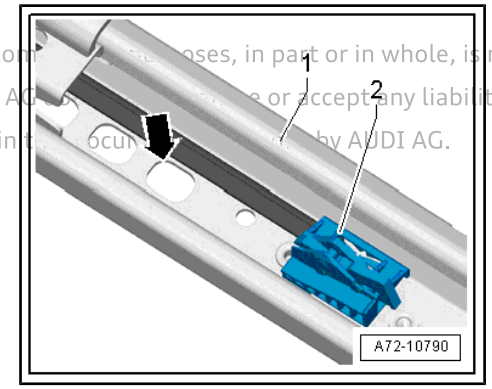
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com... ...oses, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG ... ...e or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in t... ...ocu... ...by AUDI AG.

Installing

– If slider has been renewed, clean part of seat rail surrounding slider to remove remnants of old slider.

– Insert slider -2- in seat rail -1-.

– Lock slider in rearmost detent hole -arrow-.



Note

The slider does not have to be adjusted.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system”, page 376

2.16 Removing and installing head restraint

Note

The head restraints can be removed with the front seats in position.

Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and down as possible and tilt backrest to approx. 45°.

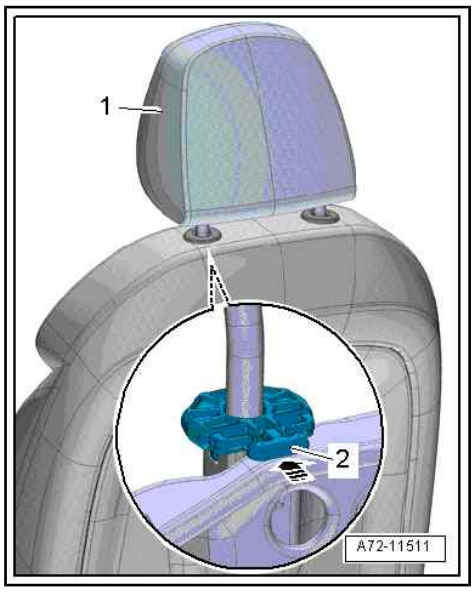
Note

The pressure point for release (release button) is located on the outer left of the driver seat and on the inner left of the front passenger seat (as seen in direction of travel).

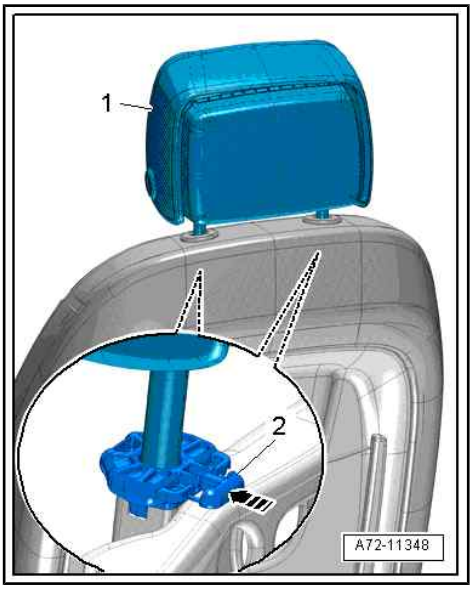
– Locate pressure point of release button -2- underneath seat cover.

• The release button is located approx. 35 mm beneath the top edge of the backrest.

– Press release button -arrow- and at the same time pull out head restraint -1-.



Country-specific version:



Note

The pressure point for release (release button) is located on the head restraint guide (left and right).

– Locate pressure point of release button -2- underneath seat cover.

• The release button is located approx. 35 mm beneath the top edge of the backrest.

– Working alternately on both sides, pull head restraint -1- out of guides.

– To do so, press release button -arrow- and at the same time pull out head restraint.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.5 Exploded view - head restraint", page 379

2.17 Removing and installing head restraint guide

Removing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components*** ⇒ page 4 ***.***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

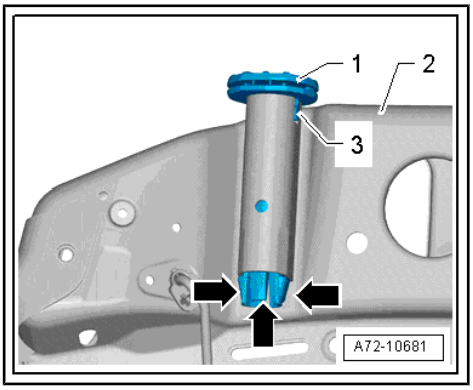
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .

– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 494 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Head restraint guide (right-side):



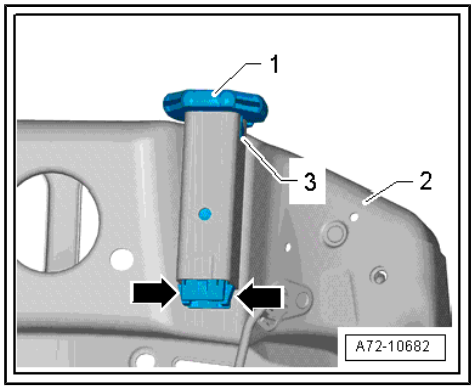
– Press retaining tabs inwards -arrows- and at the same time pull head restraint guide -1- out of outer backrest frame -2-.

Note

Disregard -item 3-.

Head restraint guide (left-side):

– Press retaining tabs inwards -arrows- and at the same time pull head restraint guide -1- out of outer backrest frame -2-.



Installing

Note

The head restraint guide can only be installed in one position.

- The guide lug -3- of the head restraint guide must engage in the recess of the mounting for the head restraint guide.
- Retaining tab(s) must engage properly with outer backrest frame.

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .***

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.5 Exploded view - head restraint", page 379

2.18 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

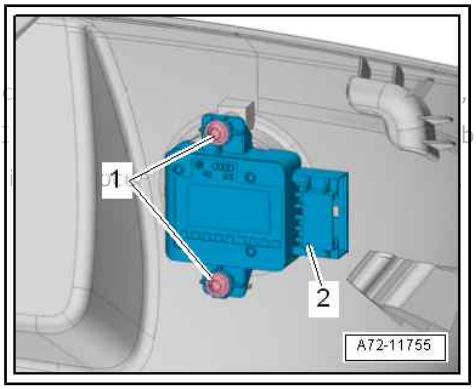
Removing

– Remove seat side trim (sill side):

♦ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ page 443

♦ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 444

– Unscrew bolts -1- and detach switch -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or ,is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD bility
with respect to the correctness of information

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.6 Exploded view - seat pan", page 382

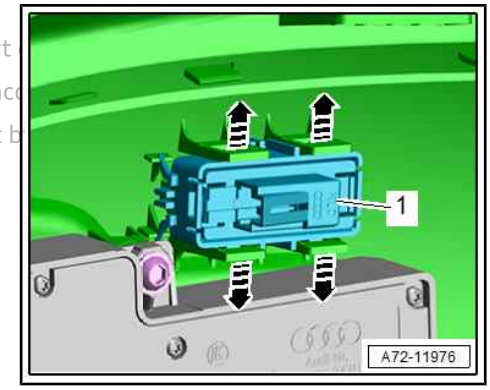
2.19 Removing and installing massage function button -E670- / -E671-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acc with regard to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright b

Removing

– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 444 .

– Press massage function button -1- out of trim and detach. To do so, release fasteners -arrows-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.6.1 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with manual adjustment", page 382

2.20 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

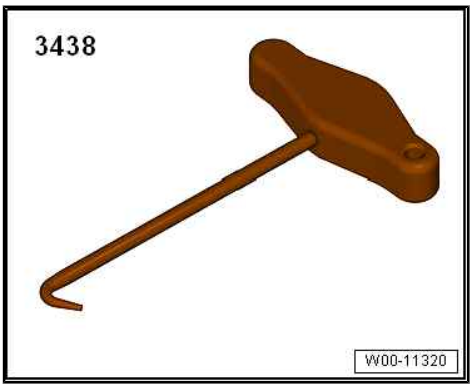
⇒ "2.20.1 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit", page 433

⇒ "2.20.2 Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor V245 / V246 ", page 435

2.20.1 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hook - 3438-

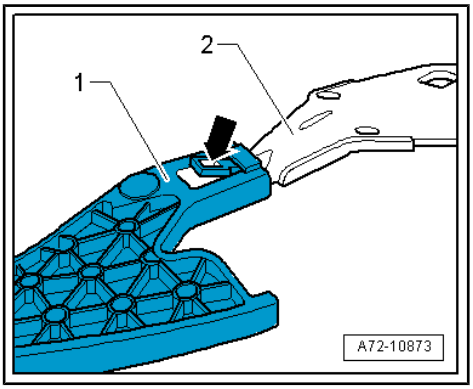


Removing

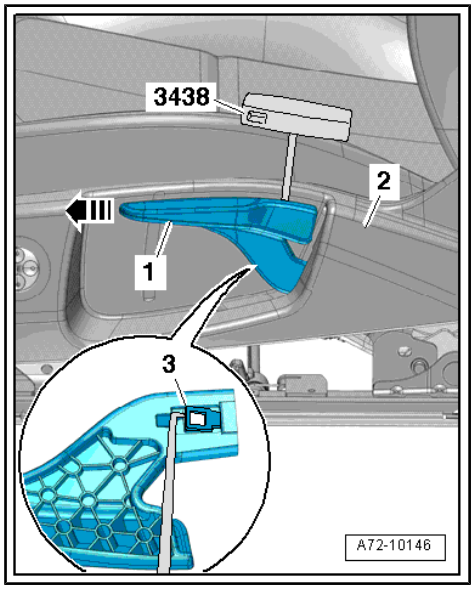
Caution

Risk of irreparable damage to seat height adjuster if it is not removed correctly.

- *Remove seat height adjuster -1- as described; do NOT knock it off lever -2-.*
- *Renew seat height adjuster if lug -arrow- is damaged*



– Pull up seat height adjuster -1- slightly and hold in this position.
– Pull seat height adjuster as far as possible off front seat.
– Insert hook - 3438- between seat height adjuster and seat side trim -2-.
– Release tab -3- with hook - 3438- and at the same time pull seat height adjuster off lever in direction of -arrow-.

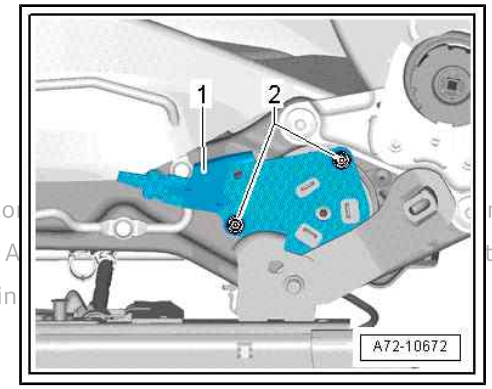


Caution

Move front seat to top position if possible. This reduces the spring force when removing and installing the seat height adjustment unit.

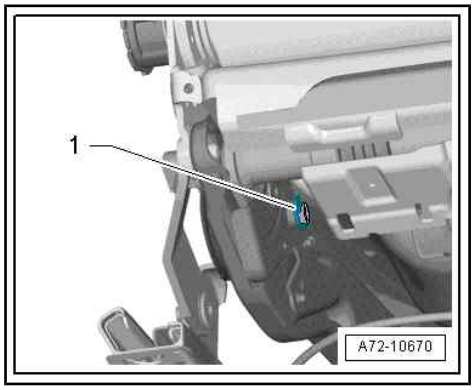
– Move front seat as far towards rear as it will go and to highest position; then lower it by one stroke of the lever.
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 443 .

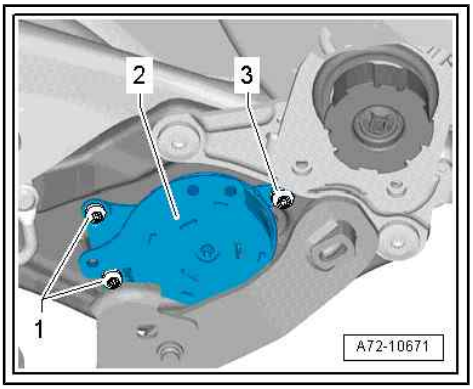
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Detach lever -1- for seat height adjuster.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A ty with respect to the correctness of information in

– Remove securing clip -1- with a screwdriver.





Note

Bolts -1- and bolt -3- have different lengths.

– Remove bolts -1, 3-.

– Unfasten seat height adjustment unit -2- from seat pan and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– When inserting the seat height adjustment unit in the seat pan, a second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the front seat downwards slightly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.4 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster", page 386

2.20.2 Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246-

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

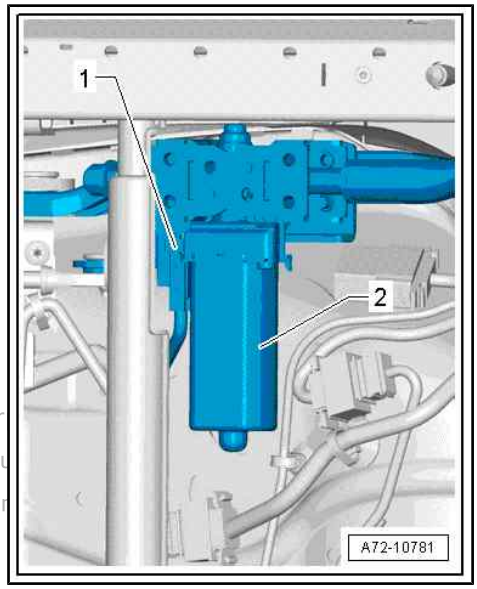
– If possible, move front seat to topmost position in order to minimise pre-tension of torsion bar.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .

– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 444 .

– Unplug electrical connector -1- at seat height adjustment motor -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pur
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documer

Caution

Risk of (irreparable) damage to threaded hole in seat pan.

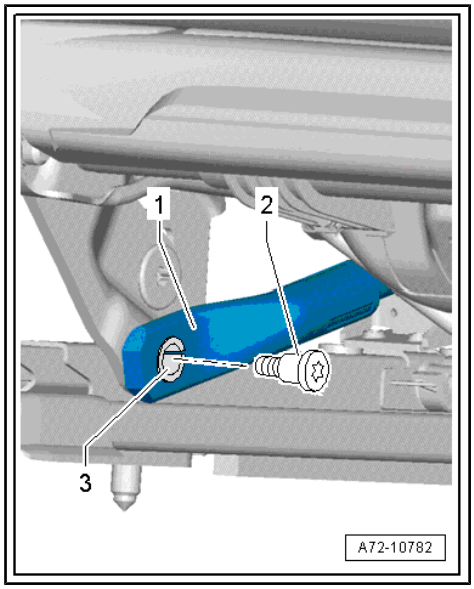
- *Bolted connection for adjustment spindle to seat pan must be free of strain when fitting/removing bolt.*

Risk of damage to bush -3- in pivot point (bolted connection between adjustment spindle and seat pan).

- *The bush cannot be renewed using workshop equipment.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bush is damaged.*

Risk of damage to thread of bolt -2-.

- *Bolt for adjustment spindle has left-hand thread.*



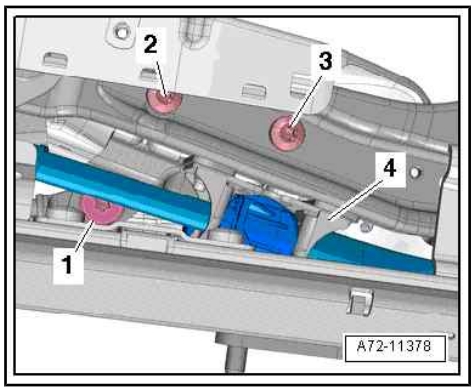
– Unscrew bolt -2- at adjustment spindle -1- of seat height adjustment motor.

– Unscrew bolt -1- for adjustment spindle for seat rake adjustment motor.

– Swivel upper seat pan frame upwards as far as possible and support with a suitable block of wood on seat repair stand - VAS 6136- .

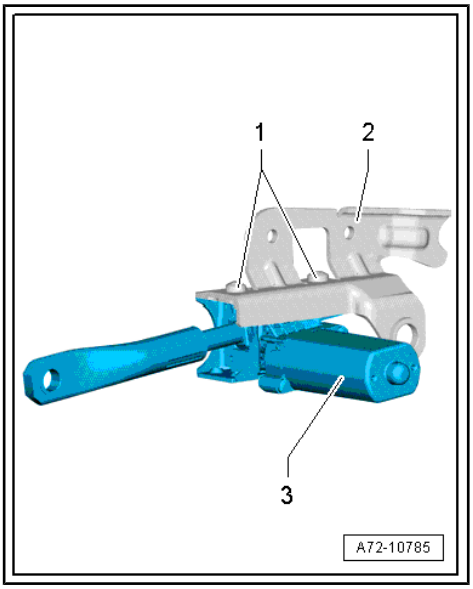
– Remove bolts -2- and -3-.

– Detach bracket -4- with seat height adjustment motor from seat pan.



– Remove bolts -1-.

– Detach bracket -2- from seat height adjustment motor -3-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.5 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjustment motor", page 387

2.21 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit

⇒ "2.21.1 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment handle", page 437

⇒ "2.21.2 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit", page 438

⇒ "2.21.3 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor V243 / V244 ", page 438

2.21.1 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment handle

Note

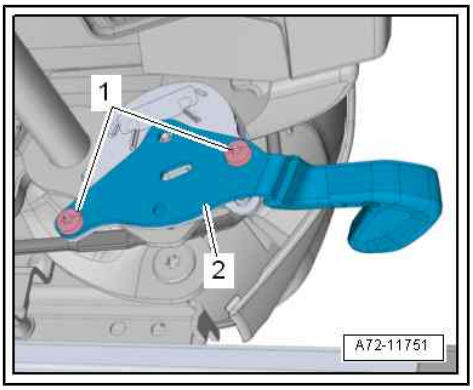
Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat installed.

Removing

– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.

– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 446 .

– Remove bolts -1- and detach handle -2- from seat rake adjuster.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster", page 388

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.21.2 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit

Removing

– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.

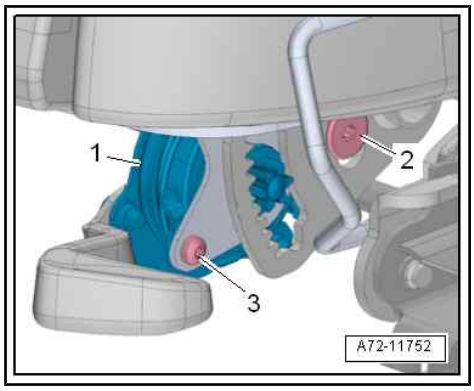
– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 446 .

– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 443 .

Caution

Risk of damage to thread of bolt -2-.

- *Bolt for seat rake adjuster has left-hand thread.*



– Remove bolt -2-.

– Remove bolt -3-.

– Detach seat rake adjuster -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster", page 388

2.21.3 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / -V244-

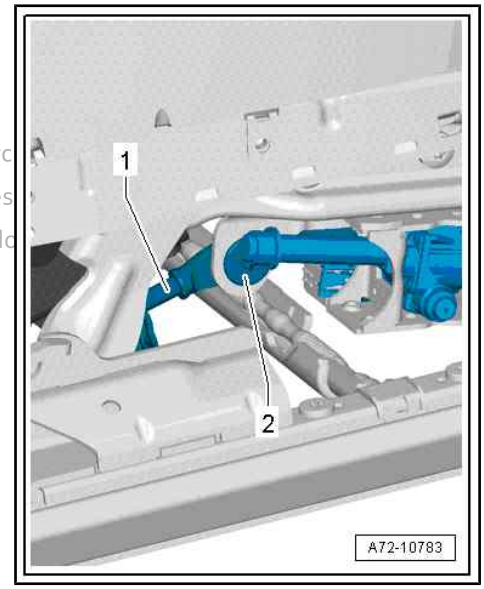
Removing

– Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.

– Unbolt front seat and tilt it towards rear with electrical wiring connected ⇒ page 392 .

– Unscrew bolt -2- for adjustment spindle -1- of seat rake adjustment motor.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this do

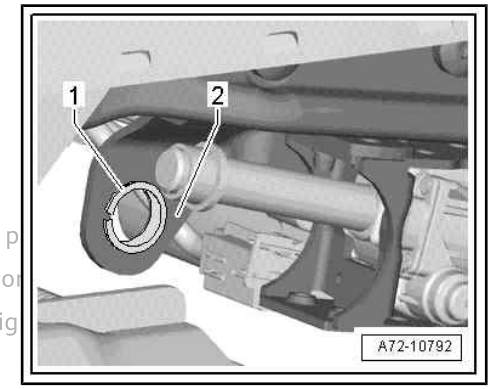


Caution

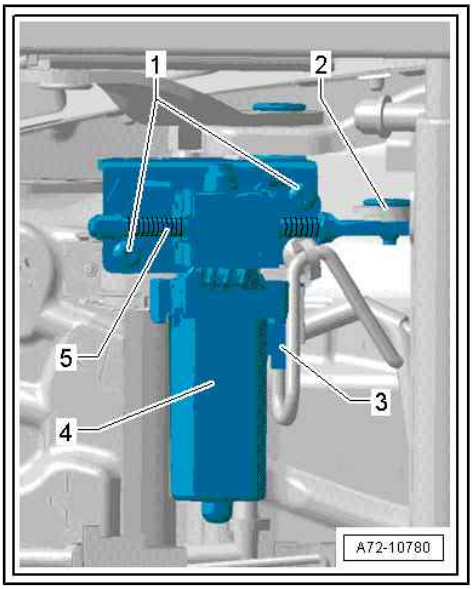
Risk of damage to bush -1- in pivot point -2- (bolted connection between adjustment spindle and seat pan).

- ***The bush cannot be renewed using workshop equipment.***
- ***The relevant components must be renewed if the bush is damaged.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig



– Unplug electrical connector -3- at seat rake adjustment motor.
– Unscrew bolts -1- and detach seat rake adjustment motor -4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.6.7 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjustment motor”, page 389

2.22 Dismantling and assembling seat pan

⇒ “2.22.1 Routing wiring at front seat”, page 440

⇒ “2.22.2 Removing and installing seat rail cover”, page 442

⇒ “2.22.3 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat with manual adjustment”, page 443

⇒ “2.22.4 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat with electric adjustment”, page 444

⇒ “2.22.5 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit E470 / E471 ”, page 445

⇒ “2.22.6 Removing and installing seat side trim (tunnel side)”, page 446

⇒ “2.22.7 Removing and installing storage compartment”, page 446

⇒ “2.22.8 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster”, page 447

⇒ “2.22.9 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle”, page 449

⇒ “2.22.10 Renewing seat pan frame - front seat with manual adjustment”, page 450

⇒ “2.22.11 Removing and installing upper seat pan frame - front seat with electric adjustment”, page 452

⇒ “2.22.12 Removing and installing lower seat pan frame - front seat with electric adjustment”, page 454

© Audi AG. Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.22.1 Routing wiring at front seat

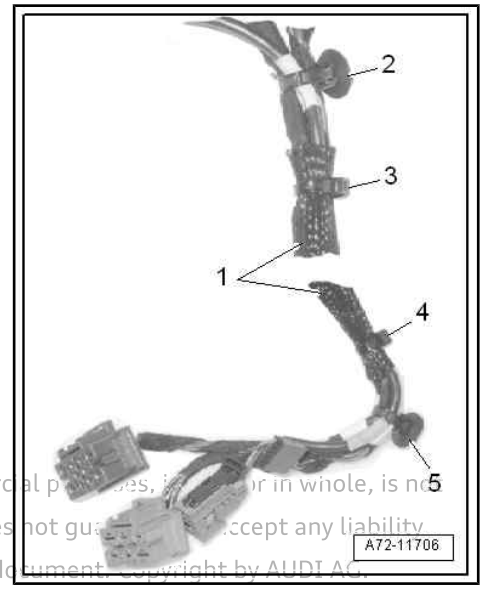
Removing individual wire

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Remove retainer (rear) for wire routing from seat pan with a screwdriver.
– Cut through cable retainers -2 and 5- and cable ties -3 and 4-.



Note

When renewing a defective wire or side airbag, refer to ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Connectors; Repairing electrical wiring harnesses and electrical connectors , or ⇒ page 150 .

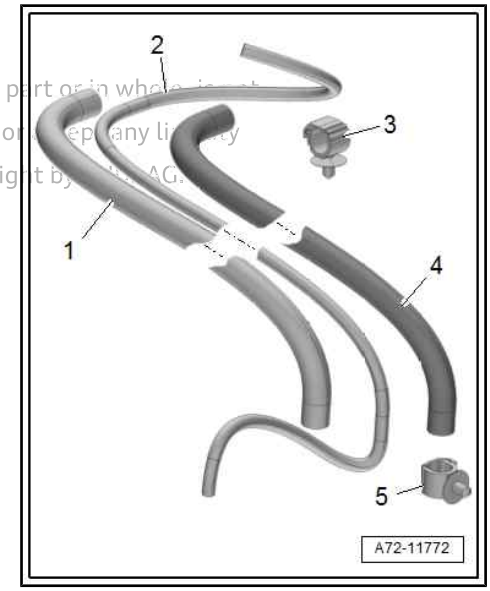
– Pull individual wire out of protective sleeve -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Modular wire routing:

– Remove retainer (rear) for wire routing from seat pan with a screwdriver.
– Open cable retainers -3, 5- for corrugated tube and remove.
– Remove wiring -2- from corrugated tube -1, 4-.



Note

To renew a defective wire or side airbag refer to ⇒ Electrical system; General information; Rep. gr. 97 ; Repairing wiring harnesses and connectors; Repairing wiring harnesses , or ⇒ page 150 .

– Cut through cable tie and remove individual wire.

Installing individual wires

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .***

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Take care not to twist any wires when bunching and inserting the individual wires.

Note

- *Re-attach all cable ties, cable retainers and retaining clips at the same locations when installing.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view - front seat", page 367

2.22.2 Removing and installing seat rail cover

Note

Proceed very carefully when removing and installing as the cover can be damaged quite easily.

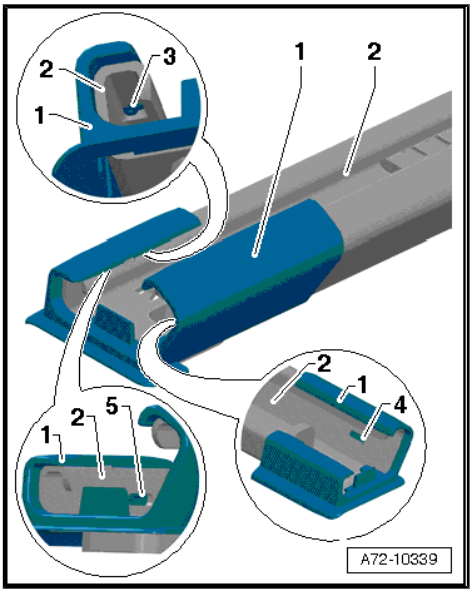
Removing

– Pull cover -1- off seat rail -2-; to do so, carefully release retaining tabs -3, 4, 5- at seat rail using a screwdriver.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view - front seat", page 367

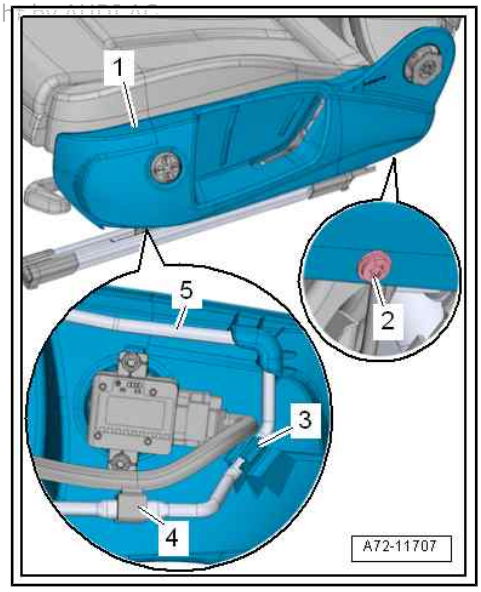


2.22.3 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat with manual adjustment

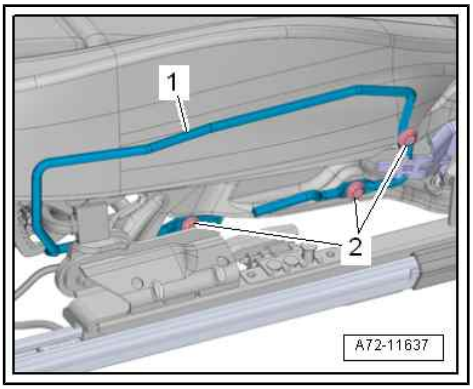
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

Removing

– Remove backrest adjuster knob ⇒ page 399 .
– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.
– Remove seat height adjuster ⇒ page 433 .
– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 446 .
– Remove spreader rivet -2- on seat side trim (sill side).
– Release clip -3- with a screwdriver.
– Disengage seat side trim (sill side) -1- at rear of backrest fitting and at seat pan.
– Lift seat side trim slightly at front, unclip it from bracket -5- and detach it towards front.
– Equipment version with lumbar support: Unclip cable retainer -4- and unplug electrical connector at lumbar support adjustment switch.



– Unscrew bolts -2- and detach retainer -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.1 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with manual adjustment", page 382

2.22.4 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat with electric adjustment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. C

Removing

– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.

– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 446 .

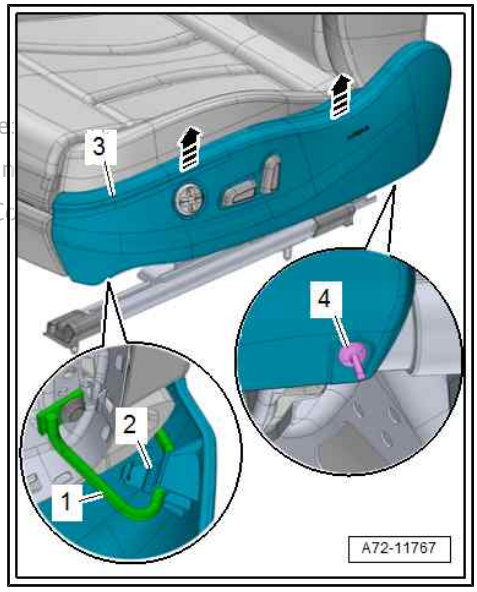
– Remove spreader rivet -4- on seat side trim (sill side).

– Release clip -2- with a screwdriver.

– Disengage seat side trim (sill side) -3- at rear of backrest fitting and at seat frame.

– Pull seat side trim (front) up slightly and unclip it from bracket -1-.

– Lift seat side trim (rear) slightly, disengage it from bracket -arrows- and detach it towards front.



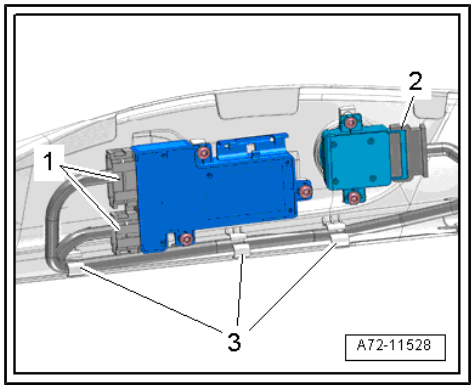
– Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors:

1 - Seat adjustment operating unit -E470- / -E471-

2 - Lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

– Move electrical wiring clear at bracket -3-.

– Detach seat side trim (sill side).



– Unscrew bolts -1, 2, 4- and detach retainer -3-.

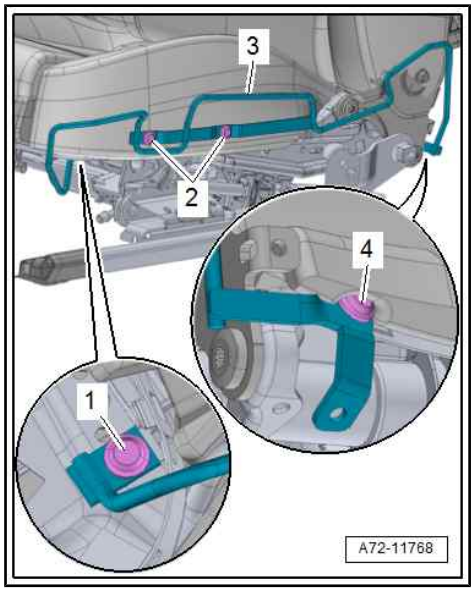
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Route electrical connectors and wires as shown in illustration.*

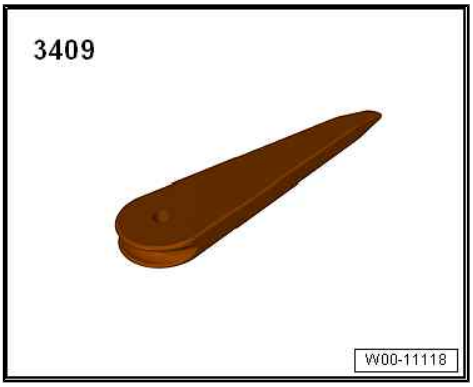
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with electric adjustment", page 384



2.22.5 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit -E470- / -E471-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

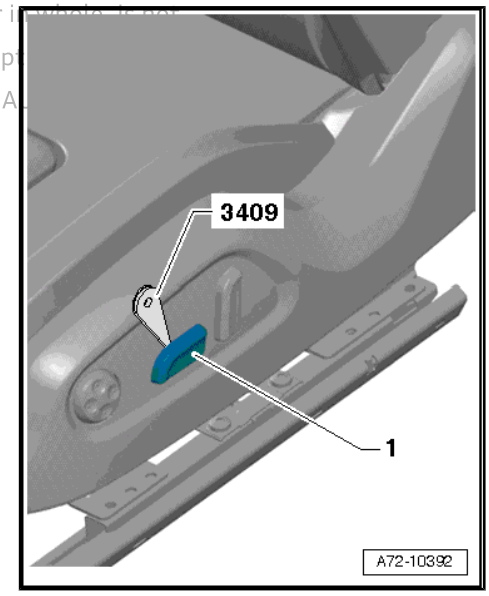
- Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

Removing

– Carefully prise seat adjustment actuator -1- off fastener using removal wedge - 3409-.

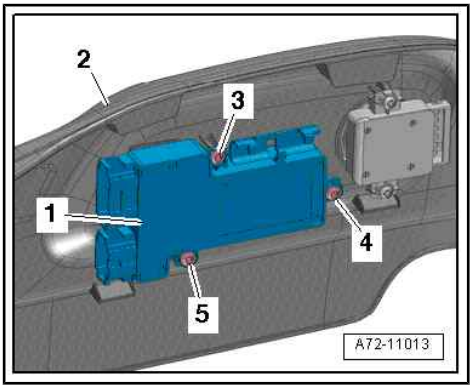


– Repeat procedure with backrest adjustment actuator.

– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 444 .

– Remove bolts -3 ... 5-.

– Detach operating unit -1- from seat side trim (sill side) -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.6.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with electric adjustment", page 384

2.22.6 Removing and installing seat side trim (tunnel side)

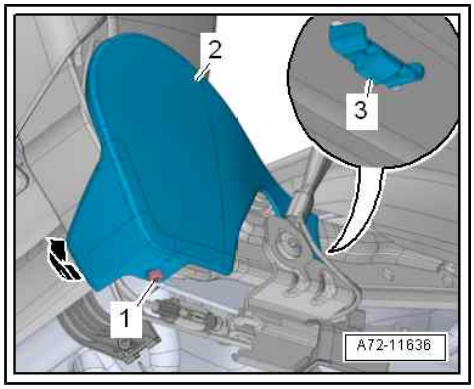
Removing

– Unbolt front seat and tilt it towards front with electrical wiring connected ⇒ page 392 .

– Remove spreader rivet -1- on seat side trim (tunnel side).

– Disengage seat side trim -2- at front from seat pan; to do so, release retaining tab -3- and pull seat side trim outwards.

– Disengage seat side trim (tunnel side) from backrest fitting -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.6 Exploded view - seat pan", page 382

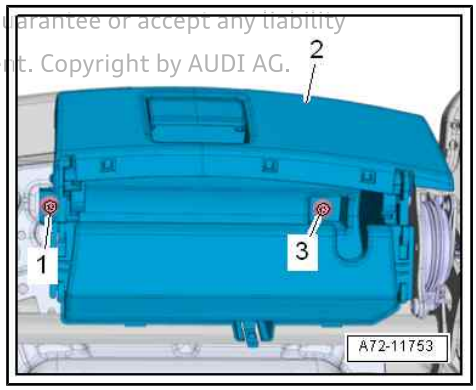
2.22.7 Removing and installing storage compartment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.

> **Caution**
>
> *Be careful when handling customer property in the storage compartment.*
>
> ◆ *Store objects from the storage compartment in a sealable plastic bag.*



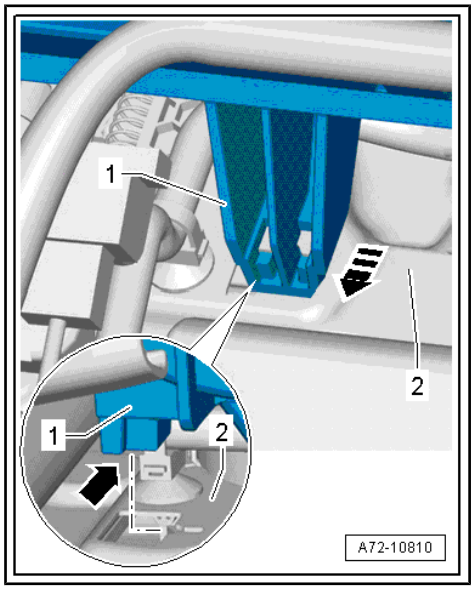
– Take any objects out of storage compartment -2-.

– Remove bolts -1, 3-.

– Push storage compartment -1- towards rear in direction of -arrow- and disengage catch -bottom arrow- of storage compartment from upper frame of seat pan -2-.

– Detach storage compartment from upper seat pan frame.

– Equipment version with seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- : Unclip seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .



Installing

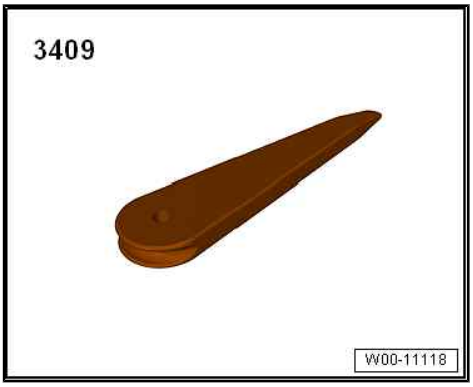
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.3 Exploded view - seat pan, storage compartment", page 385

2.22.8 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster

Special tools and workshop equipment required

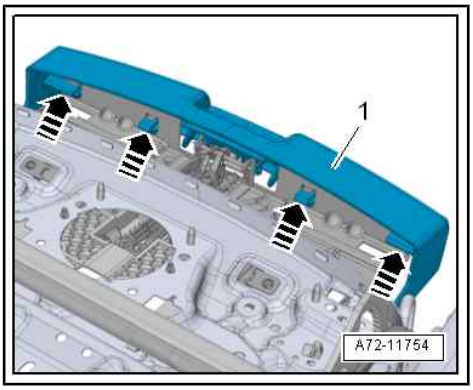
- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

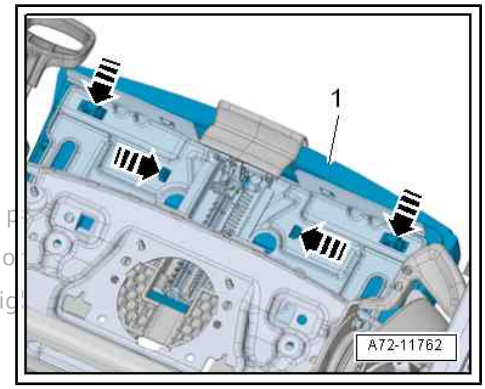
> **WARNING**
>
> - *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
> - *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 446 .
– Set seat depth adjuster as far forwards as it will go.
– Release retaining tabs -arrows- at trim -1- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Detach trim from seat depth adjuster.



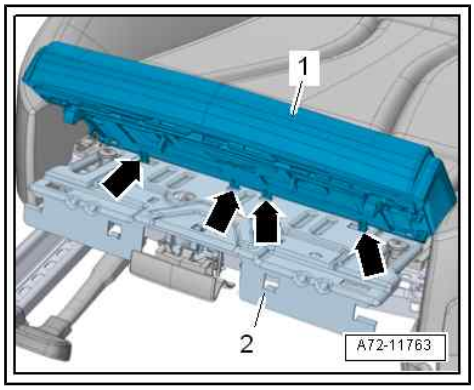
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release retaining tabs -arrows- on mounting bracket at seat depth adjuster using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Pull off mounting bracket -1- with padding and cover for seat depth adjustment at an angle (upwards towards front).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee o
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig

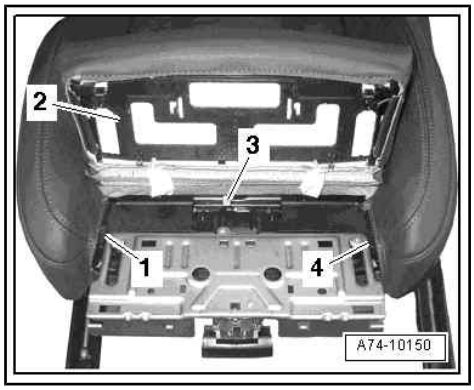
– Disengage lugs -arrows- at seat depth adjuster -2- and fold up mounting bracket with padding and cover.
– Pull off mounting bracket -1- with padding and cover for seat depth adjuster at an angle (upwards and towards front).



– Place mounting bracket -2- with padding and cover for seat depth adjuster on front seat.

Note

For greater clarity the lower seat pan frame is not shown in the illustration.



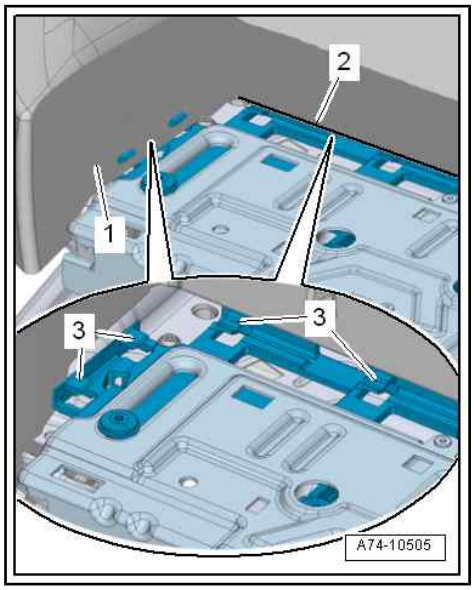
– Remove seat cover -1, 4- on sides and fastening strip -3- of seat cover from seat depth adjustment unit.

– To do so, disengage seat cover -1- from retaining tabs -3- at sides.

Caution

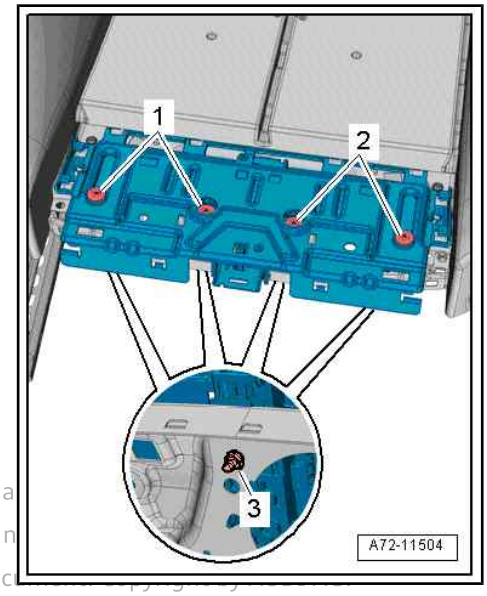
Risk of damage to retaining tabs.

- ***Proceed very carefully when unclipping and clipping in.***



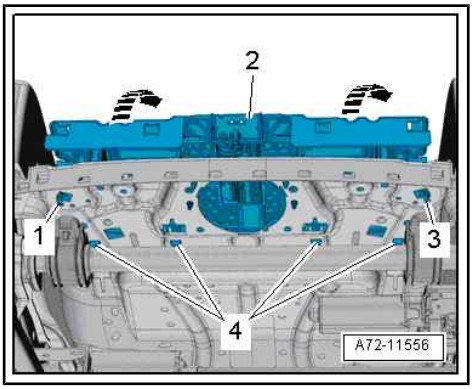
– Unclip fastening strip -2- from retaining tabs -3-.

– Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- and nuts -3- at seat depth adjuster.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercia
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n
with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

– Unclip retaining tabs -1 and 3- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Pull seat depth adjuster -2- off seat pan at an angle (upwards towards front) -arrows-.
– At the same time disengage lugs -4- from seat pan.
– Detach seat depth adjuster from front seat.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.8 Exploded view - seat pan, seat depth adjuster", page 390

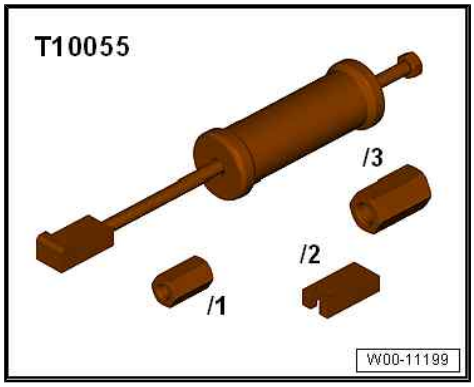
2.22.9 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle

Note

- *Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat installed.*
- *The seat longitudinal adjustment handle cannot be removed without damaging it.*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

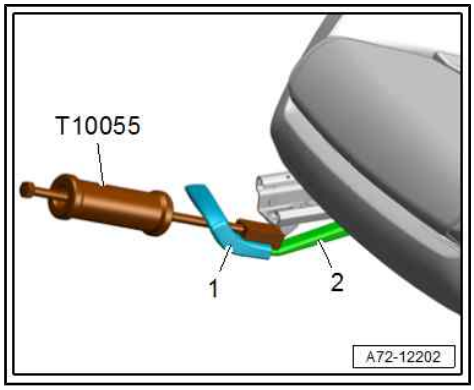
- Puller - T10055-



Removing

– Move front seat as far back and up as possible.

– Position puller - T10055- on handle -1- and pull handle off operating rod -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Press seat longitudinal adjustment handle onto operating rod as far as stop.

Caution

Risk of damage to surface of seat longitudinal adjustment handle.

- *Use a rubber-headed hammer to knock on; proceed carefully.*

– If necessary, use rubber-headed hammer to knock seat longitudinal adjustment handle onto operating rod as far as stop.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment", page 367

2.22.10 Renewing seat pan frame - front seat with manual adjustment

Note

On front seats with manual adjustment, bottom part of seat should not be separated from top part of seat (seat pan).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Caution

Move front seat to top position if possible. This reduces the spring force when removing and installing the seat height adjustment unit.

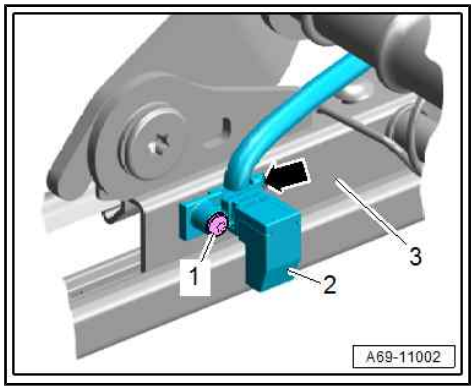
– Move front seat as far towards front as it will go and to highest position; then lower it by one stroke of the lever.
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 404 .
– Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ page 487 .

Note

Remove wiring and components and install them in new seat pan.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– If fitted, unscrew bolt -1- and unclip and disengage seat position sensor -2- from lower seat pan frame -3- -arrow-.



– Remove belt buckle (front) ⇒ page 106 .
– Remove seat height adjustment unit ⇒ page 433 .
– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 446 .
– Remove seat rake adjuster, sports seat/super sports seat ⇒ page 438 .
– Remove seat height adjuster, sports seat/super sports seat ⇒ page 447 .
– Detach electrical wiring harnesses and individual wires from seat pan.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

– Install all components and wires in new seat pan.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.6 Exploded view - seat pan", page 382

2.22.11 Removing and installing upper seat pan frame - front seat with electric adjustment

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– If possible, move front seat to topmost position in order to minimise pre-tension of torsion bar.
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 404 .

– Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ page 487 .

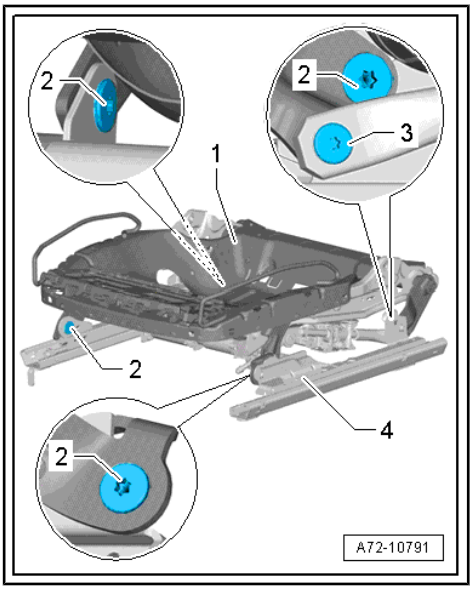
Caution

Risk of damage to threaded holes or bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- ***A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when removing the bolts listed below.***

Risk of damage to thread of bolt -3-.

- ***Bolt for adjustment spindle has left-hand thread.***



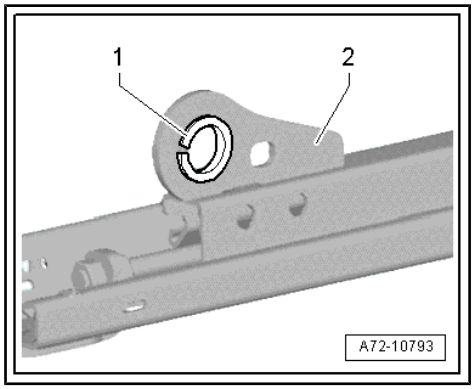
– Remove bolt -3-.
– Remove bolts -2- at front of seat pan frame.
– Support upper seat pan frame on seat repair stand - VAS 6136- with a suitable block of wood.
– Remove bolts -2- at rear of seat pan frame.
– Detach upper frame -1- from lower frame -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

Risk of damage to bushes -1- in pivot points -2- (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*



– Equipment version with seat depth adjustment: Remove seat depth adjuster ⇒ page 447 .
– Remove seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246- ⇒ page 435 .
– Remove seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / -V244- ⇒ page 438 .
– Detach electrical wiring harnesses and individual wires from upper seat pan frame.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.6 Exploded view - seat pan", page 382

2.22.12 Removing and installing lower seat pan frame - front seat with electric adjustment

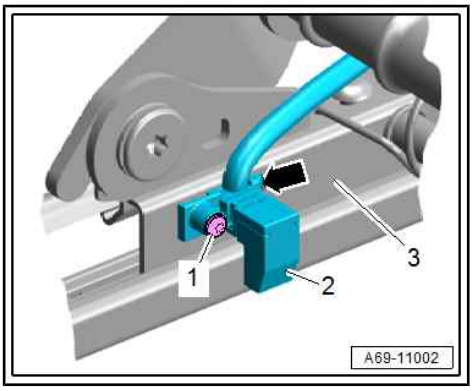
Seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- and lower seat pan frame are pre-set at factory; both components can only be renewed as a complete unit.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– If possible, move front seat to topmost position in order to minimise pre-tension of torsion bar.
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– If fitted, unscrew bolt -1- and unclip and disengage seat position sensor -2- from lower seat pan frame -3- -arrow-.
– Remove belt buckle (front) ⇒ page 106 .



– Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.

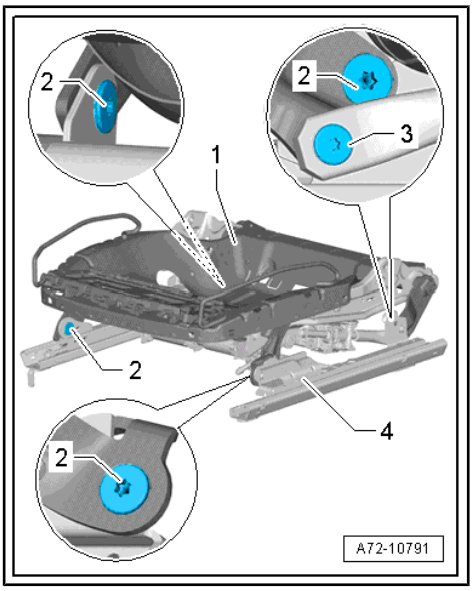
Caution

Risk of damage to threaded holes or bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- ***A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when removing the bolts listed below.***

Risk of damage to thread of bolt -3-.

- ***Bolt for adjustment spindle has left-hand thread.***



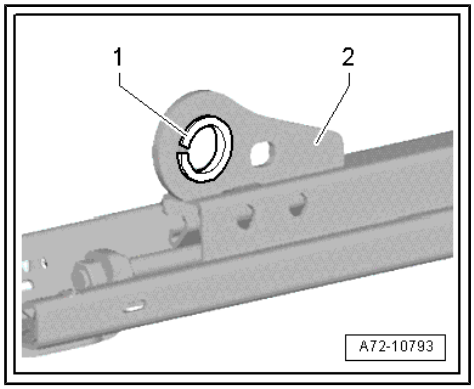
– Remove bolt -3-.
– Remove bolts -2- at front of seat pan frame.
– Support upper seat pan frame on seat repair stand - VAS 6136- with a suitable block of wood.
– Remove bolts -2- at rear of seat pan frame.
– Detach upper frame -1- from lower frame -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

Risk of damage to bushes -1- in pivot points -2- (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

Reproduction of this document or parts of this document for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

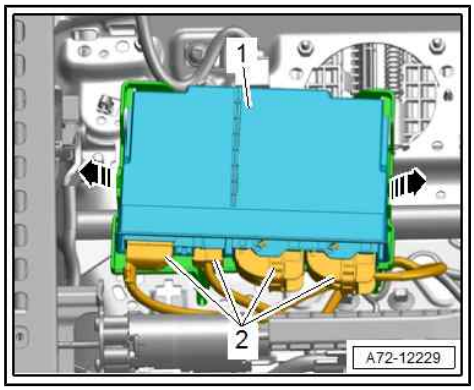
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.9 Exploded view - seat pan, seat pan frame with electric adjustment", page 391

2.23 Removing and installing control unit for seat functions

Removing

– Switch off ignition.
– Unbolt front seat and tilt it towards rear with electrical wiring connected ⇒ page 392 .
– Release retaining tabs -arrows-.
– Detach control unit -1- from bracket.
– Release catch and unplug electrical connectors -2-.

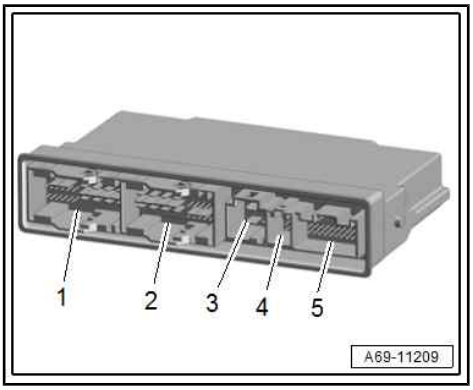


Installing

– If control unit has been renewed, make sure to plug in the electrical connectors in the correct order.

– First plug in electrical connector -5- (coding connector) and then the remaining connectors -1 … 4-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Rear seats

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 458

⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest”, page 460

⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - locking mechanism”, page 462

⇒ “3.4 Exploded view - centre armrest”, page 463

⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide”, page 464

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats”, page 464

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing centre storage compartment”, page 465

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing rear seat backrest”, page 466

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism”, page 471

⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest”, page 471

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing trim frame for load-through hatch”, page 471

⇒ “3.12 Removing and installing flap for load-through hatch”, page 473

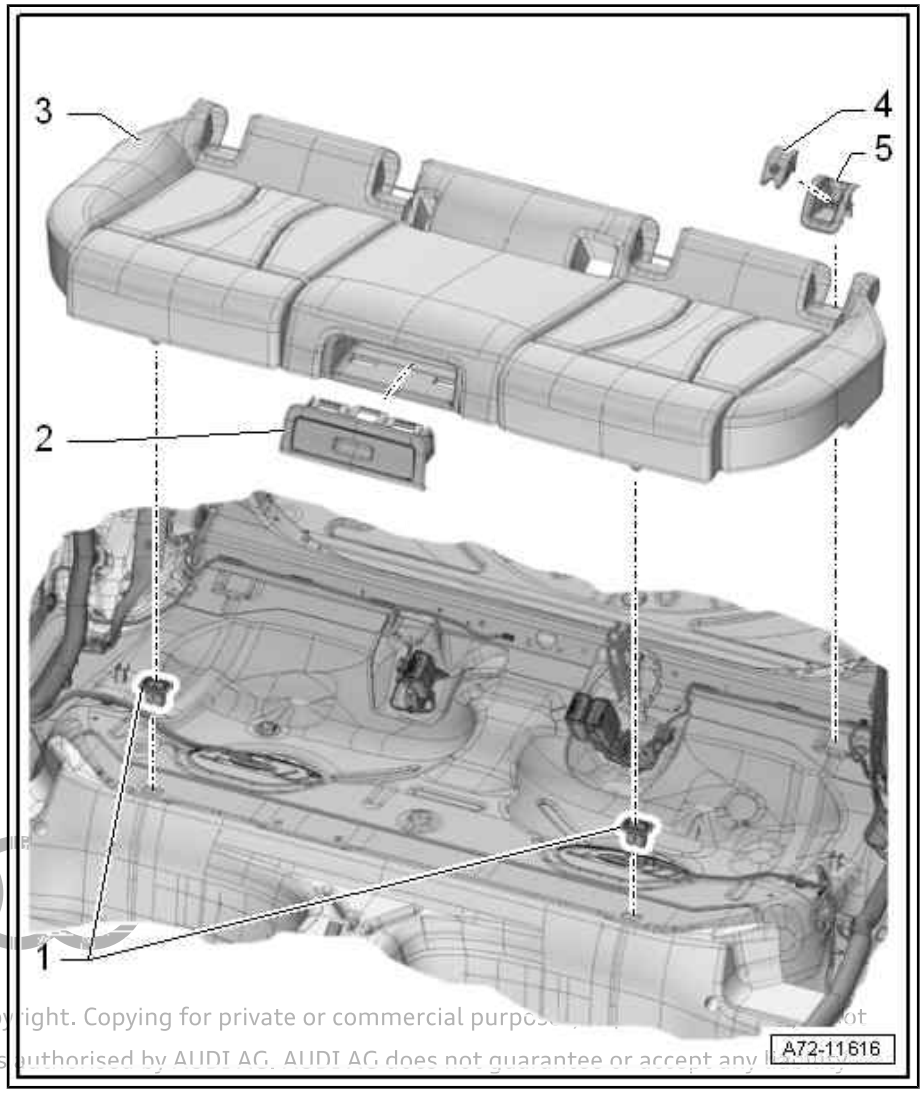
⇒ “3.13 Removing and installing centre armrest”, page 474

⇒ “3.14 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 475

⇒ “3.15 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 476

3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Retainers

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ For securing rear seat bench
- ❑ Clipped into vehicle floor
- ❑ Always renew after removing rear seat bench

2 - Centre storage compartment

- ❑ For high-visibility vest
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 465
- ❑ Must engage correctly in mounting

3 - Rear seat bench

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 464
- ❑ Seat frame must engage correctly in mountings

4 - Cover

- ❑ For ISOFIX child seat anchor
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.4.1 Removing and installing guide for child seat anchor (rear) - rear seat”, page 110
- ❑ Must be seated firmly in anchor

5 - Guide

- ❑ For ISOFIX child seat anchor
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 110
- ❑ Must be seated firmly in anchor

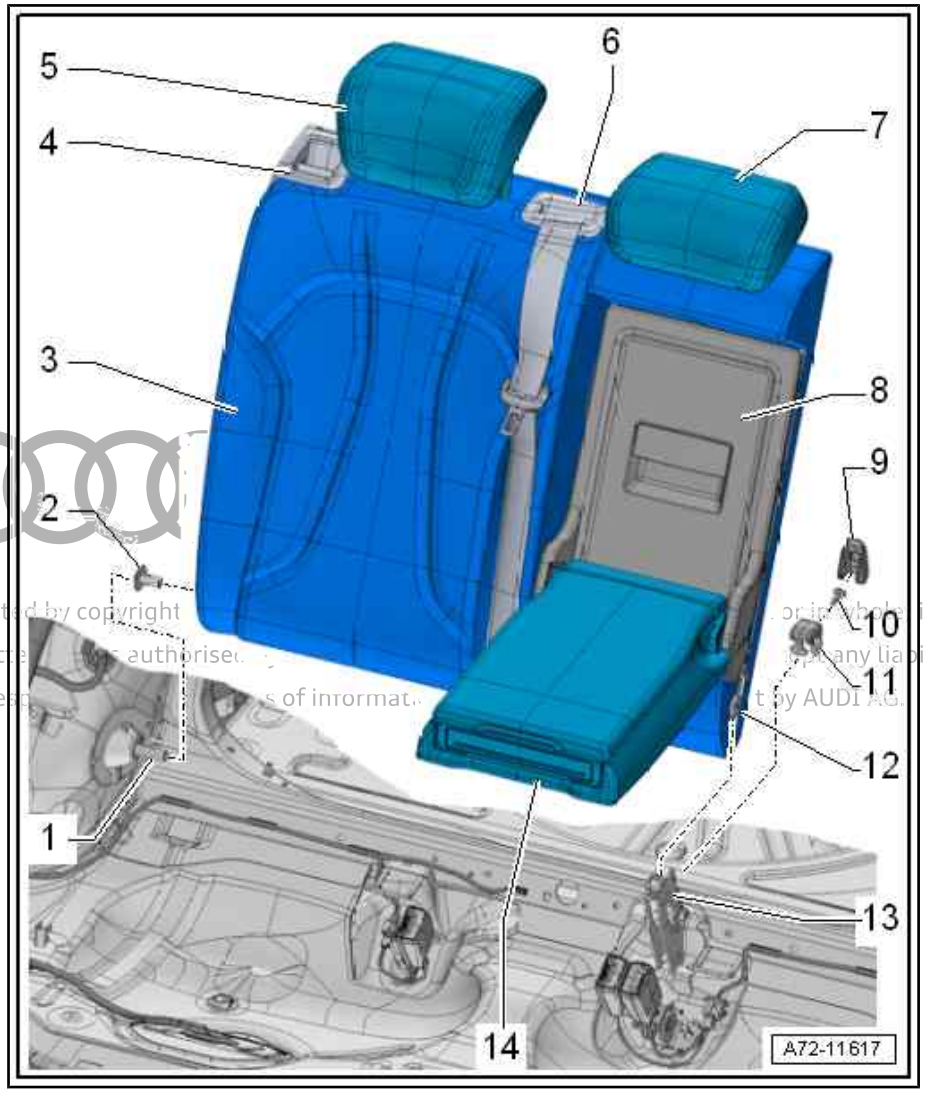
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos… …ot
…mitted unless …uthorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any …ility
…with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest

⇒ “3.2.1 Exploded view - rear seat backrest”, page 460

⇒ “3.2.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, flap for load-through hatch”, page 461

3.2.1 Exploded view - rear seat backrest



1 - Outer pivot pin
- ❑ Welded to body

2 - Outer bearing sleeve
- ❑ Insert in outer backrest frame and press on as far as stop

3 - Rear seat backrest
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 466

4 - Locking mechanism
- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 471

5 - Outer head restraint
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 475

6 - Centre belt guide (rear)
- ❑ Renew entire belt guide if damaged
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 101

7 - Head restraint (centre)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 475

8 - Flap
- ❑ For load-through hatch
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 473

9 - Cover
- ❑ For centre bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.8.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest”, page 466
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

11 - Retaining clip
- ❑ For centre bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.8.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest”, page 466

12 - Inner pivot pin
- ❑ For rear seat backrest

Protected by copyright. ... or in whole is not permitted ... authorised ... any liability with respect ... of information ... by AUDI AG.

- ❑ 13.5 Nm
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 468

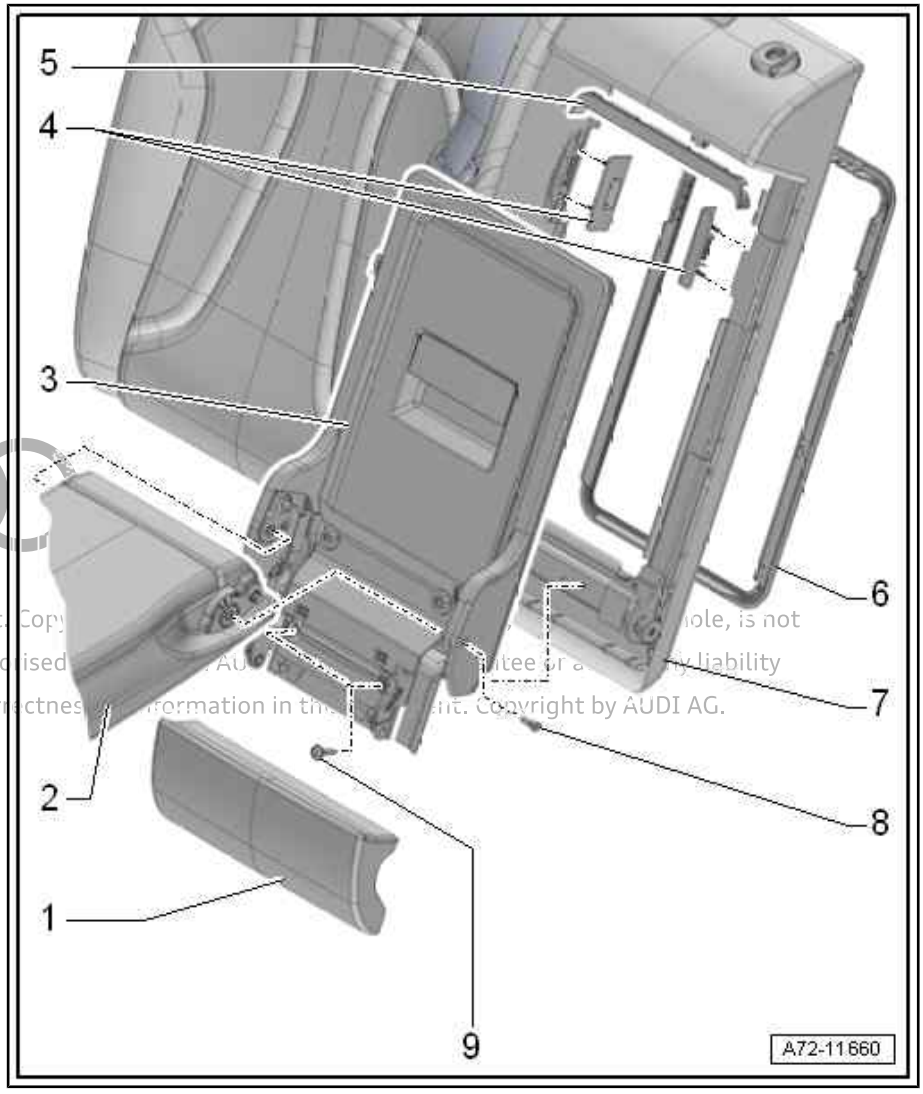
13 - Centre bracket

- ❑ Welded to vehicle floor

14 - Centre armrest

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 463

3.2.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, flap for load-through hatch



1 - Intermediate padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 515
- ❑ Engage padding at flap for load-through hatch and press on until it engages audibly

2 - Centre armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 474

3 - Flap

- ❑ For load-through hatch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 473

4 - Trim

- ❑ For engaging flap
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing trim frame for load-through hatch”, page 471
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Stop strip

- ❑ Clipped into rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing trim frame for load-through hatch”, page 471
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - Trim frame

- ❑ For load-through hatch
- ❑ Clipped into rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 471
- ❑ Press onto rear seat backrest until it engages audibly

7 - 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side)

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Protected by copyright. Copy... ...ole, is not permitted unless authorised ... AU... ...ntee or a... ...y liability with regard to the correctnes... ...formation in th... ...nt. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 463

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

3.3 Exploded view - locking mechanism

Note

The exploded view refers to the locking mechanism for the 1/3 section (left-side) of the rear seat backrest.

1 - Locking mechanism

- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 471

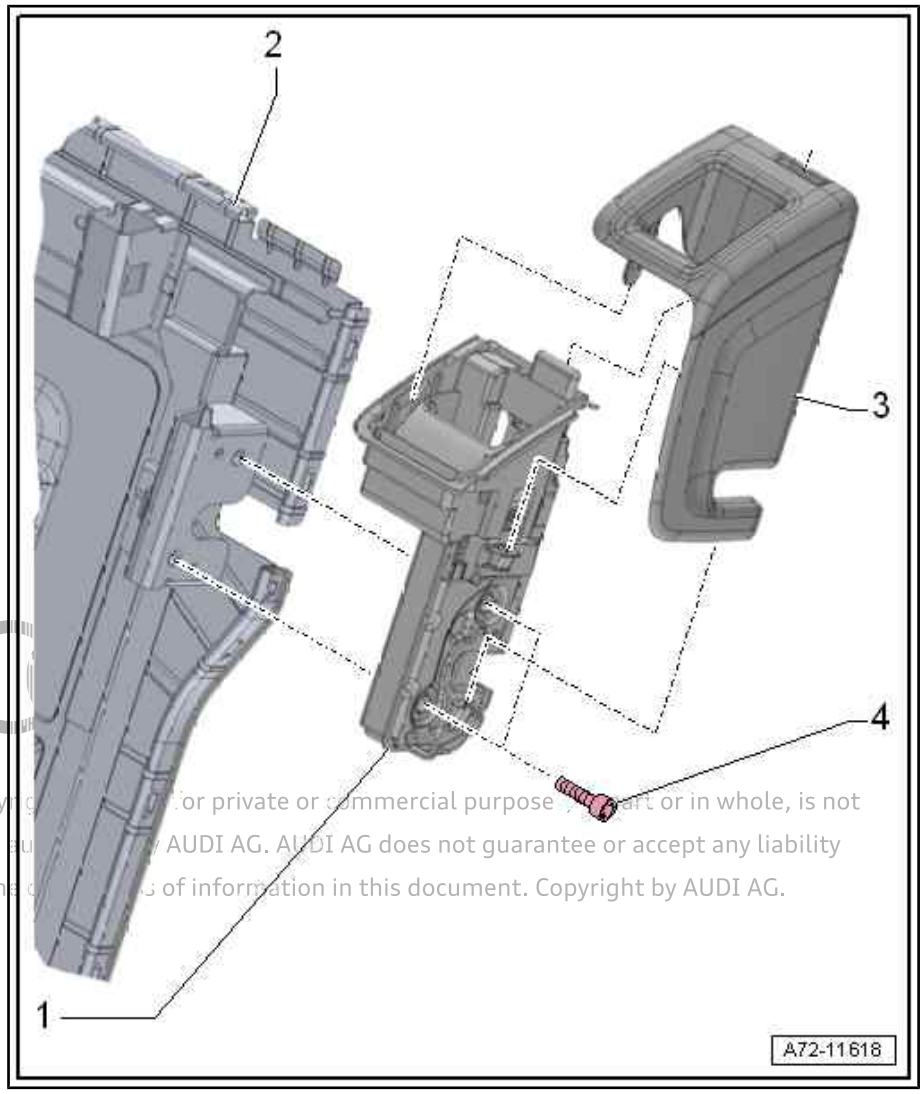
2 - Outer backrest frame

3 - Trim

- ❑ For locking mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 471
- ❑ Engage in locking mechanism and press on until it engages audibly

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 23 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.4 Exploded view - centre armrest

1 - Trim

- ❑ For cup holder
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.13.2 Removing and installing cup holders”, page 474
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

2 - Cup holder

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 474
- ❑ Insert and press on until it engages audibly

3 - Centre armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 474

4 - Bolt

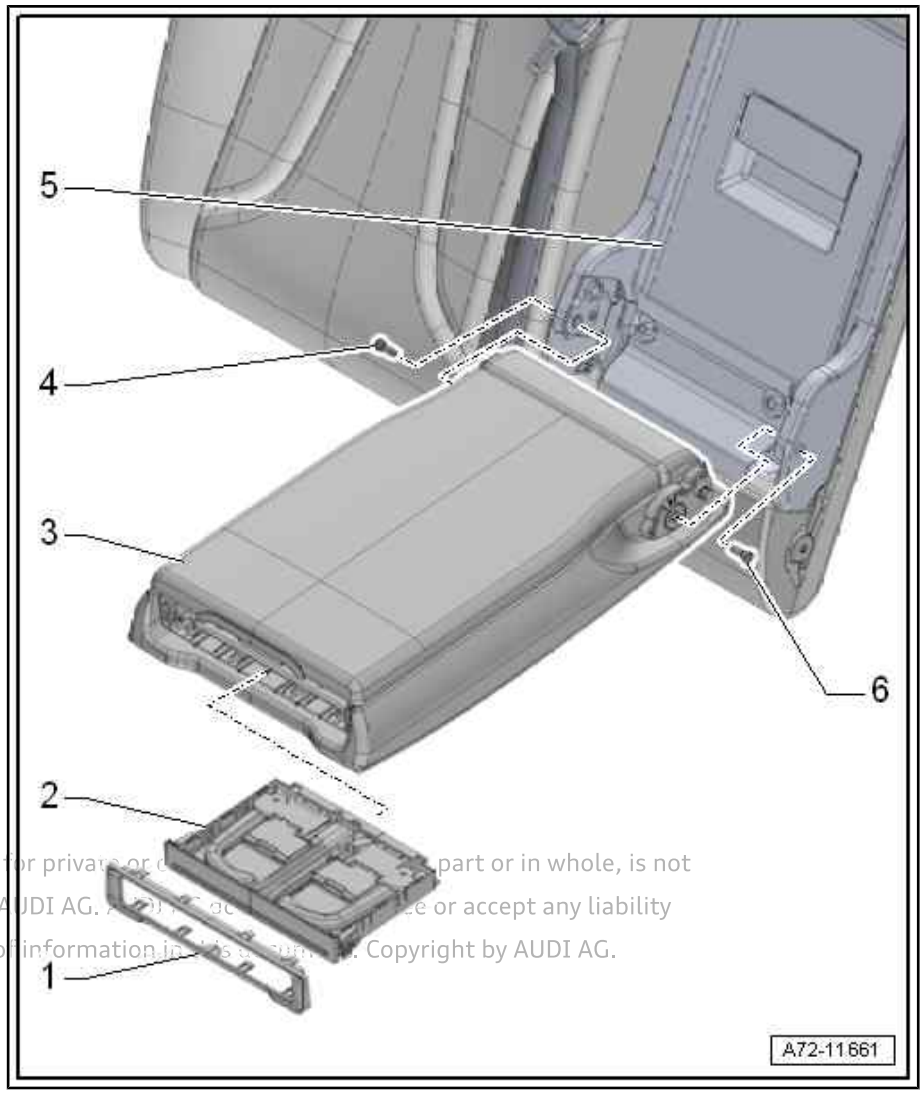
- ❑ 12 Nm

5 - Flap

- ❑ For load-through hatch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 473

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 12 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.5 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide

1 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With retaining spring
- ❑ Always fitted on right side of rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 476
- ❑ Guide lug must engage in recess of mounting at head restraint frame
- ❑ Slide in until retaining tabs engage properly with outer backrest frame

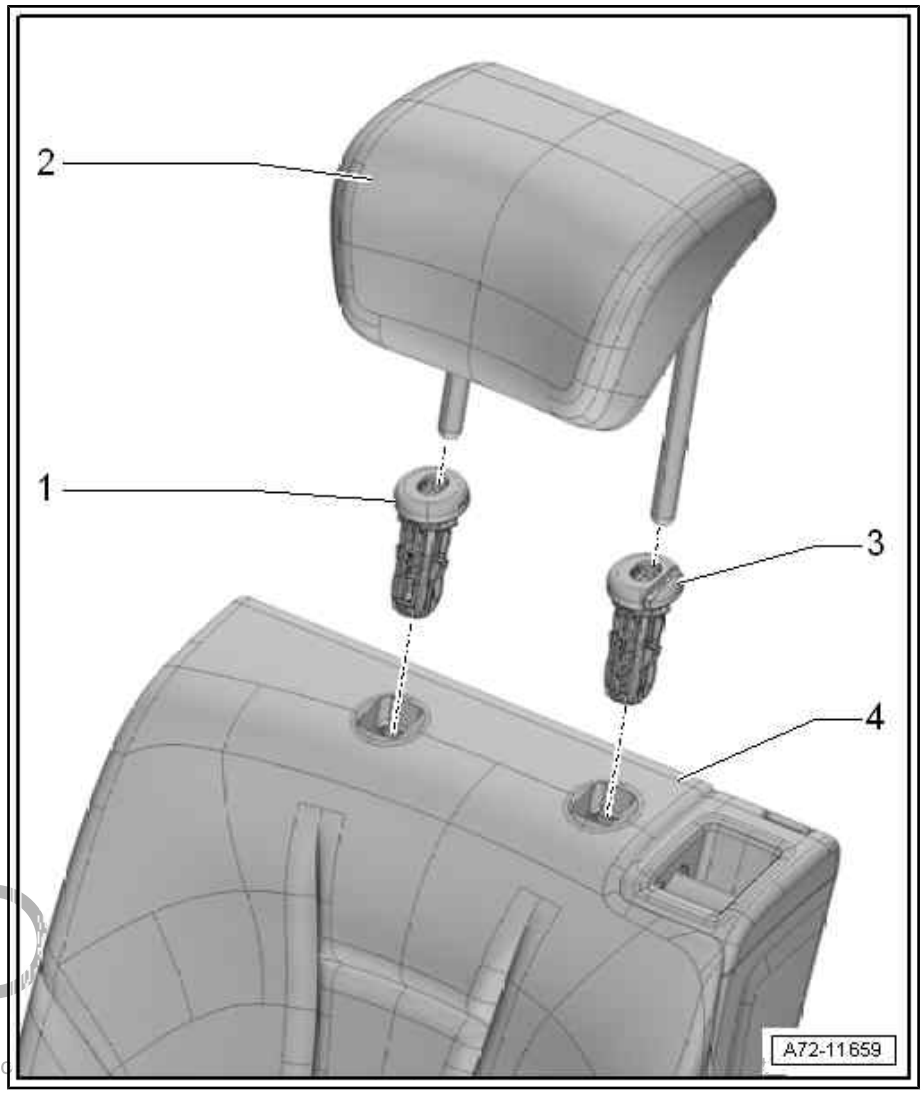
2 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 475
- ❑ Must be locked in head restraint guides

3 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With button for adjusting height of head restraint
- ❑ Always fitted on left side of rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 476
- ❑ Guide lug must engage in recess of mounting at head restraint frame
- ❑ Slide in until retaining tabs engage properly with outer backrest frame

4 - Rear seat backrest



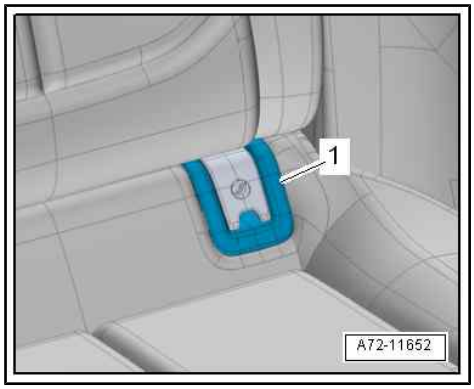
Protected by copyright. Co
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.6 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats

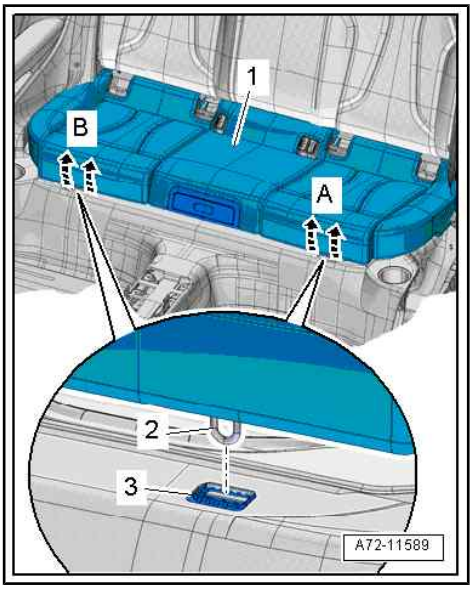
Removing

– Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.

– Unclip guides -1- for child seat anchor (4x) from anchors ⇒ page 110 .



– Reach underneath seat bench frame on one side with both hands.
– Using both hands, pull seat bench -1- firmly and abruptly upwards -arrows A- to disengage wire hook -2- for seat bench from retainer -3-.
– Repeat procedure on opposite side of seat bench -arrows B-.
– Take seat bench out of vehicle.



Installing

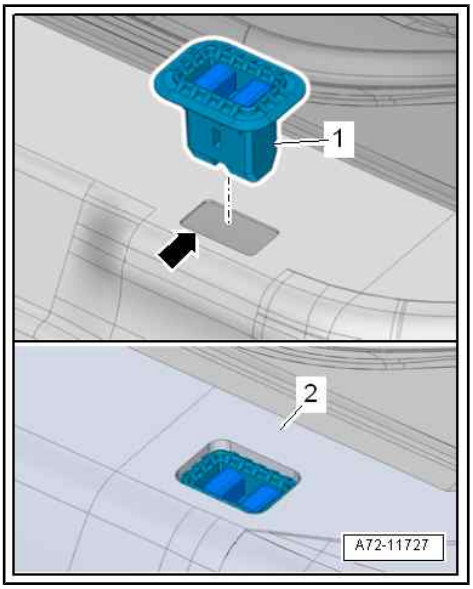
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Check body cut-outs -arrow- for deformation.
– If there are deformations, correct them by knocking back panel with a plastic hammer.

Note

Minor remaining deformations are permissible.

– Lift floor covering -2- and press new retainers -1- into body cut-out -arrow- until they engage audibly.
– Fit floor covering around retainer, as illustrated.

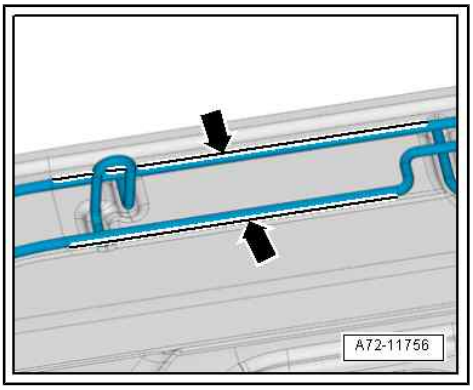


Note

Floor covering must not cover retainer.

– Before installing seat bench, check whether wire frame is flush in area marked with -arrows-.
– If wire frame is bent, bend it back until it is flush again.
– Fit seat bench and press wire hooks firmly into retainers.
– Make sure that wire hooks are properly engaged in retainers.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 458

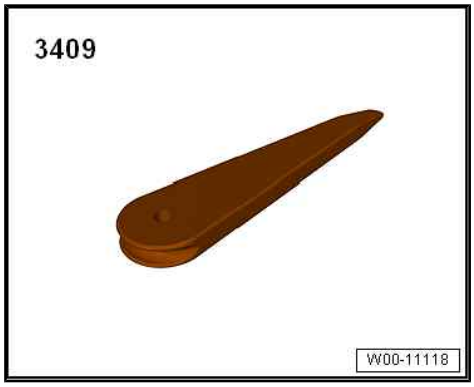


3.7 Removing and installing centre storage compartment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

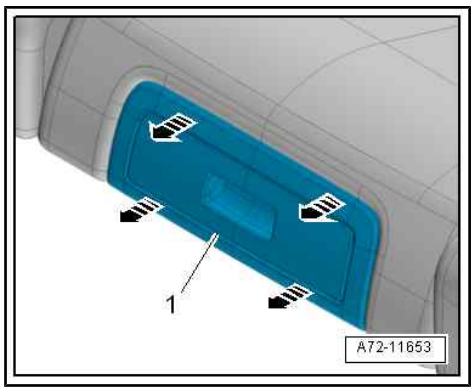


Removing

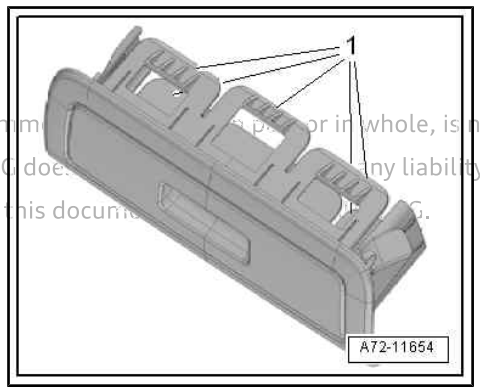
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 464 .

– Take out high-visibility vest.

– Prise storage compartment -1- out of mounting -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- and remove.



– Storage compartment with catches: Release storage compartment at catches -1- and take it out of mounting.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 458

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

3.8 Removing and installing rear seat backrest

⇒ “3.8.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest”, page 466

⇒ “3.8.2 Removing and installing inner pivot pin”, page 468

⇒ “3.8.3 Removing and installing side padding with side airbag (rear)”, page 468

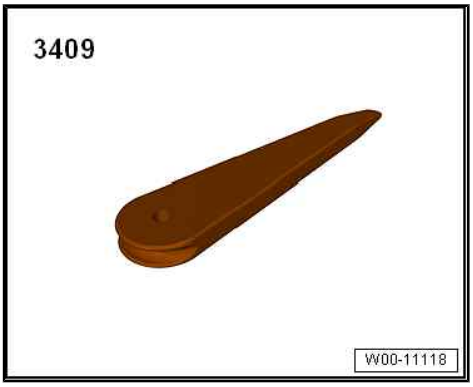
3.8.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest

Note

Removal and installation are described for the 2/3 section of the rear seat backrest (right-side).

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side): Remove centre belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 107 .

– Remove luggage compartment floor covering.

– Equipment version with vehicle tool kit: Remove vehicle tool kit.

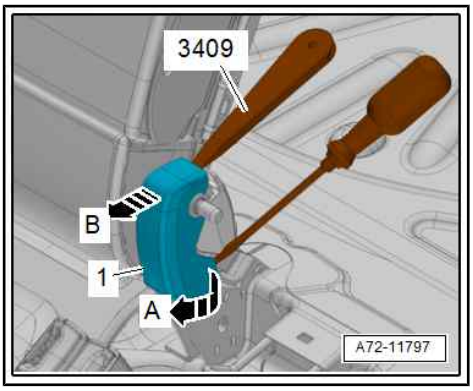
Note

For greater clarity the 1/3 section (left-side) of the rear seat backrest is not shown in the following illustrations.

– Use a screwdriver to release retaining tabs at sides -arrow A- and press cover for centre bracket out of retainer towards front.

– Fold down 1/3 section of rear seat backrest (left-side).

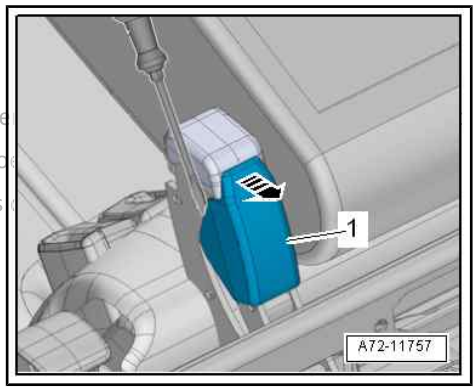
– Unclip cover -1- for centre bracket using removal wedge -3409- -arrow B-.



– Fold up 1/3 section of rear seat backrest (left-side) and remove cover for centre bracket towards front.

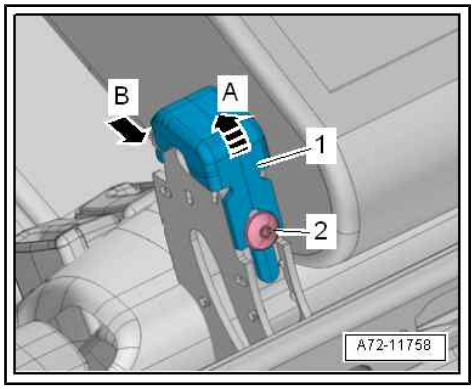
– Fold down rear seat backrests.

– Remove cover -1- for centre bracket -arrow-; to do so, unclip retaining tabs on sides of cover with a screwdriver.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do
with respect to the correctness of information in this

– Remove bolt -2-.
– Equipment version with load-through hatch: Open and fold down flap for load-through hatch.
– Fold up retaining clip -1- at rear -arrow A-, disengage from centre bracket -arrow B- at front and detach.

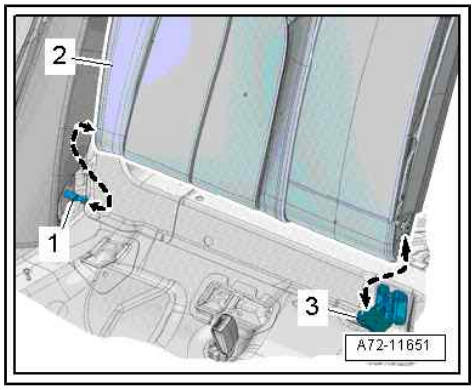


– Lift rear seat backrest -2- out of centre bracket -3- and pull it out of outer mounting -1- towards centre of vehicle -arrows-.
– Take rear seat backrest out of vehicle.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.2.1 Exploded view - rear seat backrest”, page 460



3.8.2 Removing and installing inner pivot pin

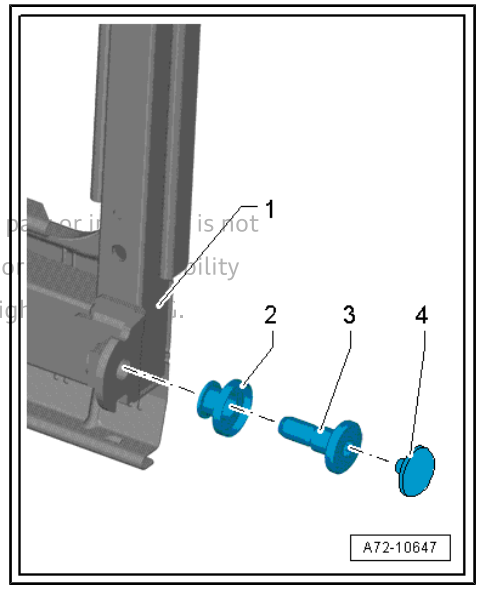
Removing

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 466 .
– Detach abrasion guard -4- and remove pivot pin -3- from outer backrest frame -1-.

Note

For greater clarity the padding and cover are not shown in the illustration.

...ted by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p... or i... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ... bility ...ect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig... ...



– Detach bearing sleeve -2- from pivot pin.

Installing

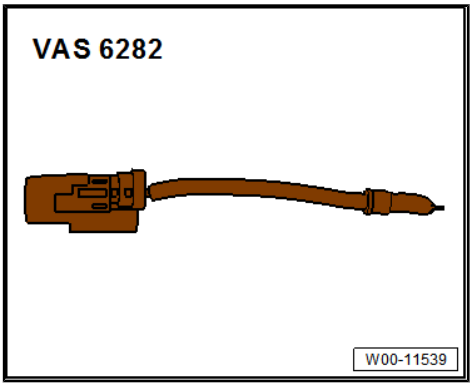
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.2.1 Exploded view - rear seat backrest”, page 460

3.8.3 Removing and installing side padding with side airbag (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Airbag adapter - VAS 6282-



Removing

– Remove seat bench/individual seats ⇒ page 464 .

WARNING

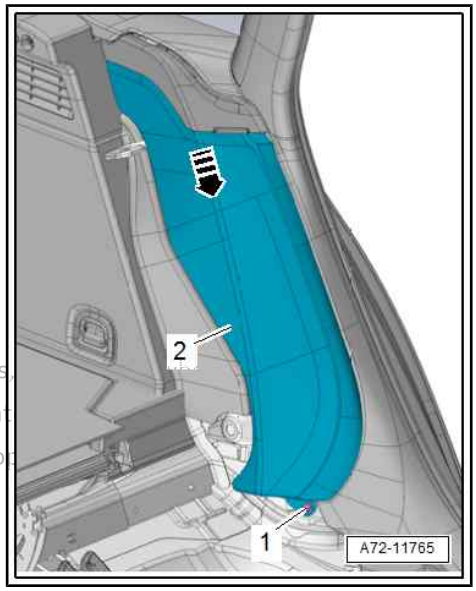
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 6 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Unscrew nut -1-.

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

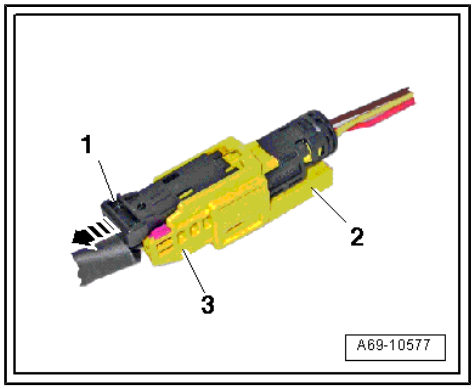
– Hold belt to one side, pull side padding -2- downwards -arrow- and remove.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Unplug electrical connector (yellow) for side airbag (rear).
– To do so, pull catch -1- in direction of -arrow- and unplug electrical connectors -2- and -3-.
– Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 396 .

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)”, page 150

3.9 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism

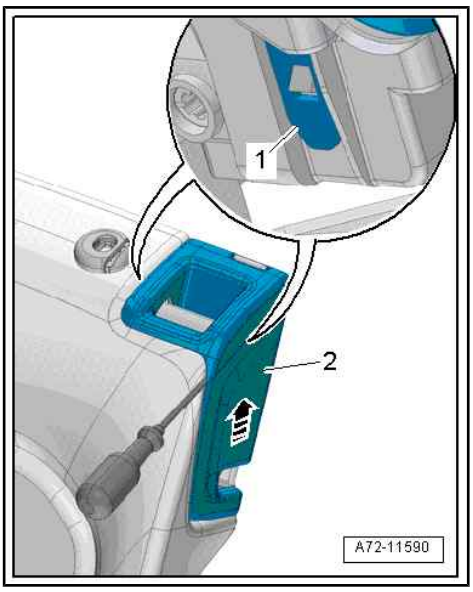
Removing

– Release rear seat backrest.

– Make sure button (indicator) is in »top« position.

– Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, prise both lugs -1- off retaining tabs at locking mechanism.

– At the same time pull trim -2- upwards off locking mechanism -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure button moves freely after installing trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - locking mechanism”, page 462

3.10 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest

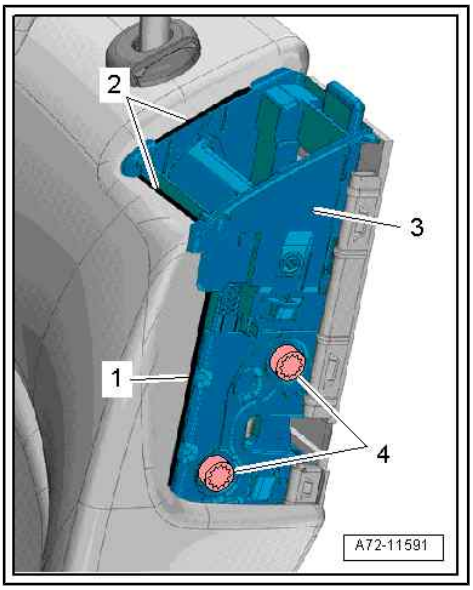
Removing

– Remove trim for locking mechanism ⇒ page 471 .

– Using a screwdriver, prise fastening strips -1 and 2- for backrest cover out of locking mechanism.

– Remove bolts -4-.

– Detach locking mechanism -3- from outer backrest frame.



Installing

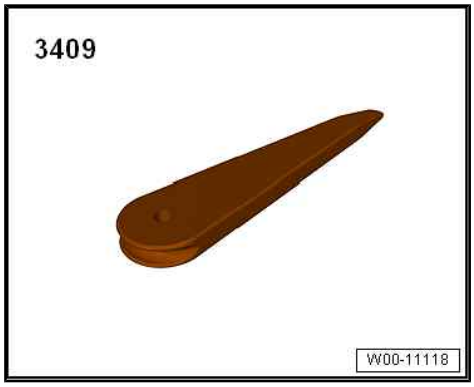
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - locking mechanism”, page 462

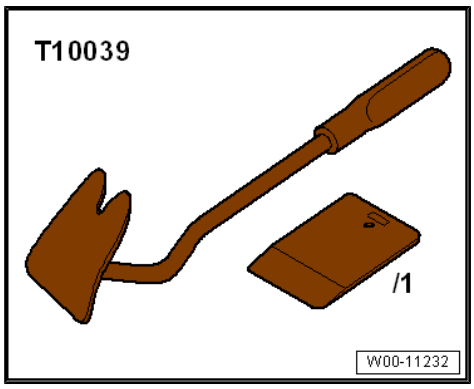
3.11 Removing and installing trim frame for load-through hatch

Special tools and workshop equipment required

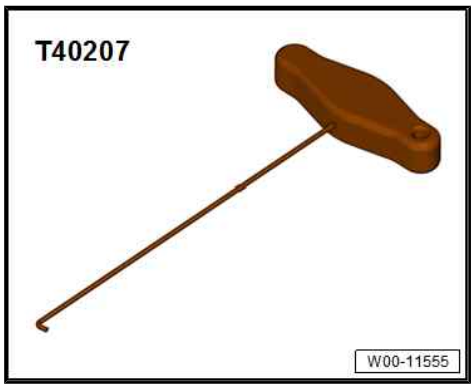
- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Release lever - T10039/1-



- Hook - T40207-

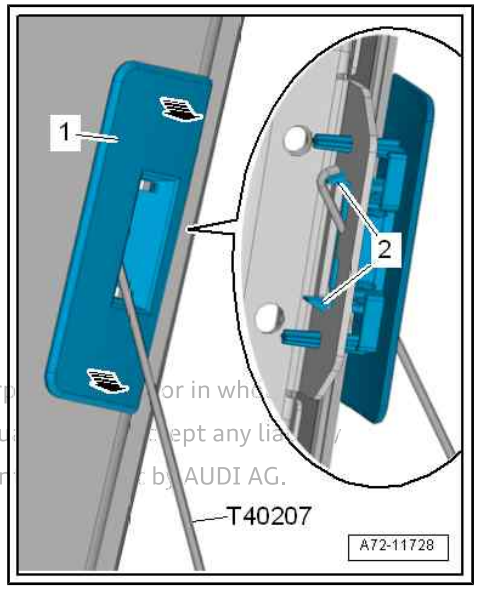


Removing

– Fold down centre armrest and open flap for load-through hatch.

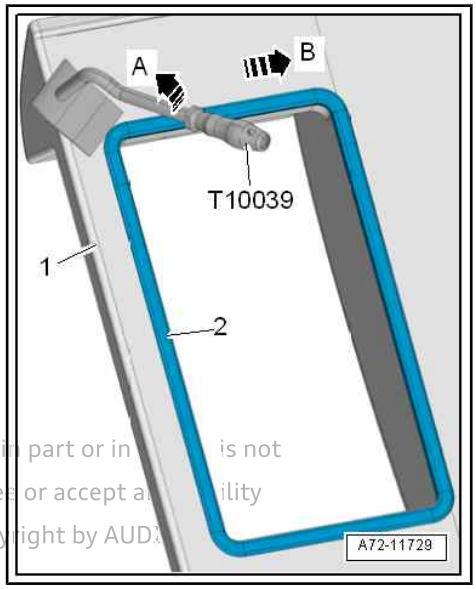
– Unclip trim -1- from rear seat backrest -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– To do so, release retaining tabs -2- alternately using hook - T40207- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pur or in wh
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu ept any lia
with respect to the correctness of information in this documer by AUDI AG.

– Prise trim frame -2- off rear seat backrest -1- -arrow A- using release lever - T10039/1- .
– Start prising off in top left corner and then proceed in direction of -arrow B-.
– Detach trim frame for load-through hatch.



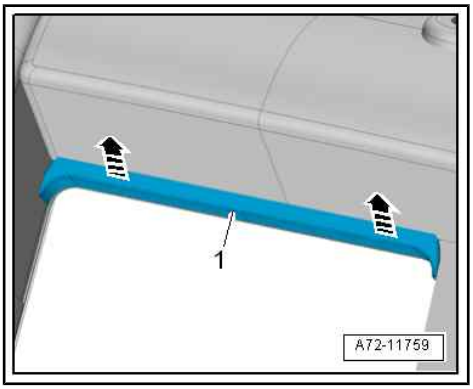
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept a ility with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

– Press padding with cover slightly to the side and unclip stop strip -1- from rear seat backrest -arrows-.
– Detach stop strip.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.2.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, flap for load-through hatch”, page 461



3.12 Removing and installing flap for load-through hatch

Removing

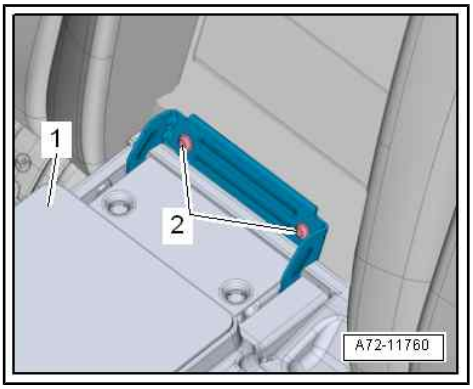
– Fold down centre armrest and open flap for load-through hatch.
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Detach centre armrest with flap -1- for load-through hatch.
– Remove centre armrest ⇒ page 474 .
– Remove intermediate padding (bottom) ⇒ page 515 .

Installing

– Position flap -1- for load-through hatch with centre armrest and only hand-tighten bolts.
– Close and align flap for load-through hatch.
– Tighten bolts -2- at rear seat backrest.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.2.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, flap for load-through hatch”, page 461

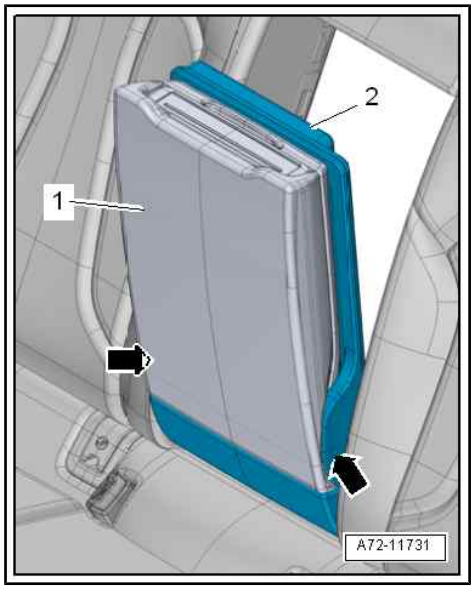


3.13 Removing and installing centre armrest

⇒ “3.13.1 Removing and installing centre armrest”, page 474

⇒ “3.13.2 Removing and installing cup holders”, page 474

3.13.1 Removing and installing centre armrest



Removing

– Open flap -2- for load-through hatch with centre armrest by approx. $^{1}/_{3}$.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach centre armrest -1- from flap of load-through hatch.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.4 Exploded view - centre armrest”, page 463

3.13.2 Removing and installing cup holders

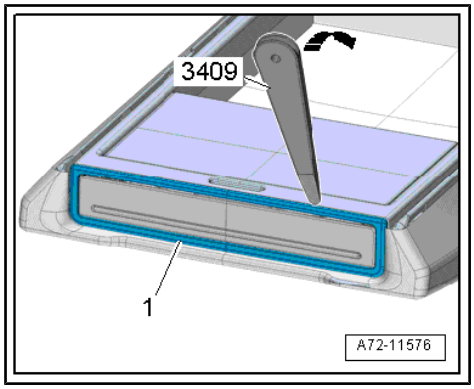
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing



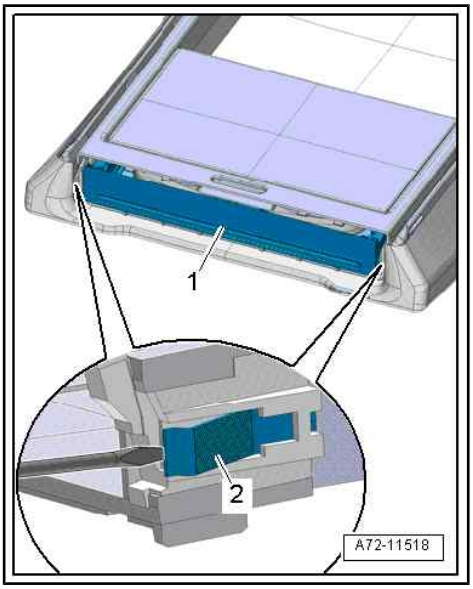
– Fold down centre armrest.

– Prise off trim -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow-.

– Detach trim from centre armrest.

– Open cup holder flap -1-.

– Using a screwdriver, release each spring -2- and remove cup holder by carefully pulling alternately on both sides.



Installing

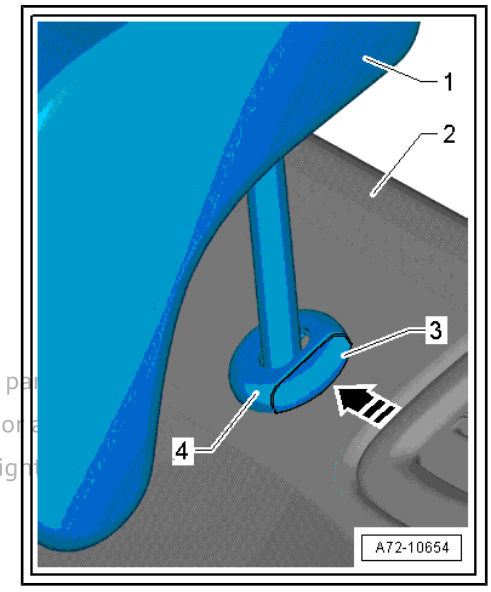
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.4 Exploded view - centre armrest”, page 463

3.14 Removing and installing head restraint

Removing

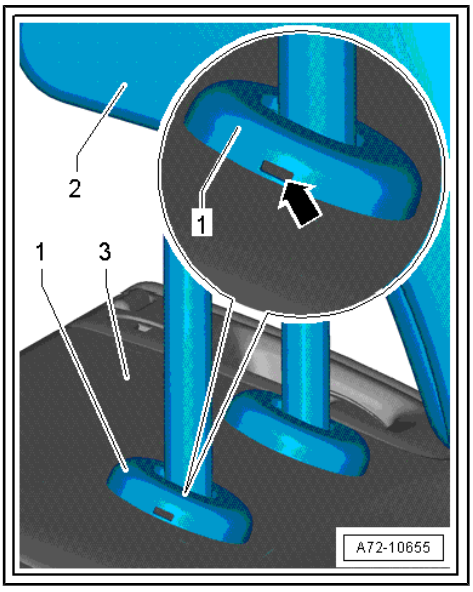
– Press release button -3- for height adjustment at head restraint guide -4- in direction of -arrow- and at the same time pull head restraint -1- as far as possible out of rear seat backrest -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrigh

– Using a small flat-bladed screwdriver, press locking spring as far as it will go in opening -arrow- of head restraint guide -1-.

– At the same time, pull head restraint -2- out of rear seat backrest -3- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide”, page 464

3.15 Removing and installing head restraint guide

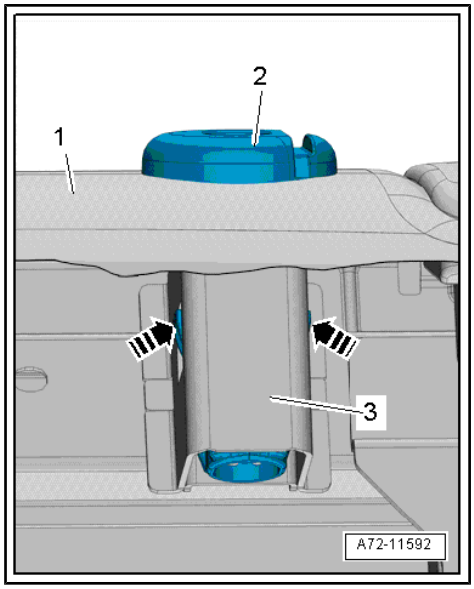
Removing

– Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 475 .

– Unfasten backrest cover with backrest padding from outer backrest frame ⇒ page 511 .

– Fold backrest cover with padding -1- upwards until head restraint post -3- welded into outer backrest frame with head restraint guide -2- is visible.

– Press in retaining tabs of head restraint guide with pliers -arrows- and at the same time pull head restraint guide out of outer backrest frame.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.5 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide", page 464

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

74 – Seat - padding, covers

1 Covers and padding on front seats

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding”, page 477

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding”, page 480

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding”, page 483

⇒ “1.4 Overview - seat heating elements”, page 484

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding”, page 487

⇒ “1.6 Separating seat pan cover and padding”, page 491

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding”, page 494

⇒ “1.8 Separating backrest cover and padding”, page 500

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding”, page 501

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 ”, page 503

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 ”, page 505

1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding

⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, standard seat”, page 477

⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat/ super sports seat”, page 479

1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, standard seat

Note

The illustration shows the equipment version with leather cover as an example.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Seat pan

2 - Seat padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 487
- ❑ Separating seat cover and padding ⇒ page 491
- ❑ Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 503

3 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

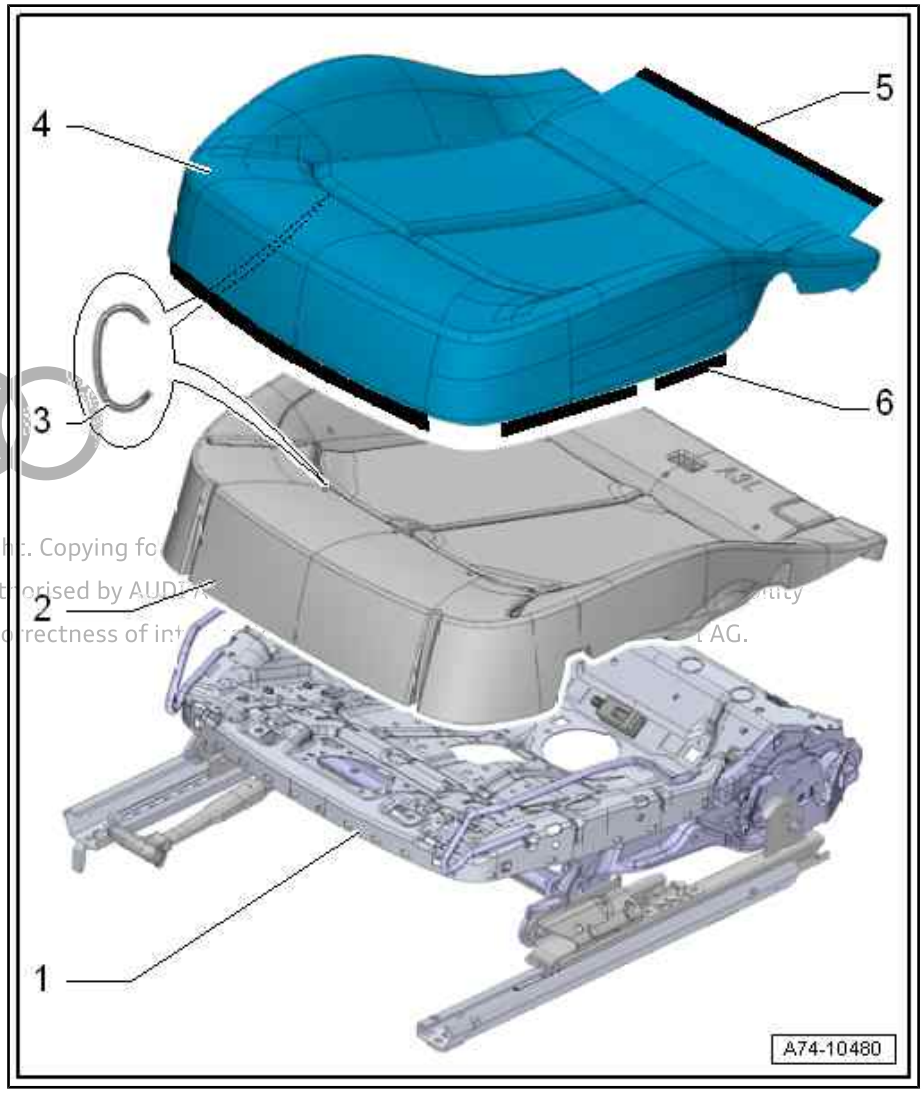
4 - Seat cover

- ❑ Equipment versions:

♦ Fabric

♦ Leather

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 487
- ❑ Separating seat cover and padding ⇒ page 491
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases



5 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

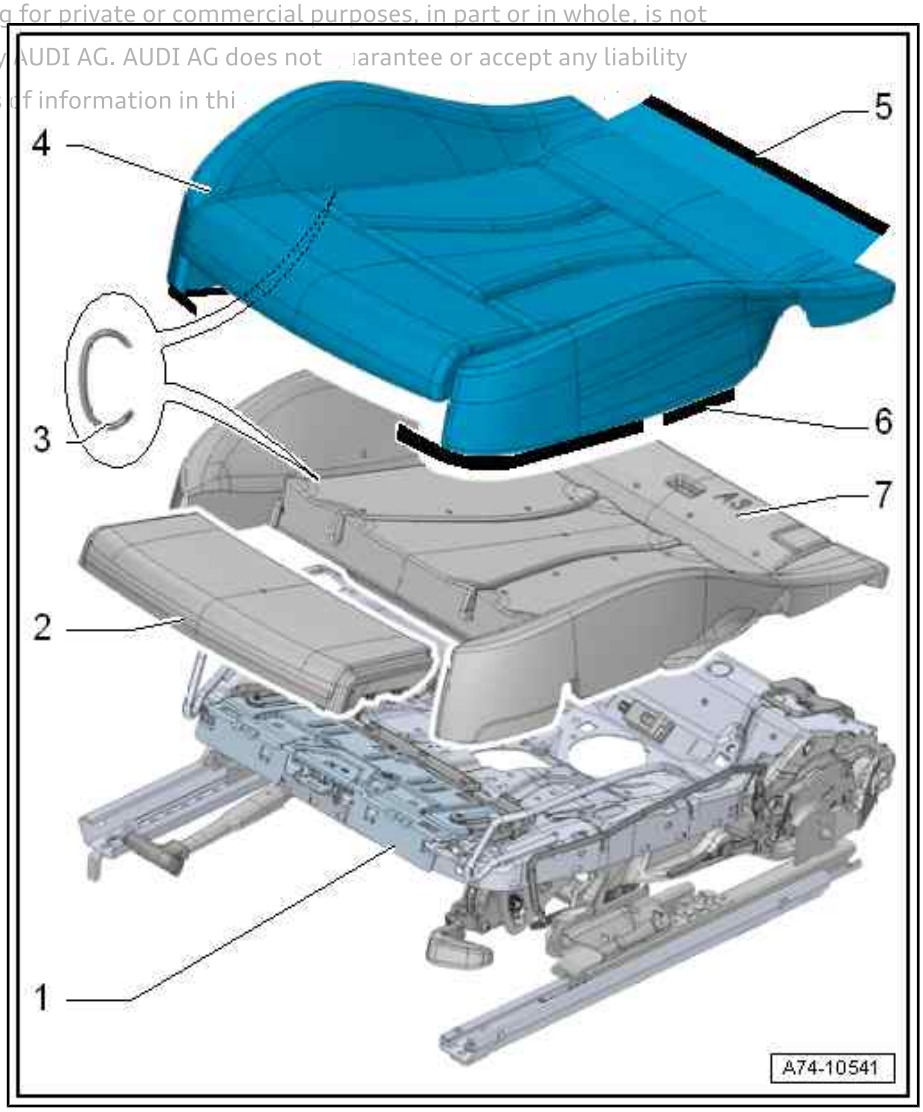
6 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat/super sports seat

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in thi



1 - Seat pan

2 - Seat padding

- ❑ For seat depth adjuster
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 490
- ❑ Separating seat cover and padding ⇒ page 492
- ❑ Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 504

3 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

4 - Seat cover

- ❑ Equipment versions:

♦ Fabric

♦ Leather

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 490
- ❑ Separating seat cover and padding ⇒ page 492
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

5 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

6 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

7 - Seat padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 490
- ❑ Separating seat cover and padding ⇒ page 492
- ❑ Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 504

1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding

⇒ "1.2.1 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, standard seat", page 480

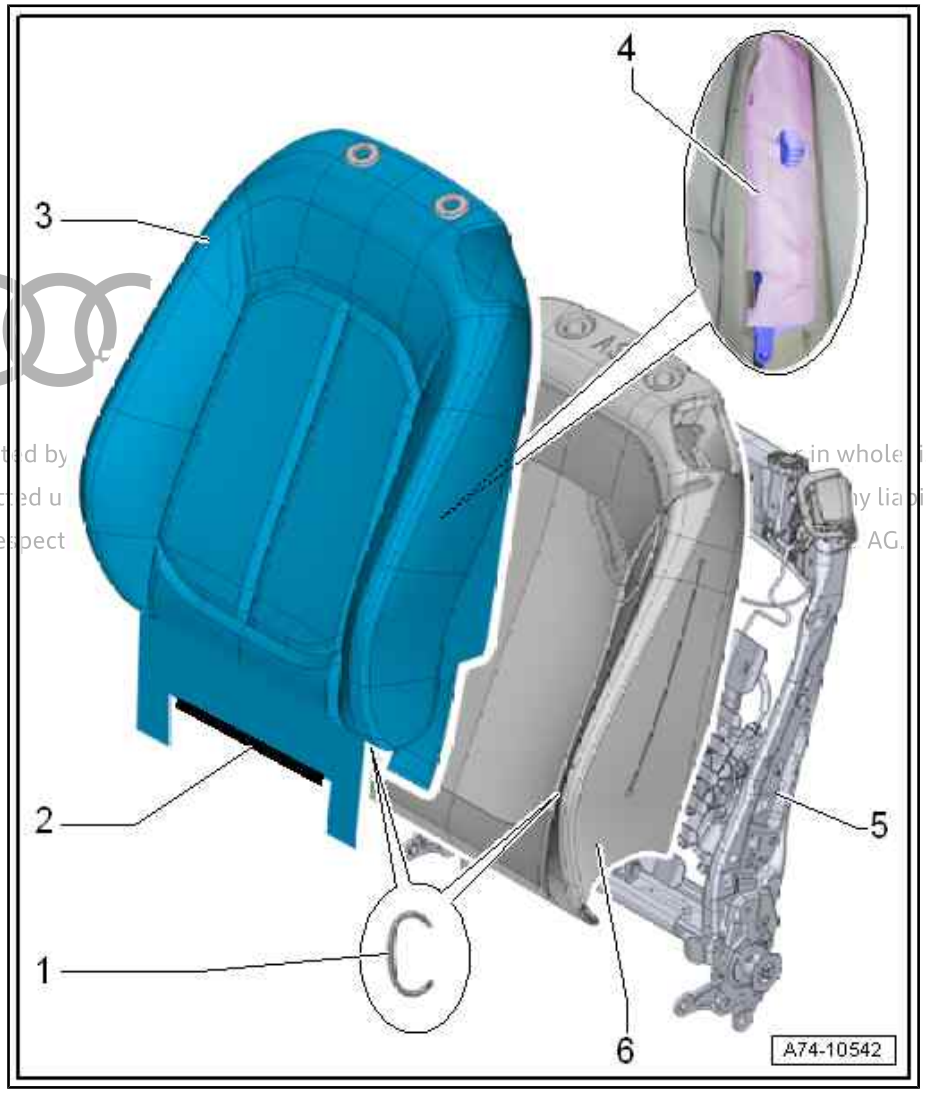
⇒ "1.2.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, sports seat", page 481

⇒ "1.2.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat", page 482

1.2.1 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, standard seat

Note

The illustration shows the equipment version with leather cover and backrest release mechanism as an example.



1 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

2 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in outer backrest frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in outer backrest frame

3 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Equipment versions:

♦ Fabric

♦ Leather

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 494
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 500
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

4 - Pouch

- ❑ For side airbag
- ❑ Stitched to cover

5 - Outer backrest frame

6 - Padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

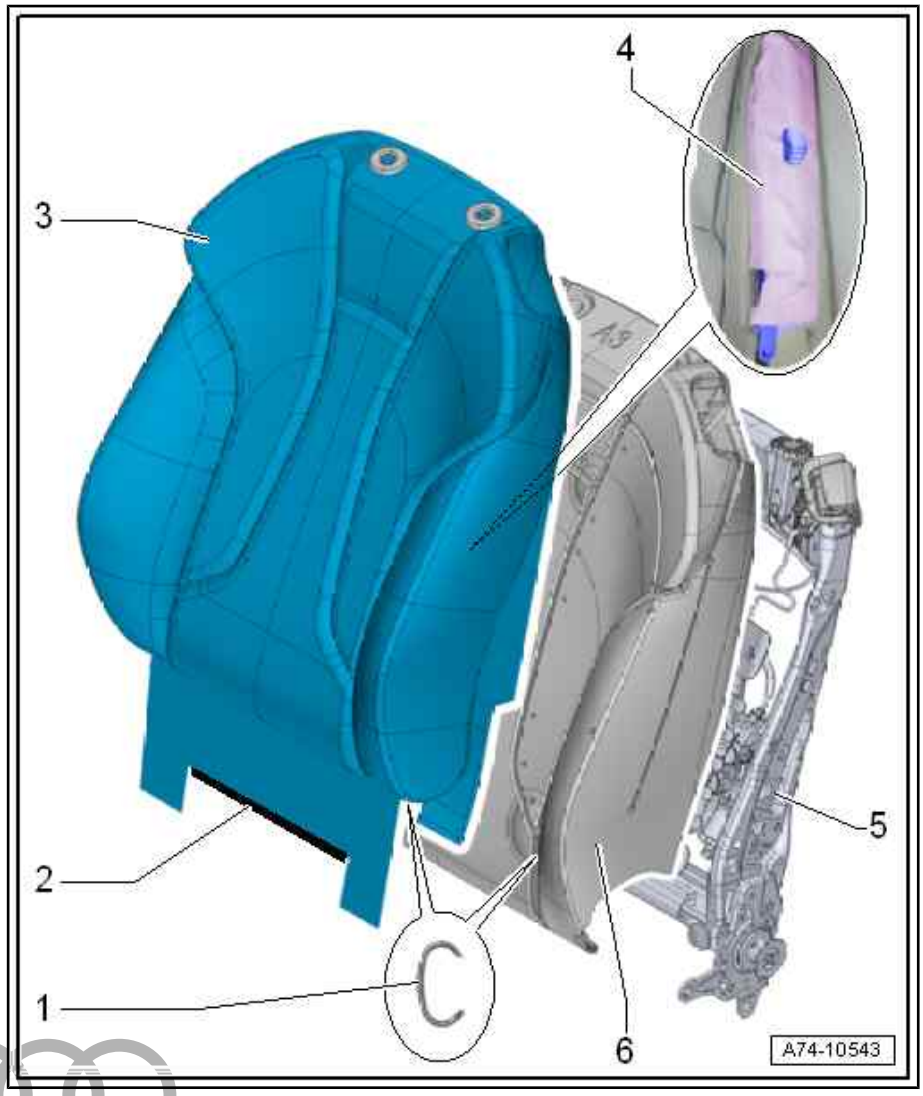
Protected by ... in whole is not permitted u... ...y liability with respect ... AG.

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 494
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 500
- ❑ Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 505

1.2.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, sports seat

Note

The illustration shows the equipment version with backrest release mechanism as an example.



1 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

2 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in outer backrest frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in outer backrest frame

3 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Equipment versions:

♦ Fabric

♦ Leather

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 494
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 500
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

4 - Pouch

- ❑ For side airbag
- ❑ Stitched to cover

5 - Outer backrest frame

6 - Padding

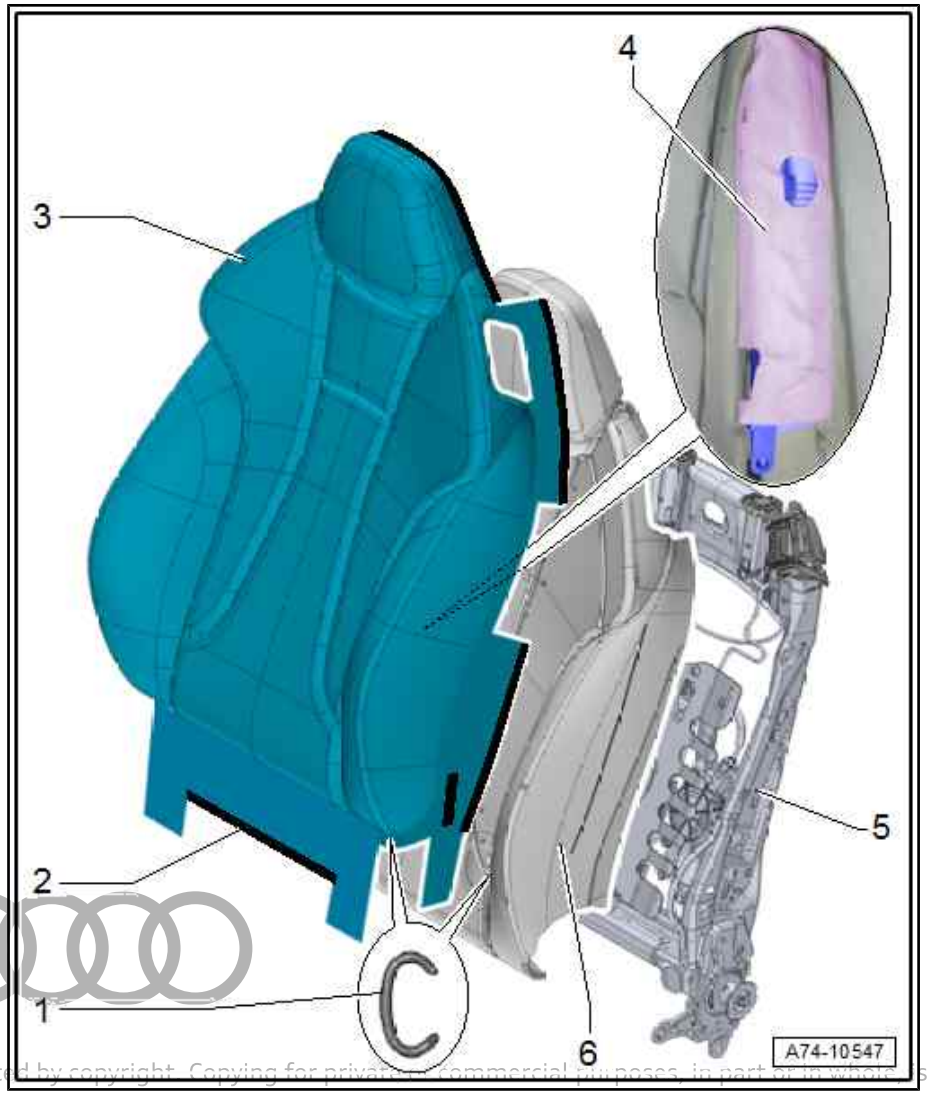
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 494
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 500
- ❑ Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 507

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat

Note

The illustration shows the equipment version with backrest release mechanism as an example.



1 - Upholstery clip

- For attaching cover to padding
- Renew after removing
- Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

2 - Piping

- Stitched to cover
- For engaging cover in outer backrest frame
- Make sure piping is seated correctly in outer backrest frame

3 - Backrest cover

- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 496
- Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 500
- After installing, make sure there are no creases

4 - Pouch

- For side airbag
- Stitched to cover

5 - Outer backrest frame

6 - Padding

- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 496
- Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 500
- Additionally bonded to outer backrest frame with two double-sided adhesive strips
- Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 507

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding

1 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Flat strip and U-strip

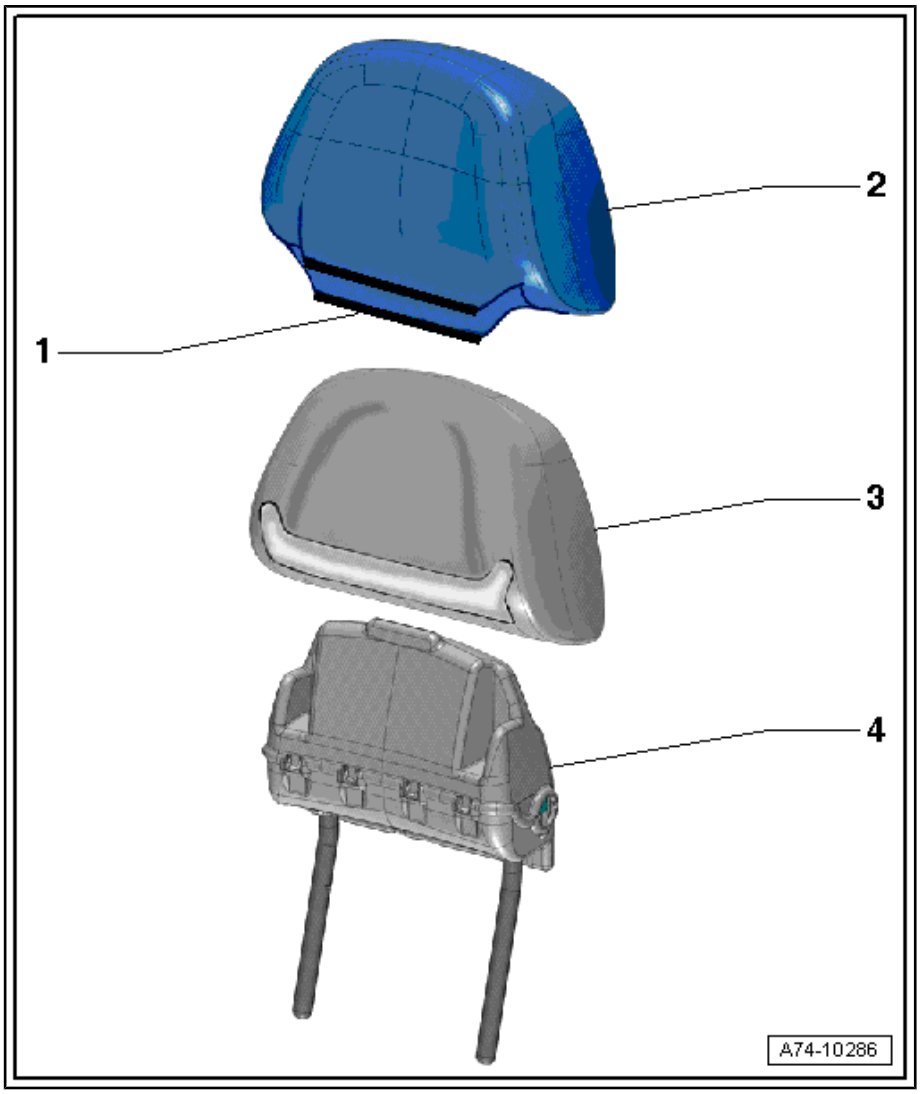
2 - Cover

- ❑ Equipment versions:
- ♦ Fabric
- ♦ Leather
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 501

3 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 501

4 - Mounting bracket for head restraint



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Overview - seat heating elements

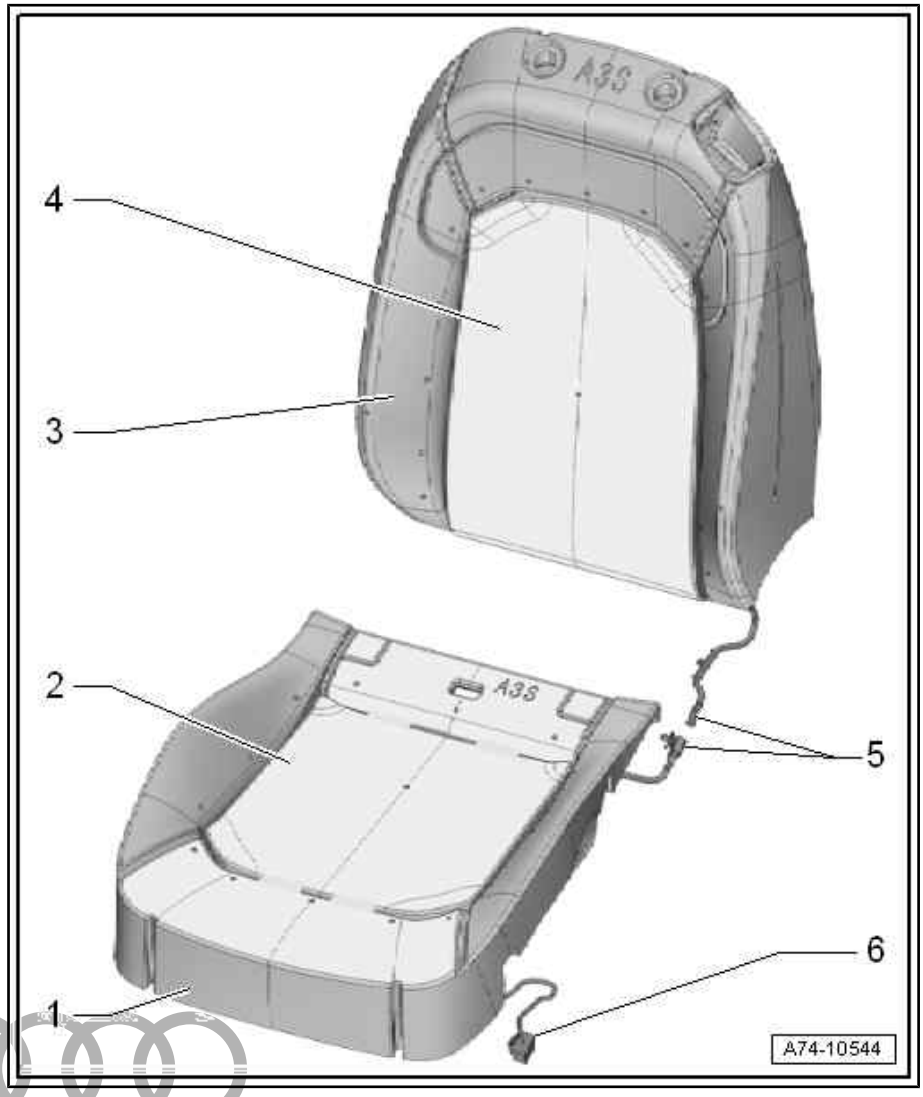
⇒ “1.4.1 Overview - seat and backrest heating elements, standard seat with fabric cover”, page 484

⇒ “1.4.2 Overview - seat and backrest heating elements, standard seat with leather cover”, page 485

⇒ “1.4.3 Overview - seat and backrest heating elements, sports seat”, page 486

⇒ “1.4.4 Overview - seat and backrest heating elements, super sports seat”, page 487

1.4.1 Overview - seat and backrest heating elements, standard seat with fabric cover



1 - Seat padding

- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 503
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Heating element for heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 503

3 - Backrest padding

- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 505
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Heating element for heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

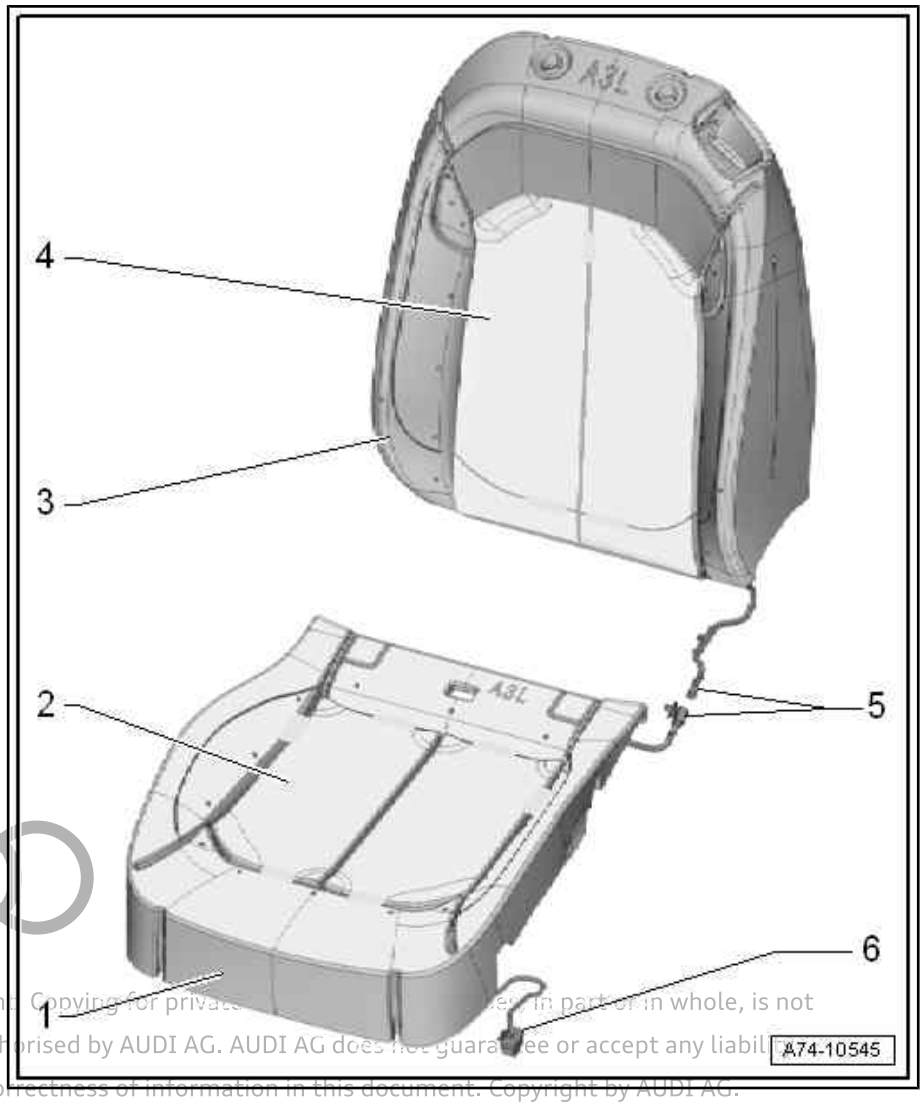
- ❑ Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 505

5 - Electrical wire

6 - Electrical wire

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.2 Overview - seat and backrest heating elements, standard seat with leather cover



1 - Seat padding

- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 503
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Heating element for heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 503

3 - Backrest padding

- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 505
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Heating element for heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 505

5 - Electrical wire

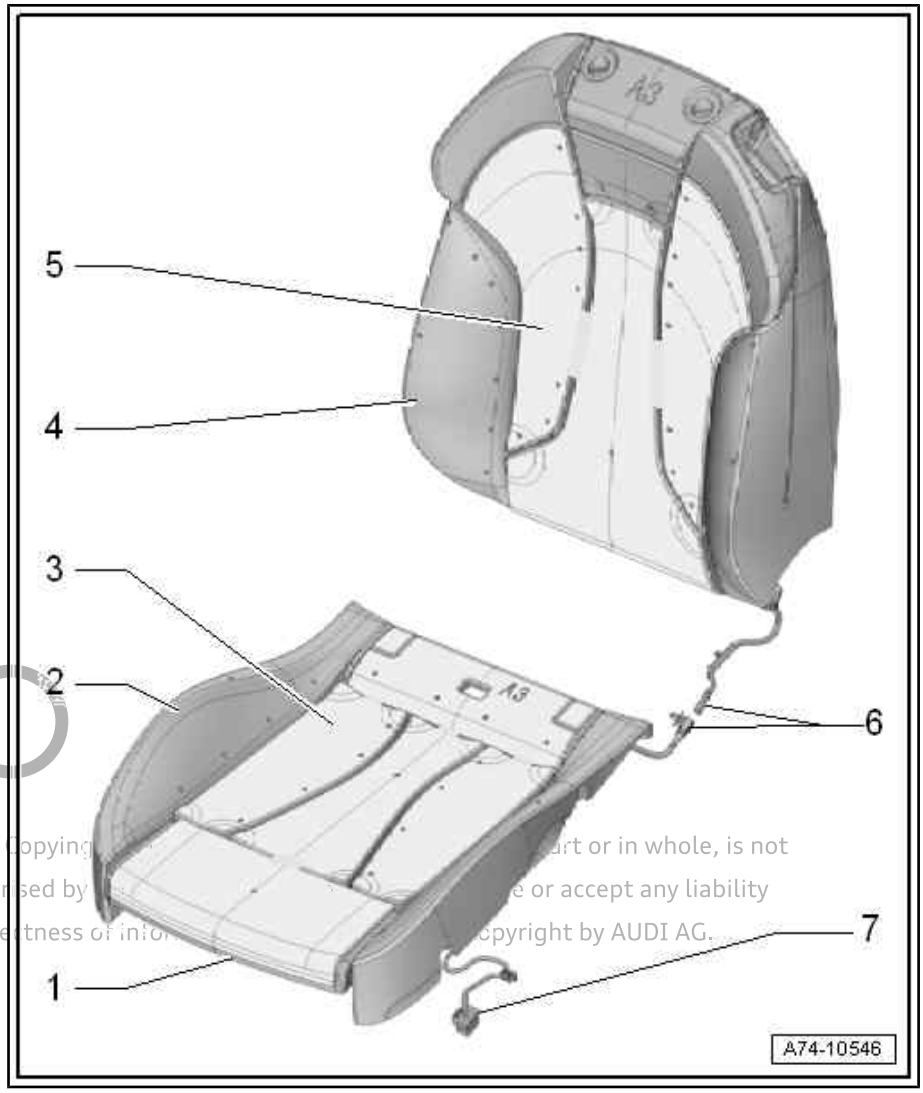
6 - Electrical wire

protected by copyright. Copying for private ... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.3 Overview - seat and backrest heating elements, sports seat

Note

The illustration shows the equipment version with textile cover as an example.



1 - Seat padding

- ❑ For seat depth adjuster
- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 504
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Seat padding

- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 504
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Heating element for heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 504

4 - Backrest padding

- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 507
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

5 - Heating element for heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

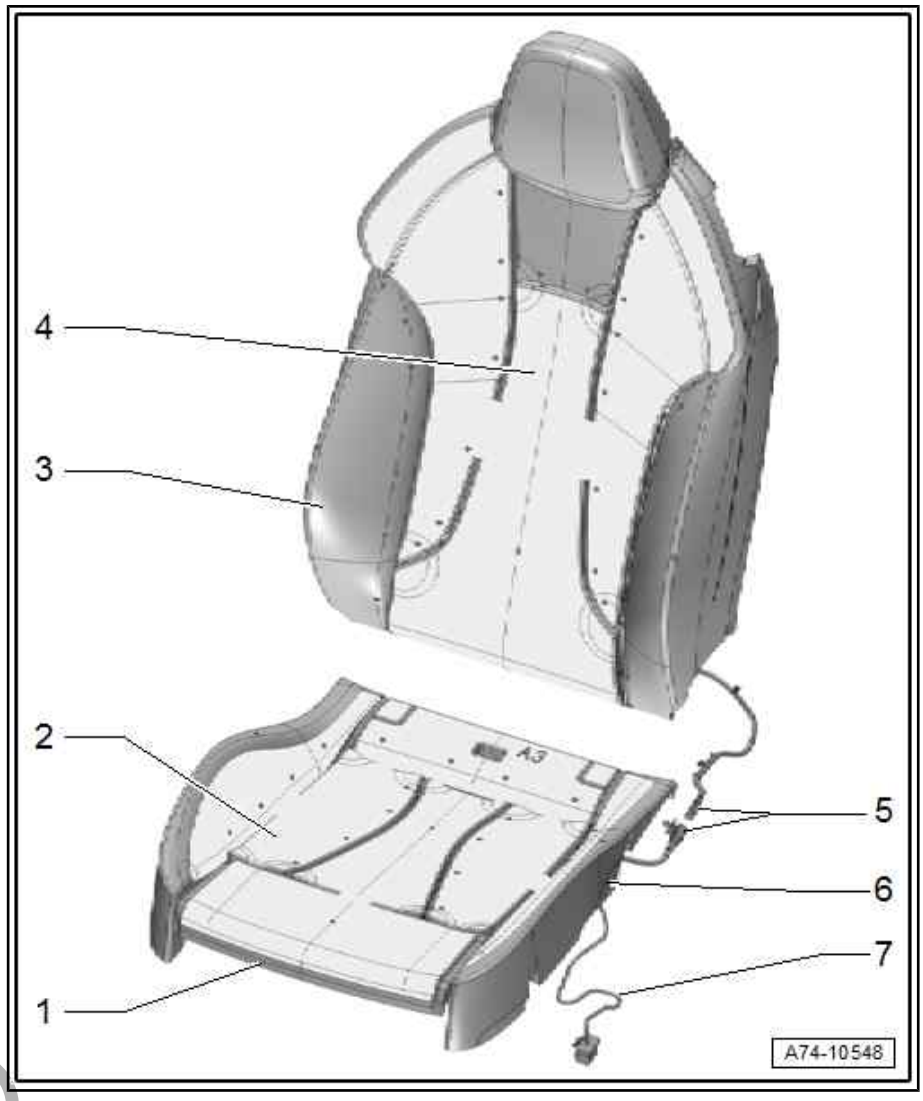
- ❑ Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 507

6 - Electrical wire

7 - Electrical wire

Protected by copyright. Copying ... part or in whole, is not ... or accept any liability ... with respect to the correctness of ... Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.4 Overview - seat and backrest heating elements, super sports seat



1 - Padding

- ❑ For seat depth adjuster
- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 504
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Heating element for heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 504

3 - Padding

- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 507
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Heating element for heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 507

5 - Electrical wire

6 - Padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

7 - Electrical wire

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding

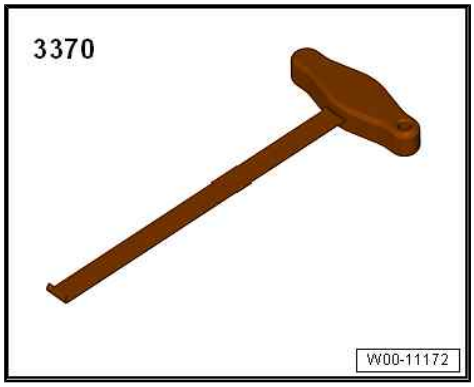
⇒ "1.5.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - standard seat", page 487

⇒ "1.5.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - sports seat/super sports seat", page 490

1.5.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - standard seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front-end hook - 3370-



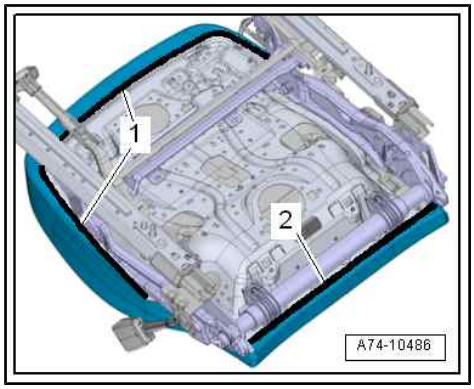
Removing

WARNING

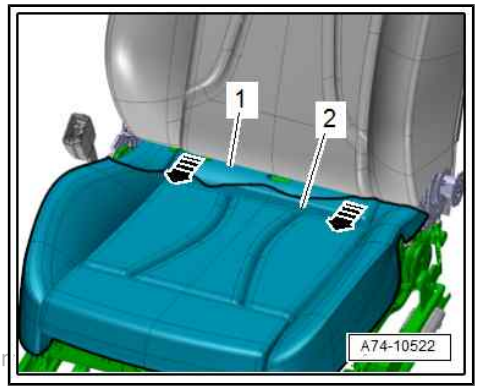
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Equipment version with seat occupied recognition: Observe safety regulations for seat occupied sensors ⇒ page 8 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 446 .
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 446 .
– Remove seat side trim and bracket for seat side trim (sill side):
- Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ page 443
- Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 444
– Equipment version with child seat anchor: Remove child seat anchor ⇒ page 109 .
– If fitted: Move wiring harness for seat heating clear at seat pan ⇒ page 440 .
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 404 .
– Disengage piping -1- of cover using front-end hook - 3370- (front and side sections).
– Disengage piping -2- of cover using front-end hook - 3370- (rear section).



– Carefully disengage padding -1- with cover -2- from rear of seat pan -arrows-.
– Detach cover with padding from seat pan and at the same time move clear wiring harness for seat heating (if fitted).

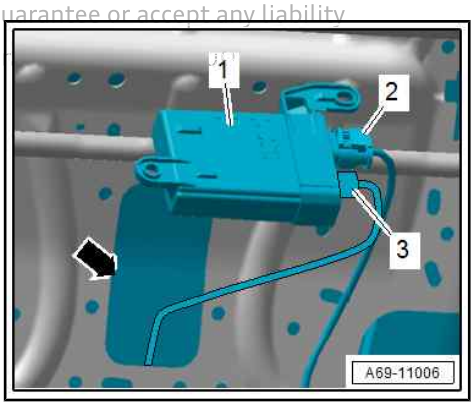


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pur
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

Front passenger seat - country-specific version:

Caution

Do NOT unplug connector -3- at seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .



– Unplug electrical connector -2- at control unit.
– Move wire for seat occupied sensor clear at seat pan.
– Guide control unit -1- out through opening -arrow- in seat pan and detach together with seat padding.

Installing

WARNING

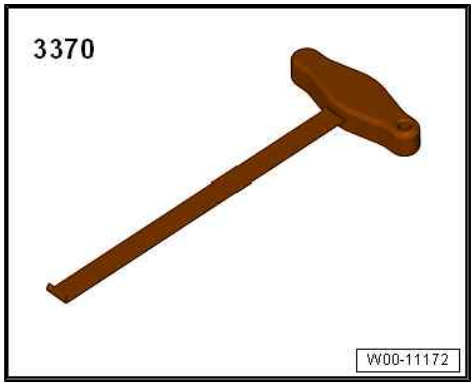
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, standard seat", page 477

1.5.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - sports seat/super sports seat

Front-end hook - 3370-

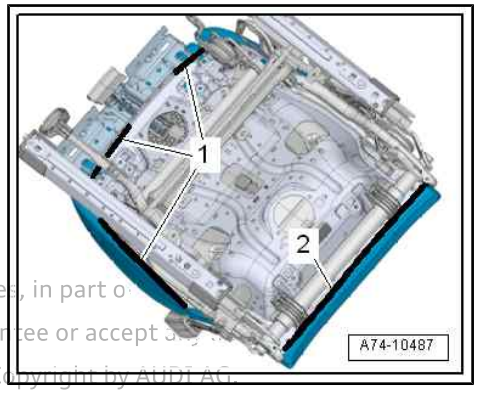


Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Equipment version with seat occupied recognition: Observe safety regulations for seat occupied sensors ⇒ page 8 .*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Remove mounting bracket with padding and cover for seat depth adjustment ⇒ page 447 .
– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 446 .
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 446 .
– Remove seat side trim and bracket for seat side trim (sill side):
♦ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ page 443
♦ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 444
– Equipment version with front passenger seat with child seat anchor: Remove child seat anchor ⇒ page 109 .
– If fitted: Move wiring harness for seat heating clear at seat pan ⇒ page 440 .
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 404 .
– Disengage piping -1- from side and piping -2- from rear of cover using front-end hook - 3370- .

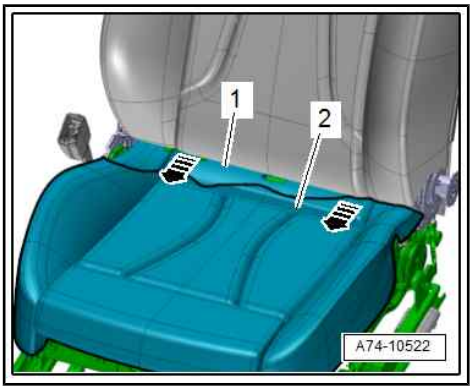


Note

(Plastic) mounting bracket of seat depth adjuster remains on padding.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Carefully disengage padding -1- with cover -2- from rear of seat pan -arrows-.
– Detach cover with padding from seat pan and at the same time move clear wiring harness for seat heating (if fitted).

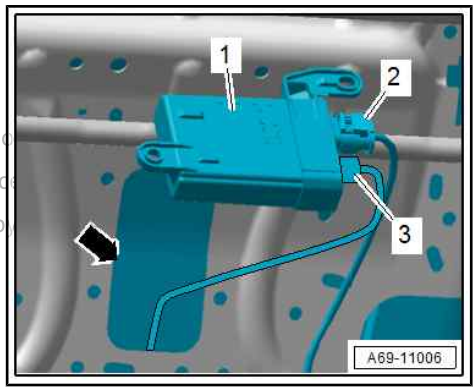


Front passenger seat - country-specific version:

Caution

Do NOT unplug connector -3- at seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by



– Unplug electrical connector -2- at control unit.
– Move wire for seat occupied sensor clear at seat pan.
– Guide control unit -1- out through opening -arrow- in seat pan and detach together with seat padding.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat/ super sports seat", page 479

1.6 Separating seat pan cover and padding

⇒ "1.6.1 Separating seat pan cover and padding - standard seat", page 491

⇒ "1.6.2 Separating seat pan cover and padding - sports seat/ super sports seat", page 492

1.6.1 Separating seat pan cover and padding - standard seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

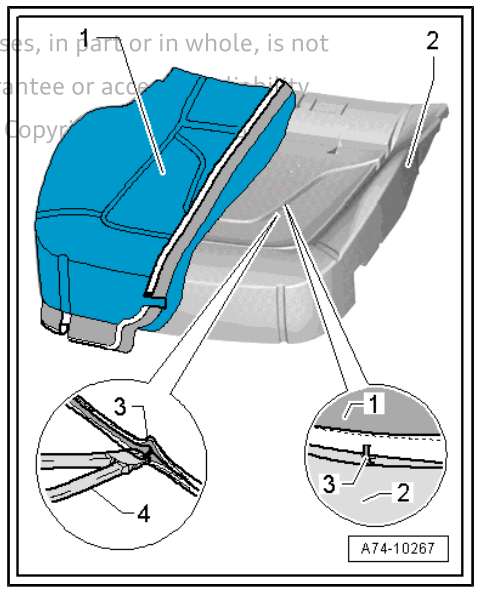
♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

– Remove seat cover with padding for seat pan ⇒ page 487 .
– Detach seat cover -1- from rear and sides of seat padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -3- with pliers -4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing seat padding, bond on new seat heating element ⇒ page 503 .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, standard seat”, page 477

1.6.2 Separating seat pan cover and padding - sports seat/super sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



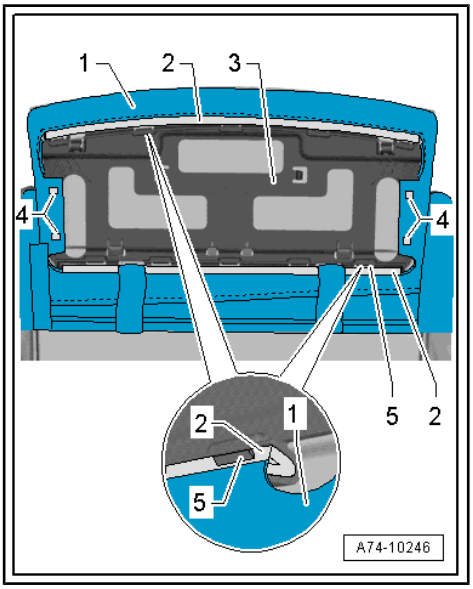
Removing

– Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ page 490 .

– Unclip fastening strips -2- from fasteners -5-.

– Disengage cover from tabs -4- on both sides.

– Pull mounting bracket -3- with padding for seat depth adjuster off cover -1-.



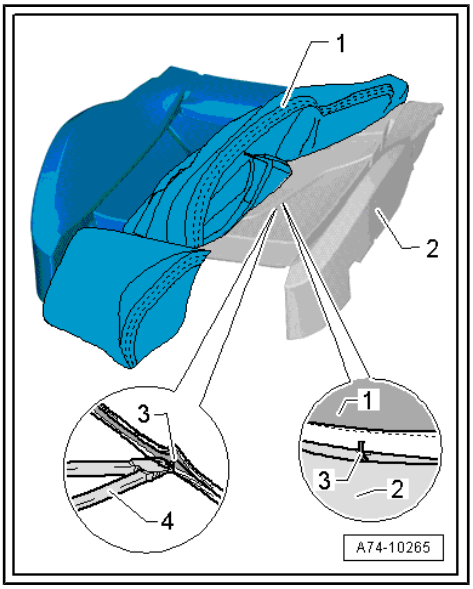
– Detach cover -1- from padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -3- with pliers -4-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing seat padding, bond on new seat heating element ⇒ page 504 .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat/ super sports seat", page 479



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

⇒ "1.7.1 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - standard seat/sports seat", page 494

⇒ "1.7.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat", page 496

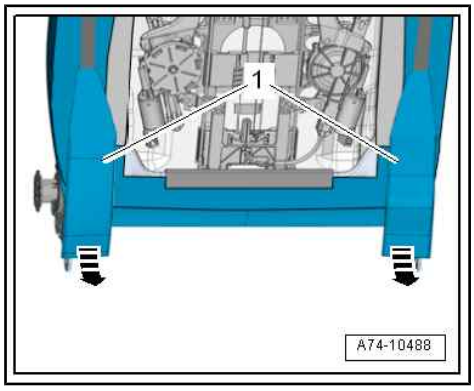
1.7.1 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - standard seat/sports seat

Removing

WARNING

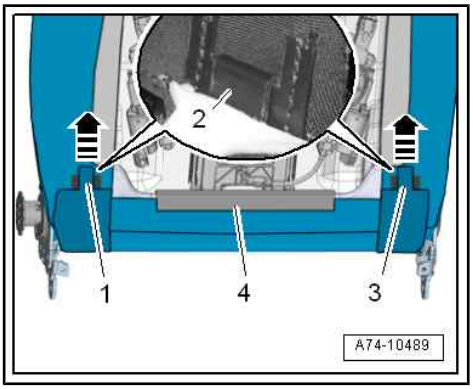
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 405 .
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 446 .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side):
♦ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ page 443
♦ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 444
– Move wiring harness for side airbag and backrest heating (equipment version) clear at seat pan ⇒ page 440 .
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 404 .
– Disengage covers -1- at bottom of backrest fitting -arrows-.



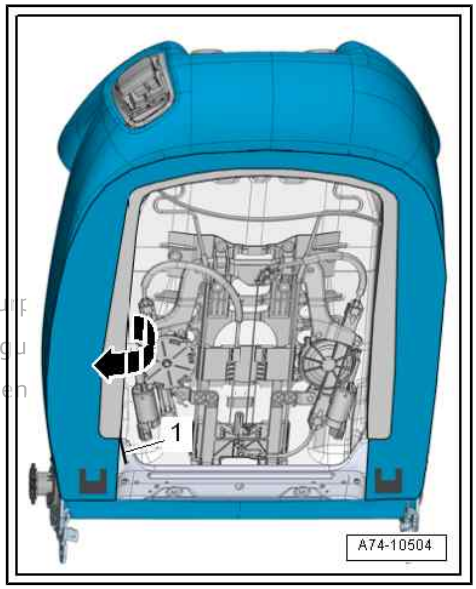
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull lugs -1 and 3- of cover upwards -arrows- and disengage piping -2- at cover.
– Disengage piping -4- at bottom of outer backrest frame.



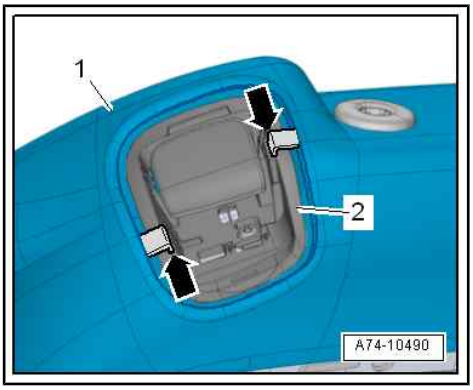
– Disengage fastening strip -1- of cover from outer backrest frame -arrow-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pur
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen



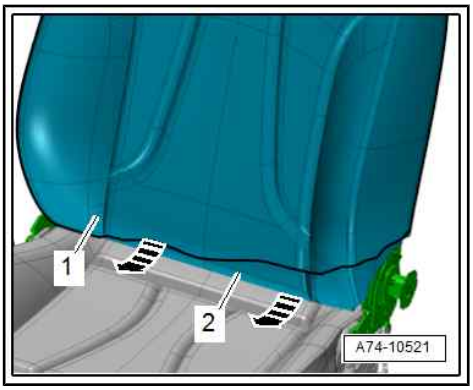
Equipment version with backrest release mechanism/Easy Entry system:

– Remove trim for backrest release mechanism ⇒ page 411 .
– Disengage hooks -arrows- of cover with padding at backrest release mechanism -2-.



All seat versions (continued):

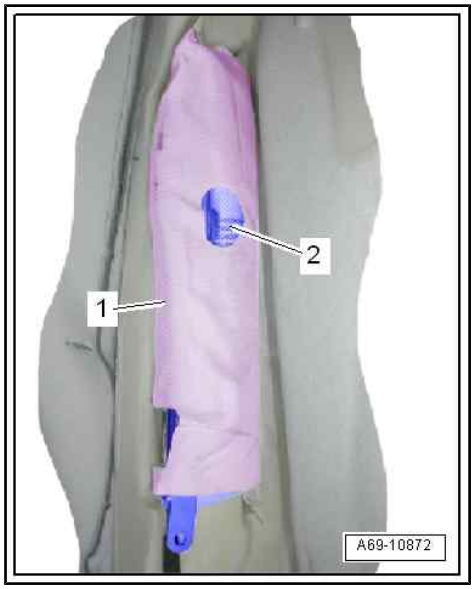
– Carefully disengage cover -1- with padding -2- from bottom of backrest -arrows-.
– Unfasten padding from outer backrest frame and carefully pull it as far as possible towards front.
– Remove side airbag (front) ⇒ page 150 .
– Take padding and cover upwards off outer backrest frame, and depending on version, guide out wiring harness for backrest heating.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*



Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert side airbag -2- into pouch -1- stitched into cover, engage at outer backrest frame and secure with bolts.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding", page 480

1.7.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Double-sided adhesive tape ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Removing

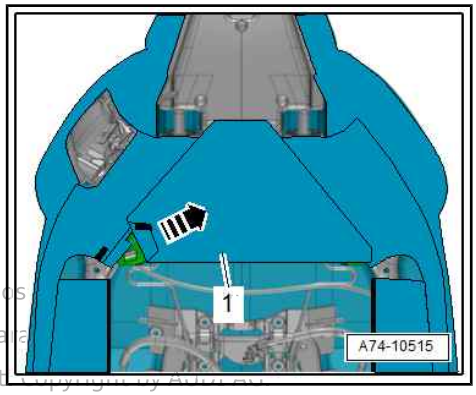
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

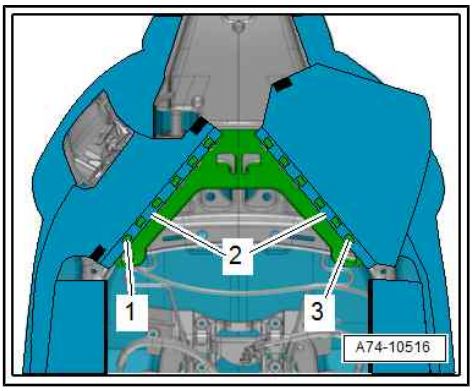
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 392 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 399 .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 406 .
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 446 .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 443 .
– Move wiring harness for side airbag and backrest heating (equipment version) clear at seat pan ⇒ page 440 .
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 404 .

– Open cover -1- at velcro fasteners -arrow-.

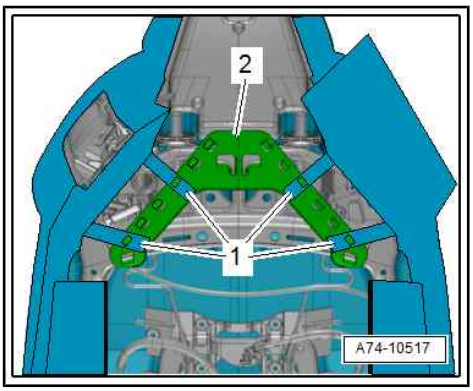


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

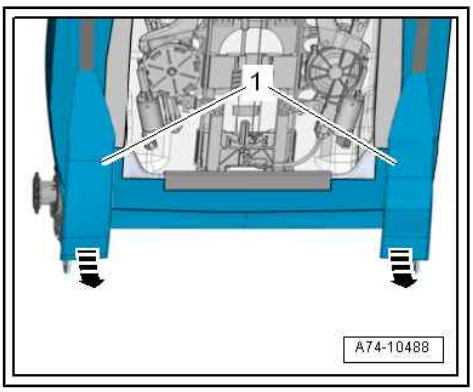
– Disengage cover -2- from retaining hooks -1, 3- of fastening strip.



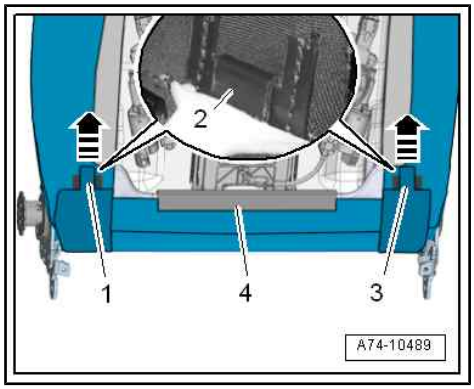
– Disengage lugs -1- on padding from retaining hooks.
– Disengage fastening strip -2- from outer backrest frame and detach.



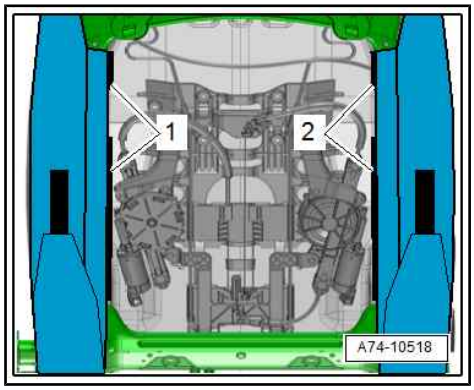
– Disengage covers -1- at bottom of backrest fitting -arrows-.



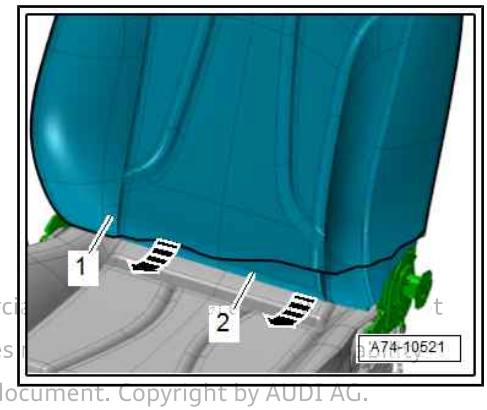
– Pull lugs -1 and 3- of cover upwards -arrows- and disengage piping -2- at cover.
– Disengage piping -4- at bottom of outer backrest frame.



– Disengage piping -1, 2- of cover from outer backrest frame.

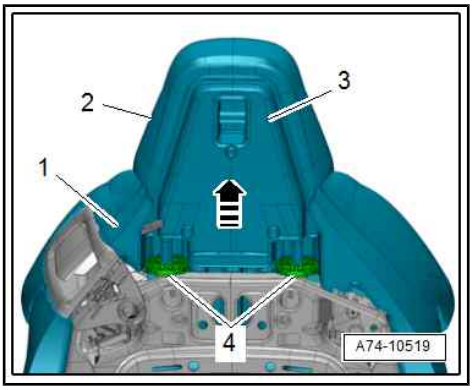


– Carefully disengage cover -1- with padding -2- from bottom of backrest -arrows-.
– Unfasten padding from outer backrest frame and carefully pull it as far as possible towards front.
– Remove side airbag (front) ⇒ page 150 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerci t
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Detach padding at shoulder height from adhesive strips on outer backrest frame.
– Press and hold release button -4- of head restraint.
– Lift head restraint -3- with padding and cover out of head restraint guides -arrow-.
– Take padding -1- and cover -2- upwards off outer backrest frame, and depending on version, guide out wiring harness for backrest heating.



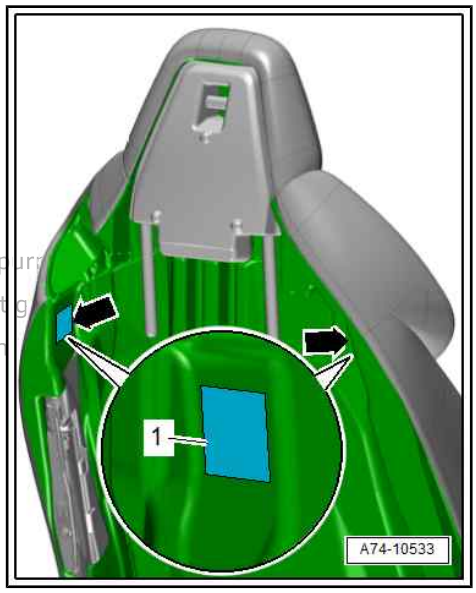
Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 392 .*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

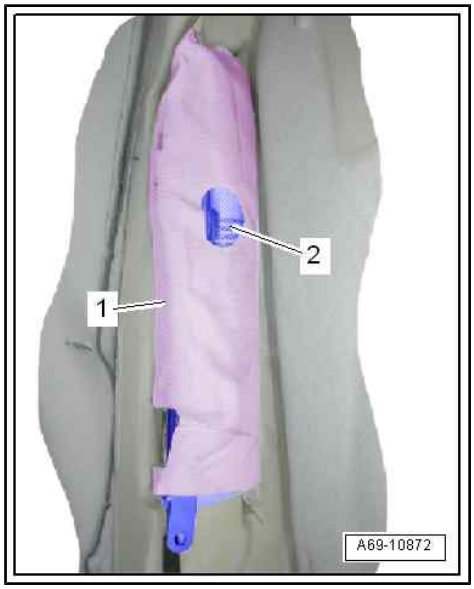
– To prevent padding from slipping or gaps from forming between backrest cover panel and cover, padding is additionally bonded to outer backrest frame.
– To do this, attach a double-sided adhesive strip -1- (approx. 45 x 60 mm) to padding on both sides -arrows-.
– Make cut on anti-squeak pad in area of bonding surfaces.
– Align padding and cover with outer backrest frame.
– Detach protective films from adhesive strips and press padding firmly onto outer backrest cover in area of adhesive strips.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

– Insert side airbag -2- into pouch -1- stitched into cover, engage at outer backrest frame and secure with bolts.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat”, page 482



1.8 Separating backrest cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-

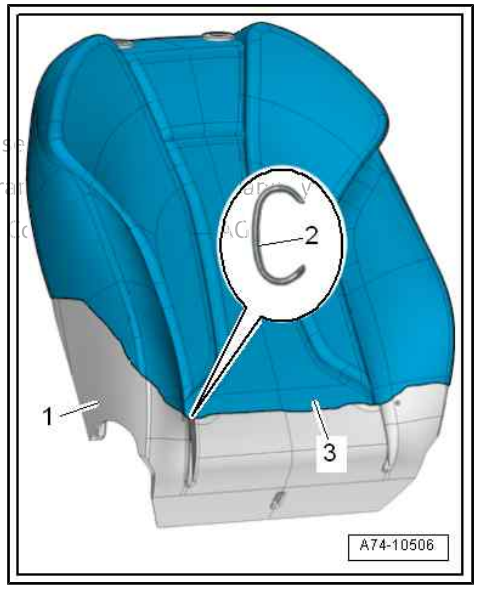


Removing

– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 494 .

– Detach cover -3- as far as possible from padding -1- and cut through upholstery clips -2- using pliers.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG



Note

The illustration shows the sports seat as an example.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

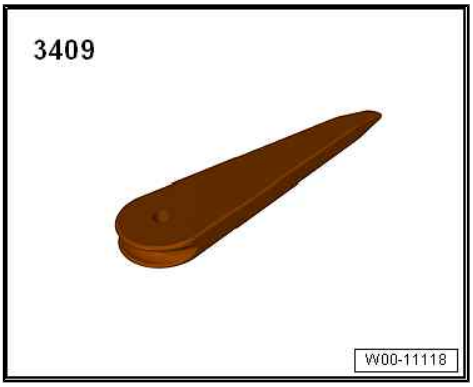
– Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing backrest padding, bond on new backrest heating element ⇒ page 505 .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding”, page 480

1.9 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

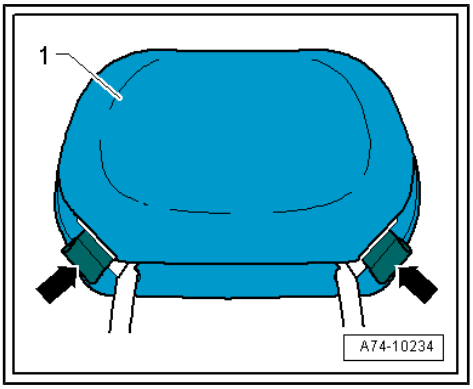
- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 430 .

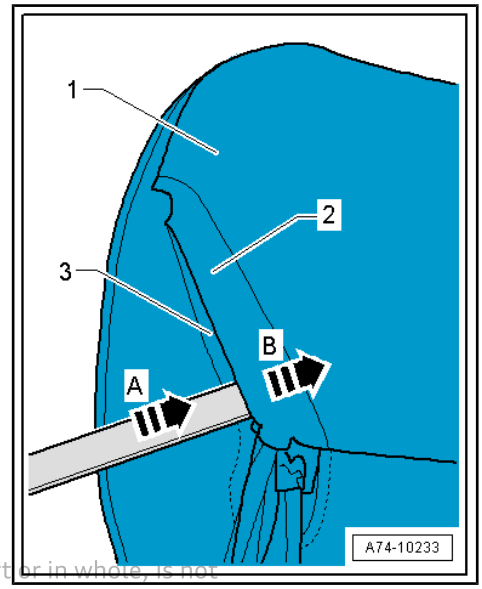
– Open side fasteners -arrows- on cover -1-.



– To do so, insert removal wedge - 3409- or a flat-bladed screwdriver in between fasteners of cover -1- in direction of -arrow A-.

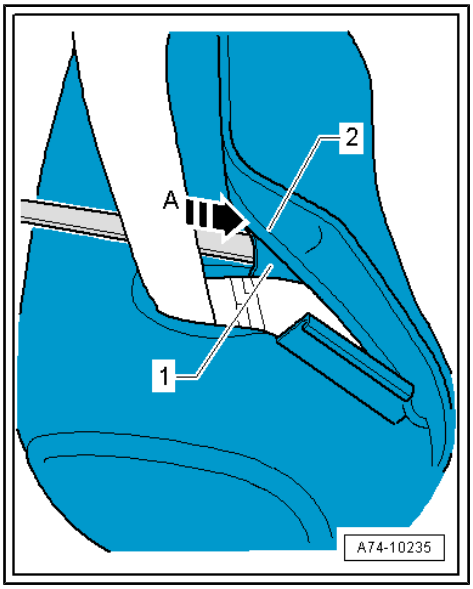
– Apply tension to bottom U-profile -3- in direction of -arrow B-.

– Pull upper side of cover with flat profile -2- out of U-profile.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Open main fastener by inserting removal wedge - 3409- or flat-bladed screwdriver in between fasteners for cover.
– Apply tension to bottom U-profile -1- in direction of -arrow A-.
– Pull upper side of cover with flat profile -2- out of U-profile -1-.



Note

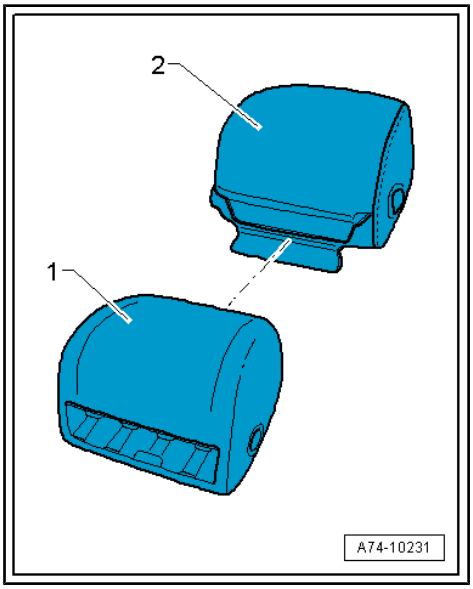
To take out padding cover must be fully open.

– Detach cover and padding from head restraint mounting bracket.

– Remove padding -1- from cover -2-.

Installing

– Insert padding -1- in cover -2-, making sure it is correctly aligned.
– Insert head restraint mounting bracket in padding with cover.

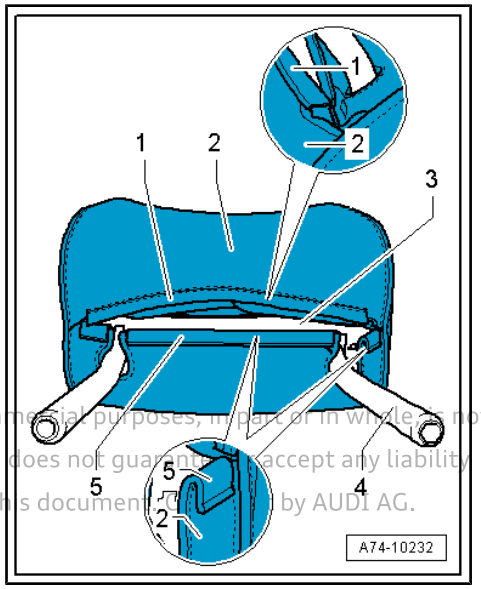


– Close main fastener by folding over upper flat profile -1- of cover -2-.
– Insert edge of fabric with flat profile into U-profile -5-.
– Close fasteners (side) in the same way.
– Align cover and profiles using a needle or another sharp object.
– Make sure cover is positioned on padding -3- without creases or seam marks.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding”, page 483



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document copied by AUDI AG.

1.10 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8-

⇒ "1.10.1 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 - standard seat", page 503

⇒ "1.10.2 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 - sports seat/super sports seat", page 504

1.10.1 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8- - standard seat

Note

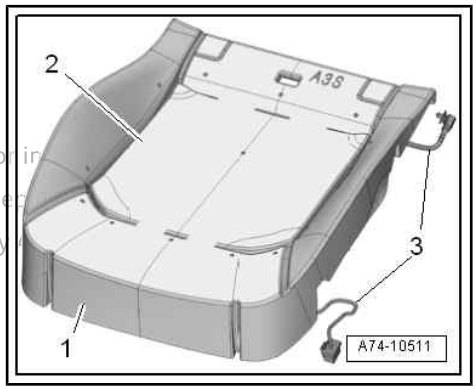
- *A defective seat heating is repaired by bonding a new seat heating element directly onto the defective seat heating element.*
- *Exception: On front passenger seats with seat occupied recognition (country-specific version, e.g. USA vehicles), the entire service kit consisting of the seat padding with heating element and sensor as well as the control unit must be renewed ⇒ page 196 .*

Procedure

– Detach cover and padding ⇒ page 491 .

Fabric cover:

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old heating element -2-.



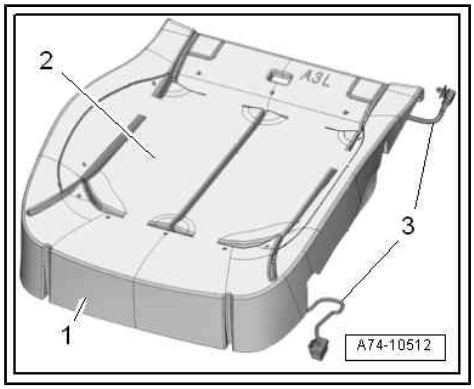
Note

Old heating elements remain on padding -1-, new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

Leather cover:

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old heating element -2-.



Note

Old heating elements remain on padding -1-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

All seat covers (continued):

– Align new heating elements on padding.

– Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases.

– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.4 Overview - seat heating elements”, page 484

1.10.2 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8- - sports seat/super sports seat

Note

- *A defective seat heating is repaired by bonding a new seat heating element directly onto the defective seat heating element.*
- *Exception: On front passenger seats with seat occupied recognition (country-specific version, e.g. USA vehicles), the entire service kit consisting of the seat padding with heating element and sensor as well as the control unit must be renewed* ⇒ page 196 .

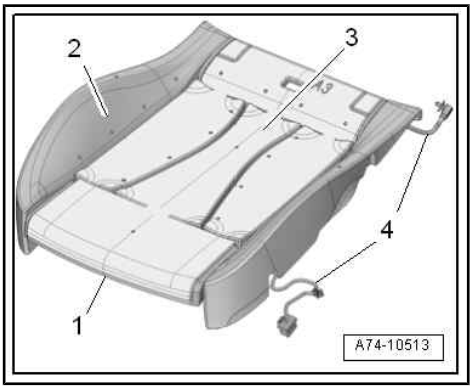
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

– Detach cover and padding ⇒ page 492 .

Fabric cover:

– Cut off electrical wire -4- directly at old heating element -3-.



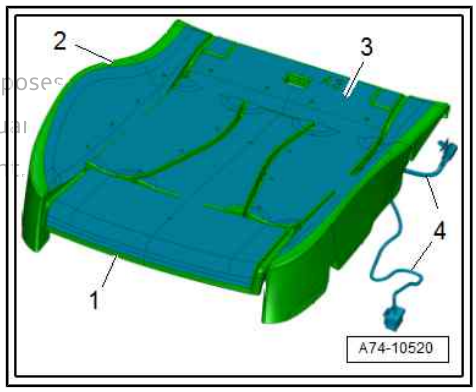
Note

Old heating elements remain on padding -1, 2-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

– Align new heating elements on padding.
– Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.
– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases.
– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.

Leather cover:

– Cut off electrical wire -4- directly at old heating element -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gua
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen

Note

Old heating elements remain on padding -1, 2-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

– Align new heating elements on padding.
– Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.
– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases.
– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Overview - seat heating elements", page 484

1.11 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9-

⇒ "1.11.1 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 - standard seat", page 505

⇒ "1.11.2 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 - sports seat", page 507

⇒ "1.11.3 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 - super sports seat", page 507

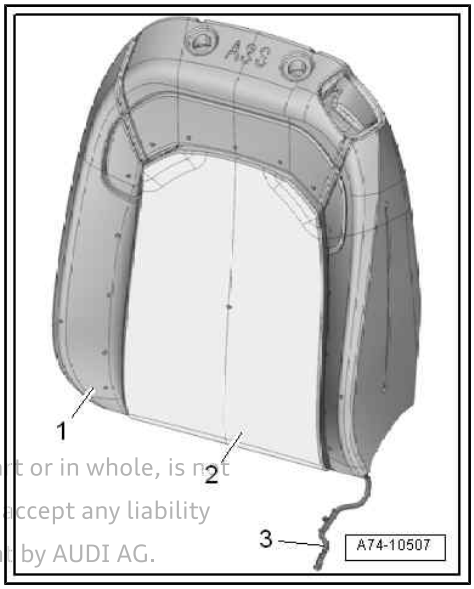
1.11.1 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9- - standard seat

Procedure

– Separate backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 500 .

Fabric cover:

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old heating element -2-.



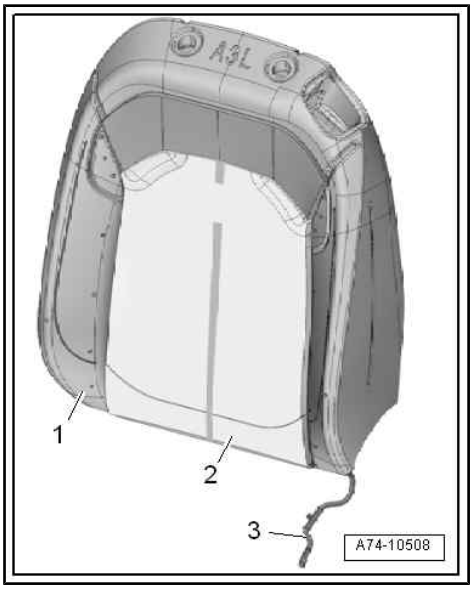
Note

Leave old heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new heating element.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Leather cover:

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old heating element -2-.



Note

Leave old heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new heating element.

All seat covers (continued):

– Align new heating element on padding.

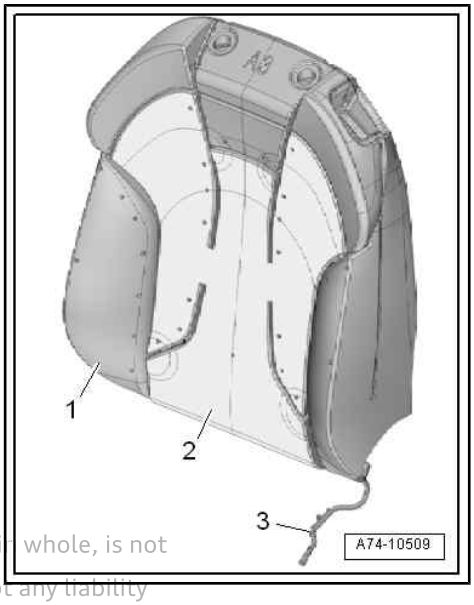
– Peel protective film off heating element, taking care not to damage heating element.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.4 Overview - seat heating elements”, page 484

1.11.2 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9- - sports seat



Procedure

– Detach cover and padding ⇒ page 500 .

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old heating element -2-.

Note

Leave old heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new heating element.

– Align new heating element on padding.

– Peel protective film off heating element, taking care not to damage heating element.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases.

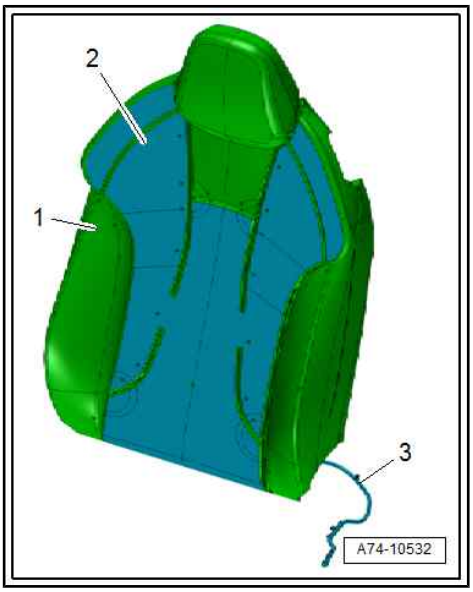
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "1.4.3 Overview - seat and backrest heating elements, sports seat", page 486

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.11.3 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9- - super sports seat



Procedure

– Detach cover and padding ⇒ page 500 .

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old heating element -2-.

Note

Leave old heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new heating element.

– Align new heating element on padding.

– Peel protective film off heating element, taking care not to damage heating element.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "1.4.4 Overview - seat and backrest heating elements, super sports seat", page 487

2 Covers and padding on rear seats

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding”, page 508

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing cover and padding”, page 511

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing intermediate padding - backrest with load-through hatch”, page 515

⇒ “2.4 Detaching cover from padding”, page 515

2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding, standard seat”, page 508

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding, sports seat”, page 509

⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, rear seat backrest without load-through hatch”, page 510

⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, rear seat backrest with load-through hatch”, page 511

2.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding, standard seat

1 - Seat frame

2 - Padding

- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 515
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

4 - Seat cover

- ❑ Equipment versions:

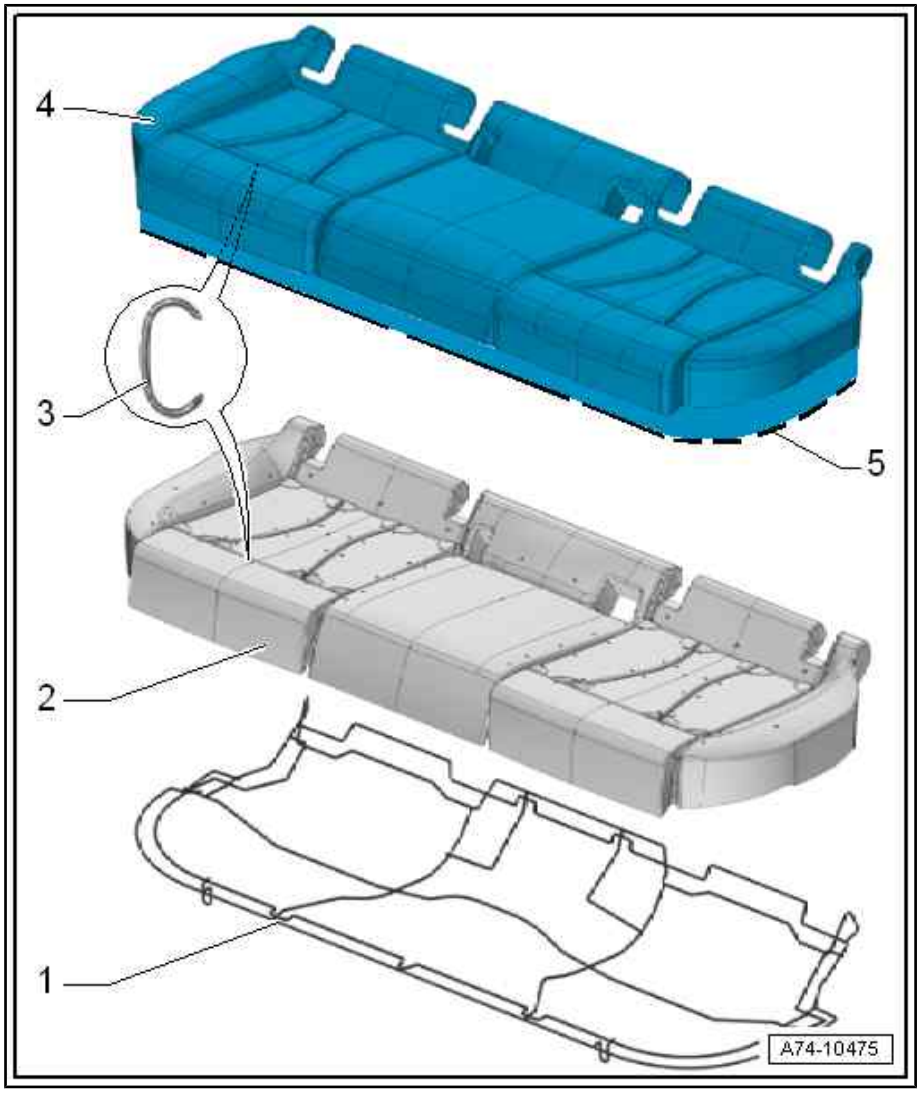
♦ Fabric

♦ Leather

- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 515
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

5 - Piping

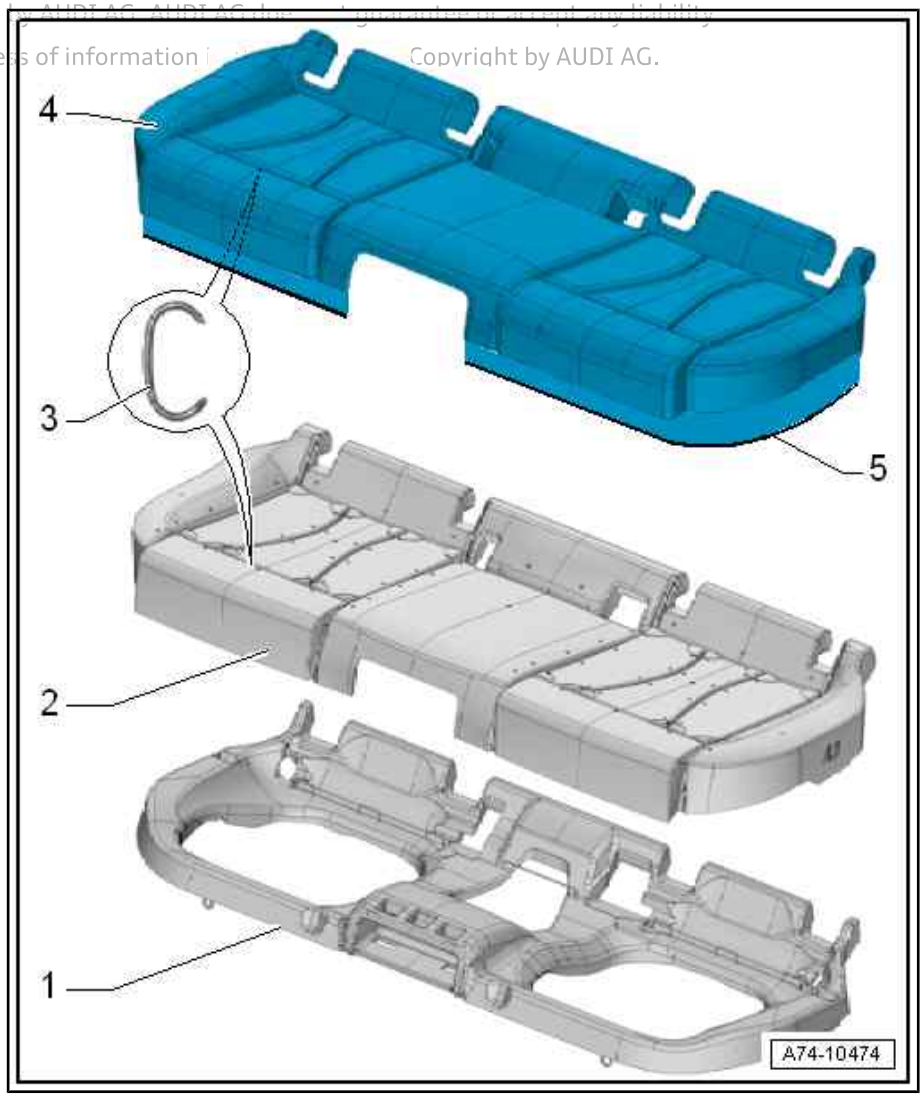
- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in seat frame



❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat frame

2.1.2 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding, sports seat

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Seat frame

❑ With moulded section

2 - Padding

❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 515

❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Upholstery clip

❑ For attaching cover to padding

❑ Renew after removing

❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

4 - Seat cover

❑ Equipment versions:

♦ Fabric

♦ Leather

❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 515

❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

5 - Fastening strip

❑ Stitched to cover

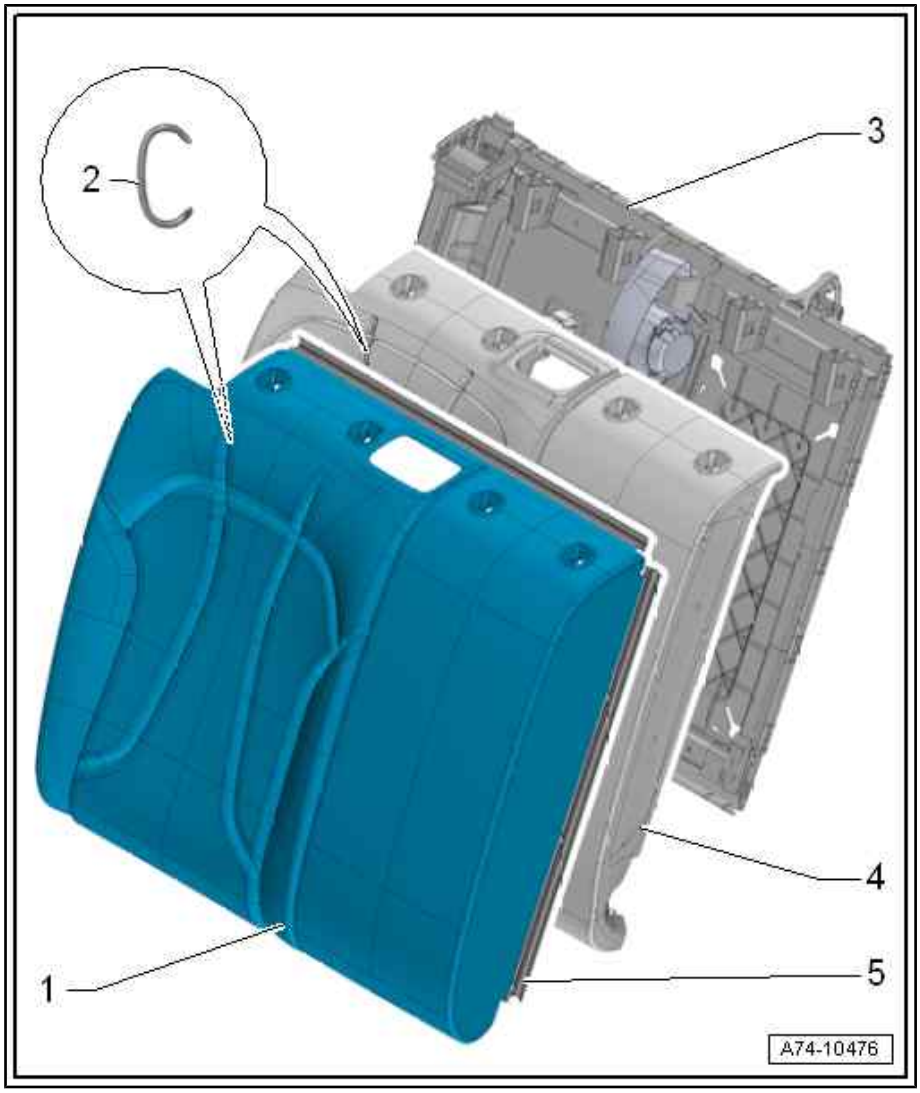
❑ For attaching cover to seat frame

❑ Fold over inwards and engage in groove in moulded section

2.1.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, rear seat backrest without load-through hatch

Note

The exploded view refers to the 2/3 section (right-side) of the rear seat backrest as an example.



1 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Equipment versions:
- ♦ Fabric
- ♦ Leather
- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 511
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 517
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

2 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

3 - Outer backrest frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 511

4 - Padding

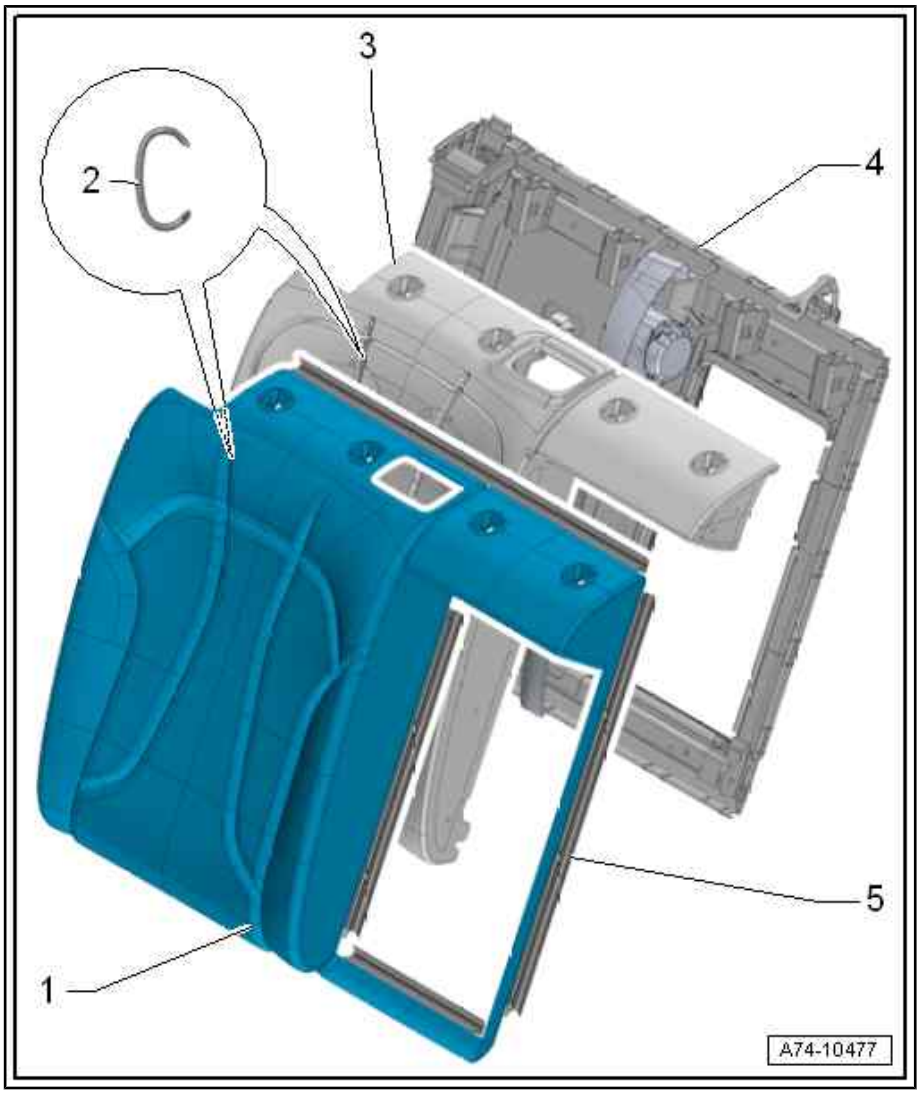
- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 511
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 517
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

5 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in outer backrest frame

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.4 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, rear seat backrest with load-through hatch



1 - Backrest cover

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Fabric
- ♦ Leather
  - ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 511
  - ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 517
  - ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
  - ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

2 - Upholstery clip
- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

3 - Padding
- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 511
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 517
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Outer backrest frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 511

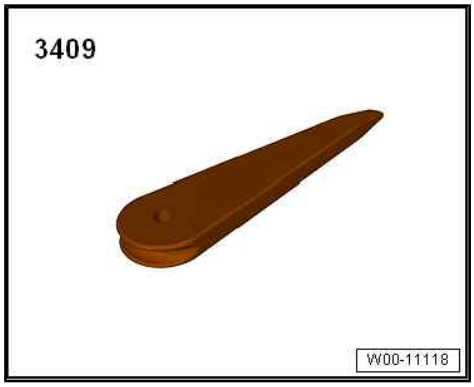
5 - Fastening strip
- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in outer backrest frame

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

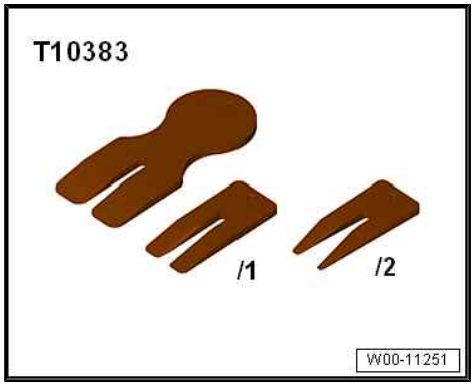
2.2 Removing and installing cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-

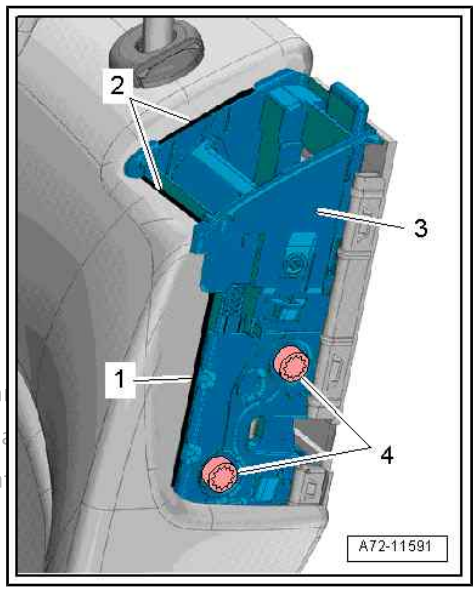


- Wedges - T10383-



Removing

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 466 .
– Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 475 .
– Remove trim for locking mechanism ⇒ page 471 .
– Using a screwdriver, prise fastening strips -1 and 2- for cover out of locking mechanism -3-.

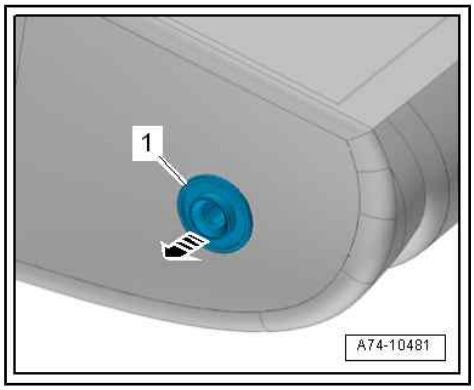


Note

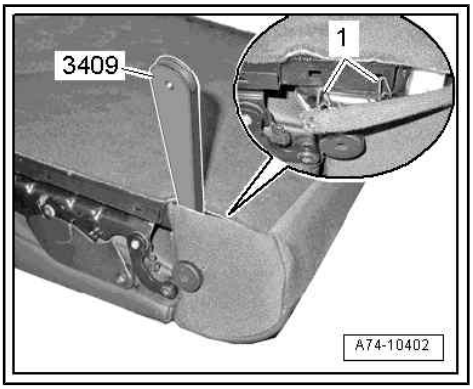
Disregard -item 4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrigh

– Unclip outer bearing sleeve -1- from rear seat backrest using wedge -T10383/1- -arrow-.

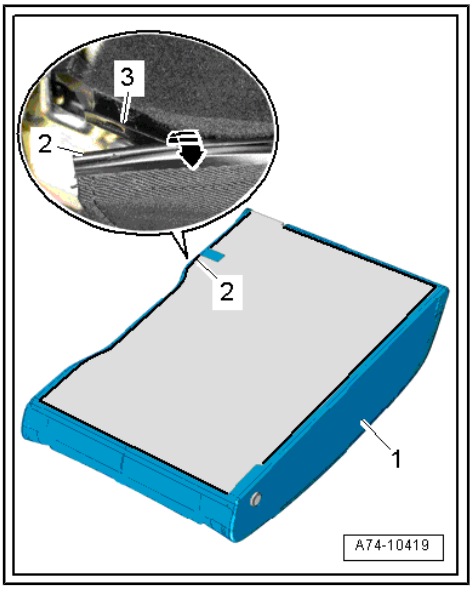


– Remove inner pivot pin ⇒ page 468 .
– Release clips -1- for cover from outer backrest frame around inner pivot pin using removal lever - 3409- .



1/3 section of rear seat backrest (left-side):

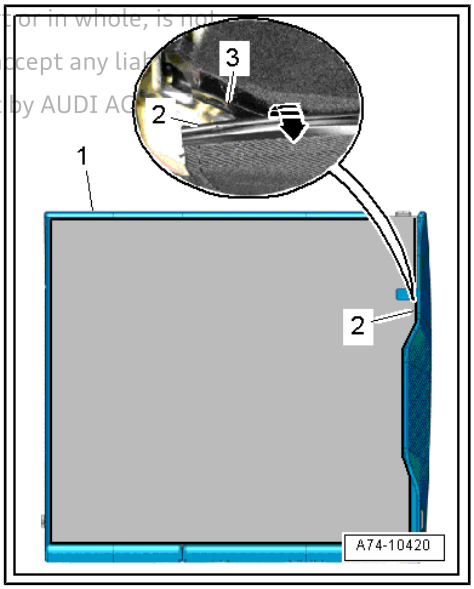
– Starting at locking mechanism, prise fastening strip -2- for cover off outer backrest frame -3- all around -arrow- using a screwdriver.
– Remove head restraint guides (rear) ⇒ page 476 .
– Remove cover -1- with padding from outer backrest frame.



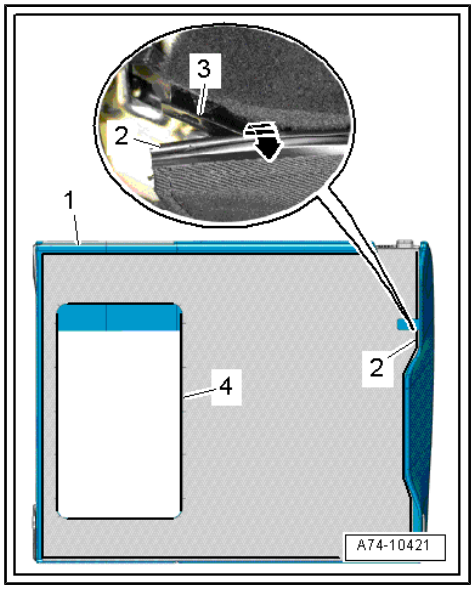
Printing, duplication or other forms of processing of this document, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2/3 section (right-side) of rear seat backrest without load-through hatch:

– Remove centre belt guide (rear) ⇒ page 101 .
– Starting at locking mechanism, prise fastening strip -2- for cover off outer backrest frame -3- all around -arrow- using a screwdriver.
– Remove head restraint guides (rear) ⇒ page 476 .
– Remove cover -1- with padding from outer backrest frame.



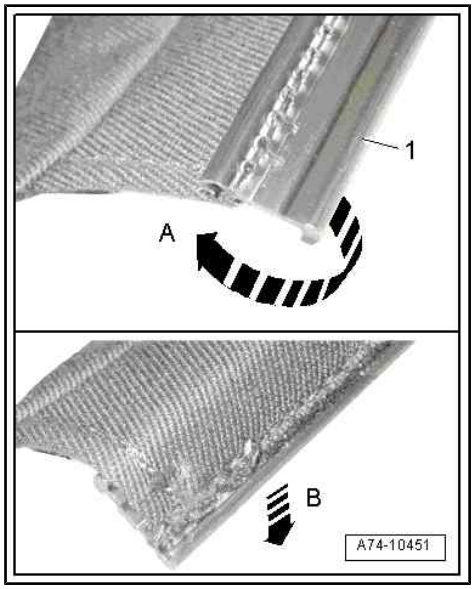
2/3 section (right-side) of rear seat backrest with load-through hatch:



- Remove centre belt guide (rear) ⇒ page 101 .
- Remove flap for load-through hatch with centre armrest (rear) ⇒ page 473 .
- Remove trim frame for load-through hatch ⇒ page 471 .
- Starting at locking mechanism, prise fastening strip -2- for cover off outer backrest frame -3- all around -arrow- using a screwdriver.
- Using a screwdriver, prise fastening strip -4- for cover off load-through hatch all around.
- Remove head restraint guides (rear) ⇒ page 476 .
- Remove cover -1- with padding from outer backrest frame.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

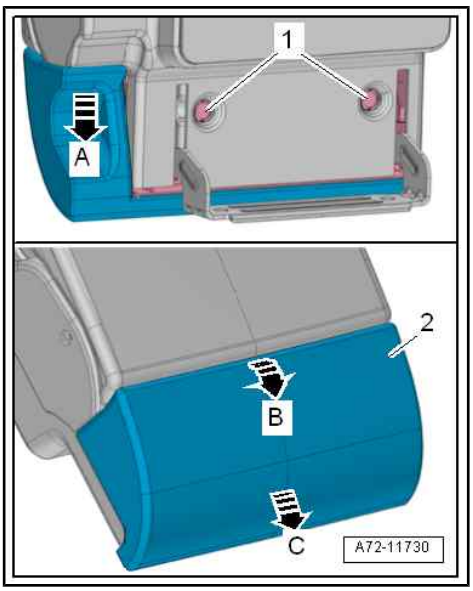


- Fold fastening strip -1- around inwards -arrow A- by 180°.
- Engage fastening strip in groove in outer backrest frame -arrow B-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding", page 508

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Removing and installing intermediate padding - backrest with load-through hatch



Removing

– Remove flap for load-through hatch ⇒ page 473 .

– Using a screwdriver, release retaining tabs -1- and at the same time press down intermediate padding -2- as far as it will go -arrow A-.

– Slightly lift intermediate padding at top -arrow B- and at the same time disengage it downwards from flap for load-through hatch -arrow C-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.2.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, flap for load-through hatch”, page 461

2.4 Detaching cover from padding

⇒ “2.4.1 Detaching seat bench cover from padding”, page 515

⇒ “2.4.2 Detaching cover from padding - rear seat backrest”, page 517

2.4.1 Detaching seat bench cover from padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Removing

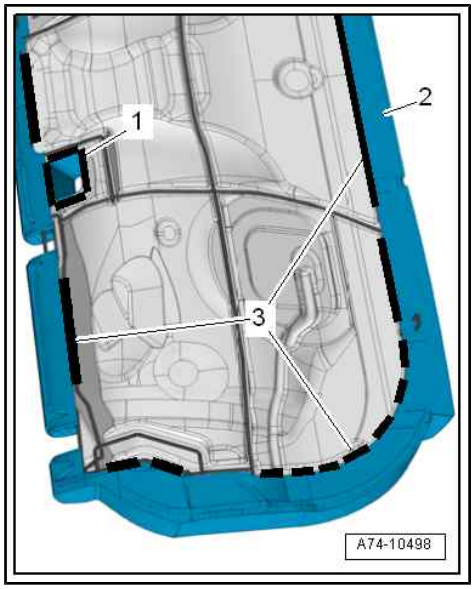
– Remove seat bench/individual seats ⇒ page 464 .

Standard seat:

– Disengage piping -3- of cover all around seat frame.

– Disengage piping -1- of cover at openings for belt buckles in padding.

– Remove cover -2- with padding from seat frame.



Sports seat:

– Remove centre storage compartment ⇒ page 465 .

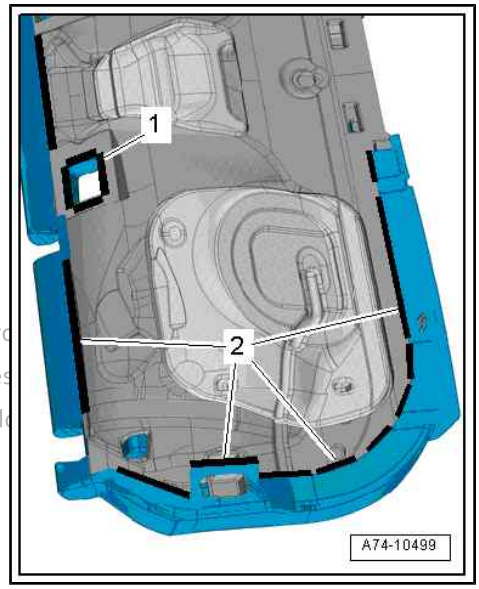
Caution

Risk of damage to seat cover.

♦ *Do not pull seat cover as it could tear.*

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , prise fastening strips -2- of cover off moulded section all along seat frame.

– Disengage piping -1- of cover at openings for belt buckles in padding.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this d

All seat versions (continued):

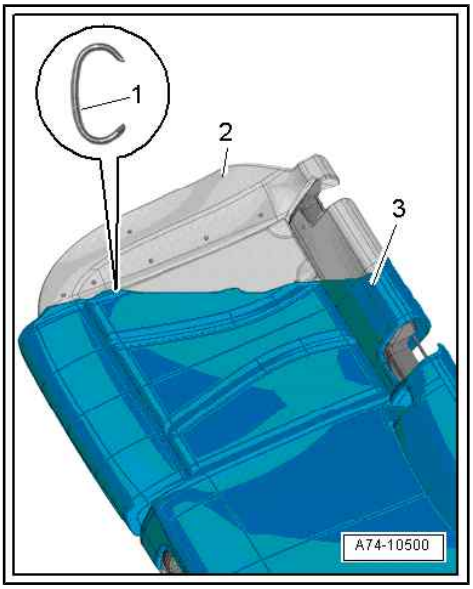
– Detach cover -3- as far as possible from padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -1- using pliers.

– Separate cover and padding.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding”, page 508



2.4.2 Detaching cover from padding - rear seat backrest

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Removing

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 466 .

– Remove seat cover and padding ⇒ page 511 .

– Detach cover -2- as far as possible from padding -3- and cut through upholstery clips -1- using pliers.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding”, page 508

